

QUEEN MARY COLLEGE
(University of London)
LIBRARY

CLASSIFICATION

PR 1119.E5/25

AUTHOR

TITLE

GUY OF WARWICK.

LOCATION & STOCK No.

MAIN LIB. 2394




23 1194972 5

~~RESTRICTED LOAN~~Date Borrowed~~- 8 OCT 1965~~~~- 4 OCT 1968~~~~14 MAR 1969~~~~29 OCT 1970~~~~21 DEC 1971~~

9 - MAY 2006

WITHDRAWN
FROM STOCK
QMW LIBRARY



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

The Romance of Guy of Warwick.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxv-vi.

1875-6.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

7c Guy of Warwick.

The second or 15th-century Version.

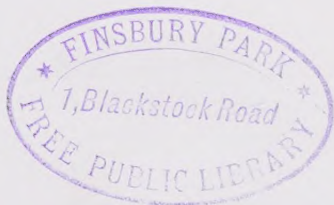
EDITED FROM THE PAPER MS. Ff. 2. 38.

IN THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, CAMBRIDGE,

BY

DR. JULIUS ZUPITZA,

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN, LATE PROFESSOR IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF VIENNA.



LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXV-VI,

PR 1119. ES

A
95.



Extra Series,

XXV-VI.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

P R E F A C E.

§ 1. All the M.E. versions of the Romance of Guy of Warwick are translations from the French. Unfortunately the French original has not yet been entirely edited. It occurs perhaps in more MSS. than I have become aware of. I know of the existence of eight, three of which are in London (Reg. MS. 8 F ix, Harley MS. 3775, and one in the College of Arms), the rest at Oxford (Rawlinson MS. Misc. 137), at Cambridge (Corpus Christi College, L), at Cheltenham, at Wolfenbüttel (Cod. Aug. 87, 4), and in Paris (1669). Mr G. A. Herbing has edited the beginning of the work from the Wolfenbüttel MS. in the *Programm der grossen Stadtschule zu Wismar als Einladung zur Michaelisprüfung 1872*, for a copy of which I am indebted to the editor's kindness. Prof. Stengel of Marburg was good enough to lend me a copy of the Rawlinson Fragment, made by Mr Parker, and collated with, and, in part, supplied from, the Reg. MS. by himself. The Harley and the Cambridge MSS. have been for many passages consulted by myself. In the notes, unless a particular MS. or Mr Herbing's publication be mentioned, always the Cambridge MS. is meant.

§ 2. The French Romance was done into English several times. We possess the whole, or considerable fragments, of, at least, four different M.E. versions. Cf. my paper *Zur Litteraturgeschichte des Guy von Warwick* in the *Sitzungsberichte der phil.-hist. Classe der kais. Academie der Wissenschaften*, vol. lxxiv, pp. 623-45.

I., in short couplets, incompletely preserved in three MSS. :

a, in the Auchinleck MS., foll. 108-146, edited by Turnbull for the Abbotsford Club, 1840 (ll. 1-6898). The beginning (about 60

lines) is wanting in consequence of a leaf torn out. Another leaf is missing after l. 2336 (where Turnbull is wrong in indicating a gap of only four lines), and the larger part of a third after l. 1936 (where Turnbull is alike inaccurate, at the same time disregarding the ends of some 30 lines). In this MS. the story stops short after Guy's fight with the Dragon, the last line corresponding to l. 6966 of our text. The rest is replaced by II. ; see below.

b, in the Caius MS., Cambridge, 107. As far as *a* goes, *b* has, though with considerable omissions, the same version, but, after *a* has stopped, *b*, in two pretty long passages (cf. § 4), follows the same version as our text. The story is not continued after the death of Guy and Felice.

c, in the Sloane MS. 1044. It is only one leaf (fol. 345, nr. 625), written in a hand of the 14th century, containing 216 lines, which I have printed in my paper cited above, pp. 624-9. This fragment begins after the end of *a*. On comparing it with the French original and *b*, we find it to have the same version as *b*, but with considerable interpolations. Cf. my paper, p. 634.

II., in twelve line stanzas, in the Auchinleck MS. It is the continuation of Guy's story from his marriage (foll. 146-167, ll. 6899-10479 in Turnbull's edition), and the story of *Reinbrun, Gy sone of Warwike* (foll. 167-175, ll. 1-1521 in Turnbull's edition). Of the latter the end is missing.

III., in short couplets ;

a, some fragments in the Add. MS. 14408 of the British Museum, written in a hand of the 14th century. They have been privately printed by Sir Thomas Philipps (Middle Hill, 1838), and reprinted by Turnbull in the preface to his edition of Guy from the Auchinleck MS. They are in part very difficult to read, so that we must not wonder that the editions of them are very incomplete and abound in mistakes. Cf. my paper, p. 638.

b, in the Bodleian Library (Douce Fragments, 20), one leaf in black-letter. 'The same type as that used in the fragments of Bevis of Hampton and Robyn Hode, and several other books . . . , all of which were certainly printed by Wynkyn de Worde.' It agrees very closely with *c*.

c, the *Booke of the moste victoryous Prynce, Guy of Warwick. Imprynted at London in Lothbury, ouer agaynst saynt Margarits Church by wylliam Copland.* I do not know where a complete copy of this work is to be found. The British Museum one wants the first twenty leaves. That *c* has the same version as *a*, only modernized, is shown in my paper, p. 640.

IV., in short couplets ;

a, in the MS. of the University Library, Cambridge, Ff. 2, 38, printed here for the first time.

b, in the Caius MS. 107, in the passages pointed out below (§ 4). I do not know anything about Cawood's Guy, nor about a fragment of 36 leaves 'printed in a thinner letter than W. de Worde's' (cf. Warton, ed. Hazlitt, II, 162). I should be greatly obliged for any information about these editions, as well as about a complete copy of Copland's.

§ 3. Our text is taken from the Paper MS. Ff. 2, 38, in the Library of the University of Cambridge. Its old number was 690. In this MS., though it is written in the same hand of the 15th century, yet two originally distinct volumes are united, the Romance of Guy heading the second. It occupies foll. 121-239 according to the new pagination of Mr Bradshaw, or foll. 107-225 according to the old one. As I follow the former, and Mr Halliwell in his Dictionary, in which Guy from this MS. is pretty often cited, follows the latter, whosoever will verify Halliwell's quotations must add 14 to his number in order to get mine. Halliwell, e. g., quotes fol. 182, s. v. *Tarne*. Adding 14, we get fol. 196 ; cf. ll. 5521-2 and the note. Our poem is written in two columns, each generally containing about 40 lines. The catchwords, and perhaps what is mentioned in the foot-note to l. 7455, we owe to another hand, to which I think we must attribute also *per me Robertum* in the left margin of fol. 163b. We find besides some scribblings in the margins of foll. 167a (ll. 942-945 repeated), 1706 (*Liber iste constat mihi*), 179b, 180a, and 200b. The poem is divided into parts, marked by large initials, originally red, but now generally black. I thought it, however, necessary to make besides shorter divisions, which are indicated by ¶. This sign occurs in the MS. itself only in three places, viz. before ll. 7487, 11267, and 11337.

§ 4. Part of the same version is preserved also in MS. 107 of Caius College, Cambridge. It is a parchment MS. written about the beginning of the 15th century by two scribes, one of whom wrote pp. 1-2, and 150-271 (the end), and the other the rest. The lines of our text that occur also in this MS. are

7261 — 8024 = pp. 149, l. 25 — 175, l. 20, and

8541 — 9874 = pp. 195, l. 4 — 242, l. 20.

This MS. will be printed at full length in another volume, but I have used it in correcting or, at least, pointing out obvious faults of the University MS. I will give here as a specimen twenty lines from p. 175, which correspond to ll. 8015-8036 of our text.

- But vp he stert withowte dwellyng :
 Therof pleyned he nothyng.
 He smote to Gye with all hys myȝt
 And he hym, as a noble knyȝt.
 5 Tho they fowghten ryȝt faste there :
 Nother of hem wold other spare.
 They fowght with so grete ire,
 Oute of ther helmis sprange the fyre.
 They breke hawberberkis (*sic* !) and shyldys :
 10 The pecis flew into the fyldys.
 They fought so faste with her brondys,
 They corue theire armour with strength of handys.
 Betwene them was bateyle stronge
 And hyt lastyd swyth longe.
 15 Tho thought Ameraunt, tho (*sic* !) knyght,
 That he had be in many a fyght.
 Vp he lyfte hys arme on hye
 And thought to smyte sore sir Gye.
 On the helme he hym smote :
 20 The sercle of gold of hys sward bote.

A comparison with our text shows that ll. 1-10 are all but identical with ll. 8015-8024, whereas ll. 11-20 are quite different from ll. 8025-8036.

§ 5. In those passages which are preserved also in the Caius MS., our text is sometimes so corrupt that it would be impossible to correct it by mere conjecture with any probability of restoring the original reading. Sometimes, though it is apparently correct, yet a comparison with the Caius MS. and the French original shows it to have deviated from the author's translation. We may, therefore, be sure that in those lines in which we want the help of a second MS. have taken place a great many corruptions which we either do not

perceive at all, or, if we do, must despair of healing. Hence I was, upon the whole, content to correct obvious faults of the last scribe. But, of course, every such deviation from the MS. is mentioned in the foot-notes and, generally, justified in the notes. Only in a few trifles I do not follow the MS. without mentioning it.

a. I have regulated the use of capital letters, whereas in our MS. (as in others) we find now *Erle*, now *erle* ; now *Gye*, now *gye*, and often do not know whether the scribe meant *Harrawde* or *harrawde*. Thinking (with Skeat) *ff* to mean F, I have never kept it. By a mistake, the first sheet has a few inconsistent capitals.

b. The MS. makes no difference between *i* and *j*, *I* and *J*.

c. Compound pronouns and adverbs I have printed as single words, e.g. *hymself*, *perwyth*. The MS. has *hymself* and *hym self*, etc.

d. The punctuation is mine, the MS. disregarding it entirely, except that a few times a stop is found in such cases as *of. of* in l. 2906. It will be kindly excused, I hope, that my punctuation follows the German method.

My foot-note to l. 8402 shows that I think *n* to mean no more than *n*. It is often difficult, and sometimes impossible to decide whether the MS. has *n* or *n*. My copy of the MS., therefore, disregarded the flourish after *n*. It was, however, on Mr Furnivall's desire, added, while the text was passing through the press, on sheets 2-10 by me, on the others by Mr Miller, of the University Library, Cambridge, who was good enough to read part of the proofs with the MS.

§ 6. As the last volume of the M.E. Guy Romances will be accompanied by a general introduction,¹ literary as well as philological, I will avail myself of the present occasion only to treat of the rhymes of our text.

a. A great many rhymes *seem* only imperfect in consequence of the scribe's orthography or dialect differing from the author's.

a. Often one rhyme word only has a final *e* added : e.g., l. 47, *Bokyngham : name* ; l. 69, *prys : wyse*. But the final unaccented *e*, except when standing for *y* (cf. note to l. 132), is silent through the whole poem.

¹ In the mean time cf. The Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, II.

β. The scribe often writes a silent *ε* before terminations; cf. l. 31, *otheys: clothys*; l. 869, *loueyng: kynge*; l. 3037, *thyng: looueyng*; l. 3819, *thyng: wepeyng*; l. 4083, *mornynge: loueyng*; l. 4213, *stedys: medeys*; l. 9547, *kepeyng: hyng*; l. 10071, *nothyng: slepeyng*.

γ. Some terminations may be differently spelled; cf. l. 1467, *togedur: toschyder*; l. 2011, *scheldes: feldus*; l. 3033, *cytees: feys*; l. 8833, *dyeng: pyng*; l. 10067, *wakyde: maked*; l. 10919, *schene: 3edyn*; l. 11105, *enclosed: ymarlydde*; l. 11289, *sheldys: teldes*.

δ. Terminations beginning with *ε* or *γ* may drop their vowels; cf. l. 160, *clothe: goyth* (cf. l. 11061, *hors: goys*); l. 1697, *avyse: enmyes*; l. 3737, *seyde: betrayed*; l. 6013, *tyde: hyedde*; ll. 8545 and 9921, *barowns: townes*; l. 9943, *cuntrayse: abbayes*; l. 10161, *assayed: payde*; l. 10303, *vpbrayde: dysmayede*; l. 11671, *pryes: wyse*.

ε. In words of Teutonic origin *o* may be used instead of a short *a* before *n*; cf. l. 109, *man: sone*; l. 1577, *man: zone*; ll. 2763 and 4227, *lande: honde*; ll. 3065 and 5115, *fonde: tythande*; l. 3562, *lande: fonde*; l. 4079, *fonde: slepande*; l. 4371, *sonde: tythande*; l. 7273, *londe: lygande*; l. 7453, *londe: folowande*; l. 9125, *hande: fonde*; l. 10069, *man: on*; l. 10185, *vpon: man*; l. 10229, *Collebrande: stronge*; l. 10835, *londe: hande*; l. 11859, *prekande: fonde*; l. 11873, *londe: verrande*; l. 11887, *stande: londe*.

ζ. We find apparently *a: o* before *ld* in l. 1015, *Toralde: bolde*, and l. 4229, *calde: wolde*. The poet, no doubt, pronounced *balde* and *walde*.

η. A similar case occurs before *gh*: l. 265, *nozt: betaght*; l. 10045, *betaght: roght*; l. 10929, *raght: noght*. In the poet's pronunciation evidently O.E. *-âht-* and *-ôht-* sounded alike, whereas the scribe kept them asunder.

θ. In the note to l. 3108 I have pointed out that the dialect of the author was more northern than that of the scribe. This is further proved by the rhymes *sub ζ* and by our often finding *ō* (= O.E. *â* or *ê*) written by the scribe where the rhyme requires *á*: cf. l. 1475, *glode: haddē*; l. 1443, *gone: manē*; ll. 1764 and 2807, *tane:*

gone ; l. 2531, *gone : tane* ; ll. 3015 and 7939, *sowdan : anon* ; l. 3345, *oon : tane* ; l. 3591, *fare : thore* ; l. 3693, *Coldran : allone* ; l. 3701, *tane : allone* ; l. 3815, *sowdan : allone* ; l. 4611, *woman : mone* ; l. 5741, *eeheon : tane* ; l. 6347, *euerychone : tane* ; l. 7447, *oon : man* ; l. 7673, *gone : Johan* ; l. 8369, *man : euerychone* ; l. 9997, *Johan : Adelston*.

ι. Quite similar is *aw : ow* ; cf. l. 7757, *sawe : knowe* ; l. 11533, *throwe : lawe*.

κ. In words of French origin *a* before *n* followed by a consonant may be kept or changed to *au* (*aw*) : cf. l. 7987, *Amerawnt : say-leant* ; l. 8045, *hande : Amerawnde*.

λ. The Latin termination *-onem*, French *-on*, appears promiscuously as *-on* and *-own*. Cf. l. 355, *reson : downe* ; l. 485, *beneson : towne* ; l. 973, *treson : crowne* ; l. 1135, *Heicchon : crowne* ; l. 2129, *barons : prysouns* ; ll. 2281, 6729, 7787, 9261, *Gyowne : resone* ; l. 2783, *renowne : resone* ; l. 3603, *baron : passioun* ; ll. 3875, 8295, *Gyowne : lyone* ; l. 3993, *lyon : Gyowne* ; ll. 4561 and 5109, *crowne : Oton*, etc., etc.

μ. Similarly we find *-or-* : *-owr-*. Cf. ll. 7455 and 7489, *Triamore : honowre* ; l. 7475, *socowre : Triamore* ; l. 3649, *valowre : pore* ; l. 5213, *socowre : worre*.

ν. Some words have two forms, one with the diphthong *ey*, and the other with the monophthong *y*. See Ellis, *On Early E. Pronunciation*, 284. Cf. l. 539, *hye* (= high) : *eye* ; l. 971, *neye : hye* ; l. 4095, *eye : dye* ; ll. 7387 and 11591, *sekerlye : eye* ; l. 8483, *bye* (= buy) : *affraye* ; l. 10415, *bewrye* (= bewray) : *tweye* (= twain) ; l. 10563, *seye : dye* ; l. 10797, *dye : weye*. Can the two rhymes, l. 5603, *palfrey : Payuye*, and l. 8517, *envye : seye*, be explained in the same manner ? Cf. the spelling *Payuaye* in l. 1804, but also the note to ll. 1800-10.

ξ. Sometimes when the scribe writes *herke*, *herte*, etc., the author appears to have pronounced *harke*, *harte*. Cf. l. 209, *serue : carve* ; l. 975, *starte : herte* ; l. 1951, *starte : smerte* ; l. 5053, *scharpe : hawberke* ; l. 6905, *hawberke : starke* ; l. 7901, *hawberke : marke* ; l. 8147, *herke : marke* ; l. 10295, *harde : aferde*.

ο. In ll. 6675, 9987, 10485, the rhymes become perfect when

we read *chyrche* (for *churche*) : *wyrche* (or *kyrke* : *wyrke* ?) ; *dud(de)* : *stud(d)e* (cf. ll. 10545 and 10683).

π. There seem to occur a few rhymes of voice-consonants with breath-consonants ; cf. l. 2061, *hande* : *warante* ; l. 3781, *Harrawde* : *asawte* ; l. 4991, *partes* : *Lumbardes* ; l. 19727, *wyfe* : *on lyue*. But considering such rhymes and spellings as l. 7987, *Amerawnt* : *sayleant* (assailing) ; l. 5057, *Luanbarte* : *part* ; l. 9493, *Barrart* : *part* ; l. 8193, *smarte* : *cowarte* ; ll. 641, 1011, 1827, 5013, *Harrawt(e)* : *as(s)awt(e)* (: *sawte*, 2315) ; ll. 2251, 5661, 7629, 8535, 9977, *Harraute* : *defawte* ; ll. 847, 1181, 4005, *Rohawt(e)* : *defawte* ; l. 5869, *caytyfe* : *on lyfe* ; and, on the other hand, ll. 1929 and 1933, *couenande* : *stunde* ; l. 4173, *seruande* : *warande* ; l. 7477, *couenande* : *hande* ; ll. 7563 and 11565, *couenande* : *lande* ; l. 7847, *hande* : *couenande* ; l. 819, *on lyue* : *wyue* (cf. note to l. 820), we can scarcely help concluding that the poet as well as the scribe were apt to pronounce final voice-consonants (for the final *e* is silent) as breath-consonants (cf. Sanskrit, M.H.G., and N.H.G. dialects). In ll. 4991-2, *parts* : *Lumbarts* must be read.

b. But there occur many really imperfect rhymes.

aa. Rhymes imperfect as to the consonants.

a. Labials : dentals : gutturals, especially very often *m* : *n*. Cf. *blanne* : *came*, ll. 3637 and 11949 ; *came* : *man*, ll. 215, 1799, 10483 ; *man* : *came*, l. 6257 ; *them* : *men*, l. 9 ; *Barrardyne* : *pylgryme*, l. 9529 ; *brymme* : *þerynne*, l. 8277 ; *cosyn* : *grymme*, l. 4145 ; *hym* : *kynne*, l. 8089, : *slauyn*, l. 10379, : *therynne*, l. 3005 ; *pylgryme* : *Barrardyne*, l. 9595, : *kynne*, l. 9747, : *Martyne*, ll. 1403, 9541, : *myn*, 9719, : *slauyn*, ll. 10507, 10609, : *wyne*, 10585 ; *tyme* : *myne*, l. 691, : *Segwyne*, l. 2599 ; *anon* : *whome*, l. 9899 ; *Argone* : *Rome*, l. 1527 ; *come* : *anon*, ll. 2539, 9159, 10185, : *sone*, ll. 10453, 11279 ; *done* : *dome*, l. 11757 ; *gone* : *home*, l. 9145, : *Kyngdome*, l. 8533 ; *goon* : *nome*, l. 901 ; *grome* : *Gyowne*, l. 7103, : *sone*, 8415 ; *home* : *euerychone*, ll. 3457, 6375 ; *pryson* : *raunsome*, ll. 953, 1745, 5261 ; *raunsome* : *pryson*, l. 7479 ; *sone* : *come*, ll. 6557, 10895, : *ycome*, 10439, : *nome*, l. 9981, : *ouercome*, l. 10389 ; *sonnes* : *gromes*, l. 2017.—Cf. besides *t* : *k* ; *smate* : *brake*, l. 5083 ; *stroke* : *smote*, l. 10285 ; *laste* : *aske*, l. 8927.—*d* : *g* (only after *n*) ; *londe* : *stronge*,

l. 8211 ; *fynde : prayinge*, l. 9675, : *tythynge*, l. 11889 ; *Collebrande : stronge*, l. 10229 ; *bronde : stronge*, l. 10325.—P : K ; *scapyd : makyd*, l. 10903 ; *scharpe : hawberke*, l. 5053.—TH : U or F ; *swythe : of lyue*, l. 2239, : *wyfe*, l. 4377. Cf. note to l. 1468. But the rhymes P : T, and PT : TT in our poem are certainly owing only to the scribe. Cf. notes to ll. 2534 and 10347.

β. A consonant wanting in one rhyme-word (cf. also the note to l. 5527).

αα. GH ; cf. l. 3219, *ryght : ȝyt* ; l. 9505, *hyt : nyght* ; l. 10859, *ynogh : too* (cf. l. 8953, *ynowe ; also*).

ββ. R ; l. 11061, *hors : goys* (better *gos* ; cf. α, δ). Cf. also the notes to ll. 6682, 8930 and 10031, and the foot-note to l. 8412.

γ. Miscellaneous irregularities.

αα. S : SCH ; l. 11, *sothefastenes : angwysche* ; l. 2817, *wyse : englysche* ; l. 7727, *flesche : wylclernesse* ; l. 3959, *ravyscht(?) : beste*. But there is a mistake in l. 11315, *eluyche : ȝs* (cf. the note).

ββ. L : R, l. 8153, *scheldus : swyrdus*.

γγ. L : N, l. 8159, *schoulder : sonder*.

δδ. M : U, l. 10791, *besemedde : beleuedde*.

bb. Rhymes imperfect as to the quality of the vowels (difference in their quantity does not seem to have been much objected to).

α. A : E. The only certain instance occurs in l. 6543, *haste : beste* ; for we might read *leste* in l. 1495 (*laste : beste*) ; *feste* in l. 1969 (*faste : preste*) ; *mast* in l. 10639 or *leste* in l. 10640 (*meest : laste*) ; *dale* in l. 10868 (*admerall : dell*). Cf. besides notes to ll. 1363, 3332, 3351, 3988, 4037, 6737, 8391, 8916, 10531, and § 6 α, ξ.

β. A : Y ; l. 8351, *haste : Cryste*.

γ. A : U ; l. 1923, *parte : hurte*. Or does *hurte* stand for *harte*, heart, courage ?

δ. A : AY (EY) ; l. 2357, *man : Almayn* ; l. 2729, *Sysane : payne* (but see the note) ; l. 2993, *sowdan : layne* ; l. 4995, *Jurdan : Melayn (?)* ; l. 6529, *pase : deyse* ; l. 6571, *was : dayse* ; l. 8071, *made : sayde*. Cf. the note to l. 1126.

ε. A : OY ; l. 6549, *was : noyse*.

ȝ. E : Y ; l. 1821, *wytterlye* : *lee* ; l. 3085, *mayne* : l. *hye* ; 3787, *companye* : *thre* ; l. 3865, *mayne* : *sekerlye* ; ll. 4925 and 11295, *plente* : *hye* ; l. 5615, *see* : *nye* ; l. 5367, *charyte* : *sekerlye* ; l. 7879, *gramercye* : *me* ; l. 8661, *the* : *gramercye* ; l. 8663, *folye* : *contre* ; l. 8909, *meyne* : *sekerlye* ; ll. 9059 and 9151, *cyte* : *Tyrrye* ; l. 9745, *Tyrrye* : *me* ; l. 9983, *pyte* : *sekerlye* ; l. 261, *hyde* : *glede* ; l. 1467, *togedur* : *toschyder* ; l. 625, *well* : *gentyll* ; l. 1643, *styll* : *steele* ; l. 5047, *stule* : *euyll* ; l. 5637, *cowncell* : *wyll* ; l. 6091, *steele* : *wyll* ; l. 10403, *telle* : *wyll* ; l. 10865, *well* : *wyll* ; l. 11299, *telle* : *nylle* ; l. 6561, *chylde* : *felde* (but in l. 731, *felde*, *schylde* ; l. 5023, *shylde* : *felde*, and l. 11197, *schylde* : *helde* we must perhaps read *schelde*, *shelde* ; and similarly *swerde* and *swerdus* in l. 8253, *swyrde* : *aferde* and l. 8153, *scheldus* : *swyrdus*) ; l. 83, *then* : *kynne* ; l. 2793, *ynne* : *brenne* ; l. 2901, *then* : *pyne* ; l. 4077, *renne* : *ynne* ; ll. 7733 and 7957, *sarsyn(e)* : *kene* ; l. 273, *hende* : *mynde* ; ll. 2505 and 2921, *behynde* : *schende* ; l. 2743, *wende* (but the author might have written *wynde*) : *fynde* ; l. 10163, *hende* : *behynde* ; l. 487, *schyppe* : *lepe* ; l. 1465, *yre* : *pere* ; l. 5, *herke* : *wyrke* ; l. 417, *gyrte* : *herte* ; l. 11, *sothefastenes* : *angrysche* ; l. 3488, *lesse* : *ys* ; l. 3959, *revyscht* (but the poet may have written *revest*) : *beste*. In such cases we often find *e* written for *y* ; cf. l. 655, *free* : *maystree* ; l. 1972, *flee* : *bollele* ; l. 2367, *compane* : *me* ; l. 4175, *cyte* : *vylene* ; l. 4527, *tree* : *Tyrre* ; l. 7389, *tre* : *vylane* ; l. 7655, *tre* : *sore* ; l. 7735, *the* : *wytterle* ; l. 9693, *the* : *gylte* ; l. 11601, *velene* : *free* (cf. the note to l. 132) ; l. 11067, *men* : *fenne*. Cf. also *serues* : *marches*, l. 5251.

η. E : EY, l. 889, *heyre* : *dere* ; l. 10227, *leyde* : *nede*. But in l. 11049, *ageyne* : *grene* the author may have written *agen*. Cf. also the notes to ll. 9031-2 and 10175.

Θ. Y : EY, l. 5603, *palfrey* : *Payuye* ; l. 8517, *envye* : *seye*. But cf. above, α, ν.

ι. O : OU (ow) monophthongal, l. 201, *wounde* : *stonde* ; l. 217, *adowne* : *soone* ; l. 1353, *stonde* : *grownde* ; 3729, *grounde* : *stonde* ; 8037, *bronde* : *grounde* ; l. 8159, *schooulder* : *sonder* ; l. 8337, *towne* : *gone* ; l. 8343, *Symonde* : *stownde* ; l. 8411, *stone* : *Reynbourn* (i. e. *Reynbrowne*) ; l. 9713, *fownde* : *londe* ; l. 10024, *downe* :

gone ; l. 10259, *gold* : *schoulde*. But such rhymes as l. 2855, *Rayn-downe* : *none* ; l. 3745, *swevon* : *Gyowne* ; l. 8241, *lemmon* : *Mahowne* ; l. 9927, *euerychone* : *relygyown* ; l. 3649, *valowre* : *pore* ; l. 5213, *socowre* : *worre* belong to α , λ and μ .

κ . o : ow diphthongal, l. 8953, *ynowe* : *also* (cf. l. 10860, *ynogh* : *too*).

λ . ey : oy, l. 11223, *yoye* : *they* ; cf. note to l. 2727.

μ . ou monophthongal : French u (?), l. 10075, *thou* : *Jesu*.

But cf. l. 987, *vs* : *Jhesus*.

ν . ow monophthongal : ow diphthongal, l. 9555, *knowe* : *prowe*.

My warmest thanks are due to all my Cambridge friends, especially to Mr Bradshaw, Mr Bensly, Prof. Mayor, and the Rev. S. S. Lewis, for the kindness shown to me while I was copying the MS. ; to Mr Furnivall for his friendly advice and help, and to Mr Miller for reading part of the proofs with the MS.

J. Z.

Berlin, October, 1876.

Guy of Warwick.

[Cambridge University MS, Ff 2. 38.]



Sythe þe tyme, þat god was borne		[leaf 161 a, col. 1]
And Crystendome was set <i>and</i> sworne,		Many old
Mane aventewres hathe befallē,		adventures,
That ȝyt be not knowen alle ;	4	unknown as yet,
Therfore schulde men mekely herke		
And thynke gode allwey to wyrke		
And take ensawmpull be wyse men,		
That haue before thys tyme ben :	8	
Well feyre aventurs befelle them		
(And sythen scheweyd to mony men),		
For þat they leuyd ¹ in sothefastenes,		
In grete trauell and in angwysche.	12	
Of gode menys lyuys men schulde here		are worth
And of þer gode dedys sythen lere :		knowing.
He, that myght lerne <i>and</i> holde faste,		
He schulde wexe wyse at the laste.	16	
Hyt ys holdyn grete maystry		
To holde wysdome and leue folye.		
¶ Of an Erle y wyll yow telle		I will tell of
(Of a better may no man spelle)	20	an Earl
And of hys stewarde bryght of hewe,		and his Steward,
That was bothe gode and trewe,		
And of hys sone, that good squyere,		and how the
Whyll he was hole and fere,	24	Steward's son
And howe he louyd a may ȝynge,		loved
The Erls doghtur, a swete thyngē.		the Earl's
¶ The Erle was of Ynglonde		daughter.
And helde Warwyk in hys honde :	28	The Earl
		owned Warwick,

¹ MS. originally *louyd*. *in* added over the line.
WARWICK. 1

	Ryche he was and of grete myght, Also curtes and a gentyll knyght.	
and was very rich	He was ryche, wythowten otheys, Of golde and syluyr <i>and</i> many clothys,	32
and powerful.	Of stronge castels and cyteys ryche : In all that londe was none hym lyche, Knyght nor swayne, in no wyse, That durste agenste hym ryse,	36
[leaf 161 a, col. 2]	But <i>þat</i> he toke þem, as thefe felon), And caste them in hys pryson. Well he louyd feyre stedys And gaue gyftys <i>and</i> grete medys ;	40
	Therfore all men hym dradde And to hym grete loue hadde. Erle he was of grete poste And lorde ouyr that cuntre :	44
He was also lord of Oxford	Of Oxonford all the blys, Euery daye hyt was hys ;	
and of Bucking- ham.	Of the Erledame of Bokyngham ¹ Lorde he was <i>and</i> bare the name.	48
His name was Roholde.	Syr Roholde, for sothe, he hyght : He was a nobull man <i>and</i> a wyght.	
He had a daughter, who was very beautiful	¶ A doghtur he had be hys cowntes, Ther myght no man telle hur feyrenes. Lysten to me : telle y wyll Of hur bewte ; for that ys skylle. Whyte sche was, as felde flowre ; Hur vysage was of feyre colowre,	52
	Longe, small and well farynge ; Feyre mowthe <i>and</i> nose syttynge, Feyre forhede and feyre here. Soche a mayde was neuer zere,	56
	So feyre schapyn <i>and</i> wele dyght : Ioye hyt was to see that syght.	60
and accomplished.	Wyse sche was <i>and</i> curtes of mowthe,	

¹ MS. *Bokyngham*.

All the vii arse sche cowthe.	64	
Sche had maysturs at hur honde,		
The wysest men of that londe,		
And taght hur astronomye,		
Arsmetryck and gemetrye.	68	
That mayde was of grete prys,		
For sche was bothe warre and wyse.		
¶ Dewkys, erlys of grete kynne		Dukes and earls
Of mony a londe come hur to wynne :	72	wooded her in marriage,
Of them all wolde sche none		but in vain.
For the godenes, that was hur onl.		[leaf 161 b, col. 1]
Wele feyre was that damycell		
Hur name was Felys la Belle. ¹	76	Her name was Felice la Belle,
Of all maydenys sche bare þe ² flowre :		No maiden was like her
That tyme was none of ³ hur honowre.		
Yf men soght all mankynde,		
A feyrer maye schall no man fynde.	80	for beauty.
Who so schulde the fayrenes telle,		
All to longe schulde he dwelle.		
¶ Now of þe stewarde speke we then,		The Earl's Steward
For he was comyn of ryche kynne.	84	
A man he was of grete myght :		
In hys tyme ther was no knyght,		
Of armes, of strenkyth of honde		
That bare soche pryse in all þat londe.	88	
In Wallyngforde he was borne :		owned Wallingford,
All that londe to hym was sworne.		
He was a man of grete poste :		and was a man
Ther was none bettur on þat halfe þe see.	92	of great valour.
He cowde ynogh of nobull seruyse,		
Therefore he was of nobull pryce.		
Ther was noon in all that londe,		No one durst stand against his Lord,
That durste azenste hys lorde stonde,	96	
But he batyd anon hys boste		but was punished by him.
Wyth the strenkyth of hys hooste		

¹ MS. *felysabelle*.² MS. þ^e³ of over the line.

	And toke hym <i>wyth</i> folke ynowe, Yf they into Scotlonde flowe.	100
He enforced	He helde all hys lordys londe Wyth grete honowre vndur hys honde.	
such public oraer	He made pees, as he wolde :	
that a man loaded with gold needed not be afraid of a robber.	Yf a man were chargyd <i>wyth</i> golde, He schulde fynde no robber hym to reeve, That wolde take oght agenste hys leewe.	104
He was called Seqwarde.	¶ Segwarde was the stewardys name, A trewe man, <i>wyth</i> owten fame : A bettur stewartde had no man.	108
He had a son,	That ylke stewartde had a sone,	
[leaf 161 b, col. 2]	A feyrer may no man knowe Nodur of hye nor of lowe.	112
who was courteous and well educated.	Curtes he was and wyse of lore And wel belouyd <i>wyth</i> lesse <i>and</i> more.	
He was Earl Rohold's cup- bearer.	The Erle Roholde he <i>seruyd</i> than : He was desyryd of many a man. The Erle louyd that squyere, Before all odur he louyd hym dere. Of hys cowpe he <i>seruyd</i> hym on a day, In þe knyghtys chaumbur he laye.	116 120
	Goode he was <i>and</i> bryzt of hewe : He wolde not hym chawnge for no newe.	
His name was Guy of Warwick.	Gye he hyght of Warwykk : In all þe londe was non hym lyke. Ther was nodur squyer nor knyzt, But þey hym louyd <i>wyth</i> all þer myzt,	124
Being liberal,	And he þem gafe gyftys <i>wyth</i> hall, So þat he was louyd of all.	128
beautiful, and strong, Guy was loved and honoured by all.	Thorow feyrenes <i>and</i> strenkyþ allone They honowred hym euerychone. Feyre he was <i>and</i> bryght of face : He schone as bryzt, as ane glace. Hys kynne was wondur yoyfull þan, That he waxe so feyre a man.	132

- Hende he was *and* mylde of mode :
 All men speke of hym grete gode. 136
Wyth a swyrde he cowde well pleye
 And pryck a stede in a weye.
 Gye had to maystyr a knyght
 (Syr Harrawde of Ardurne he hyzt), 140
 A nobull knyght *and* an hardye
 Full well he taght aye Gye.
 ¶ At Whytsontyde felle a daye,
 As y yow telle may, 144
 The Erle made a grete feste
 Of lordys of þat londe honeste :
 Knyghtys, erlys and barons
 Come thedur fro many townes ; 148
 Ladyes *and* maydenys free
 Come þedur fro mony a cuntre.
 Knyghtys sate in the halle,
 Ladyes in the chaumbur alle. 152
 When þey were to mete sett,
 Gye came and þe Erle grett.
 The Erle clepyd Gye anon
 (A sylke gowne he had vppon) : 156
 He badde hym go to chaumbur styлле
 And *serue* hys doghtur at hur wylle.
 Wele he besemed that ylke clothe :
 To chaumbur forthe anon he goyth. 160
 Gye on hys kneys sone hym sett |
 And that maydyn feyre he grett.
 ‘Madame,’ he seyde, ‘god the see.
 Thy lorde the gretyth well be me 164
 And comawndyd, y schulde, *par* ma faye,
 Before the *serue* thys same daye.’
 Felys askyd at that case,
 Who that Gyes fadur was. 168
 ‘My fadur,’ he seyde, ‘hyght Seqwarde,
 That ys thy lordys stewarde.’

How to wield
 a sword
 and ride a horse,

Guy learnt from
 Sir Harrawde of
 Ardern.

One Whitsuntide,

at a splendid
 festival,

[leaf 162 a, col. 1]

the Earl

sent Guy

to serve his
 daughter.

Felice asked him

who his father
 was,
 and, on being
 told,

praised Seqwarde and his race.	The mayde seyde : 'Seqwarde ys gode, And so be all, þat be of hys blode.'	172
	¶ Than can þe maydyn vp stande And askyd watur to hur hande. The maydenys wysche wythowten lett	
At table	And to þer mete they ben sett.	176
Guy acquitted himself	Gye entendyd all that daye To serue that lady to hur paye.	
so well	Well hur seruyd yonge syr Gye :	
that thirty maidens	There were maydenys thretty, That for hys seruise in the halle	180
fell in love with him. But he cared	There loue on hym can falle. Therof roght Gye noght :	
only for Felice,	An other loue was in hys thoght.	184
whom he loved above all things. [leaf 162 a, col. 2]	Gye ouyr all louydde Felyce, The Erls doghtur wyth þe feyre vyce.	
Towards evening,	¶ Aftur þe mete (hyt waxyd nere eve)	
having taken leave of her, he went home,	Gye at þe mayde toke hys leue : To hys inne zede Gye,	188
a sorry man,	A carefull man and a sorye.	
Guy was	N owe sorowede Gye nyght <i>and</i> daye, That he ne wyste, what he do may.	192
love-sick.	He ys full of sorowe and care : Full longe ne may he wele fare. Ofte he began to syke and wepe. He wakenyd ofte, when he schulde slepe :	196
	On nyght, when odor men had reste, Then was hys sorowe all preste. When odor lye, þen wyll he stonde : For sorowe þen wryngyþ he hys honde.	200
	Loue hath geuyn hym soche a wounde, That he may not wele stonde.	
He often wished that he never had been born.	Ofte seyde Gye : 'allas, allas,' That euyr he borne was.	204
His illness lasted for a whole fortnight.	Hys sorowe hym lastyd day <i>and</i> nyght All that ylke fowrtnyght.	

Gye ys moche bemoonyd of all		He was pitied
In þe Erlys cowrte <i>and</i> in þe Kyngys halle ;	208	
For he was wonte there to serue		
Before the Erle hys mete to carve.		
All, þat þere were, boþe moost <i>and</i> leeste		and missed by all.
Of Gye they had a grete breste.	212	
¶ When þe feste was broght to ende		After the close
And lordyngys can home wende,		of the festival,
Gye then to cowrte came,		Guy opened
A carefull and a sory man.	216	
Before the mayde felle Gye adowne		his heart to
And seyde : ' for þy loue y muste dye soone.'		Felice.
The mayde lokyd on Gye full grymme		But she
And wele wrothely answeyrd hym :	220	
' Art thou not Seqwardes sone Gye ?		
Who made the so folehardye		called him fool-
For to assaye me of loue ?		hardy,
Be Iesu, that syttyth aboue,	224	[leaf 162 b, col. 1]
And y þys my fadur telle vnto,		threatening him
For þys worde he wyll the sloo,		with her father's
Soone that þou schalt be drawe,		wrath in case she
On galowse hangyd, <i>and</i> þat ys lawe.		should tell him,
On grete folye þou the bethoght,		which she
When þou me of loue besoght.	228	certainly would
Neuer dud man me that vylenye		do
To assaye me of folye.	232	if he did not
Wende hens owt of my syght,		get out of
Or þou schalt dye, my trowþe y plyzt.'		her sight
¶ When Gye these wordys harde,		immediately.
To hys inne soone he farde.		Guy
Now begynnyth hys sorowe newe :	236	went home,
Ther lound neuer man 3yt so trewe.		and his misery]
Nyght <i>and</i> day he ys in sorowe,		began anew.
Late on euyn, 3arly on morowe.	240	
For loue now may he haue no reste :		
Ofte he desyryd, hys hert schulde breste.		

	Into a chaumbur he ys gone :	
	Ther wyste ¹ no man, but he allone.	244
	There he felle in swownyng downe :	
	The chaumbur was hys grete prisowne.	
The Earl, on hearing of his illness,	¶ When þe Erle wyste of þe state of Gye,	
sent him many physicians.	For hym he was sorye :	248
	He sende to hym lechys fele	
	Of hys sekenes hym to hele.	
	Out of þem all wyste þer none,	
	What sekenes was hym vppon.	252
	The leche was wyse <i>and</i> ware	
	And askyd hym of hys fare.	
Guy misled them as to his com- plaint.	Gye answeyrd at that case	
	Not as the sothe was :	256
	‘In my hed comyth a colde blode,	
	That makyþ me to qwake, as y were wode.	
	Aftur comyth a stronge hete,	
[leaf 162 b, col. 2]	That makyth my body for to swete :	260
	All y brenne boone and hyde	
	Also hote, as any glede.	
	Thys ys my lyfe nyght <i>and</i> daye :	
	For payne reste y ne maye.’	264
They were unable to cure him.	The lecheys cowde hym helpe noȝt,	
	To Iesu they haue hym betaght.	
	Gye leuyd stylee there	
	In sorowe <i>and</i> care, as he was eere.	268
One day,	¶ Hyt befelle vppon a daye,	
	Gye to the castell toke þe way.	
	As he romeȝd all abowte,	
looking on the tower in which Felice lived,	He lokyd on a towre <i>wyth</i> owte :	272
	Therynne was þe maydyn hende,	
	That Gye louyd <i>wyth</i> owten mynde.	
	‘Therinne,’ he seyde, ‘ys þat maye,	
	For whom y morne boþe nyȝt <i>and</i> day.’	276
	<i>Wyth</i> þat worde hys body can bowe,	

¹ Qu. *was*

Downe he felle þere in a swowe.

Guy fell

He rent hys cloþe, he drewe hys here,

Ofte he felle in swownyng there.

280 repeatedly into a swoon.

For loue he waxyd almoste wode :

For wo he swett *and* caste blode.

¶ Of swownyng he rose vp than :

He determined

For sorowe he waxe pale *and* wan

284

And seyde: '3yt schall y oonys prove

to try his chance once more,

For to wynne þat maydenys loue.

Sche may do me no more woo,

Then telle hur lorde *and* do me sloo.

288

Then schall me falle grete honour to,

That y for hur to deþe was do.

Yf y therfore schall dye to daye,

happen what would.

Y wyll hur of loue praye.'

292

Sore he wept *and* sore he syght :

To the castell he hym dyght.

¶ As he in the garden wonde,

He found Felice in the garden.

Felyce, þat lady, there he fonde :

296

There sche was almoost allone,

Ther was *wyth* hur maydyns but oon.

[leaf 163 a, col. 1]

When Gye Felyce there sye,

To hur he ranne all in hye.

300

He felle before hur downe on hys kne

And seyde: 'Felyce, haue merce on me.

I am to blame now *wyth* skylle :

He admitted that he was to be blamed for coming against her will.

I am come hedur agenste þy wylle.

304

I may not slepe nyght nor day :

But his sufferings were too great.

So thy loue byndyth me aye.

On nyghtys, when odor men slepe,

Thou makyst me full sore to wepe.

308

When þy lorde wottyth euery dell,

That y loue the so well,

He should like

Therefore he wyll do me slee :

That schall to me grete worschyp be,

312

Yf any man may synge or rede,

to be killed	That y was for þe done to dede, That men may say be many a day,	
for her sake.	That y was slayne for soche a maye.'	316
This said	¶ When Gye had these wordys seyde, To the grownde he hym leyde.	
he fell to the ground,	Sche rewyd then on Gyes payne : When sche sawe hym in swownyng layne,	320
	Sche bad hur maydyn in þat stownde Arere vp Gye fro the grounde.	
but was raised by Felice's attendant.	The maydyn zede to Gye thoo And toke hym in hur armes two.	324
	To Felyce than sche broght Gye. Felyce seyde to hym : ' þou doyst folye.	
Felice rebuked him for his folly.	Who gaue the thys ylke redde, That þou for my loue woldest be dedde?	328
	Soone schalt þou to dethe be doo.' 'God grawnt,' quod Gye, ' þat hyt be soo, That men myzt saye be ony way,	
	That y was slayne for soche a maye.'	332
But her attendant declared,	Then seyde þe maye, þat toke vp Gye, To Felyce, hur ladye :	
if she were an emperor's [leaf 163 a, col. 2] daughter, and Guy the poorest of men,	' Yf my fadur were kyng or knyght, Erle or emperowre of myght,	336
	And he were man poreste And y maydyn feyreste,	
yet she should grant him her love.	And he louyd me so derne, Y myght not hym loue werne.'	340
Felice promised to procure Guy the hand of whatever lady he chose.	¶ Felyce spake to Gye anone : 'For thy loue y wyll now done, Ther ys no maydyn in þys londe Nor no lady, y vndurstonde,	344
	That þou wylt haue to thy wyfe, But þou schalt haue hur, wythowtyn stryfe.'	
But he did not	Gye answeyrd Felyce there : ' Ys hyt no better, þen hyt was eere.	348
care for any other.	Other, then the, kepe y none :	

For the y wyll my lyfe forgoon.'

¶ When Gye had seyde thys reson,

Therwythall he felle downe,

Felyce on Gye began to loke

And in hur armes hym vp toke.

'Gye,' sche seyde, 'be nowe styлле.

Here me, yf hyt be yowre wylle.

Knyghtys *and* erlys y haue forsake,

That wolde me to wyfe take.

And y loued now a yong¹ knaue,

How schulde y my worschyp save?

When *pou* art dubbed a knyght

And proued well in euery fyght,

Then, for sothe, hyght y the,

That *pou* schalt haue *þe* loue of me.'

When thys harde Gyeowne,

For yoye in swownyng¹ he felle adowne.

Felyce spake to hym *wyth* mowthe

And comefortyd hym, as sche well cowthe.

He rose vp fro swownyng

And toke leue at *þe* maydyn 3yng.

Owt of *þe* 3arde he went aryght,

To hys inne he well sone hym dyght.

There he was to *þe* secunde daye,

That hys sekenes went awaye.

¶ When Gye had couyrde hys estate,

To *þe* erlys court he toke *þe* gate.

Well feyre Gye the Erle grett,

Before hym on hys kneys he hym sett.

'Syr,' he seyde, 'y prey the,

That *pou* knyght dubbe me.

Yf *pou* wylt me *þe* ordur yeue,

I wyll the *serue*, whyll *þat*. y leue.'

The Erle grauntyd hym hys boone

And seyde: 'pou schalt be dubbed soone.'

352 Falling down
again,
he was taken up
by Felice.

She declared

356

she could not
grant him her
love

360

before he was
a proved knight.

364

On this Guy
fainted away
with joy.

368

372 He went home,

[leaf 163 b, col. 1]
and two days
after
he was quite
restored to health.

376 Going to the
Earl's court,

he begged the Earl
to dub him a
knight,

380

and the Earl
promised he
would.

384

¹ *take* blotted out before *knaue* in MS.

Guy chose twenty other young men.	¶ Forthe then yede hym Gye And chase to hym squyers twenty. Into a chaumbur þey be goon, There þey schulde be dubbed ychone.	388
They dressed in white kirtles,	Kyrtyls they had oon) of sylke Also whyte, as any mylke. Of gode sylke <i>and</i> of purpull palle	
purple mantles,	Mantels above they caste all.	392
hose (but no shoes),	Hosys þey had vppon), but no schone ; Barefote they were euerychone.	
and garlands.	But garlondys þey had of <i>precyous</i> stones And perlys ryche for the noones. When þey were þus yceledde, To a chaumbur the Erle hym yede. A squyer broght newe brondys :	396
Each held a sword by its point, with spurs hanging on the hilt.	They toke þe poyntys in þer hondys. They hangyd on euery swyrde hylte A peyre of sporys newe gylte.	400
All knelt before the altar till past midnight.	Before þe awter þey knelyd ychone, Vnto mydnyght were all goone. The Erle come anon) ryghtys And <i>wyth</i> hym two odor knyghtys. The Erle seyde : 'lordyngys dere, At thys nede helpe vs here.'	404
[leaf 163 b, col. 2]	The knyghtys, þat were hende, Knelyd to the awters ende. The Erle, that was the thrydde, Began all in the mydde. At the furste to Gye he come, Of the swyrde þe spurres he nome.	408
Spurs were set on Guy's foot ; he knelt,	He set the spurres on hys fote And knelyd before hym, y wote, And <i>wyth</i> the swyrde he hym gyrt	412
and the Earl knighted him.	Ryght abowte at hys herte And smote hym on þe neck a lytull weyzt And bad hym become a good knyzt.	416
		420

There were hys felowes euerychon		The other 20 were
Dubbed knyghtys be oon and oon).		knighted too.
¶ The Erle at morne a feste made :		The ceremony
There were feele lordyngys glade.	424	was followed
When þe knyghtys had etyn		by a festival,
And at þe borde longe setyn,		
Vp they rose euerychone :		after which
To þe chaumbur be þey goone.	428	
Gye hym went anon ryght		Guy presented
To Felyce, that swete wyght.		himself
He seyde : ‘lemman, for thy sake		to Felice.
Knyghtys ordur haue y take :	432	
For þe y am dubbyd knyght.		
Do nowe, as þou me hyght.’		
‘Gye,’ sche seyde, ‘what wylt þou done ?		But she told him
3yt haste þou not wonnen þy schone.	436	
Of a gode knyghtys mystere		
Hyt ys the furste manere		
Wyth some odor gode knyght		he must prove
Odur to juste or to fyght.	440	his valour
Goo and do thy cheualrye		
And þen þou schalt lye me bye :		before she could
Then þou shalt haue þe loue of me		be his.
And at þy wylle my body shall be.’	444	
¶ Gye toke hys leue of þat maye		Guy
And to þe halle he toke þe waye.		
The Erle he fonde in the halle		[leaf 164 ² a, col. 1]
And on hys kneys he can down falle.	448	
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘gyf me leue		got the Earl’s
For to go myselfe to preue.		leave
I wyll fare to odor ¹ londe		to go into foreign
Dedes of armes for to fonde.’	452	countries.
The Erle spake to Gye styll :		
‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘take all þy wylle.’		
Gye toke hys leue þere in þe halle		

¹ *d* blotted out before *odor* in MS.

- And went owt fro þem all. 456
- ¶ He wente to hys ynne warde :
- His father, There was hys fadur Seqwarde.
Well sone he set hym on hys kne
And seyde : ' fadur, lysten to mee, 460
For sothe, fadur, y yow telle,
Noo lengur wyll y here dwelle.
Fadur, yf thy wyll be,
Y wyll wende ouyr the see : 464
I wyll preue, sauns fayle,
Of turnement and batayle.'
- after an unsuccessful attempt
to keep him at
home, ' Sone,' he seyde, ' þou art full 3ynge
For to preue of soche thyng. 468
3yt haste thou no myght
To turnament nor to fyght.
Lenge at home, pur charyte,
Leve soon, y prey the, 472
Tyll þou can more skylle.'
- ' Syr,' he seyde, ' that y do nylle.'
' Sone,' seyde he, ' sythe þou wylt soo,
Thou schalt not allone goo. 476
Of my tresure take thy fylle ;
For hyt ys þyn all at þy wyll.'
- gave him plenty
of money,
and three knights,
Harrawde,
Toralde, and
Urry,
as companions. He gaue hym tresure gret plente
And betoke hym knyghtys three, 480
Harrawde, Toralde and Vrrye,
And betoke þem hys sone Gye,
That they schulde hym kepe wyth þer myght ;
For þey were bothe hardy and wyght. 484
- [leaf 164 a, col. 2]
With them he soon
left England. ¶ Gye toke hys fadurs beneson
And went forthe of the towne.
They harde of a gode schyppe :
All iiij theryn they lepe. 488
They drewe sayle, þe wynde was gode,
Thay yede into the salte flode.
They sayled forthe wythowten ore :

The syght of Ynglonde loste þey þore.	492	
N opyng sawe þey þem abowte, But salte <i>watur and waweys</i> stowte.		
Forthe þey went be day lyght, Tyll hyt drewe to the nyght.	496	
Londe they sye at the laste : Thedurwarde þey drewe faste.		
They came to londe <i>wyth grete hye</i> And ryden into Normandy.	500	They arrived
To a cyte they come <i>wyth lyght</i> , There they schulde be all nyght At a burges hows of the towne, That was a man of grete renown.		at a town in Normandy.
As they at the soper sete (Some dranke and some ete), Gye cowde speke of many a þynge And axyd the gode man tythynges, Yf he harde anythynges Of turnament or of justynges.	504	
¶ '3ys, for sothe,' seyde þe gode man, 'Of a turnament telle y can.		
Of Almayn the Emperowre Hath a doghtur of gret valowre, That hath a turnament let crye, The moste, þat euer man sye.	508	Guy, questioning his host about news,
Ther ys no knyght in þat cuntre, That ys of grete degree, That of armes anythynges can, But he schall be there than.	512	heard that there was to be a tournament
Ne schall be knyzt in all Spayne, From hens to þe see of Bretayne, That had louyd any maye 3ynge, But he schall be at that justynges		in honour of the German Emperor's daughter.
For to do hys proves And to schewe hys hardynes. Thedur schall come knyztys of many londys	516	
	520	
	524	[leaf 164 b, col. 1]

	Wyth grete pryde <i>and</i> spere in þer hondys.	528
	Othyr thyng y schall the telle, That y haue herde spelle.	
The winner of the tournament was to have	He, that ys of grete valowre, Wynne he may grete honowre.	532
	That mayde, that y speke of here, Sche ys the Emperowres doghtere. That turnement sche schall see :	
	Who may hur wynne, wele schall he be.	536
a white falcon,	A gerfawcon whyte, as mylke (In all þys worlde ys non swylk),	
3 snowwhite steeds,	And thre feyre stedys grete <i>and</i> hye (Feyrer sye neuyr man wyth eye :	540
	All be as whyte, as any snowe : Feyrer may no man knowe) ;	
2 fair greyhounds,	Two feyre greyhowndys, þat be lyght (Bettur had neuer kyng nor knyght)—	544
	He, þat hath þe gre of turnament, All thys þyng schall be hym sent	
and the Emperor's daughter's love.	And þe loue of þat feyre wyght, But he haue a lemman bryght.'	548
Guy determined	¶ When he harde thys tythyng, He was gladde, wythowt lesyng, And seyde to hys companye :	
to be present at it,	'Make we vs gladde and yolye. Wyth goddys grace, when hyt ys day, We wyll wende on owre way.'	552
and presented his host with a palfrey for his news.	He gafe hys oost a gode palfrey For hys wordys, þat he dud say.	556
Next morning Guy went	¶ Gye rose in the mornynge And went forthe, wythowt lesyng, And hys odur men ychone, Knyghtys, squyers, oon and oon, That were bolde men in fyght	560
to the place of the tournament. [leaf 164 b, col. 2]	To defende them and wyght, Tyll þey were come to justyng	

- Amonge þe knyghtys in þat mornynge. 564
- ¶ Now ys Gye come to game,
There fele knyghtys be gedurd same.
Owt of the lystys rode a knyght,
That was feyre, gent *and* wyght. 568
Gye askyd oon, þat by hym stode,
What was þat knyzt, þat owte þere rode,
And he answeryd *syr* Gye than :
'I schall the telle, as y canl.
3ondyr ys Gayere, an harde swayn),
The emperowre sone of Almayn),
That ys redy for to play,
Yf any knyght come hym to say.' 572
¶ When Gye sye hyt was Gayere,
Armed he rode hym nere.
Owt of þe lyste he can sone ryde
In the place to abyde. 580
Be þat þe knyghtys came same.
Now begynneth a newe game :
Gayer smote Gye in the felde
Wyth hys spere thorow þe schelde, 584
That hys spere brake in two :
Gyes hawberk dud not soo.
Gye smot Gayer wyth myght,
To þe erthe he feele downe ryght. 588
Gayers hors he lepe vpon
And let hys owne away goon).
Tho began Gye to play :
He fellyd all, þat stode in hys way. 592
He dud well, wythowten fayle :
He toke knyghtys in þat batayle ;
He brake so many sperys asonder,
That eche man of hym had wonder. 596
Was noon so strong a knyzt, þat he smote,
But þat he fell downe to hys fote.
¶ The felle dewke Oton) of Payuye
WARWICK. 2
overthrows
Oton,

A knight rides
out.

Guy

finds he is
Gayere,
the Emperor's
son,

charges him,

and throws him.

Guy fells all who
stand in his way,

- duke of Pavia, To Gye had grete envye. 600
Wyth pryde he wolde juste *wyth* Gye :
 [leaf 165 a, col. 1] The worse parte come hym bye.
 Gye smote hym þorow þe schouldur bone :
 The dewke felle of hys hors anon. 604
 and duke ¶ There come prykyng dewke Raynere,
 Raynere, A bolde knyght *wythowten* feere,
 Pressyng on a stede faste :
 Of Gye was he not agaste. 608
 'Traytur,' he seyde, 'þou schalt abyde :
 Why smote þou Oton of Payue ?
 In euyll tyme þou dedyst hym wronge.
 He ys my neme, y schall the honge. 612
 Here y am, the dewke Raynere :
 I wyll my neeme awreke here.'
 'I wyll,' seyde Gye, 'so mote y the,
 Furste turne ageyn *and* juste *wyth* the.' 616
 Gye turned hym *and* smote faste :
 Boþe þer sperys¹ all tobraste.
 Gye smot Rayner on the schelde,
 That hyt flewe into the felde, 620
 And smote hym downe of hys stede.
 To hys hors sone he yede :
 whose horse he 'Syr dewke, haue here ageyn þy stede.
 returns to him. When þou seyst tyme, qwyte me my mede.' 624
 And sythen he qwyte hym full well ;
 For he was a knyght gentyll.
 The dewke vp start all in hye
 And ranne to Gye smertlye. 628
 Syr knyght, telle me beforne :
 What ys þy name ? where were þou borne ?'
 'Gye of Warwyk, for sothe, y hyght :
 In Ynglonde was y borne aryght.' 632
 ¶ Tho came the dewke Louayne,²
 Wyth Gye he wolde juste fayne.

¹ *e* in *sperys* effaced.² MS. *loyane*.

- Wyth a scharpe growndyn¹ spere
 He rode to Gye faste there. 636
 Gye turned ageyn *and* of hym had wondur,
 But sone þer sperys brake in sondur.
 Faste þey drewe ther bryght brondys
 And faght togedur *wyth* boþe þer hondys. 640 [leaf 165 a, col. 2]
 ¶ Tho come prekyng Harrawt
 And to dewke Myrande he made asawte.
 Of hys hors he hym caste :
 Hys strenkyþ myght no lenger laste ; 644
 And sythen he smot Waldynere :
 To þe grownde he fellyd hym there.
 He bare hym well, as knyght hardy :
 So dud Toralde and Vrry. 648 Toralde and Urry
 ¶ Nowe ys þe turnament well stronge : distinguished
 Wyth grete strokys euer amonge themselves also.
 Many sperys brake in twoo At that
 And many to the erthe can goo. 652 tournament
 No clerke can on boke rede much valour
 To telle þe doghtynes of þer dede, was shown,
 But all the men *wyth* hartys free but by none more
 Haue geuyn Gye the maystree. 656 than Guy.
 Gye had the pryce and no nodur
 That day *and* ylke the todur.
 ¶ When hyt come to the pryddde day, On the third day
 That all knyghtys went away, 660
 Then came the dewke Raynere,
 An hardy knyght and a stere,²
 And seyde : ‘herkyn eche man to me
 And, yf y amys seye, amende me. 664
 Geve me the stedys *and* the fawcon
 And þe greyhowndys : *wyth* gret reson
 He schall þem haue, þat þem wanne,
 Of Warwykk Gye, þat doghty man. 668 Guy was declared
 He, that seyth, hyt ys any odur,

¹ First *n* in *growndyn* effaced.² *ferē*?

	I wyll hyt preue, þogh he were my brodur.'	
by all	And all þey seyde <i>wyth</i> oon assente :	
	'We graunt wele to yowre yugement.'	672
	Thorow þe place þey dud crye	
to have won the prize.	To 3ylde that present to syr Gye.	
	¶ Now ys departyd that turnement,	
	And Gye ys to hys ynne went.	676
[leaf 165 b, col. 1]	He dud of hys armowre :	
	He was full very in þat stowre.	
A squire	Than came a squyer prekyng	
	Hende <i>and</i> wyse and wele spekyng.	680
	To Gyes chaumbur he ys gone	
	And gret hym wele feyre anone.	
	'God þe save,' he seyde, 'syr Gye,	
	Of all þe worlde þe moost worthy.	684
	Thou haste þe pryce of þys turnament :	
brought it to Guy's lodgings.	Thys present ys to the sente	
	On þe maydenys halfe Blanchflowre,	
	Kyngys doghtur and emperowre,	688
	And þe loue of þat maydyn 3yng,	
	So þou haue no nodur darlyng.'	
Guy	¶ Gye answerde at that tyme :	
	'Haue þou goddys thanke <i>and</i> myne.	692
	I wyll hyt resseyue <i>wyth</i> wyll gode	
	And hur loue <i>wyth</i> well gladder ¹ mode :	
	I wyll hur serve <i>wyth</i> all my myght	
	Euyr, as hur owne trewe knyght.	696
	Felowe,' seyde Gye, 'herkyn to me :	
	Knyght wyll y dubbe the, ²	
offered presents to the squire and his companions,	The, <i>and</i> thy seruawntys thre	
	Schall haue ryche gyftys of me,	700
	For ye wolde do thys message :	
	Y schall qwyte yow wele yowre wage.'	
but they declined them.	Than þey seyde all togedur :	
	'Therefore came we not hedur;	704

¹ *gladde?*² *mee* before *the* blotted out in MS.

- But god the 3ylde, þat beste may.
 We wyll not dwelle, haue gode day
 We wyll telle Blancheflowre
 Of thy gyftus *and* thyn honowre.' 708
 ¶ The messengere home ys went
 And lefte there styлле þat present.
 Two *seruauntys* Gye can calle
 And bad þem hye swythe all 712
 And take þat present so hende
 Into Ynglonde for to wende.
 To þe erle Roholde they schall fare
 And delyuyr to hym þat present þare 716
 And sey, þat Gye hym þat hath sente.
 When þey harde hys comawndement,
 Wythowtyn more forthe they rode,
 Tyll þey were passyd þe see brode. 720
 When þey came to Ynglonde,
 At Warwyk þe erle þey fonde
 And gaue hym þere þat present
 And seyde, þat Gye hyt had hym sent, 724
 The gerfawcon *and* þe stedys thre
 And the greyhowndys feyre *and* free :
 As Gye þem wanne, þere þey tolde
 And how he was boþe wyght *and* bolde 728
 And how Blancheflowre, þat swete þyng,
 Let crye *and* make a grete justynge,
 That sche myght see in the felde,
 Who cowde beste welde spere *and* schylde 732
 And whych was the feyrest knyght
 And in batell beste cowde fyght :
 He schulde haue thys present
 And þe loue of þat maydyn gente. 736
 When þe erle harde þys tythyng,
 He was gladde, wythowt lesynge,¹
 That Gye was of so grete prys

Guy sent his
prize

[leaf 165 b, col. 2]

to Earl Roholde,

the jersfalcon,
three steeds, and
greyhounds.

The Earl

¹ The first *e* in *lesynge* is not quite clear.

	And so ware a man <i>and</i> wys.	740
and Guy's parents were very glad of the news of Guy's success.	Hys fadur <i>and</i> hys modur for hys sake Grete yoye dud they make.	
After Guy had made himself conspicuous in many countries,	¶ Nowe wendyth Gye to justynge For to wynne hym preysynge.	744
	In Almayn and in Lumbardy, Yn Frawnce and in Normandye— Ther was no justyng in þat londe, But Gye had the bettur honde.	748
[leaf 166 a, col. 1]	Nowe ys he come <i>wyth</i> gret honowre To Rome to hys harbenyowre.	
Harrawde advised him	Now spake Harawde, that knyght, Gyes maystyr day and nyght: 'Now wyll we wende to owre contre. We may wele, so mote y the.	752
to return home.	Into Ynglonde wyll we fare And gete vs loue of kyng Edgare And of all the baronage, That be men of grete parage.' 'Syr,' he seyde, 'y grawnt wele, That ye sey, euery dele.	756
Guy resolved to set off the next morning.	We wyll to morowe, when hyt ys day, Hye vs faste on owre way.' ¶ A gode schypp there þey fonde And sayled ouer boþe wawe <i>and</i> sonde.	760
In England	Now be þey come to Ynglonde: The kyng þere sone they fonde.	764
the King was glad of his coming,	The kyng of hym was full gladde And all þe men, that he hadde. Sythen to Warwyk can þey goon:	768
so was Earl Roholde	The erle Roholde they fonde anon, That of hym was full blythe And thankyd god fele sythe.	772
and Guy's father and mother.	Golde <i>and</i> syluyr he wolde hym take, A ryche man he wolde hym make. Hys fadur <i>and</i> modur for hys sake	

- Grete yoye can they make. 776
¶ Nowe ys Gye to Felyce went,
On whome all hys loue was lent.
He gret hur on hys manere
And seyde: 'god loke þe, my lemman) dere. 780
I haue for the turned my redde:
Yf þou were not, y were but dedde.
Ordyr of knyght þou dud me take,
And passyd the see for thy sake. 784
Then þou seyde to me wele ryght,
When y were a doghty knyght
And went far into straunge londe
Dedes of armes for to fonde, 788
Then schulde y haue þe loue of the:
Therof well gladde wyll y bee.
Now am y come to wytt thy wylle,
What þou wylt seye lowde or styllle.' 792
¶ Felyce seyde full wysely:
'Haue therof no haste, *syr* Gye.
3yt art þou not of soche poste,
But ther be bettur in thys contre. 796
Thou art well stronge *and* wyght,
Bolde also in every fyght:
Yf y the graunt ouyr all thyng
My loue *and* to be thy derlynge, 800
Thou woldest be so yelowse
And of me so amerowse,
That þou woldest not þy narmes take:
Then wolde þy lose moche slake. 804
That were a grete schame for the
To lose þy pryce for þe loue of me.
All my þoght y wyll the schowe,¹
For y wyll, that þou hyt knowe. 808
My love y wyll not the hyght,
Or thou be the boldyst knyght,

Guy went to see
Felice,

and reminded
her of

[leaf 166 a, col. 2]

her promise.

But Felice
assured him

that she would not
become his wife

till he was
thought

- That may be fownde in any londe
 Of doghtynes *and* strenkyth of honde, 812
 Of euery justyng and stronge stowre
 Of all the worlde to bere the flowre ;
 And, when *pou* haste borne *þe* so euyñ,
 That *þer* ys no bettur vndur hevyn), 816
 All my loue thou schalt haue
 And *þeraftur* no lenger crave :
 All the whyle y am on lyue,
 Wyll y be thy weddyd wyue.' 820
- ¶ When Gye harde Felyce speke,
 Hym *þoght*, hys hert wolde breke.
 'Now wot y wele, *pou* seydynt not ryght,
 When *pou* me furste of loue behyght. 824
- He despaired of
 [leaf 166 b, col. 1]
 ever fulfilling
 Felice's condition.
 Nevertheless he
 determined
 to go abroad
 again.
- The beste schall y neuyr bee,
 That ys in all crystyante.
 I schall wende to far londe,
 More of justyng wyll y fonde. 828
 From the dethe y schall not flee :
 If y dye, hyt ys for thee.'
 ¶ All wepeyng he went away
 And toke hys leue at *þat* may. 832
 He ys went to hys oostell,¹
 There wyll he no lenger dwelle :
- He communicated
 his purpose
 to Earl Roholde.
- To the erle he toke hys way.
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'haue gode day. 836
 I wyll wende on the stronde
 Ferr into a nodur londe.
 I wyll put me forþe, as y can,
 To be knowen a doghty man) 840
 And be preysed for my prowre,
 And y wyste, what wey *and* howe.
 And ye haue men² of gret valowre,
 Moche hyt ys for yowre honowre : 844
 Ye schulde be holde the more dere

¹ MS. *conncell*.² MS. *me*.

In euery londe bothe ferre <i>and</i> nere. ¹	
¶ Than he spake, the erle Rohawt :	
‘Syr Gye, haste þou any defawte	848
Of golde, of syluyr or ¹ of ryche clothe ?	
Or any man haþ made þe wrothe ?	
Syr Gye, leue þat fowle wylle	
And leue at home here <i>wyth</i> me styлле.	852
Thou schalt haue, what þou wylt craue :	
Hawkes, howndys, what þou wylt haue.	
<i>Wyth</i> howndys we wyll chace dere	
And <i>wyth</i> hawkes to the ryuere.	856
To dwelle at home ys my cownceyle : ²	
That may the gretly auayle.	
In tyme þen may þou passe þe see,	
Afturwarde, when bettur may bee.’	860
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘at thys tyde	
For nothyng wyll y here abyde.	
God yow ȝylde, haue gode day.’	
He toke hys leue <i>and</i> went away.	864
¶ To hys fadur he went full ȝare.	
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y wyll fare	
To the londe, there y was ere,	
A whyle for to dwelle there	868
For to wynne me loueyng	
Bothe of emperowre and of kynge.	
He, that may do gode dede,	
He schulde hym force in yowthehede,	872
So þat he may, when he ys oolde,	
For a doghty man be tolde.	
The whyle y am a yonge man,	
I wyll travell, as y can),	876
That men may holde me doghty in elde,	
When y may not myselfe welde.’	
¶ ‘Swete sone, let be thy fare :	
Thou makest me to haue sorowe <i>and</i> care.	880

Earl Robolde
tried to dissuade
Guy from going
abroad,

but without
success.

[leaf 166 b, col. 2]

No more
successful

were Guy's father

¹ *or* added over the line.

² MS. *cowncell*.

	Whereto schulde þou passe the see ? Hyt ys bettur at home to bee.'	
and mother.	Then spake hys modur dere : 'Leef soone, dwelle thou here.	884
	Do aftur thy fadurs redde : Hyt wyll the helpe from the dedde. All thys yere thou wyth vs bee And afturward þou passe the see.	888
	Thou wottyst, we haue no nodur heyre, But thou, my swete sone dere. Yf þou were deed thore, Heyre schulde we haue no more.	892
	Who schulde þen aftur owre day Haue owre londys, yf þou ne may ?' 'Fadur,' he seyde, 'god the kepe,' And therwyth he can wepe ;	896
	'And my modur dere alsoo : Haue gode day, for y wyll goo.'	
Guy,	¶ Now ys Gye goon fro hys kynne, God hym sende ageyne wyth wynne. To the see he ys goon,	900
after crossing the sea, achieved many valiant exploits in Normandy,	A gode schyppe there he nome. He passyd the see in hye, Comen he ys to Normandy.	904
[leaf 167 a, col. 1]	Thorowe the londe vturly He dud grete cheualry.	
Brittany,	Forthe he went to Bretayne.	
Spain,	There were justyngys in Spayne, That he went to turnaye, Whyll he was there, euery day. Now wendyth he fro Spayne,	908
Germany,	Comen he ys to Almayne.	912
and Lombardy.	Fro þens he went to Lumbardye, There was grete cheualrye.	
For his strength	Thorow hys strenkyth þere he wanne Grete looueyng of many a man.	916

He was large of spendyng :

They honowred hym, as a kynge.

As he come fro a turnement,
That was besyde Bonement,

920

and liberality
he was much
praised and
honoured.
At a tournament
near Benevento,

He was greuyd swythe sore

Of a wounde, þat he had thore.

Guy was
wounded.

Then bethoght hym the dewke Oton),

Duke Otoun,

A grete traytur and a felon),

924

He louyd *syr* Gye nothyng :

who hated him,

He sye hym woundyd at þat justyng.

When Oton the sothe harde,

hearing this,

That *syr* Gye not wele farde,

928

He clepyd to hym erle Lambart,

ordered Earl
Lambard

A herde knyght *and* of gode harte,

And *wyth* hym knyghtys fyftene,

and other knights

All bolde men and keene.

932

To the pase he bad them ryde,

to lie in ambush
for him,

There *syr* Gye schulde wende besyde.

'Lordyngys,' seyde the dewke Oton),

'Herkynd all to my reson).

936

3e be my men to me plyght,

Ye be holdyn to do my ryght,

And to do my comawndement,

In what stede ye be sente.

940

Goyth belyue and venge mee

Of Gye and hys felows three,

That ys enturd into my londe :

He wyll me brynge warre on honde.

944

He ys woundyd swythe sore,

Loke, that he dedde wore.

[leaf 167 a, col. 2]

Ye schall be sworne on bokeys gode,

That ye schall wende to the wode

948

And kepe that pase ferre *and* nere,

That he passe not on no manere.

Ye schall brynge hys owne corse

And sloo hys men all *wyth* force.

952 kill his followers,

and seize Guy himself.	I schall hym caste in my pryson): For hym schall go no rawnsome. Wyth paynes stronge he schall be dedde : Ther schall be no nodur redde.'	956
	¶ 'Syr,' they seyde, 'wyth gode wylle Yowre comawndement we schall fulfylle.' Then þey armed them, wele Bothe in yron and in steele.	960
	To the pase they conne ryde And hyt besett on euery syde. Gye ne wyste of that skathe, That schulde come to hym so rathe.	964
Guy came riding on a mule.	¶ Now Gye came faste rydyng On a mewle wele awmbelynge.	
He suffered much from his wound.	He had gret angwysche of hys wounde : Allas, þat he was not hole and sownde. To passe þe watur he went full rathe, But furste he had grete skathe.	968
He heard horses neighing, and saw helmets shining. Suspecting some treachery,	Then he harde horsys neye, Helves he sawe bryght on hye. 'Harrawde,' he seyde, 'here ys treson. We be all dedde, be my crowne.'	972
he exchanged his mule for a steed, armed himself,	Of the mewle he downe starte And toke hys stede wyth gode herte. All hys harnes he toke well ryght And arrayed hym, as a doghty ¹ knyght,	976
and told his companions to fight valiantly.	And seyde to hys felows all : 'Fyght faste, or we downe falle. Euery man, that ys of myght, Dyght hys body for to fyght. And, yf y may, so mote y the, He schall forþynk, þat comyth to me.'	980
Harrawde conjured Guy [leaf 167 b, col. 1] to save himself by leaving them,	¶ Then seyde Harrawde, þat gode knyght : 'Wende hens : ye may not fyght. He schall forþynk, þat comyth to vs,	984

¹ MS. *a doghty a.*

- I swere be swete Ihesus ; 988
 For we schall kepe thys passage,
 Thogh we be take *wyth* gret owtrage.
 Bettur hyt ys, þat we dyed all,
 Than ye amonge vs schulde mysfalle.' 992
 Gye answeyrd anon ryght, but in vain.
 As a bolde man and a wyght :
 'And all ye dyed, yf hyt so bee,
 For all þys worlde wolde y not flee.' 996
 ¶ Wyth that starte vp a Lumbarde : A Lombard,
 I wott, he was a cowarde. who called
 'Gye,' he seyde, 'ȝylde the to me : upon Guy to
 Be my hedde, hyt schall so bee. 1000 surrender,
 I haue sworne to dewke Oton
 To brynge the to hys pryson,
 Or thou the water passed wore.'
 Gye hym hytt and smote sore 1004 was instantly
 Thorowe the body wyth the spere, killed by him,
 That hys fete myght not hym bere.
 Another he mett all in hye and so was
 And he hym smote, wytturly. 1008 another.
 The hedde *wythowte* lettynge
 Flewe of wyth that strykyng.
 ¶ Forthe then came *syr* Harrawt,
 To the thrydde he made asawte. 1012 Three of the rest
 He smote hym þorow *wyth* hys bronde : lost their lives
 The herte blode ranne on honde. through the
 Then come prekyng *syr* Toralde, valour of his
 An hardy knyght and a bolde. 1016 companions.
 A Lumbarde there he mett,
 That the wey hym had besett,
 Or he ouyr the watur went.
 A grete stroke he had hym lente, 1020
 That the crowne wyth the heuydde,¹
 Vppon the sonde þere was leuydde.

¹ MS. *hedde*.

	Forthe then come syr Vrry :	
	Ther was fewe there so hardy.	1024
	Slayne he hath a doghty knyght,	
	For he wolde mayntene vnryght.	
[leaf 167 b, col. 2] There was a fierce fight.	¶ Nowe begynneth newe batayle :	
	Echon odur faste can assayle	1028
	Wyth grete strokys vpon scheldys,	
	That þe pecys flewe in the feldys.	
	Of the helmes feyre and bryght	
	There was a rewoffull syght.	1032
Earl Lambard	Forthe came the erle Lambarde,	
	An hardy knyght and an harde.	
killed Urry,	Vrry the gode he hath slone	
	And let hym lye and forthe ys gone.	1036
	When Harrawde sawe þat ylke dede,	
	He ranne to Lambarde a gode spede.	
but was himself slain by Harrawde.	He smote hym þorow wyth hys spere :	
	Vrryes dethe he venged there.	1040
Hewchoun	Then came forthe Hewchon,	
	That was cosyn to dewke Oton.	
	He was an hardy knyght	
	And in euery place stronge <i>and</i> wyght,	1044
slaw Toralde,	Toralde now hath he slayne,	
who was likewise revenged by Harrawde.	Therof was not Harrawde fayne.	
	He sawe Toralde falle to grownde :	
	He þoght to venge hym in a stownde.	1048
	Hym to venge he þoght wele hate : ¹	
	Hewchon on þe crowne he smate.	
	To the gyrdull stede hyt wode,	
	That dud Harrawde moche gode.	1052
Gayere	When syr Gayer sawe that dede,	
	That was an hardy knyght at nede,	
	Harrawde he mett <i>and</i> hym dud smyte	
wounded Harrawde, so that he fell on the ground,	Wyth a swerde, þat wolde wele byte,	1056
	Thorow þe body in a stownde,	

¹ MS. *late*.

- That *syr* Harrawde felle to grownde.
 When Gye sawe them dedde all,
 From hys stede he had nere falle. 1060
 For sorowe he waxe nere wode :
 He was so wrothe in hys mode.
 Gye smote oon of Lumbardye,
 He rose no more, wytturlye : 1064
 He clafe hys body in twoo :
 The ton^d syde from þe todur can goo. [leaf 168 a, col. 1]
 ¶ Gye ys now euyl befalle :
 Lorne he hath hys felows all. 1068
 He can syke and sore grone :
 He wyste not, to whom to make hys moone.
 All were slayne of þem, but two,
 And they abowte *syr* Gye can goo. 1072
 Gye smote oon of tho
 Hys rygge bone euyn in twoo.
 Tho start forthe Segwarde,
 A full felle Lumbarde. 1076
 ‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘3ylde the ;
 For hyt so full wele may bee.
 I see, þou mayst no lenger stonde
 For to fyght wyth thyn honde. 1080
 I see now thy gode schelde :
 The peys lye in the felde,
 Thy helme on that odur syde.
 Blody be þy wowndys wyde. 1084
 I may see well be thy chere,
 Fyght mayste thou no lengere.
 I schall þe brynge to dewke Oton^d :
 He schall þe caste in hys pryson.’ 1088
 ¶ ‘Nay,’ seyde Gye, ‘so mote y thryue,
 Neuer, whyll y am on lyue.
 Ne schall y wyth the dewke carpe,
 The while y haue spere so scharpe 1092
 And whyll y haue so moche force

apparently
lifeless.
When Guy saw
his companions
dead,

he became nearly
mad.

Guy had lost all
his men,

but the Lombards
were also killed,

all except one,
named Segwarde,

who summoned
Guy to surrender,

his wounds not
allowing him

to fight any more.

But Guy said

	In my hondys and my corse.	
he would never yield as long as he could defend himself.	The whyle y may defende me, Schall y neuyr 3ylde me to the.'	1096
After a violent combat,	¶ Segwarde smote then Gye, As knyght bolde and hardye. On the helme he smote <i>syr</i> Gye : In fowre pecys hyt went, wytturly.	1100
	Wyth the grace of heuyn kynge Hymselfe had no hurtynge. When Gye hym felyd smeten sore, To 3ylde hyt hym he was yore.	1104
	He start to hym wyth gret force And hyt hym egurly on the corce.	
[leaf 168 a, col. 2]	The schoulder fro the body well He smote of euery dell.	1108
	Segwarde fledde faste away From <i>syr</i> Gye wyth grete derey. Gye hym sone turned ageyne To hys felows, þat were slayne.	1112
Segwarde fled to Pavia, dangerous- ly wounded,	Segwarde prekyth to Payuye All wowndyd and bloody.	
Duke Otoun, coming back from hunting,	¶ As the dewke came from huntynge And odur men oolde and 3ynge,	1116
saw Segwarde	He sawe a knyght rydyng : Hys ryght arme was mysfarynge. The dewke stode styll and hym bepoght To here, what tydyngys he had broght :	1120
approaching,	'Hyt semeth well a woundyd man.'	
and asked	Segwarde hym hyed faste than. 'Sey,' quod the dewke, 'art þou wrathe ? Who hath done the that skathe ?	1124
if Guy was taken and his men slain.	Where ys Gye ? ys he tane ? And hys men, be they slane ?' ¹	
Segwarde told him all about it.	¶ Segwarde seyde : 'y wyll the say Also moche of Gye, as y may.	1128

¹ MS. *slayne*.

- At the ryver we hym mett
 And we hym all abowte sett.
 We slewe all of hys men,
 But hymselfe skapyd then. 1132
 My felows be slayne to grownde
 And y myselfe bere dedly wounde.
 'Where ys he, syr Hewchon?'
 'Dedde,' seyde Segwarde, 'be my crowne.' 1136
 'And the erle Lambarde the goode?'
 'I lefte hym sprawlyng in hys blode.'
 When þe dewke harde hym so sey,
 'Allas,' he seyde, 'and wele away 1140
 For my men, that be spylte:
 All hyt ys my nowne gylte.'
 ¶ Now ys Gye comen there, Guy
 As hys men slayne were. 1144
 'Allas,' seyde Gye, 'þat y was borre,
 My gode men þat þus be lorne.'
 In the stedd, þere Gye stode,
 He sawe the bodyes¹ lye in blode. 1148
 When he sawe þe bodyes colde
 Of þe knyghtys, þat were so bolde,
 'Allas,' he seyde, 'and wele away,
 That euer y wakenyd on þys day. 1152
 Jesu Cryste, what ys my redde?
 For my loue þese men be dedde.
 Sory wordys were me lente,
 To serue Felyce when y was sente. 1156
 Felyce,' he seyde, 'for thy sake
 To vs ys comen moche wrake,
 And all for the loue of the
 Dedde be here knyghtys thre. 1160
 They were þe beste in euery londe,
 That myght bere² spere on honde.

The Duke was
very sorry.

deeply lamented
the loss of his
fellows,

[leaf 168 b, col. 1]

who died for
Felice's sake.

¹ Something blotted out before *bodyes* in MS.

² *s* blotted out before *bere* in MS.

- Me þynkyth,' he seyde, 'y am a fole,
When y to a woman make soche dole. 1164
- But he was neither
the first man nor
the last that came
to harm through
a woman.
I am not þe furste nodur þe laste,
That þorowe a woman downe ys caste ;
Nothur be two, nothur be three,
All wyse men be ware be me. 1168
Here haue y loste Harrowde, a nobull knyzt,
That was bolde bothe day *and* nyght.
Who schall me helpe, when y haue drede ?
Thou were redy in all my nede. 1172
I may not on no manere
Parte fro the, thou art my fere.
He wished he
were dead also.
Y wolde, y were dedde *and* leyde on beere :
Allas,' he seyde, 'þat hyt so were ! 1176
Hangyd be the Lumbardes,
That be so fowle cowardes,
That y ne were wyth the slone !
Why haue þey lefte me allone ? 1180
¶ A,' he seyde, 'erle Rohawte,
Of thy cowncell y haue defawte.
He repented of
not having fol-
lowed the advice
of Earl Roholde
Had y rēstyð a whyle wyth the
And aftur that passyd the see, 1184
Soche sorowe vndur a wode syde
[leaf 168 b, col. 2]
For noþyng schulde haue me betyde.
and of his
parents,
He, þat wyll not hys fadur here
Nodur þe cowncell of hys modur dere, 1188
Hyт schall hym nothyng avayle.
I haue hyt preuyd, wythowten fayle,
For þe sorowe and for the care
Of my felows, þat now dedde are, 1192
And for my wounde, þat ys so wyde,
Well depe on euery syde.'
Guy fainted away
for woe.
¶ To þe erthe he felle downe
And smete in a grete swowne. 1196
When he rose of swownynge,
He began hys hondys to wrynge.

- Of hys felows, þat were dedde,
 Then cowde he no nodur redde, 1200 Then he went
 But toke hys hors sone anon
 And to an hermytage he can goon. to a hermit's
 'Ermyte,' he seyde, 'come wyth me cell,
 (Thys horse of pryce y geue the) 1204
 And take vp bodyes tweyne,
 That in þe wode lye slayne,
 And bery þem wyth moche honowre ;
 For þey were of grete valowre.' 1208
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'y come ryght nowe.
 Go before, y wyll sewe yow.'
 Gye hath hym þe bodyes tane
 Of Toralde and of Vrry than. 1212 Toralde and Urry.
 Sythen he ys lopen on hys stede :
 He wyth hym Harrawde dud lede.
 ¶ Gye wendyþ now from þat place, He came
 There he had a febull grace. 1216
 The body of Harrawde wyth hym he bare
 And lefte the odor corsys thare.
 He went to an abbey, to an abbey
 That was a lytull besyde þe wey. 1220
 The abbot sone he fonde there
 And spake to hym on hys manere :
 'God, þat dyed on a tree,
 Sur,' he seyde, 'saue the. 1224
 I the bydde pur charyte
 In the name of the trynyte,
 That þou take thys body here
 And bery hyt on all manere. 1228
 He was to day a doghty knyght
 And ryght now was slayne in fyght.
 God wyll ȝylde the thy mede
 And y schall, when y may spede.' 1232
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'wyth full gode chere
 Schall y bery thys body here. which he was
 quite willing to
 do.

	Syr,' he seyde, 'what ys þy name?	
	Telle þou me <i>and</i> , fro whens þou came.'	1236
	'I am a knyght of straunge lande.	
	To day, as y come rydande,	
	There theuys come ¹ syxtene,	
	Bolde men and also kene.	1240
	Lefte y am myselfe allone :	
	All my felows haue þey slone.	
	I myselfe haue woundys wyde,	
	Well depe in the ryght syde.'	1244
Guy went on	Gye turned fro the abbey	
	And hyed faste on hys wey.	
to a hermit,	To an ermyte ² he can wende,	
	That þerebefore had be hys frende.	1248
by whom he had his wound healed in a short time.	There he had helyd hys wounde	
	Well sone in a lytull stounde.	
Duke Otoun was sorry for Guy's escape.	The dewke Oton was full woo,	
	That syr Gye was passyd soo.	1252
The Abbot pitied Harrawde.	¶ The abbot had grete pyte	
	Of þat knyght feyre and free.	
	He let bere hym yn sone :	
	In a chaumbur was he done.	1256
	Whyll he in the chaumbur laye,	
A monk of that abbey	Ther come oon of that abbaye,	
	A man, þat was gode and trewe :	
	Of all wowndys, for soþe, he knewe.	1260
	There he knelyd, wytturly,	
saw that his wounds were not deadly,	And lokyd hys woundys <i>and</i> see þem bye,	
	That he had no dedly wounde.	
	He seyde : 'y schall in a lytull stownde	1264
	Make thys knyght hole and fere.'	
[leaf 169 a, col. 2] and he succeeded in recalling him to life.	Therto he dud hys powere	
	And, as he seyde, so dud he,	
	As ye schall here aftur of me.	1268
Guy, completely cured,	¶ Now ys Gye hole of hys sare	

¹ MS. *to me*.² MS. *ermytage*.

- And aftur broght owt of hys care.
 The ermyte he yaue gode day
 And to Pole he toke the way. 1272 passed into
 There he went to the kynge, Apulia,
 That had grete yoye of hys comyng. whose king wel-
 Syluyr *and* golde he had hym sente : comed him
 Thereof had Gye no talente. 1276 heartily.
- So had Gye taryed thore,
 That all hym louyd, þat þere wore,
 And of euery justyng
 Wyth hym ys lefte the preysynge. 1280
- ¶ Leue of þe kynge Gye toke anon
 And to Sesoyne¹ ys he gone
 To the nobull dewke Raynere,
 And he welcomyd hym wyth gode chere. 1284
 So longe he hath hawntyd bordys,
 That of armes he bare the prys.
 He hym bethoght on a daye,
 That he wolde wende away : 1288
 To hys contre wolde he fare.
 He wolde not longe dwelle thare.
 ¶ Now ys he went fro² Sesoyne,³
 Comen he ys to Burgoyne 1292
 To dewke Myllon, that was þan : Afterwards he
 Of Gye he was a yoyfull man. visited Myllon,
 All hys castels and all the lande duke of Bur-
 He dud take Gye in hys hande. 1296 gundy.
- Thorow the londe he wan þe prys
 Of justyng and of bordyse,
 Now ys Gye loueyd well
 Thorow all þe londe euery dele. 1300
 Was þer nodur lorde nor knyght
 Nor squyer, that had any myght :
 He gaue þem armes to be knyght
 Thorow þer strenkyþ *and* þer myght. 1304

¹ MS. *Sesyone*.² MS. *to*.³ MS. *Sesyone*.

- [leaf 169 b, col. 1] So well he had there hym spedde,
 Ladies longed to That ladyes wolde be to hym wedde ;
 be married to him. But none of all wolde he haue
 In vain, For noght, *pat* þey myght craue. 1308
 For all þe serowe, was hym befallē,
 3yt louyd he Felyce moste of all.
 for he loved Felice. What for gyftys, what for larges,
 What for bewte, what for *proves*, 1312
 Ther was no knyght beyonde þe see,
 No knight was so much praised as he. That was so moche preysed, as hee.
 One day Guy ¶ On huntynge Gye went on a day,
 met a palmer, He mett a palmer be the way. 1316
 He clepyd to hym the palmere
 And spake to hym on hys manere :
 ‘ Gode man,’ seyde Gye, ‘ telle *pou* me,
 Fro whens *pou* came *and* fro what cuntre.’ 1320
 who told him that he came from Lombardy, ‘ Fro Lumbardy comyn y am.
 There haue y tholed moche schame :
 where he had lost his lord, There loste y my lorde dere,
 That was a knyght of gret powere. 1324
 owing to Duke Otoun’s treachery. The dewke Oton of Payuye
 Desseyuyd vs thorow trecherye.
 God, that dyed on a tre,
 Let hym neuer forgeuyn bee. 1328
 On þys manere wyll y wende
 Allwey to my lyueys ende.
 I wyll bydde for hym well faste,
 All þe whyle my lyfe may laste.’ 1332
 His Lord’s name was ¶ ‘ Who was thy lorde,’ seyde Gye,
 ‘ That *pou* loueyst so trewlye ?’
 Guy of Warwick. ‘ Gye he hyght of Warwyke :
 In all þys worlde ys none hym lyke.’ 1336
 Gye began to syke sore.
 When þe palmer had seyde thore,
 ‘ Gode man,’ he seyde, ‘ what ys þy name ?
 So god þe schylde fro synne *and* schame.’ 1340

'Harrawde,' he seyde, 'men clepe me
Of Ardurne in that cuntre.'

He himself was
Harrawde
of Ardem.

¶ When Gye harde þat, also smerte
Downe of hys stede sone he sterte.

1344

He toke hym in hys armes twoo,
Owt of the stedde wolde he not goo.

[leaf 169 b, col. 2]

He kyssyd hym an hundurde sythe :

Neuyr before was he so blythe,

1348 Never before was
Guy so glad.

Wyth hys eyen he wepyd sore

For yoye, that he stode thore,

And seyde, 'syr Harrowde, þou seye me, why

That þou knowyst not syr Gye.'

1352 He asked
why Harrawde
did not know
him, Guy.

Then he myght no lenger stonde,

But in swowne he felle to grownde.

Ther was yoye wythowte care :

Ayther askyd other of hys fare.

1356 There was now
joy without care.

¶ Nowe be they bothe two sett :

They haue grete yoye, þat þey be mett.

Than Gye all hath to hym seyde, '

How he hym on hys hors leyde ;

1360 Each told the
other what had
happened to him.

Vnto an abbey how he hym bare,

For þat he schulde be beryed thare.

For nothyng wolde he late,¹

But ylke tolde odur of þer state.

1364

Now begynneth Harowde to spelle

And of hys sorowe he can hym telle,

How he was helyd of hys wownde

And made bothe hole and sownde

1368

Be a monke of that abbey,

As ye haue herde me before sey,

And how he went to many a londe

Gye to seke, yf he myght be² fonde.

1372

¶ Now be they horsyd bothe thare

And to the cyte dud they fare.

¹ MS. *lett.*² *be* omitted in MS.

- Gye dud hym bathe full well
 And clothyd hym newe euery dell 1376
 Wyth ryche robys of grete prys
 Furryd wele wyth veire and grys.
 When he was so well cladde,
 To dewke Myllon he hym ladde 1380
 And he hym tolde euery delle,
 How ther wo was turned to wele.
- [leaf 170 a, col. 1]
 Guy and^f
 Harrawde
 resolved
 to return to
 England.
- A**t þe dewke þey toke leue :
 þer was noþyng, myzt hym more greue. 1384
 þey þoght to wende ouer þe sonde,
 Tyll þey came to Ynglonde.
 The dewke wolde haue had þem styлле,
 But þat was not at ther wylle, 1388
 That þey schulde dwelle þere longe.
 They wente þere forthe wyth songe :
 Ryght to Flawndurs be þey goon.
 Ther inne there was takyn anone : 1392
 To the see they wolde wyth ryght
 On þe morne, when day was lyght.
- But in Flanders,
 before putting
 to sea,
 Guy
- ¶ Gye to a wyndowe yode
 To loke, how the wynde stode. 1396
 In the way he sye come there
 A pylgryme sekeyng hys sopere.
 Gye askyd on feyre manere :
 ‘Pylgryme, wylt þou be herberde here? 1400
 Nyght hyt ys, þou mayste not wende.
 Goode hyt ys, þat thou here lende.’
 Than spake the pylgryme :
 ‘God the 3ylde and seynt Martyne.’ 1404
 ¶ Than askyd Gye full yare,
 In what cuntre he had fare
 And yf he herde in any londe,
 Where ony warre were on honde. 1408
 ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y schall yow telle
 Of a warre stronge and felle.’
- learnt from a
 pilgrim

- Gye seyde : 'seye me belyue.'
- 'Syr,' he seyde, 'so muste y thryue, 1412
- The ryche emperoure Raynere, that Duke Segwin
was besieged by
the Emperor
Raynere,
- That all Almayne hap in hys powere,
- Hath besegyð dewke Segwyn
- And dothe hym there moche pyne 1416
- (Hys men be slone *and* hys towres brent
- And hys castels be brokyn *and* schente :
- Therfore ys he nothyng fayne)
- For hys cosyn, þat he hath slayne 1420 because the Duke
had slain Saddok,
[leaf 170 a, col. 2]
nephew to the
Emperor,
at a tournament.
- Hym defendawnt, sawns fayle,
- For he dud hym furste assayle,
- Before at a turnement,
- That was made for entysement. 1424
- ¶ There was þe nobull dewke Segwyne,
- To whom longyd all Lowyne,¹
- And of Lorayne² dewke Loyere :
- He was a bolde man and a fere. 1428
- Knyghtys came of the londe
- Dedes of armes for to fonde.
- The dewke Segwyn dud owt wende,
- When þe game was broght to ende : 1432
- There hath he slayne a gode knyght,
- That was a bolde man *and* a wyght.
- ¶ Than came Saddok prykande Saddok,
- The dewke Segwyn saylande : 1436 jealous of Segwin,
had,
- Of hym Saddok had grete envye
- For hys grett cheualrye.
- He was þe emperowrs cosyn,
- Hys systurs sone, a bolde hyne. 1440
- Of justynge he was werye,
- Hys hawberke hap he caste bye : though being
unarmed,
- In playne armes was he gone.
- For sothe, he was a prowde mane.³ 1444

MS. *lorayne*.² MS. *Burgayne*.³ originally *mone* in MS.

desired to joust with him.	<p>'Syr dewke,' he seyde, 'turne the And oon tyme juste wyth me. Thou art a bolde knyght <i>and</i> a kene : For sothe, nowe hyt schall be sene.'</p>	1448
Segwin,	<p>'Saddok,' he seyde, 'let be thy stryfe. I wolde not do þat for my lyfe. I loue the ¹dere in my herte :¹</p>	
declining the combat,	<p>To juste wyth the hyt wolde me smerte. Thou art my lordys cosyn : To do þe harme þe shame were myn), When y the vnarmedde see. Soche a coward wyll y not bee.'</p>	1452
had been called a coward,	<p>¶ Then seyde Saddok : 'þou art a cowart And a man of feynte harte. So god me helpe in trynyte,</p>	1456
[leaf 170 b, col. 1]	<p>But þou ones juste wyth me, I schall the hurte thys ylke day And wrath þe, yf that y may, And kepe þe, well wytterly, As for my dedly enmye.'</p>	1460
and at once attacked by Saddok.	<p>¶ He ranne to hym wyth grete yre And the dewke turnyd hym þere.</p>	
In that fight	<p>Faste þey smote þen togedur, That þer sperys can toschyder. Saddok smote hym furste there Owt of þe schelde a quaterre. He smote hym þorow þe arme also, That the spere braste in twoo. Than beganne the dewke to smyte,</p>	1468
Saddok had lost his life.	<p>For he thoght grete dyspyte. Thorow þe body þe spere glode : Of that dynte þe deþe he hadde. He toke þe body, þere hyt laye, And bare hyt to an abbay And beryed hyt sone anon)</p>	1476

¹⁻¹ MS. *in my dere herte.*

- Feyre in a marbull stone. 1480
- ¶ The dewke ys went *and* odor thre
To Argone, hys cyte.
The walles þere he dud mende :
He þoght hym þere to defende. 1484
- All þe castels of that cuntre
Full sekyr sone then made he.
Sythen messengerys he sente,
That all þat londe þorowe wente. 1488
- Swythe sende he hys sonde
To all men of hys londe
And badde, þey schulde be hym nere
Hym to helpe in hys mystere ; 1492
- For stronge men, harde he say,
Thorow hys londe wolde haue þe way.
He thoght, whyll hys lyfe wolde laste,
To defende the cyte wyth þe beste. 1496
- ¶ When the emperowre harde telle
All þat case, how hyt felle,
That Saddok was so slayne,
Therof was he nothyng fayne. 1500
- He sende hys sonde thorow Almayne
Knyghtys and dewkys into Spayne,
Erlys, barons, lorde and swayne,
That þey schulde come *wyth* all þer mayne 1504
- To ther lorde, the emperowre,
To whom þey owe gret honowre.
¶ When þey were gedurd togedur,
That they were comen thedur, 1508
- ‘ Gode men,’ seyde the emperowre,
‘ Ye harde speke of the traytowre,
Howe the dewke of Lowyne
Slewe Saddok, my cosyn, 1512
- Therefore y bydd yow all in fere,
That ye me helpe *wyth*¹ yowre power

Segwin had
withdrawn
to his town
of Argone.

The Emperor,

[leaf 170 b, col. 2]

having gathered
a large army,

¹ *a* blotted out before *wyth* in MS.

- Ageyne the dewke for to fyght :
 He hath done ageyne the ryght.' 1516
 'Syr,' they seyde wyth oon assent,
 'We schall do thy comawndement.
 We schall neuer thens goo,
 Or we haue done hym moche woo.' 1520
- was now besieging
 him there. ¶ Now wendyth the grete ooste
 Wyth grete pryde *and* mekyll boste.
 There þey wente, brode and wyde
 They dystroyed on euery syde. 1524
 There ys lefte but oon cyte
 Far *and* nere in that contre ;
 That ys the cyte of Argone,
 That ys formed aftur Rome. 1528
 Hyt ys closed wyth lyme *and* stone :
 In all þys worlde ys bettur none.'
 ¶ When þe pylgryme had all seyde,
 Mete *and* drynke to hym was leyde. 1532
 Gye herkenyd euery dele
 And vndurstode hyt full wele.
- Guy, Then þoght Gye, there he stode,
 To helpe þe dewke þat hyt were gode. 1536
 He seyde : 'Harrawde, what redyst þou ?
 [leaf 171 a, col. 1] Yf me cowncell, for thy prowē.
 Wyll we helpe the dewke hende,
 Or we wyll to Ynglonde wende ? 1540
 What ys thy wylle ? saye nowē ;
 For þy cownsell wele y trowe.'
- by the advice of
 Harrawde, ¶ Syr Harrawde spake than :
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'y am thy man. 1544
 I schall þe yeue gode cownsayle,
 That schall the full wele awayle.
 I rede the, harnes the ryght wele
 Bothe in yron and in stele 1548
 And *wyth* þe v hundurd men on ende :
 To the dewke wyll we wende.

We schall hym helpe wyth gode chere :		
Of socowre he hath grete mystere,	1552	
Ye may so do in that stowre,		
That euyr ye may gete honowre.'		
'Gramerey, syr,' seyde Gye ;		
'I the thanke, wytturlye.	1556	
Now y knowe, þou louyste me,		
When y soche cowncell haue of the.		
To þe cyte wyll we hye		was ready to help the Duke.
Wyth moche haste and cheualrye.'	1560	
¶ Fyve hundurde knyghtys yare,		He came to Argone with 500 good knights.
That were redy wyth hym to fare,		
Of all Frawnce þey were the beste,		
Armed well on hors ¹ preste.	1564	
To Argone they be comen),		
Into the cyte þe way þey nomen.		
They toke ther ynnys in the cyte :		
Gladde may the dewke be.	1568	
¶ On the morne Gye rose		The next morn- ing,
And to church soone he gose :		
Masse <i>and</i> matens þer he harde		
And sythen to hys ynne farde.	1572	
He sawe men renne same :		
He þoght be þem, hyt was no game.		
Scheldys <i>and</i> sperys he sawe þem bere,		
Ryght as hyt were to the were.	1576	
Gye sone clepyd a man) :		
'What men,' he seyde, 'be þone ?		[leaf 171 a, col. 2]
Telle me, pur charyte,		
Why ys thys haste in thys cyte ?'	1580	
'Syr,' he seyde, 'be thys day,		learning
Y schall the the sothe say.		
Thys ys the steward to the emperowre,		that the Empe- ror's Steward was
That ys a man of grete valowre :	1584	before the town,
He ys holden of grete pryce		

¹ o in *hors* not quite clear in MS.

- And of batell bothe war *and* wyse ;
 And other knyghtys *wyth* hym grete plente :
 But ther ys none so gode in þys contre. 1588
 Yf any knyght so hardy bee,
 That ys in all thys grete cyte,
 That *wyth* hym ones dar fyght,
 Forþe þen come odur anon ryght : 1592
 Be he neuyr so bolde nor so stowte
 Cometh he neuer owt of þat rowte :
 Other he schall be slayne *wyth* wronge
 Or ellys taken to pryson stronge.' 1596
- Guy sallied out ¶ Gye askyd hys armowre than
 And armyd hym, as a doghty man.
 with his knights, All hys knyghtys dud also :
 Forthe in fere can they goo. 1600
 As þey went from the cyte,
 The steward myght þey all see.
 attacked the Gye thedurwarde dud ryde,
 Steward, There the steward dud abyde. 1604
 ¶ When the steward sawe Gye,
 Stowtly he can hym hye.
 He began to make deraye
 And to hys felows dud he say : 1608
 'Yondur cometh hedur a knyght,
 That ys redy for to fyght.
 He hath an hors of grete pryce :
 He schall not longe, y trowe, be hys. 1612
 God delyuyr me neuyr of synne,
 But y that horse soone wyne.'
 ¶ He prekyd to juste *wyth* Gye,
 As a bolde man and an hardye. 1616
- [leaf 171 b, col. 1] Bothe they strekyn faste :
 They mett togedur at the laste.
 Now they smeten faste on schelde :
 The peys flewe in the felde. 1620
 Gye hath hym a stroke raght

- Wyth hys fawchon at a draght :
 To the erthe he felle downe
 Euyll at ese, be my crowne. 1624
 Then dud Gye, as felle to were :
 In batell he toke hym there.
 He drewe hys swerde of stele : ¹
 On hys hedde he hyt hym wele. 1628 and made him a
 He hym toke, as in batayle : prisoner.
 That was honowre, *wythowten* fayle.
 ¶ When the Almayns sye þat dede,
 That were hardy men at nede, 1632
 How ther lorde takyn was,
 They came to hym in that case.
 Or they were fro þe felde ladde,
 Many of them þe dethe had. 1636 Many of the
 Now came Gye ageyn *wyth* game Germans were
 And all hys felows hym *wyth* same. killed.
 He smytyth þe Almayns sare :
 For nothyng wolde he spare. 1640
 ¶ All the men of that cyte
 That batell myght beholde *and* see.
 They went *and* armed them styll
 Bothe in yron and in stele. 1644
 Owt of the cyte can they wende
 Gye to helpe, as men hende.
 There men myght see *strokys vnryde* ²
 And knyghtys juste on euery syde : 1648 An obstinate
 Bothe *wyth* swyrde and *wyth* spere battle ensued.
 Echoon odor sore dud dere.
 There men myght see knyghtys crye
 And falle downe fro þer horsys on hye, 1652
 That were woundyd swythe sore.
 Ther dyed many men thore.
 There was dedde in a throwe [leaf 171 b, col. 2]
 Fyve hundurde on a rowe. 1656

MS. of *hys stele*.² MS. *strokys ryde*.

By the valour of Guy and Har- rawde,	Faste peyned hym <i>syr</i> Gye : So dud Harrawde, wytterlye. The Almayns were ouyrcome, Some slayne and some nome. 1660 Wele had Gye spedd that day : So may all that eyte say.
the Germans were vanquished,	The Almayns be scowmfett Wythowte any more lett. 1664
Guy returned	¶ Now ys Gye turned ageyne : Of hys dede he was fayne. He and hys felows redde, Ryche prysoners <i>wyth þem</i> ledde. 1668
to the town,	To hys ynne ys he gone, He and hys felows euery oon. Bolde þey were, sawns fayle ; For þey had wonne the batayle. 1672 Gye restyd hym a thrawe : All hys armvr he dud of drawe.
The Duke was glad	¶ When þe dewke herde tythyng, He was then a yolye thyng. 1676
of the news,	When he wyste, <i>þat</i> Gye was come, The men slayne <i>and</i> þe steward nome, He lepe on a palfraye, To Gyes chaumbur he toke <i>þe</i> way. 1680 He gret hym on feyre manere, For hys comyng he made gode chere.
and welcomed Guy ;	‘ Welcome,’ he seyde, ‘ <i>syr</i> Gye, And <i>þy</i> felows, sekyrlye. 1684 Now y wene to vengyd be On myn enmyes, <i>þat</i> hate me. They warre on me day <i>and</i> nyght : That ys all <i>wythowte</i> ryght. 1688
to whom he gave power over all his dukedom.	<i>Syr</i> Gye, y geue þe all myn honowre Of my castell and my towre And also of all my londe, My men to <i>serue</i> the to <i>þy</i> honde. 1692

From now forward, y bydde the,
 That þou bothe lorde and syre bee.
 All schall be at þy comawndemente,
 Into what stedde that they be sente. 1696 [leaf 172 a, col. 1]
 I wyll do aftur yowre avyse
 And venge me on myn enmyes.
 'Thou art a curtes man,' quod Gye;
 'Syr dewke,' he seyde, 'gramercy. 1700
 Y schall yow helpe wyth all my myght
 Wyth gode cowncell to venge the ryght.'
 ¶ He hath yeuyn hym hys powere
 Of all, that he hath far *and* nere, 1704
 He hath geuyn Gye into hys honde
 And made hym lorde ouyr hys londe.
 He wenyth be hys cownceyle¹
 To acorde wyth þe emperowre, sawns fayle. 1708
 There they spake togedur styлле,
 How þey myght gete ther wyлле.
 ¶ Gye sendyth now a messengere, Guy made
 That was queynt on hys manere : 1712
 He sent into many a dyuers londe,
 There he had bee before honde :
 Knyghtys v hundurd, y vndurstonde,
 There come to hym fro many a londe. 1716
 Wolde he nodur stynte nor blynne,
 Or he þat londe wyth force myzt² wynne.
 Thorow Gye and hys cownceyle³
 All he venged, wythowte fayle. 1720
 ¶ When þe emperowre all had harde
 How Gye wyth þe dewke farde,
 Hys stewarde to hys pryson tane,⁴
 And how he had hys men slane,⁵ 1724
 He had grete sorowe *and* care

¹ MS. *cowncell*. ² *w* blotted out before *myzt* in MS.³ MS. *cowncell*.⁴ Lines 1723 and 1724 must exchange places, I suppose.⁵ MS. *slayne*.

500 more knights
 of different
 countries
 join the Duke's
 army.

The Emperor,
 sorry for his
 Steward's defeat,

	For hys men, that dedde ware. 'Lordyngys, what ys yowre redde	
summoned a Council,	Of owre knyghtys, that be dedde? I schall be neuyr glad nor blythe, Or y be vengyd on hym swythe.'	1728
By the advice of Duke Otoun	¶ 'Syr,' seyde dewke Oton of Payuye, 'Let be thyn yre and thyn envye.	1732
[leaf 172 a, col. 2]	Or hyt be passyd dayes thre, Vengyd wele schalt thou bee. Ye schall take yowre baronage And odur men, þat wyll take wage.	1736
	Of Sesoyne ¹ the dewke Raynere And the constable Waldynere And y schall come to yow in hye And brynge grete cheualrye.	1740
	To the cyte wyll we fare. Yf Gye and þe dewke be thare, But yf y take the traytowre And brynge hym vnto yowre towre	1744
	And put hym in yowre depe pryson (For hym þer schall goo no rawnsome), Broke y neuyr ellys my lyfe Nodur my chyldyr nor my wyfe.'	1748
it was determined to renew the siege by an army	¶ Than hym spake the emperowre : 'Thou art a man of grete valowre. Thou haste me geue cownceyle, ²	
conducted by Duke Raynere,	I wene, hyt schall me avayle. Syr,' he seyde, 'make the 3are	1752
Constable Waldy- nere, and Duke Otoun.	To the constable to fare And to the dewke of Payuye Wyth hys grete cheualrye :	1756
	To Argone ye schall in hye And take the dewke and Gye. Yf ye may do that ylke dede, I schall the helpe at all nede.'	1760

¹ MS. *Sesoyne*,² MS. *cowncell*,

'Syr,' he seyde, '*wyth* gode entente

We schall do thy comawndement.'

¶ Now haue þey ther leue tane,

To ther innes be they gone.

1764

The next morning

On the morne, when hyt was day,

Vp þey rose *and* went ther way,

All the captens *wyth* moche ooste.

All thȳ wente : they made boste.

1768

To the cyte they came bolde,

Twenty hundurde scheldys tolde.

20,000 men approached the town.

¶ When they sye in that cyte

The besieged

Men *wythowte* grete plente,

1772

[leaf 172 b, col. 1]

The bellus faste dud they ryng.

I wote, they made no dwellynge :

They armed them, as Gye badde,

Euery man, that harnes hadde.

1776

prepared themselves for a valiant defence.

When þey were come to *syr* Gye,

To fyght they were redy

The dewke clepyd Gye there

And bad, yf hys wyll were,

1780

That Harrawde schulde haue *wyth* hym eche dell

Fyve hundurde knyghtys armed well

And wende forthe, *wythowte* fayle,

Boldely them for to assayle,

1784

'And ye, *syr* Gye, a thousande

Bolde men and wele bydande :

And, yf he haue mystere.

Helpe hym *wyth* gode chere.

1788

And y wyll come *wyth* my mayne

Faste prekyng aftur the.

We¹ schall so *wyth* them fyght

Wyth goddys grace *and* owre myght,

1792

That we schall haue the maystrye.'

'Thou seyest wele,' seyde Gye.²

'Wendyth forthe for to fonde :

¹ MS. *Ye*.² 1793 after 1794 in MS.

	For nothyng wyll we wonde	1796
	To helpe the in thys stowre	
	For to holde vp thyn honowre.'	
	¶ When he to the churche came,	
	Oton was the furste man	1800
	That he sawe in batayle,	
	For sothe wythowten fayle.	
Harrawde at- tacked Otoun,	Harrowde, he poght furste to assay	
	The felle dewke Oton of Payuaye. ¹	1804
	'Thynkyst thou not of thy velonye,	
	That þou duddyst my lorde <i>and</i> me	
	In Lumbardy, thy nowne contray?	
	We schall be venged wele to day	1808
	Wyth goddys grace : yf þat y ² may,	
[leaf 172 b, col. 2]	Wyth my handys y schall assay.'	
	¶ Now they smyte faste in same :	
	I wot, ther was but lytull game.	1812
	Betwene þem was lytull play :	
	They drewe swerdys, as y say.	
	Grete batell pere men myght see :	
	Nother wolde fro odor flee.	1816
whom he over- threw,	He smote dewke Oton þere so faste,	
	That he felle downe at þe laste.	
and would have slain, but for the suc- cour of his men.	Soone he had hym slayne thare,	
	But hys men came full yare	1820
	And socowrde hym, wytterlye,	
	Or ellys he hadde dedde bee.	
	Then came hys men wyth myzt <i>and</i> mayn	
	And set the dewke on hors agayn.	1824
Of these,	¶ Then began a grete batayle :	
	Echon odor faste can assayle.	
Harrawde	He peyned hym faste, <i>syr</i> Harrawt :	
	To the dewke he made assawt.	1828
slew a hundred.	An hundurd he slewe, sawns fayle,	
	That belefte dedde in þat batayle.	

¹ 1804—1810, see the note.² *y* omitted in MS.

- The dewkes herte was full sore,
 When he sawe hys men lye thore : 1832
 He began faste to crye
 And seyde : ' ye do velanye. Otoun called upon
 Lordyngys,' he seyde, ' what do ye nowe ? them
 Styr ye nowe for yowre prowre. 1836
 Se ye not thys traytowre,
 That doyth me thys dyshonowre ?
 He hath slayne my men goode :
 They lye sprawlande in þer blode. 1840
 But y be venged on that thefe,
 Schall ye neuer be to me lefe.' for revenge.
 ¶ Then þey gedurde on a hepe
 And abowte they dudde lepe. 1844
 Grete angwysche ys Harrawde beforne,
 Now he hap of hys felows lorne.
 But he gate helpe, y vndurstande,
 For grete socowre came hym on hande. 1848 [leaf 173 a, col. 1]
 All þey¹ chacyd hym at the laste :
 Then came Gye rydyng faste.
 He mett hym faste fleande : But Guy came to
 Hys spere was brokyn in hys hande 1852 his help.
 And hys hors woundyd on the knee,
 That vnnethe goo myght hee.
 Then seyde Gye : ' turne ageyne.
 Where be þy men ? be þey slayne ?' 1856
 ' Nay,' seyde he, ' y vndurstande :
 I lefte them faste fyghtande.'
 Gye beganne on hym to crye :
 ' Harrawde, come on smertlye.' 1860
 ¶ When Gye sye dewke Otoun,
 Soone he schewyd hys reson :
 ' Dewke,' he seyde, ' þynkyst þou noght
 Of þe treson, that þou me wroght ? 1864
 At the pase of thy foreste

¹ MS. þe.

	In Lumbardy, þere þou myght beste, Thou slewe my men <i>wyth</i> sorowe <i>and</i> care, And y myselfe was woundyd thare.	1868
	So god me helpe, þys same day I schall the 3ylde, yf þat y may. I the warne, <i>wyth</i> all my myght Here y wyll <i>wyth</i> the fyght.	1872
	I schall neuer be gladde nor blythe, Or y be vengyd on the swythe. ¶ Gye turned the hedde of hys stede . They faght togedur gode spede.	1876
	They smeten so faste on þer sheldes, That þe pecys flewe in þe felde. The dewke smote so <i>syr</i> Gye On the schelde smertlye,	1880
	That hys spere flewe in thre. 'For god,' seyde he, ¹ 'þou hyttest me All <i>wyth</i> myght <i>and</i> <i>wyth</i> mayne.' Gye turned hym agayne.	1884
and would have cut off his head, [leaf 173 a, col. 2] had he not been attacked by a hundred knights.	There he wolde haue had hys heuydde, ² But sone he was fro hym reevyd <i>Wyth</i> an hundurde knyghtys tolde, That were hardy men and bolde.	1888
In this emergency	All þey went abowte Gyone, But he defendyd hym, as a lyon. ¶ Gye cownfortyd hys felawe To do wele a lytull thrawe.	1892
Guy and Har- rawde	Now þey smyten faste samen : I wot, ther was lytull gamen. Many knyghtys þere dyed þat day And in þat place full lowe lay.	1896
took and slew so many Lombardes	Gye hym payned that day soo To take Lumbardes and to sloo ; For he wolde vengyd bee	

¹ *he* and *þou* omitted in MS.² MS. *hedde*.

- On the dewke and hys mayne. 1900
 Gye dud wele that ylke day
 And all hys men *wythowte* delay
 And slewe þe Lumbardes on euery syde
Wyth swerdys *and wyth* sperys vnryde. 1904
 Thorow Gye they be ouercome,
 Many slayne and many nome.
 They flewe away, Gye dud þem chace ;
 Of dedde men was full the place. 1908
- ¶ Then came the dewke Raynere
 And the constabull Waldynere
 And *wyth* them grete company.
 In a vale they sawe *syr* Gye 1912
 And faste to hym can they hye
 Wyth full grete envye.
 Gye drewe to an hylle
 And all hys men *wyth* gode wylle. 1916
- ‘**L**ordyngys,’ seyde Gye, ‘herkenþ me,
 The ylke men, þat ye ¹ yonder see,
 Ys the dewke of Cesoyne ²
 And the erle of Coloyne. 1920
 We may not passe, wytterlye :
 Wyth them ys grete cheualrye.
 They haue vs closed on euery parte :
 We may not passe *wythowten* hurte. 1924 [leaf 173 b, col. 1]
 We muste nede oon of the two
 Othur to defende vs or to dethe go
 Better hyt ys in honowre to dye,
 Than to be takyn *and* hangyd hye. 1928
 Therefore euery man be gode couenande
 Defende vs, whyll we may stande.
 Hyt schall turne to grete honowre
 Afturwarde in yche a stowre.’ 1932
 All þey seyde wyth oon couenande :

¹ MS. *y*.² MS. *Cesoyne*.

- 'Defende vs, whyll we may stande.
 Helpe hym euyr god, that ys bolde,
 Whyll he may stonde *and* wepon holde.' 1936
- were now assailed. ¶ Now they wente in hye,
 Gye and hys companye.
 There beganne a grete batayle :
 Euery man odur faste can assayle. 1940
 Or the battell endyd were,
 Many a stronge knyght dyed there.
 Gye smote the dewke Raynere :
 Of hys stede he dud hym bere. 1944
 He hyt a nodur in a stownde,
 That he felle to the grownde :
 Thorow þe body he hym smote,
 He rose no more, wele y wote. 1948
- Raynere was thrown off his horse.
 Than he smote Waldynere
 Owt of hys schelde a quartere.
 From hys sadull downe he starte :
 I wot, Waldynere hyt dud smerte. 1952
 Another knyght he sloo tyte
 Wyth hys swyrde, þat wolde byte.
 Then forthe came Gylmyne,
 The dewke Segwyns cosyn. 1956
 The erle smote abowte faste,
 But Gye of hys hors hym caste.
 Gye peyned hym wele to do
 And all hys men dud also. 1960
- Many Germans were taken pri-
 [leaf 173 b, col. 2] soners, wounded
 or slain. Of þe Almayns þey haue tane,
 Many woundyd *and* many slane.
 When he sawe dewke Raynere
 And the constabull Waldynere, 1964
 How þer men were broght to grownde
 Wyth grete yre yn a stownde,
 Gye beganne to crye in hye :
 '3elde yowreselfe or ye dye.' 1968
 Than he hyed full faste :

- Them to sloo he was full presté.
 For noþyng þey wolde flee,
 And Gye faght full boldele. 1972
 Of þer men he slewe many :
 To grownde þey wente sodenly.
 ¶ Then came dewke Raynere Raynere attacked
 To mete wyth Gylmyn, þat was full fere. 1976 Gylmyn,
 He hath hym smeten þorow þe syde
 And gaue hym a wounde longe and wyde.
 Gylmyn flewe at the laste who fled at last
 On hys stede swythe faste. 1980
 To dewke Segwyne he ys gone : to Duke Segwin
 The dewke hym knewe and þat anon.
 Hys herte was full sare,
 When he sye Gylmyn so fare. 1984
 ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘ye do grete wronge,
 That ye dwelle here so longe. to inform him
 Go and helpe thy men tyte : how things were.
 They be in poynt to be scowmfyte.’ 1988
 ¶ When the dewke harde þe thythyng,
 That syr Gylmyne dud brynge,
 He smote þe stede wyth þe sporys joined the fight.
 And spared nother dyke nor forys ¹ 1992
 And seyde : ‘lordyngys, haue in yowre þoȝt,
 That owre men þus dye noght.
 Yf þey þus be ² slayne and tane,
 We bene dedde euery man.’ 1996
 Than þey wendyd ³ in þat case
 To helpe Gye a grete pase.
 ¶ Nowe came the dewke faste rydyng
 And the Almayns faste smytyng. 2000 [leaf 174 a, col. 1]
 He smote a knyght in that tyde :
 Into the body hyt can glyde.
 Or he to Gye wanne,

¹ MS. *forows*.² *be* omitted in MS.³ MS. *wendyd a grete in þat case*.

	He hedyd many a doghty man).	2004
	Now þey be mette thare,	
	To fyght þey were full zare	
	Wyth the Almayns anon ryght	
	Wyth scheldys, sperys <i>and</i> myght.	2008
	They schett bothe sperys <i>and</i> dartes :	
	Faste þey faght on bothe partes.	
	Hawberkys þey brake <i>and</i> styffe scheldes	
	And made to flye into þe feldus :	2012
	Hondes <i>and</i> armes þey leuyd there,	
	Fete, schankys, schelde <i>and</i> spere.	
	Wele gode knyghtys many oon,	
	In the felde þey were slone.	2016
	They were ryche menys sonnes,	
	All they were feyre gromes,	
	That þedur came lose to wyne.	
	Hyt was bothe grete shame <i>and</i> synne :	2020
	There fadurs be not well lykyng,	
	When þey harde of þat tythyng.	
Raynere slew Gawtere,	¶ Forþe þen came dewke Raynere.	
	Slayne he hath Gawtere,	2024
	That was to Gye a trewe frende	
	Owtetakyn Harrawde þe hende.	
	Gye hyt sawe and was woo :	
	The dewke to smyte he can goo.	2028
	He smote hym hye vppon þe crowne,	
	That he felle fro hys hors downe.	
but he was him- self taken prisoner by Guy	Gye dud, as an hardy knyght,	
	And toke hym þere wyth strenkyþe of fyzt.	2032
	Than hys swyrde he owte hynte	
	And gaue many an euyll dynte.	
	Gye toke in that stowre	
	An hundurd men of grete valowre.	2036
	¶ The dewke Segwyne þo stert owte	
[leaf 174 a, col. 2]	On a gode stede and a stowte.	
as Waldynere was	Syr Waldynere þere he dud smyte,	

- That he felle from hys hors tyte. 2040
 He hath hym take wyth myght : by Segwin.
 Bothe were woundyd in þat fyght.
 Now be þe Lumbardes take be tale
 And þe Almayns slayne alle. 2044
 The dewke *and* Gye dud þem chace :
 Of dedde men was full þe place.
 ¶ Tho came Tyrrye of Gormoyse Now came Tyrry of Gormoyse
 Wyth grete pryde *and* moche noyse 2048
 Wyth an hundurde of gode knyghtys, with a hundred good knights.
 That were armed at all ryghtys.
 They were comyn wyth lawnce *and* spere
 For to helpe the Almayns there. 2052
 As þe Almayns away rode,
 Tyrrye þem mett, *and* þey abode.
 ‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘wyll ye flee?
 Turne ageyne *and* stonde be me. 2056
 Fyght ageyne yowre enmyse
 And let be yowre cowardyse,
 Or y schall telle the emperowre,
 That ye do hym þat dyshonowre. 2060
 Yf ye haue be ferde afore hande,
 Turne ageyne : y wyll be yowre warante.’
 He made þem to turne ageyne þan : turn again.
 Newe batell they beganne. 2064
 ¶ The dewke Segwyne came full faste :
 For noþynge wolde he be laste.
 To an Almayne tho he starte
 And smote hym streyght to þe harte. 2068
 When Tyrrye sawe hym dedde,
 He cowde than no bettur redde,
 But to dewke Segwyn he caste
 A grete strook at the laste. 2072
 The dewke hym turned on hys manere
 And faght ageyne wyth gode chere.
 They two faght togedur wele

- [leaf 174 b, col. 1] Wyth gode swerdys, were made of stede. 2076
 Tho came Harrowde on hys stede,
 That was a gode knyght at euery nede.
 Wyth a swyrde oon he smote
 That he felle downe at hys fote. 2080
 then ¶ That sawe the erle Tyrrye,
 A gode knyght and an hardye.
 with Harrawde. Harrawde to smyte sone he yede :
 He made hym to falle downe in þat stede. 2084
 Aftur hys folke he dud crye :
 The Almayns come hastylye.
 The dewke Segwyne þey sorowe wroght
 And hys men to dethe broght. 2088
 Segwin's men
 were driven back,
 Wyth strenkyth þey were dreuyn ageyne,
 Many woundyd and many slayne.
 ¶ When he sawe the dewke Segwyne,
 He was wrothe, be seynt Martyne, 2092
 And all in hys wraþe seyde to Gye :
 'Thys ys grete schame, wytterlye,
 When þus allone þat oon knyght
 Schulde vs do that onryght.' 2096
 Gye hym answeyrd, sawnce fayle :
 'Turne ageyne, yf hym batayle.
 Hyt ys bettur slayne to bē,
 Then cowardely away to flee.' 2100
 but they soon
 rallied.
 ¶ They leyde þe Almayns so vppon,
 That they gaf back euerychon.
 Ageynste þem rydyth Tyrrye
 And makyth many a man bloddy. 2104
 Now Tyrry and
 Guy
 When Tyrrye sawe syr Gye,
 He rode to hym, as knyght hardye.
 He wende Gye to haue slayne,
 But he was turned soone agayne. 2108
 fought together.
 Betwene þem two was grete fyght :
 Gye hym turned, as an hardy knyght.
 They smote togedur so faste,

- That there sperys all tobraste. 2112
 Than þey toke þer bryght brondys
 And faght togedur wyth þer hondys. [leaf 174 b, col. 2]
 Gye claue hys helme *and* hys schelde,
 That þe pecys lay in the felde. 2116
 Tyrrye smote to Gye a stroke : Tyrry's
 As god wolde, hys swyrde broke. sword broke.
 Sone Tyrrye turned hys stede
 And fledde faste, as he had nede : 2120 This mishap
 Full dere had that stroke be boght, made himself
 Had he there dwellyd oght. |
 The Almayns flewe wyth þer brondys and his men fle.
 Bryght drawen in ther hondys. 2124
 ¶ The dewke Segwyne, for sothe y say,
 To þe cyte he toke þe waye. Their adversaries
 Syr Gye of Warwyk wyth hym ys gone returned home
 And hys men euerychone. 2128
 Dewkys, erlys and barons
 They broght wyth þem to þer prysouns. with many
 All, that in the cyte were, prisoners.
 Thankyd god wyth gode chere. 2132
 ¶ Now be þey to þer ynnys wente
 Euery man wyth gode entente
 And thankyd god in þat place,
 That had sente þem soche grace. 2136
 The dewke ys went vnto hys towre :
 The prysoners he lokyd wyth moche honowre,
 The dewke Raynere of Sesoyne¹
 And the erle Waldynere of Coloyne² 2140
 And Gawter, the stewarde,
 That was a nobull man *and* a harde :
 He let *serue* them full tyte,
 Or he wolde any mossel byte. 2144
 ¶ The dewke to hys systur can say,
 That was gente *and* a feyre maye :

¹ MS. *Sesoyne*.² MS. *Coleyne*.

- and committed
them to the care
of his sister. 'The ryche prysoners þou here take,
Well at ese þou þem make : 2148
Of all þynge the dewke Raynere ;
For he ys me bothe leue *and* dere.'
'Syr,' sche seyde tho full ryght,
'I schall hym *serue wyth* all my myght.' 2152
- The Emperor ¶ The ryche emperowre Raynere
[leaf 175 a, col. 1] Wottyth not of thys comberere.
He ne wyste of thys tythyng :
He pleyed at þe chesses *wyth* a kynge. 2156
Tho came Tyrrye faste prekande
And hys swerde brokyn in hys hande :
Hys schelde was brokyn, y wene,
In the fyght, there he had bene. 2160
The bryght helme was croked downe
Vnto þe mydward of hys crowne.
The blode ranne downe fro hys syde :
He had grete woundys and wyde. 2164
- brought the bad
news that his men
were routed, ¶ 'Syr emperowre, vnderstande þys þynge :
I schall þe telle newe tythyngne.
Thy barons, that were so wyght,
Thou schalt þem neuer see *wyth* syght. 2168
Some be in the felde slane¹
And some vnto pryson tane.
- Raynere and
Waldynere taken
prisoners and
Oton ¶ Takyn ys the dewke Raynere
And of Coloyne² the erle Waldynere. 2172
The dewke Oton haþe a wounde wyde
Wyth a spere thorow the syde :
Of hys dethe he hath drede,
He wenyth neuer to ryde on stede.' 2176
- The Emperor ¶ The emperowre harde full well,
That Tyrrye seyde, euery dell.
He ys so sory for that dede,
That for sorowe hys herte dud blede. 2180
He haþe holdyn vp hys hande

¹ MS. *slayne*.² MS. *Coleyne*.

And sworne be god all weldande,		swore that he
That he schall neuer yoyfull bee,		should never be
Or he haue that cyte	2184	joyful again till
And also the traytowrs tane		he had taken the
And wyth jugement þem slane. ¹		town and slain
¶ He let the comyn belle rynge :		the traitors in it
Hys men came wythowte dwellynge.	2188	
Sythen he partyd hys grete ooste :		
To fyght made þey grete boste.		
They ouyrspradde all þe feldys		
Wyth spere, hawberk and wyth scheldys.	2192	[leaf 175 a, col. 2]
To the cyte they be wente.		marched towards
Yonge Gayer þey haue sente		the town.
Wyth fyve hundurde knyghtys wyght :		The van-guard,
They were redy for to fyght.	2196	consisting of 500
Than the men of that cyte		knights, was
All the Almayns dud see.		headed by the
The cuntre of þem was made lyght		Emperor's son
Wyth scheldys and wyth helmes bryght.	2200	Gayere.
¶ Then came the dewke Segwyne ryght ²		
Armed on a rabett wyght ³		
And seyde : 'Gye, gyf me þy cownceyle :		
Wyll we the yonder men assayle ?	2204	
Or we wyll the walles kepe :		
The sekyrlyar may we slepe.'		
'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'y schall the saye		Guy advised
Gode cowncell, yf y maye :	2208	Segwin to sally
An hundurde knyghtys we schall take		out with a hun-
And a sawte we schall þem make.		dred men ;
Yonder y see stonde nere		
The emperowres sone Gayere	2212	
And wyth hym grete companye of knyghtys		
Armed wele at all ryghtys.		
They be wente before the ooste		

¹ MS. *slayne*. ² *b* blotted out before *ryght* in MS.

³ *bryght* blotted out before *wyght* in MS.

	All for pryde and for boste.	2216
	Yf we haue the wars syde,	
	Into the cyte wyll we ryde.'	
which was done.	¶ Nowe be þey an hundurde bolde	
	Wyght men <i>and</i> wele of tolde.	2220
	They wente, <i>wythowten</i> fayle,	
	Syr Gayer to assaile.	
	Of all þe Almayns þey wyll be wreke :	
	Of no corde wyll they speke.	2224
	To fyght they begynne faste :	
	Some were of þer horsys caste.	
Gayere	Gye smote Gayer there :	
	Of hys hors he dud hym bere.	2228
was taken prisoner, his men fled back to the main body of the [leaf 175 b, col. 1] army.	There he was take <i>wyth</i> myght <i>and</i> mayne.	
	Hys men flewe to the ooste agayne :	
	So were they chaced at the laste,	
	That ther hertys almoste braste.	2232
	Some were woundyd <i>and</i> some tane	
	And some scaped and some slane. ¹	
The Germans	¶ When the ooste sye ther men	
	So faste toward them renne	2236
	And wyste also, that Gayere	
	Was takyn, <i>wyth</i> euyll chere	
	They hastyd them swythe	
	The dewke to brynge owte of lyue.	2240
	Than beganne a grete fyght :	
	Knyghtys many dyed ryght.	
	Grete lore was thore,	
killed many of Segwin's men.	But the dewke had the more.	2244
	He hath lorne many of hys men :	
	They were away ladde then.	
Segwin,	The dewke passed myles thre !	
	From hys men and hys cyte,	2248
	But neuer the lees þey dud well,	
Guy and	And so dud Gye, as haue y hele.	

¹ MS. *slayne*.

- And *wyth* hym was Harrawte,
 In batell dud neuyr defawte. 2252 Harrawde proved
very valiant.
- ¶ Then came prekynges Tyrrye,
 A bolde knyght and an hardye.
 He hath smetyn þe dewke Segwyne :
 Hys hors he made hym for to tyne. 2256 Segwin, dis-
mounted by
Tyrry,
- The dewke starte on fote :
 He sawe no nodur bote.
 He drewe hys swerde *wyth* myght
 And defendyd hym, as a knyght. 2260
- Ther was no man, he myght come to,
 But full sone he wolde hym sloo.
 Tyrrye assayed the dewke than :
 He hym defendyd, as a man. 2264
- The Almayns come on euery syde
Wyth scheldys and speres vnryde.
 He ys woundyd ylle and sore :
 Men wende, he schulde lyue¹ no more. 2268
- ¶ When Gye sye hym haue care,
 Ther was none, þat he wold spare,
 Nor none, that he myght reche,
 That had nede of odor leche. 2272
- Than he smote a doghty knyght :
 Of hys hors he made hym to lyght.
 He had hym smetyn swythe sore,
 That he rose vp no more. 2276
- Hys gode swerde he drewe owte
 And smote all, that stode abowte,
 To helpe þe dewke fro them away :
 Many a man he slewe that day. 2280
- ¶ Than spake syr Gyowne :
 'Dewke, herkyn to my resone.
 To the cyte wyll we fare :
 We may defende vs no mare. 2284
- Fyve hundurd knyghtys be redy

¹ MS. *lye*.

	To fyght wyth vs here in hye.'	
	To the cyte be they gone,	
and his men	Gye and hys men euerychone.	2288
	The knyghtys were bolde <i>and</i> hende :	
now returned into the town.	To the wallys can they wende.	
	There þey wyll þemselfe defende,	
	Tyll <i>Jesu</i> Cryste them helpe sende.	2292
	¶ When þe emperowre of þys harde,	
	How hys sone <i>syr</i> Gayer farde,	
The whole army of the Emperor	To hys men can he say :	
	'Assebull yow thys ylke day.	2296
	Wende yow forthe to þat cyte :	
	All avaunsyd schall ye bee.'	
	¶ Now þey can forthe fare,	
now assaulted the town, but it was	To the cyte they come yare.	2300
	They schette dartes <i>and</i> speres amonge	
	Wyth abblasters, that were stronge.	
	So þey schett <i>wyth</i> harowes small	
	And sett laddurs to the walle.	2304
	Wyth ingynes þey caste stones	
	And breke the walles for þe nones.	
well defended.	They defendyd þe towne wythynne :	
	A stronge batayle they begynne.	2308
[leaf 176 a, col. 1]	Of the Almayns there that day	
	Many bare the dethe away.	
	¶ The emperowre had sorowe <i>and</i> syght, ¹	
	That he ne may be vengyd ryght.	2312
	Euery day, <i>wythowten</i> fayle,	
The assault, though repeated every day, was unsuccessful.	He made hys men þe cyte to assayle,	
	But the dewke, Gye and Harrawte	
	Made mony a grete sawte,	2316
	That ther enmyes had grete skathe.	
	Therwyth þe emperowre was wrathe.	
One day	¶ Hyt was on a somers day,	
	As y the sothe telle may :	2320

¹ MS. *syghed*.

- When the emperowre had ete
 And hys grete care forgete,
 He clepyd hys hunte to hym there
 And seyde, he wolde chace þe dere
 Erly in the morowtyde
 In the forest, þat was so wyde,
 Bothe at hartys *and* at hyndys
 And wylde bestys of odor kyndys,
 'Preuely that hyt be wroght,
 That þe dewke wytt hyt noght.'
- ¶ All harde thys a spye,
 That was nye, wytterlye.
 Owte of the courte ys he gone
 And to þe dewke went sone anone.
 He came rennyng all in hye
 To the dewke preuelye.
 'Syr dewke,' he seyde, 'vndurstande ;
 For y schall telle the tythande.
 The ryche emperowre Raynere
 Schall to morowe chace þe dere
 In the foreste preuelye
 Wyth a lytull companye.
 Syr,' he seyde, 'y lye þe noght.
 Be hym, þat all þys worlde haþe wroght,
 Ye may to morne there, wytterlye,
 Take þem euerychone, sekurlye.'
- ¶ When he had hys errande sayde,
 The dewke on hym hys hande layde.
 'Yf hyt be sothe, that thou seyste here,
 Thou schalt haue for thy labere
 An hundurd besawntys of golde
 To chere the *wyth* (for þou art oolde),
 And to dubbe the a knyght
 Ryght wythynne þys fowrtnyght.
- ¶ Gye *and* Harrawde, wyll ye here ?
 Come to me euerychone here
- the Emperor
- 2324 determined to go
hunting the next
morning.
- 2328
- A spy
- 2332
- 2336 informed Duke
Segwin of it.
- 2340
- 2344
- 2348 [leaf 176 a, col. 2]
The Duke
- 2352
- told this news to
Guy
- 2356

- and others. And Rofaran' (pat was an hardy man):
 Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
 Certenly, as y yow telle,
 For to geue gode cowncell). 2360
 'Lordyngys, what ys yowre redde,
 All, pat be gedurd in þys stedde,
 Of owre lorde the emperowre,
 To whom we owe grete honowre? 2364
 He schall in the mornynge
 Wende owte an huntynge
 But wyth a small compagne:
 Thus hyt was tolde me. 2368
 Nowe may we wythowte care
 Venge vs on hym thare.'
- Guy offered ¶ 'Syr dewke,' seyde Gye, 'y schall þe saye
 The best cowncell, pat y maye. 2372
 to wait for the
 emperor in the
 forest with a
 hundred knights,
 An hundurd knyghtys y schall take,
 That wyll wende for thy sake,
 And myselve wyth them wende
 To the emperowre full hende. 2376
- and, asking him
 to dine with the
 Duke,
 Y wyll hym prey on feyre manere
 To come *and* dyne wyth yow here,
 He and all hys compagne:
 We schall þem serue rychelye. 2380
 Y rede, ye dwelle here at hame:
 To take yowre lorde hyt were schame.
 Dyght thy pales nobullye:
 Loke, the mete be all redye. 2384
- bring him, by any
 means, into the
 town.
 Yf he wyth loue wyll not bowe,
 He schall wyth awe, as y trowe.
 What *wyth* strenkyth *and* wyth game,
 Y schall þem brynge all same.' 2388
- [leaf 176 b, col. 1]
 The Duke readily
 assented. ¶ Then seyde the dewke: 'ye sey wele.
 Ye schall wende, so haue y hele.
 An hundurd knyghtys bolde *and* kene

Schall wende <i>wyth</i> yow, yf <i>mystur</i> bene. ¹	2392	
Ye schall wende to that foreste		
And kepe hym, þere ye may beste.		
I prey yow, let for nothyng,		
But that ye hys body brynge.'	2396	
Gye hym armed swythe well		
Bothe in yron and in stele.		
He hyed on hys errande faste :		
Hys felows folowed hym at þe laste.	2400	
T he emperowre rose 3erlye		The next morning
And so dud Gye, wytterlye.		
The emperowre <i>and</i> hys barons		the Emperor
Wente to þe forest of Lyons.	2404	went into the forest of Lyons.
When þat þey come thore,		
The hunters fonde a wylde boore,		A boar was
That was bothe wylde and kene :		unsloughed.
He slewe þe howndys all bedene.	2408	
The hunters faste dud hym chace :		The hunters,
The emperowre folowed <i>wyth</i> hys mace.		
They had redyn but a whyle,		after following the
Vnnethe the mowntaunce of a myle :	2412	beast for about a mile, saw armed men.
They sye nerehande them a lyght,		
As hyt were of helmes bryght.		
All full were the feldus		
Bothe of hawberkys <i>and</i> of scheldus.	2416	
'We be take,' they seyde, 'allas,		
Confowndyd and slone in thys place.		
Tyrrye, my frende so lefe and dere,		
Come and see, that y see here.'	2420	
He behelde on the hylle : ²		
'Thou mayste þem see, <i>and</i> þou wylle :		
They haue vs beset on euery syde,		
That we may nodur go nor ryde.	2424	

¹ *bene* is evidently wrong, and therefore *kene* in the preceding line is probably wrong. Qy. *fre* : *be* ?

² This line appears to be corrupt. See note.

- ‘We are taken They wyll vs take thys ylke day
 Qwyck or dedde, yf they maye.
- [leaf 176 b, col. 2] They be the dewkys men Segwyne :
 by Duke Segwin’s
 men,’ cried the God gyf them schame and pyne. 2428
 Emperor.
 Gye ys formeste in that dede
 And armed on a gode stede.’
- Tyrry advised ¶ Then seyde Tyrrye to the emperowre :
 him to retreat,
 ‘Wende yow hens wyth honowre ; 2432
 while he with- For y wyll fyght, whyll y may stande
 stood the enemy,
 Wyth thys swyrde in my hande.
 Yf y may mete wyth Gye,
 He schall haue scathe, wytterlye. 2436
 All, þat come to my honde,
 Schall haue skathe *wyth* my bronde.
 Whyll that y be take or slone,
 3yt ye schall be hens gone.’ 2440
- but the Emperor ‘Nay certys,’ seyde the emperowre,
 refused.
 ‘Ther schall me neuer falle þat dyshonowre.’
 He armed hym wele, as a man,
 And on hys stede lepe he than. 2444
- Guy, approaching ¶ *Wyth* that come Gye prekyng there :
 with an olive-
 branch in his A branche of olyfe in hys hande he bere.
 hand,
 That was a feyre tokenyng
 Of pees and of looucyng. 2448
 Syr Gye dud of hys hode
 And gret þe emperowre *wyth* goode :
 ‘He the saue, syr emperowre,
 That made þys worlde, *and* þyn honowre 2452
 And thy barons, that be *wyth* the
 Gode cowncell for to geue the.
 The dewke yow sendyth tythyng
 Be me in thys morownyng 2456
- invited the And preyeth the, yf þy wyll bee,
 Emperor
 To come *and* dwelle in hys cyte,
 and his com- Ye and all yowre companye :
 panions in the Ye schall be seruyd rychelye. 2460

- He wyll the ȝelde castell *and* towre
 And the cyte *wyth* grete honowre.
 Yf þat he haue oght mysdoone,
 Hyt schall be amendyd soone.' 2464
- ¶ When þat þe emperowre þys harde,
 That Gye *wyth* no treson farde,
 He clepyd the kyng of Hungarye
 And the erle syr Tyrrye 2468
- And the erle of Wekelwolde
 And a knyght, syr Grumbolde.
 'Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'what sey ye ?
 Wyll we wende to that cyte ?' 2472
- 'Ye,' seyde Tyrrye, 'for sothenes,
 Hyt ys a grete mekenes,
 When the dewke in hys poste
 Wyll ȝylde yow hys gode cyte 2476
 And hys londe euery dele :
 Ye oght to loue hym wele.
 We schall jugge at yowre wylle.
 I rede yow, wende : that ys skylle. 2480
 Yf hyt be sothe and no lesyng,
 He may do to yow no more thyng.'
- The emperowre seyde : 'ye sey wele.
 So wyll y do, so haue y hele. 2484
 Yf y do that, wythowten fayle,
 I sewe my barons cownceyle.
 Y wyll wende wyth yowre redde,
 Whethur hyt stonde to lyfe or to dedde.' 2488
- To the cyte all they went :
 They speke of acordement.
 ¶ Now be they come to þat cyte
 All wyth game and wyth glee. 2492
- Gye broght them to þe ryche pales :
 I wott, he made hym wele at ese ;
 So they dud hys meyne
 Wyth pyment and *wyth* sotelte, 2496

name of Duke
 Segwin, who he
 said was willing to
 surrender.

The Emperor

[leaf 177 a, col. 1]
 asked his men's
 advice.

Tyrry was

for accepting the
 invitation.

So the Emperor
 and his men

accompanied Guy
 into the town.

Here

they were
 served very well.

	Wyth swannes and wyth herons, ¹ Wyth hertys and wyth brawnes. Gye hym payned on hys manere Hym to serue and make goode chere. 2500 Ther was none so lytull a knaue In þat cowrte, þat mete wolde haue, But to hym was sente plente Of þe beste in þat cuntre. 2504
But Duke Segwin durst not make his appearance.	The dewke Segwyne helde hym behynde : He drad, þe emperowre wolde hym schende. [leaf 177 a, col. 2] He was seruyd wyth the prysons ² , And wyth hym were grete barons. 2508
The next morning the Emperor went to church.	¶ The emperowre erly arose And to holy churche sone he gose, Wyth hym hys grete baronage, That were of dyuers langage. 2512
Meanwhile the Duke	The dewke rose erly on the morowe And to þe prysoners made he sorowe : ‘ Lordyngys, y bydde yow alle, That ye for me downe falle 2516 Before my lorde the emperowre, That ys a man of grete valowre, And prey hym, pur charyte, That he wyll forgeue me 2520 Hys yre and hys malecolye, That y neuer seruyd, wytterlye.’ ³
which they willingly promised to do.	All they seyde wyth gode wylle : ‘ We schall the helpe lowde and style. 2524 We schall anon wyth hym wende And pray hym to be thy frende.’
The Duke went with them, in very humble attire himself,	¶ He made hym nakyd, for he was meke, Saue hys schurte and hys breke. 2528 All, that eyr dud hym see,

¹ The rhyme was, no doubt, originally *herouns*: *braouns*.
See the note.

² MS. *prysoners*.

³ First *y* in *wytterlye* altered from *e* in MS.

- For hym had grete pyte.
 To the emperowre he ys gone :
 A branche of olyfe hath he tane. 2532
 Barefote he went þorow þe strete :
 Many a man for hym dud grete.¹
 Dewkys, erles and barons
 Went *wyth* hym, þat were prysons.² 2536
 They went to the churchewarde : towards the
 God þem spede *and* seynt Rycharde ! church.
 ¶ When they were to church come, He put himself
 The emperowre they fonde anon. 2540 at the Emperor's
 'Syr emperowre,' seyde Segwyne, mercy,
 'Ye haue had for me grete pyne.
 Syr,' he seyde, 'y wyll be dedde
 Ryght in þys same stedde 2544
 Or be drawe *wyth* horsys stronge
 Or ellys on galows hye to honge.
 Haue here thys swyrde bryght [leaf 177 b, col. 1]
 And smyte of my hed ryght. 2548
 Take my londys and my fees,
 My castels and my cytees.
 I them the graunte vterlye ;
 For y dud that folye, 2552
 When y slewe thy cosyñ dere, protesting he had
 Me defendawnt on all manere. killed Saddok
 The dewke of Coloyne³ was þer ryght only in his own
 And many an nodur doghty knyght : defence. 2556
 Yf any be, that sey therageyne,
 That he *wyth* felonye was slayne,
 Yf y may not defende me,
 Hangyd be y on a tree.' 2560
 ¶ 'Leue fadur,' seyde Gayer, Successively
 'Haue mercy on the dewke here. Gayere,
 He may yow helpe in yowre mystere
 In euery londe farre and nere. 2564

¹ MS. *wepe*.² MS. *prisoners*.³ MS. *Coleyne*.

	Forgeue hym, pur charyte, Or ye schall neuer haue yoye of me.'	
Raynere,	¶ Than spake the dewke Raynere : 'Ye oght to loue hym dere (When he ys put in yowre mercy, To leue or dye he ys redye), When he yowre systur sone sloo Hym defendawnt, so mote y goo :	2568 2572
	Yf ther be any knyght, That wyll preue, y sey not ryght, For hym wyll y here fyght And defende hym <i>wyth</i> my myght. But yf ye the dewke foryeue, Y schall warre on yow, whyll y leue.'	2576
Waldynere,	¶ Forþe þen came erle Waldynere : 'Syr emperowre, y say here, I loue the dewke ouyr all thyng. He hath hyt <i>seruyd</i> , <i>wythowte</i> lesyng. We felows ben togedur plyght. Yf ye do hym any vnryght, I schall wende to my cuntre An oost to gedur <i>and</i> wende <i>wyth</i> the.'	2580 2584
[leaf 177 b, col. 2] and the Em- peror's Steward prayed for him:	¶ The stewart ^e spake anon ryght : 'The dewke ys a doghty knyght. He hath done grete honowre : Whyll ye be in hys owne towre, He puttyth hym in þyn owne wylle To leue or dye ; <i>and</i> þat ys skylle. Ye oght to grawnt at hys askyng, Yf hyt were a gretter thyng. Forgeue hym, lorde, þy euyll wylle : To do hym harme hyt were no skylle.'	2588 2592 2596
so did Guy	¶ Gy ^e spake to the emperowre : 'Lorde, for yowre grete honowre Here my prayer at thys tyme. Haue mercy on dewke Segwyne	2600

- And *wyth* couenande y schall bee
 Yowre man in euery cuntre
 Yow to helpe in yowre mystere.
 In euery cuntrey ferre *and* nere 2604
 I schall the *serue* lowde and styлле.
 Forgeue the dewke þyn euyll wylle.
 ¶ 'Lorde,' seyde erle Tyrrye, and Tyrry.
 'Of the dewke thou haue mercy. 2608
 Yf ye thorow Segwyne
 Haue lorne Saddok, yowre cosyn,
 In stede of yowre cosyn schall he be
 And yow to *serue* wyth lewte.' 2612
 ¶ When he had seyde on hys manere,
 'Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'that be here,
 Ye haue me bydden lowde *and* styлле
 To foryeue þe dewke myn euyll wylle, 2616
 For he slewe Saddok the gode,
 My systurs sone, myn owne blode.
 He was a doghty knyght :
 I louyd hym moste of any wyght. 2620
 I forgeue hym at thys tyde
 (Y see hym meke *wyth*owten pryde)
 All my wrath *and* my euyll chere :
 He schall be to me boþe lefe *and* dere.' 2624
 Dewkys, erlys and all dud crye :
 'Syr emperowre, gramercy !'
 All þey felle downe ywysse
 Wepyng for yoye and blys. 2628
 Now haue þey kyste *and* be gode frendys,
 And many to ther ynne wendys.
 ¶ Than come forthe dewke Oton) : Only Duke Otoun
 In all þat londe þer was not a more felon. 2632
 'Syr emperowre, what haue ye wrought ?
 Ye be all to grownde broght.
 Ye haue forgeuyn here
 The dethe of yowre cosyn dere. 2636

- What man schulde haue of the drede,
 Yf þey be quytt of ther mysdede?
 And ye them drawe *and* hongyd hye,
 All wolde yow drede, þat hyt had sye, 2640
 Bothe Gye and Segwyne,
 That yow neuer dud but sorowe *and* pyne.
 Now schall ye þem loue dere,
 More, then any odor fere.' 2644
- Guy ¶ Whan Gye harde the dewke speke
 (He thoght longe to be awreke):
 'Then lyste þou, dewke Oton,
 When þou spekest of soche felon 2648
 Ageyne the dewke or ellys me:
 Ryght y wyll, hyt prouydde bee.
 Thou art a thefe and theffes fere:
 That ys sothe (y proue hyt here), 2652
 When þou laste betrayed me
 And slewe my men in thy cuntre.
 Yf þou wylt saye ageyne ryght,
 Defende the nowe wyth me to fyght. 2656
 The grace of god fro me be reeuyd,
 But y smyte of thy heuydde.'¹
 ¶ There he can hys gloue wage
 Ryght before the baronage. 2660
 They were departyd all to rathe,
 That neyþer odor dud no skathe.
 The emperowre swere hys othe:
 Whedur of them dud odor lothe, 2664
 He schulde be drawe *and* hangyd tyte
 [leaf 178 a, col. 2] Wythowt any more respyte.
 Pese ys cryed amonge euery man):
 Ther was none, that spake than. 2668
- Raynere was
 wedded ¶ There come forthe dewke Raynere
 To Segwyne wyth gode chere
 to Segwin's sister, And askyd hym hys syster² dere

¹ MS. *hedde*.² MS. *doghter*.

- Hur to haue vnto hys fere. 2672
- He grauntyd anon wyth honowre
That mayde, that was bryght in bowre,
And he hur weddyd wyth moche game,
And to hys cuntre they went same. 2676
- ¶ The emperowre on the morne and Segwin
The dewke Segwyn calde hym beforne :
'Syr,' he seyde, 'stondyth here.
Thou schalt haue my doghtur dere.' 2680 to a daughter
of the Emperor's.
- 'Syr,' he seyde, 'god of heuyn
3ylde yow for hys nameys seuyn.'
The brydale was makyd than :
Feyrer sawe ther neuer man. 2684
- ¶ Gye to Segwyne toke hys way
To take hys leue wele awaye. Guy took his
leave of Segwin,
- 'Syr dewke,' seyde Gye full yare,
'I may here dwelle no mare. 2688
- Y haue seruyd the in thy were :
Yf any man wyll more the dere,
Sende aftur me, hardyllye,
And y wyll come, sekerlye.' 2692
- 'Syr,' seyde the dewke, 'gramercy :
Hyt ys¹ vnderued, verylye.
But ye schall dwelle here wyth me :
Of my castels and my cyte, 2696
- Of my goodeys the more dele
Y schall the geue, so haue y hele.'
He toke hys leue and went hys way :
The dewke wepte, y dare well say. 2700
- ¶ The emperowre can thens wende
And wyth hym² Gye and Harrowde hende. Gye and
Harrawde
followed the
Emperor.
- He bad hym castels and ryche cyteys,
Grete honowrs and large feys. 2704
- On ryches thoght he noght,

[leaf 178 b, col. 1]

¹ v blotted out before *ys* in MS.² *Gye* blotted out before *hym* in MS.

Staying in Ger-
many,

On odur thyngys was hys thoght.

¶ Now ys the emperowre and Gye

To Almayne gone, wytterlye.

2708

All the men of that cuntre

Preysed Gye for hys bewte.

He went to þe wode to chace þe dere

And after wyth hawkys to the ryuere.

2712

Guy one day

On a day, as Gye dud ryde

On huntynge be the see syde,

He sawe a dromande to londe dryue :

Faste he hyed hym thedur belyue

2716

And askyd, what that they dud þere

And of what cuntre þat þey were,

Fro whens þey came and what þey soght

And what maner marchandyse þay broght.

2720

‘ Hyt semeth to me þe yowre chere,

That ye haue grete ryches here.’

Vp than starte a marynere

(Of langage þere was none hys pere)

2724

And seyde : ‘ we came hedur on þe stronde

learnt from
Greek merchants

Fro Constantyne, the nobull londe.

We be marchandys of that cyte,

That fro that cuntre chaced bee.

2728

The ryche sowdan of Sysane¹

(To honowre god wyll he not payne),

xv kyngys of hethynesse²

And syxty amerals more and lesse,

2732

that the Emperor
of Constantinople
was besieged in
his capital by the
Soudan.

That haue beseged the emperowre

Wyth mony knyghtys and grete socowre.

Ther ys not lefte in that cuntre

Castell, towre nor cyte,

2736

But hyt ys brente and stroyed all ;

And the emperowre and hys men all,

To Constantyne he ys wende³

¹ *Sysane* is probably corrupt. See note.

² MS. *Sarasyns*.

³ *d* in *wende* altered from *t* in MS.

- Hym and hys men to defende, 2740
 That faught wyth sarazyns kene,
 That euery day doyth them tene.
 An hundurd myle may men wende,
 Or they any crysten man fynde. 2744
 We be passyd wyth grete payne, [leaf 178 b, col. 2]
 That we ne were take or slayne.
 We be comen to thys cuntre :
 Veire *and* gryce we haue plente, 2748
 Golde *and* syluyr *and* ryche stones
 Of grete vertue for the nones,
 Clothys of golde of grete pryce
 And many odur marchandyse.' 2752
 ¶ When þe marchandys had all sayde, Guy,
 Gye hys hande on hym layde
 And betaght hym gode day :
 To hys men he toke the way 2756
 And seyde : ' Harrowde, what redyst þou ?
 Yf me thy cowncell nowe.
 I wyll take leue at þe emperowre.
 Hyt wyll be moche for owre honowre : 2760
 To Constantyne wyll we fare
 The emperowre to helpe thare.
 Marchandys me tolde of that lande,
 That he ys besegeyd strongly on euery honde. 2764
 The hethyn dystroye castell *and* cyte,
 And mekyll anoyen crystyante.'
 ' Syr,' seyde Harrawde, ' y rede wele
 To wende thedur, so haue y hele.' 2768
 ¶ They yede to the emperowre
 And toke þer leue *wyth* grete honowre.
 He was sory of ther partynge
 And offerd þem golde *and* ryche rynge. 2772
 Therof had they no thoght ;
 For, where þey come, þey wantyd noght.
 ¶ He toke an hundurde knyghtys wyght : The arrival of Guy

with a hundred knights	To the emperowre they went ryght.	2776
	They had gode wynde <i>and</i> passyd þe see :	
at Constantinople	Theder they come wyth harte free.	
	The emperowre harde seye than,	
	Gye was cōmyng to be hys man.	2780
	Of hys comyng was he blythe	
	And sende aftur hym swythe	
	Wyth an erle of grete renowne.	
	The emperowre seyde hys resone :	2784
was heartily welcomed by [leaf 179 a, col. 1] Emperor Ernis,	‘ Welcome, Gye of Warwyck,	
	In all the worlde ys none þe lyke.	
	I haue harde the preysed be	
	Yn many a dyuers cuntre.	2788
	Y trowe, þat ye schall me avayle	
	Wyth yowre helpe and counsayle.	
	The sarasyns haue beset me	
	And lefte me nothur towne nor cyte,	2792
	But oonly thys, þat we are ynne.	
	Some þey stroye <i>and</i> some þey brenne.	
	They slewe my men on a day	
	Thretty thousande, for sope to say.	2796
	Now y prey the for Mary sone	
	And for the rode he was on done,	
	That thou helpe to venge me	
	And make my londe recouerd to bee.	2800
who offered Guy the hand of his daughter.	I schall þe geue my doghter dere	
	And all my londys boþe far <i>and</i> nere.’	
	¶ ‘Syr,’ seyde Gye, ‘gramercy !	
	I wyll dwelle here, wytterlye.	2804
	Y schall the <i>serue</i> day <i>and</i> nyght,	
	As y am a trewe knyght.’	
	Nowe he hath hys leue tane	
	And to hys ynne ys he gone.	2808
Guy very soon	H e hap hym restyd but a whyle, But the mowntance of a myle. He sawe many armed men	

- Faste in the strete renne. 2812
- ‘What,’ he seyde, ‘ys all thys fare,
That y see in the strete thare?
I see knyghtys armed wele
Bothe in yron and in stele.’ 2816
- Than bespake a man wyse
Of Ynglonde and Englysche :
‘Hyt ys the admyrall Coldran),
A cosyn of the ryche sowdan). 2820
- He ys grete, hye and longe :
In all pys worlde ys none so stronge.
Hys wepon ys smered wythall
Wyth venome bytterer þen he galle. 2824
- Ther ys no man in ȝorthe, y wote,
But he schulde dye, *and* he hym smote. /
He slewe my lordys sone þe emperowre [leaf 179 a, col. 2]
Thys endurs day in a stowre. 2828
- Moche shame he hath vs wroght
And ofte on vs warre broght.
Ther ys no knyght in londe so wyght,
That durste ones *wyth* hym fyght. 2832
- Wyth hym ys the kyng of Turrye,
That ledyth all that cheualrye.’
¶ Gye seyde to hys companye :
‘Arme we vs all in hye. 2836
- The sarasyns wyll we assayle :
To smyte faste we wyll not fayle.’
They be armed euery man :
On ther horsys they lepe than. 2840
- They went forthe to fyghtynge :
I wot, ther was no lettynge.
Gye can the admerall assayle :
Hawberke nor schelde myght not avayle. 2844
- The hedde fro the body he schare :
To the emperowre a man hyt bare.
When þe emperowre hys hedde had,

learnt that
Amiral Coldran,

the strongest of
the enemies, was
before the city.

Guy and his men

immediately
sallied out.

Guy bereft
Coldran

of his head,
which he sent to
the Emperor.

- He was bothe yoyfull *and* gladde. 2848
- Harrowde ¶ Harrowde smote the kynge of Turrye,]
 The moste schrewe of all þe crye :
 Thorow þe body he gaf hym a wounde,
 That dedde he felle to the grownde.] 2852
 Than come prekyng Gandyners,]
 Of Almayne a knyght ferse :
 Smetyn he hath Rayndowne,
 A more traytur was neuer none. 2856
 Euyn in two he clafe hys harte :
 That was a strock smarte.]
 Then came forthe Mordagowre,
 The steward to the emperowre : 2860
 Bolde he was and hardye,]
 But a¹ traytowre, wytterlye.
 He smote there a sarazyn :
 Hys hedde he made hym² to tyne.] 2864
- [leaf 179 b, col. 1] He sturde hym full boldelye,]
 and the rest of his And so dud all, that were wyth Gye.
 men were also Whyll Gye had hys wepon in holde,]
 very valiant. He slewe many sarasyns bolde.]] 2868
 So dud Harrowde, the gode knyght :
 He payned hym faste for to fyght.
- But some of them ¶ The sarasyns were swythe stronge
 were nevertheless And helde fyght begle *and* longe. 2872
 killed by Astadart Then came forthe Astadart,]
 A sarasyn of a wyckyd parte.
 The burges sone of Burrye,
 A bolde knyght and an hardye, 2876
 Syr Tebawde, he hath slayne
 Wyth a scharpe swyrde *and* wyth mayne.
- and Aulart. Then come forthe Aulart,
 A bolde sarasyn, wyth a darte : 2880
 Syr Gylmyn he broght to grownde
 And gaue hym the detheys wownde. /

¹ MS. *And no.* See note.² MS. *hyt.*

- That sawe Harrawde the gode :[]]
 He was sory, be my hode. 2884
 Aulart he hyt *wyth* gode harte :
 The hedde fro the body starte,
 ¶ When Astadart sawe *pat* dede,
 For sorowe he wolde nere wede. 2888
 He smote Harrowde anon ryght[]]
 And he defendyd hym, as a doghty kny³t,[]]
 They two smeten togedur faste,[]]
 That of þer horsys downe were þey caste. 2892
 There þey *wyth* ther brondys bryght[]]
 Faste togedur they dud fyght.
 They brake scheldes *and* speres longe :
 They were knyghtys styffe *and* stronge. 2896
 On þer helmes þey smete *wyth* soche dynte,
 That þe fyre flewe owt, as hyt doþe of flynte.
 Then Harrowde hym folowde faste,
 But to hym come helpe at the laste. 2900
 Ther came an hundurde sarasyns then,[]]
 That dud hym moche stronge pyne.
 Ther þey had hym almoste slone,[]]
 But *syr* Gye come anone. 2904
 Hys swyrde harde dud he grype :[]]
 The hed of of oon he can wye,
 Another he slowe *wythowte* lettynge,
 The thrydde also, *wythowte* lesynge,[]] 2908
 He hym helpyd at that nede[]]
 And sett hym vpon hys stede,[]]
 There he slowe *and* broght to grownde
 Many sarasyns in that stownde.[]] 2912
 On bothe partes were slayne vnryde,[]]
 But moo on the sarasyns syde.
 Gye and hys meyne
 Haue slayne of them plente. 2916
 ¶ The sarasyns flewe home ageyne.[]]
 Gye them chacyd *wyth* my³t *and* mayne.[]]

Aulart at last was
slain by Har-
rawde,

who on that
account

was vehemently
attacked by
Astadart

and others.

[leaf 179 b, col. 2]
But Guy came
to his assistance.

Many were slain,
but the Saracens
lost most men.

The Saracens fled.
Guy, pursuing
them,

- Or they were of of the felde wente,
 Many were slayne *and* all toschente. 2920
 3yt was Astadart behynde,
 That the crysten men schende ;
 But he flewe at the laste
 On a rabett swyfte *and* faste. 2924
 Hys gode schelde was fro hym reeuyd,
 His helme was broke to¹ hys heuydde.²
 Gye hym sawe *and* was drerye,
 That he schulde passe so lyghtlye. 2928
 Gye faste aftur hym dud ryde :
 For nothyng he wolde abyde. }
 'Astadart,' seyde Gye, 'turne the
 And oon tyme juste wyth me. 2932
 Be the trowthe, *pat* y leue on,
 Here ys no man, but y allone.'
 He answered ¶ Then seyde Astadart to *syr* Gye :
 'I the swere, wytterlye, 2936
 Be thys day *and* be my browe
 And be Mahownde, *pat* y in trowe,
 that he must have I schall neuer be glad nor blythe,
 Guy's head Or y haue thy hedd swythe. 2940
 for his lemman. Y haue behet hyt to my lemman),
 [leaf 180 a, col. 1] That ys the doghter of the sowdan).'
 But after a ¶ He turned hym *and* faght faste :
 fierce combat Ther was nother of other agaste. 2944
 Astadart smote Gyone
 Thorowe hawberke *and* hakatone
 Ynto the body wyth a spere :
 Soche a dynte had he neuer ere. 2948
 Wyth yre Gye smote hym in felde :
 Ther sauyd hym nodur hawberk nor shelde.
 he was fain He smote hym wyth grete envye
 to flee, Wyth a spere thorow the bodye. 2952
 with a spear
 through his body.

¹ Before *to* the abbreviation of *and* is blotted out.² MS. *hedde*.

Astadart flewe away :

Gye hym folowed, per ma fay.

The lyght rabet bare hym away :

Gye was sory, the sothe to say.

2956

¶ Now ys Gye to hys felows went :

To the cyte they be lente.

In the cyte ys game and glee,

That the sarasyns scowmfet bee.

2960

The emperowre sende aftur Gye

And hym honowred : he was worthy.

The emperowre seyde : 'be seynt Rogere,

I wyll the geue my doghter dere.

2964

Thou art a man of grete valowre.

Ryght wolde, *pou* schuldest be emperowre.

All, that euyr be my mayne,

I wyll, that they bowe to the.'

2968

¶ The steward sate at the borde

And was sory of that worde.

To Gye he had grete envye

And thoght to do hym trecherye.

2972

Astadart rode towarde the ooste :

Moche was fallyn of hys boste.

In hys body he had a tronchon :

He helde hys honde on hys arson.

2976

Bothe behynde and before

The blode ranne downe of hys gore.

Hys helme was leyde on the syde :

Hys schelde was smeten in pecys wyde.

2980

Of the dethe he had grete care

And vnto the sowdan can he fare.

[leaf 180 a, col. 2]

The sowdan Astadart can see

And hys woundys, þat bloody bee.

2984

Quod the sowdan : 'what eyleth the ?

Telle me, who hath woundyd the ?'

Quod Astadart : 'y schall yow saye

Wyckyd tythyngys, be my fay.

2988

Guy and his
fellows returned
into the city,

where everybody
was glad of the
victory.

The Emperor

once more offered
Guy his
daughter's hand,

and desired him
for his successor.

His Steward was
very sorry for
that,

and plotted
mischief.

Astadart

came to the
Soudan

with the bad news
of the defeat.

- The admyrall Cordran ys dedde,
 And the kynge of Turrye etyþ neuer bredde.
 An hundurd men and 3yt moo
 Before Gye to dethe can goo.' 2992
 ¶ Than bespake the sowdan):
 'Ys thys trewe, wythowten layne?
 How schulde me falle þys auentowre?
 Is ther any socowre comen to þe emperowre?' 2996
 'Ye, for sothe,' quod Astadart,
 'A schrewde knyght *and* of wyckyd harte.
 Ther ys none so stronge in all þys lande,
 That schulde stonde a stroke of hys hande. 3000
In all thys worlde ys none hym lyke :
 Men calle hym Gye of Warwyke.
 Ther may no man stonde hys stroke,
 Thogh he were as stronge as an noke. 3004
 He hath an hundurd knyghtys *wyth* hym,
 Of Almayne the beste therynne.
 He hath me þorow the body smytte :
 Hyt ys my dethe, ye may wele wytt.' 3008
 ¶ The sowdan sware be hys crowne,
 Be Apolyn and be Mahowne,
 That he schall neuyr wele be,
 Or he haue tane that cyte. 3012
 And all herde a queynt spye
 And came anon vnto *syr* Gye
 And tolde hym, how þe sowdan
 Wolde besege the cyte anon. 3016
 The emperowre wyste nothyng
 Of the spyes smert tythyng.
 When he wyste hyt, he was full yare ;¹
 For to hys herte hyt dud grete care. 3020
 ¶ The emperowre was full fayne,
 When the sarsyns were so slayne.
 He calde forthe hys fawkenere

The Soudan was
 determined to
 assail Constanti-
 nople again.

A spy told
 Guy of this,

but it was as yet
 unknown to the
 Emperor.

[leaf 180 b, col. 1]
 The Emperor

¹ ? *sare*.

- And seyde, he wolde to the ryuere 3024
 Wyth hys hawkys hym to playe :
 Hys men went *wyth* hym þat daye. went hunting.
 Afturwarde a lytull whyle,
 When he was passyd but a myle, 3028 After he had left
 Then came forthe Mordagowre : Morgadoure,
 Iwysse, he was a traytowre.
 'Syr Gye,' he seyde, 'so haue y hele,
 In my herte y loue the wele. 3032 feigning friend-
 I haue castels *and* ryche cytees, ship for Guy,
 Brode londys and ryche feys :
 All, y wyll, that they be yowre ;
 For ye be of grete valowre. 3036
 Y desyre ouyr all thyng
 Yowre worschyp *and* yowre looueyng.
 Go we now to chaumbur same
 On some maner to make vs game, 3040 invited him to
 To the chesses or to the tabels have some
 Or ellys to speke of fabels pastime
 Before the bedde of þat feyre maye ;
 For sche the loughth boþe nyght *and* day.' 3044 in the chamber of
 ¶ Into hur chaumbur þo þey yode : the Emperor's
 Before hur bedde the mayde stode. daughter.
 'Syr Gye,' sche seyde, 'welcome ye be : Guy,
 Ys hyt yowre wylle to kysse me ?' 3048 having been
 Gye hur kyssyd curteslye ten ilyer wel-
 And sythen they spake preuelye. comed by the
 Then downe was the chekur leyde Princess,
 And before þe maydenys bedde dysplayde. 3052 played at chess
 Gye was queynte of hys playe with the Steward,
 And wanne þe furste game, *wyth* howten nay,
 And the tother wyth the beste
 And the thrydde, or he wolde reste. 3056 and was
 ¶ Vp starte the steward than repeatedly
 (He was an envyows man) victorious.
 And seyde : 'Gye, dwelle here styll'

[leaf 180 b, col. 2]	And solace þe mayde at hur wyllle. I schall wende to the cyte	3060
promising to return before long. Morgadoure went in quest of the Emperor,	And come ageyne sone to the.' ¶ Forthe wēnte Morgadowre And lefte Gye in þe maydens bowre. The emperowre sone he fonde. 'Steward,' he seyde, 'what tythande? Telle me sone <i>and</i> lye noght : Of the sarsyns harde thou oght ?'	3064
in order to accuse	'Syr,' he seyde, ' <i>wythowte</i> blame, For nothyng wyll y heyle schame.	3068
Guy of having	Ye haue a knyght at yowre wage : For yow he ys an euell page. To day yowre chaumbur he hap brokyn And <i>wyth</i> thy doghtur he hath spokyn : All wyth myght and wyth mayne	3072
committed a rape on the Princess.	There he hath by hur layne. And yf ye leue not me, Hye yow home and ye may see, In the chaumbur where he ys The maydyn for to clyppe <i>and</i> kysse. Therfore y come to telle hyt yow : For sothe, hyt ys agayne þy prowre. Yf ye hym ¹ take <i>and</i> bynde faste And in yowre pryson hym ² lowe caste And aftur be yowre mayne Jugge hym ³ for to hange hye, Then schall men yow sore drede And do to yow no wyckyd dede : Hyt schall be moche for <i>your</i> honowre To slee soche a traytowre ; And to Almayne wyll y fare For to loke, what they do thare, And y schall brynge yow compānye Thorowe the londe sone in hye	3076
		3080
		3084
		3088
		3092

¹ MS. *them*.² MS. *þem*.³ MS. *them*.

- To venge vs on owre enmyse,
 That haue vs stroyed in all wyse.' 3096
- ¶ 'Do way,' seyde the emperowre,
 'For all my cyte *wyth* the honowre
 Wolde not Gye do me that skathe,¹
 That *pou* haste seyde here full rathe ; 3100 [leaf 181 a, col. 1]
 For he ys a full trewe knyght
 Bothe be day and be nyght.
 Y haue hym behet my doghtur dere :
 I wyll not breke my couenande here.' 3104
- ¶ When Morgadowre sawe hyt wele,
 That he hym louyd euery dele,
 Of hys wordys he can forthenke ;
 But 3yt he thoght anodur wrenke.² 3108 contrived another.
 To the chaumbur he ys gone,
 Ther Gye was *wyth* þe maydyn allone.
 When he was comen nere Gye,
 He seyde : 'herkyn þe preuelye. 3112
 Gye,' he seyde, 'be seynt Mychell,
 Y loue the in my herte well.
 Therfore y warne þe of þy skathe :
 I rede, that *pou* fle hens rathe. 3116 he advised him to
 Hyt ys tolde the emperowre,
 That *pou* *wyth* strenckyþ haste brokyn hys bowre
 And hys doghtur *pou* haste by layne :
 Therof ys he nothyng fayne. 3120 was resolved
 He sware be hys ryght hande,
 Yf *pou* be fowndyn in hys lande,
 Thou schalt be drawe *and* hongyd hye :
 No nodur dethe schalt thou dye. 3124
 Hye the hens for anythyng :
 Loke, thou make no dwellynge.
 Yf ye be fownde in thys cyte,
 Thou muste be slayne *and* þy meyne.' 3128 to slay him and
 his men.

¹ After this line the catchword, *That thu haste*, by another hand.

² MS. *wrenche*.

Guy, filled with
indignation,

¶ ‘Allas,’ he seyde, ‘that ys wronge.
Nowe haue y dwellyd here to longe,
When y schall for my mede
Suffur dethe for my gode dede. 3132

For anythyng, *pat* euer y wroght,
Wythowte gylte hyt ys on me broght.
To day at morne, so haue y hele,
Be hys worde he louyd me wele. 3136

Who may leue anythyng
In feyre wordys or feyre behetyng?

[leaf 181 a, col. 2]

To day, when he to rever yede,
He hyght me londe *and* moche mede. 3140
Wyth wronge he wyll slo me here
For the wordys of a losengere.’

went

¶ Owt of þe chaunbur Gye ys went
All drery *wyth* hevy entent. 3144
To hys ynne he ys gone
And calde hys felows euerychone.

to tell the news to
his companions.

‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘arme yow all sone.
Here ys no dwellyng for vs to wonne. 3148

We ben bewryed to the emperowre,
That we schulde do hym dyshonowre.
Be hym, that made sonne *and* moone
And for vs was on rode done, 3152

Or we be tane *and* slayne *wyth* wronge,
Many of them schall dye amonge.
Than schall they wytt, wytterlye,
That we be flemed falselye.’ 3156

They armed
themselves,

¶ They armed þem hastyly *pat* tyde
And on þer horsys þey can stryde.
Gye went *wyth* hys mayne

and left the city
with the intention
of going over to
the Soudan.

Wyth wrath¹ fro that cyte. 3160
Toward the soudan can þey fare
To serue hym and dwelle thare.

But on their way

¶ Tho came home the emperowre

¹ *f* blotted out before *wrath* in MS.

- Fro huntynge wyth moche honowre. 3164 they met with the
The wedur was clere *and* day lyght :
He sawe helmes many and bryght.
The emperowre asked then,
What were all tho armed men. 3168
Oon seyde, hyt was syr Gyowne,
‘All in wrath goyth fro þe towne
In odur stedde to do hys beste
Wyth schelde *and* spere to fyght preste. 3172
He went in wrath, so haue y hele,
Armed on a stede wele.’
¶ When the emperowre harde so saye, He asked Guy
He toke hys hors *and* rode hys way. 3176
He stroke the stede wyth the sporys :¹
He spared nother rugge nor forys.² [leaf 181 b, col. 1]
‘Syr Gye,’ he seyde, ‘stonde styлле
And telle me now, what ys þy wyлле? 3180
And who hath trespaste so to the,
That þou wylt now wende fro me?
My dere frende, seye me sone :
What thyng ys the mysdone? 3184 what he had to
Haue y trespaste anythyng? complain of,
Telle me now *wythrowte* lesynge ;
For, what thyng some euyr hyt be,
That hath þe greuyd in crystyante, 3188
Hyт schall be dressyd thys ylke day,
How some euyr ye wyll say.
I vndurstande, that ye wyll fare
To the sowdan *and* dwelle thare. 3192 or if he was going
I schall neuer haue þen yoye nor blysse, over to the Soudan
Whyll y in thys worlde ys.
Golde *and* syluyr he may þe take
And a ryche man he may þe make ; 3196 to be made a rich
Therefore þou wylt goo dwelle þere man.
And fyght sore agenste vs here.’

¹ MS. *spurrys*.² MS. *forows*.

- Guy answered ¶ 'Syr,' quod Gye to the emperowre,
 'Schall y neuyr be traytōwre. 3200
- he had been told
 that Ernis made
 light of his
 service. Hyt was me tolde in the cyte,
 That nede had ye none of me
 Nor no wyll of my seruyse,
 For y serued yow *wyth* fantyse.¹ 3204
- The Emperor
 prayed him to
 return: ¶ The emperowre anon ryght
 Askyd hym and seyde ȝyt :
 'My dere frende, turne ageyne :
 Therof wolde y be full fayne. 3208
- everything should
 be as he pleased. And all schall be at thy wyll,
 What þou wylt haue lowde or style.
 For noþyng, þat men may say,
 Wyll y be wrothe, be my fay.' 3216
- [leaf 181 b, col. 2]
 Now Guy knew ¶ Now be they kyssyd *and* cordyd well
 And all forgeuyn every delle.
- that the Steward
 had deceived him. There at the furste Gye perseyued,
 That þe steward hym dysseyued.² 3220
- Guy informed the
 Emperor 'Syr emperowre,' seyde *syr* Gye,
 'Herkyn to me, wytterlye. 3224
- of the new assault
 intended
 by the Saracens. We schall be beseged *wyth* oost vnryde
 Abowte þe cyte on euery syde,
 Wyth sarsyns bothe black *and* kene
 Wyth full grete force, as y wene : 3228
- To the cyte wyll they fare
 Wyth grete ooste *and* mekyll mare.
 Hymselfe sowdan wyll come hedur
 And all the sarsyns *wyth* hym hedur.³ 3232

¹ MS. *fantasyes*.² MS. *betrayed*.³ *togedur*? The whole line written in the margin by the same hand.

He hath sworne be Apolyne,
That all schall dye, þat be þerynne.'

The emperowre seyde to Gye sone :

'As ye wyll, hyt schall be done.

3236

The Emperor
answered that
everything should
be done at Guy's
will.

Y haue geue yow my powere

And therto gode auentere.¹

Yf they wyll vs assayle,

We schall vs defende, sawns fayle.'

3240

¶ Gye calde forthe þe constabull,

Guy consulted

A nobull man *and* of cowncell stabull :

Crystofor was hys ryght name,

So god schylde hys body fro schame.

3244

with Constable
Christopher.

'Syr,' he seyde, 'herkyn hedur :

Take we owre cowncell now togedur.

To morne schall we assayled bee :

Wyll we holde the cyte

3248

Or ellys þem kepe in the felde

To fyght *wyth* þem *wyth* spere *and* schelde ?

Or they be passyd the hyllys hye,

We schall þem wrath, be my nye.'

3252

¶ Gye seyde to the constabull :

'Thys cowncell schall be holde, *wythowt* fabull.

Do crye² anon thorow the cyte,

That all the men, that there bee³

3256

Helpe hym neuyr god at nede,

[leaf 182 a, col. 1]

That leuyth behynde for any drede.'

¶ On þe morne were gedurd in þe feldys

The next morning

Twenty thousande whyte scheldys.

3260

'Lordyngys,' sey e Gye, 'herkenyth me,

Guy exhorted his
men

All, that beleue on the trynyste.

The sarsyns schall we assayle :

to assail their
enemies valiantly.

For nothyng wyll we not fayle.

3264

Thynke on god in trynete

And to holde vp crystyante

¹ MS. *auenture*.

² *a* blotted out before *crye* in MS.

³ After this some (probably two) lines are wanting. See the note.

And *wyth* strenckyþ of owre hondys
 Defende owre goodys *and* owre londys. 3268
 They haue slayne owre frendys dere :
 Loke, that we be vengyd here.
 Yf we anythyng fle,
 Slayne schall we sone bee. 3272
 Then schall þys londe, *wythowte* feyne,
 Be in angur and yn peyne.
 Therfore wende we boldelye
 And fyght *wyth* them manlelye. 3276
 Y wyll *wyth* yow thedur fare :
 Yf y yow fayle, god gyf me care.
 All they seyde : 'gramercye !
 Wele haue ye spokyn now, *syr* Gye.' 3280
 To the hylle be they gone :
 The sarsyns there þey fownde anon.
 All the cuntre thereabowte
 Was full of sarsyns grymme *and* stowte. 3284
 ¶ The sowdan calde a man *wyth* yre :
 He was ryche and a grete syre :
 Kynge he was wyse and bolde,
 The beste in all þat londe tolde. 3288
 'Kynge,' seyde þe sowdan, 'y *commawnde* þe,
 Take twenty thousande men *wyth* þe :
 Go to the hylle swythe anone
 And sloo the theuys euerychone. 3292
 They haue me greuyd swythe sore :
 Loke, that y see them no more.'
 [leaf 182 a, col. 2] ¶ The kynge went forthe *wyth* hys ooste¹
 (And made moche noyse and boste) 3296
 Wyth pryde for take the hylle,
 But y wene, that they spedde ylle.
 Ryght at the entre of the hylle
 Gye cryed lowde and schrylle : 3300
 'Lordyngys, do yowre helpe now :
 Hyt wyll be mekull for yowre prowte.

The Soudan first
 sent the King of
 Tyre

with 20,000 men
 against the city.

- Yf þey may gete the mowntayne,
 We schall be takyn all or slayne. 3304
- Yf we haue the hylle *and* þey þe dale,
 We schall þem worche moche bale.¹
- ¶ They caste stones *and* schett dartes
 And scharpe speres on all partes. 3308
- They schett arows heded *wyth* stele;
 They faght *wyth* scharpe swyrdys wele.
 Gye, y wott, was well bolde:¹
- He gedurd them, as schyp in folde. 3312
- When Gye was vppon the hylle,¹
 He made them sone to fare full ylle,
 That in ther downe fallynge
 Echoon slewe odur, *wythowt* lesynge; 3316
- So that in a lytull stownde
 Tenne thousande were broght to grownde.
 ¶ When he hym sawe, þe kyng of Tyre,
 Forthe he start *wyth* mekyll yre. 3320
- He bare a swyrde longe *and* scharpe:
 He thoght to crysten men to carpe.
 He smote a knyght on the heuydde:¹
 Hys lyfe þere was hym bereeuydde. 3324
- When Gye sawe that owtrage,
 He thoght to quyte hym hys wage.
 He smote the kyng wondur sore:
 He cleuyd hys crowne, he speke no more. 3328
- He slewe paynys thyckfolde,
 That on the hylle lay full colde.¹
- ¶ When the sowdan see hys men,
 How they in the felde ranne,² 3332
- He clepyd the kyng of Nymbye:
 He was of grete felonye.
 ‘Kyng,’ he seyde, ‘seyst þou noght,
 How owre men be downe³ broght? 3336
- The Greeks defended their position on a hill so successfully
- that in a short time 10,000 Saracens were dead.
 Even the King
- was slain by Guy.
- Now the King of Nubia
- [leaf 182 b, col. 1] was sent against them.

¹ MS. *hedde*.² Perhaps originally *renne*?³ *dere* blotted out before *downe* in MS.

The bodyes of them on the hylle lyse.
 The kyng ys slayne, þæt was full wyse.
 So euyr me helpe goddys¹ myne,
 Termagawnt and Apolyne, 3340
 But y be vengyd on hym sone,
 I schall neuyr abyde tyll none :
 Y schall take the hylle wyth force
 And sloo eche oon, be my corse. 3344
 We haue an hundurd agenste oon,
 And therfore sone schall þey be tane.
 ¶ They toke þe hylle swythe faste
 And many a stone downe caste. 3348
 The Grege defendyd þem well
 Azenste the sarsyns, þat were trebell.
 They smote of wyth þer gysarmes²
 Fete and honde, schouldur and armes. 3352
 That ylke batell was full stronge :
 There dyed many a man amonge.
 ¶ So wele dud Gye that day,
 That he was preysed for nobull ay. 3356
 In a stedde styлле he stode
 And faght wyth an harte gode.
 The paynyns faste hym assayle :
 He them hyt, wythowten fayle, 3360
 Bothe before and behynde.
 He smote downe, þat he myght fynde,
 That wythynne a lytull stownde
 There lay abowte hym on þe grownde 3364
 An hundurd slayne and wele moo,
 That hym had ȝernyd for to sloo.
 To hys breste laye the hepe,
 That he myght not away lepe. / 3368
 Also dud Harrowde sore :
 He faght, as a wylde bore.
 He had a swyrde, that was gode :

Though he
succeeded in
taking the hill,

yet the Greeks
defended them-
selves bravely.

Guy was amidst
a heap of dead
bodies.

Harrawde fought
also like a boar.

¹ MS. *god*.

² MS. *gesernes*.

- Many a hedde *wyth* that of yode.
 Of the sarsyns he smote *þat* day
 Two hundurd, or he went away.
 Hys hawberke was brokyn wyde
 Wyth many hoolys on euery syde. 3372
 Paynyns assaylyd hym at *þat* case,
 That hys hawberke brokyn was,
 He defendyd hym, as a lyowne,
 And all, *þat* was *wyth*¹ Gyowne ; 3380
 And also dud the Gregeyse
 Defende them wele in all wyse.
 ¶ The kyng of Charturs was tane
 And other sarsyns many ane. 3384
 Gye þere made a grete wondur ;
 For some of þem he smote in sondur.
 Gye *and* hys ferys were armed wele
 Bothe in yron and in stele. 3388
 In *þat* brunte many they hente
 And many slewe *and* all torente.
 They were so smert *and* so kene :
 They made the sarsyns all to flene
 On euery syde therwythall.
 They of þe hylle downe let falle
 Many *and* þyck of grete stones,
 That were ordeygnd for þe nones, 3396
 As grett, as any man may bere,
 The sarsyns *wyth* for to dere.
 They let the stones downe glyde
 And slewe many on euery syde. 3400
 Tenne thousande in a stownde
 There were slayne *and* broȝt to grownde.
 Hyt felle so that ylke day,
 That fewe of þem went away. 3404
 ¶ The nyght ys comen, þe day ys gone :
 The sarsyns bene all slone.

[leaf 182 b, col. 2]

Every companion
 of Guy,
 and every Greek,
 fought well.

The King of
 Charturs and
 many besides
 were taken
 prisoners.

By the valour of
 their opponents
 the Saracens at
 last were routed

only few escaped.
 When the night
 came,

¹ MS. *wyth hym Gyowne*.

the dead bodies covered nine furlongs.	So many sarsyns þere were slone, That ix furlonge men myght gone, ȝyt schulde þey set no fote on grownde For dedde bodyes in þat stownde.	3408
[leaf 183 a, col. 1] Abelle,	¶ Forthe went in yre Abelle the wyght : He was newe dubbed knyght. To the sowdan he come thore :	3412
himself wounded, came riding to the Soudan,	He was woundyd passynge sore. 'Sowdan,' he seyde, 'flee or be dedde : Seyst thou not thy men redde ? Thy goddys þe had not in þer thoght, Therfore haue we spedde noght: We wyll þem brenne in fyre bryght : They dud vs neuer gode in fyght.	3416 3420
and advised him to return to his pavilion.	Wende now on yowre stede browne Whome vnto yowre pavelowne. Brynge home þe men, þat woundyd are : ȝyt some of þem may wele fare.'	3424
This done,	¶ Now be the sarsyns come ageyne Wyth grett schame <i>and</i> many slayne.	
the Soudan ordered his idols to be brought.	The sowdan dud before hym brynge All hys goddys in a thrynge. 'A, goddys,' he seyde, 'ye are false : The deuyll yow honge be the hals.	3428
He reproached them with ingratitude,	I haue done yow many a gode dede : Euyll ye haue qwytt me my mede. Ye wolde me <i>serue</i> , yf ye myght stonde, As ye haue done before honde.'	3432
and beat them with a stick so effectually as to break their legs and arms.	He toke a staffe of appulle tre And bete hys goddys all thre. He brake of þem boþe legge <i>and</i> arme : 'Ye dud me neuer gode, but harme. Gode may ye do me none More, than the harde stone.'	3436
At last he cast them out,	He toke þem be the fete faste And dud þem sone owte caste.	3440

- ¶ Sythen he lepe on hys rabyte¹
 And sende a messengere full tyte 3444
 To all men in hys poste
 Fro thens vnto the redde see
 And bad þem come for þer honowre
 Hym to helpe and to socowre. 3448
- ¶ Gye clepyd to hym hys mayne :
 'Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'god thanked be.
 We haue done a feyre chace :
 Lorde be thankyd of hys grace. 3452
 Owre enmyes be all tane,
 Ouyrcomen and many slane.
 To the cyte wyll we gone
 Wyth owre felows euerychone.' 3456
 All wyth yoye þey went home,
 But þey were woundyd euerychone.
- ¶ Now ys Gye of grete poste :
 All hym loueyd in that cyte. 3460
 The emperowre, so haue y hele,
 Loueyd Gye swythe wele.
 Thorowe hys helpe he wende full well
 To wynne hys londe euery dele. 3464
 Gye doyth all, that euyr he wyll,
 In the courte bothe lowde *and* styлле.
- ¶ Then spake syr Morgadowre,
 That ylke false traytowre. 3468
 He began to thynk a wyle,
 How he myght Gye begyle.
 He hath thoght a felonye
 (Soche oon harde y neuer, wytterlye) 3472
 For to make Gye to do message
 To the sowdan, that ys so rage.
 He thoght, yf Gye thedur wente,
 He schulde neuer aftur more be sente. 3476
 Gone he ys the emperowre nere

After this revenge
 he sent a mes-
 senger for
 reinforcements.

[leaf 183 a, col. 2]
 Guy with his host
 returned into the
 city.

He was very
 powerful now
 and loved by all.

Only Morgadoure
 plotted his ruin.

He advised the
 Emperor

¹ MS. *rabett*.

	And seyde to hym on thys manere :	
	‘ Yf ye wyll leue my cownceyle, ¹	
	Hyt schall þe well gretly awayle	3480
	In all thyng, that y may do ;	
	For y am moost holdyn thertoo.	
	But y telle yow gode redde,	
	I wyll, ye do me vnto dedde.	3484
	The sowdan hath sende hys messengere	
	Thorow all hys londe ferre and nere,	
	To hym schulde come more <i>and</i> lesse	
	All men, that in hys lande ys,	3488
[leaf 183 b, col. 1]	That may bere schylde or spere	
	Or hys owne hedde bere,	
	Yow to sege in yowre cyte	
	And yow to take <i>and</i> yowre meyne.	3492
	¶ Now haue ye here a knyght :	
	In all þe worlde ys none so wyght.	
	That ys Gye of moche pryse	
	And <i>wyth</i> hym Harrowde þe ² marchyse.	3496
	In hym ye may yow wele affye ;	
	He wyll yow helpe, sekurlye.	
to propose by a messenger to the Soudan	Sende a knyght þe sowdan to say	
	And byd ³ hym sygne a certeyn day.	3500
	Whyll he wyll algate haue þy lande	
	And all <i>wyth</i> strenckyth of mannys hande,	
a single combat	Byd hym sende a gode knyght	
	<i>Wyth</i> oon of yowres for to fyght.	3504
	Yf hyt may so betyde,	
by which to decide their quarrel.	That yowrys haue þe bettur syde,	
	He let yow haue all yowre lande	
	<i>Wyth</i> pees in yowre owne hande.	3508
	And, yf hys knyght haue þe maystry	
	And ouyrcome yowres <i>wyth</i> felonye,	
	For yowre lande ye schall do homage	
	And euery yere zelde hym trewage.’	3512

¹ MS. *cowncell*.² MS. *of*.³ MS. *bad*.

¶ Than spake þe emperowre Ernys :¹

The Emperor
assented,

‘Syr steward, at thyn avyce

I schall wytt at my baronage,

Who wyll do thys message ;

3516

And, yf any wyll thedur fare,

He schall be preysyd for euermare.

He, þat wendyth abowte that thyng,

Drede hyt ys of hys home comynge.’

3520

although he was
afraid that the
messenger might
not return.
He assembled
his men,

¶ He let calle hys baronage

And all men, þat he gauē wage.

‘Lordyngys,’ seyde the emperowre,

‘I say for yowre honowre,

3524

All, that euyr be gedurd here,

Erle, baron, knyght and squyere :

I wyll sende a messengere

[leaf 183 b, col. 2]

To the sowdan on all manere.

3528

I wolde not warre, yf y myght,

But holde my londe wyth lawe and ryght.

Let hym fynde a sarsyn

And y to fynde a knyght of myn.

3532

The batell vpon them schall goo :

Let hyt be done betwyx þem twoo.

Yf my man ouercome bee,

I schall hym ȝelde my londe free.

3536

Yf he falle on þe warse syde,

As god graunte, hyt so betyde,

He schall fro my londe ryde

And make here no lenger abyde

3540

Nor no nodur of hys lynage

Do me no wronge nor no owtrage.

And, who dar do my ȝernynge

And fro me bere thys tythyng,

3544

and asked who
would dare to
go with that
message.

I schall hym loue ouer all odur

And holde hym, as myn own brodur.’

¶ When þe emperowre had all sayde

¹ MS. in *Ernys*.

- And all hys speche downe layde, 3548
 Ther was none of all, *þat þere*¹ ware,
 That wolde speke, lesse nor mare.
 Then vp starte a nobull knyght :
 Constable Christopher The constabull Crystofor he hyght. 3552
 To hys gyrdull hys berde was longe :
 Whyll he was yonge, he was stronge.
 ‘Syr emperowre, be thys day,
 As me thynkyth, y schall say. 3556
 I oght to geue yow gode counceyle²
 And to do yow honowre, *wythowte* fayle.
 To sende yowre men for to be dedde,
 blamed the Emperor's intention. Me thynkyth, hyt ys a sympull redde. 3560
 Thou myghtyst as wele *wyth* þyn hande
 Slee þy men wele wyttande.
 I wene, ye schall fynde none in þys lande,
 That wyll on that errande fonde. 3564
 [leaf 184 a, col. 1] For cowardyse sey y hyt noght ;
 For *wyth* my wyllle and my thoght,
 Yf y now also nobull were here,
 As y was *wythynne* thys ix yere, 3568
 I wolde do that ylke sonde :
 For þe dethe schulde y not wonde.
 Y am oolde *and* haue whyte hare
 And of my strenkyth am made bare. 3572
 Hyt ys an hundurd wyntur ryght,
 Sythe y was made a knyght.
 Whyll y was a yonge man,
 Grete messages dud y than. 3576
 Now am y olde *and* may not vayle,
 But yf hyt be to geue counseyle.’
 Harrawde would have offered to do the errand, ¶ Harrawde lokyd on syr Gye
 And thoght, what he wolde sey, veryly. 3580
 He wolde haue askyd *þat* vyage,
 Yf Gye had not take *þat* owtrage.
 but feared that Guy might take it ill. ¹ *were* blotted out before *þere* in MS. ² MS. *counccell*.

When Gye harde the worde to ende,		Guy at last
That no man <i>profurde</i> hym to wende	3584	
(He stode styлле, as a stone,		
To wytt the wylle of euery mone,		
Yf any were so bolde <i>and</i> wyght,		
That durste do <i>pat</i> errande ryght):	3588	
Gye vp starte swythe wyght.		
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y am yowre knyght:		expressed his
Y schall to the sowdan fare		readiness to go.
And telle hym yowre errande thore.	3592	
To do yowre errande y schall fonde:		
For the dethe y wyll not wonde.		
There schall be none so lytull a page,		
But he schall here my message’ ¹	3596	
¶ Gye 3yt answeyrd wyth grete yre:		
‘I schall not leue, be my swyre, ²		
But y wyll wende in thys case		
To dye therfore in the place.’	3600	
¶ Now wendyth Gye owt of þe prees		
Vnto the oost of the Gregeyes.		
Gye ys a bolde baron):		
God, that suffurde hys pascioun,	3604	[leaf 184 a, col. 2]
Yeue hym grace wele to fare		
And to come ageyne <i>wythrowten</i> care!		
He came to hys herbergye		
And fonde hys felowes heuelye.	3608	His fellows
They wolde wende <i>wyth</i> hym echone,		wished to
But he wolde suffer of þem neuer oon.		accompany him,
Quod Harrowde: ‘let me <i>wyth</i> the fare:		but he purposed
To dye wyth the y am full yare.’	3612	to go by himself.
‘Harrowde,’ seyde Gye, ‘be here styлле:		
Thou schalt not wende <i>wyth</i> my wylle.’		
¶ Gye hym armed on all wyse		He armed himself,
Wele and on a queynte gyse.	3616	

¹ After this some lines are wanting. See note.² *w* in *swyre* in part illegible because of a spot.

On he caste an hawberke bryght :
 Whyll he had *pat*, he dradde no wyght.
 On hys hedde hys helme he caste
 And lasyd hym swythe faste : 3620
 A serkyll of golde, *pat* wolde noght¹
 Wyth an c pownde of golde be boght.
 Hyt was full of precyous stones
 And ryche perles for the nones. 3624
 Sythen he gurde hym wyth hys bronde :
 Hyt was worthe moche londe.
 Hys schylde he caste abowte hys halse
 And a spere he toke alse. 3628
 Hys gode stede he bestrode :
 Forthe of the cyte sone he rode.
 Al men of that grete cyte,
 Of *syr* Gye had grete pyte. 3632
 All þey wepyd swythe sore :
 They wenyd to see hym no more.
Now hath Gye, as y say,
 Toward the sowdan take þe way. 3636
 He ne stynte nor he ne blanne,
 Or he to the sowdan came.
 As he rode vp and downe,
 He knewe þe sowdans pavelowne. 3640
 An egull of golde þeron was bryght
 And a stone, that gaue grete lyght,
 That men myght see all the nyght,
 As hyt had be the sonne² bryght. 3644
 ¶ When he came to the pavelowne,
 In he wente, be my crowne.
 He fonde the sowdan at hys mete
 And wyth hym xv kyngys grete 3648
 And odur men of grete valowre,
 And all þey *seruyd* the sowdan þore.
 Forthe than starte *syr* Gyowne

bestrode his steed,
 and left the city
 amidst universal
 lamenting.

By a golden eagle
 Guy knew the
 Soudan's pavilion.
 [leaf 184 b, col. 1]

He found the
 Soudan at table
 with many great
 men.

¹ Perhaps corrupt. See note.

² MS. *somer*

- And schewyd sone hys resowne : 3652
 ‘That ylke kyng, þat syttyþ in heuyn,
 That made þe erthe *and* þe planettyz seuyn
 And in the see the sturgone,
 Yeue the, *syr* sowdan, hys malyson 3656
 And all, that y hereynne see,
 That beleue in Mahowndys poste.
 ¶ Thys worde sendyþ þe the emperowre,
 That ys a man of grete valowre, 3660
 Thorow whom the sarsyns were tane,
 Many woundyd *and* many slane.
 He bad, þou schuldest not dwelle longe
 In hys londe to do hym wronge. 3664
 Yf ye chalenge oght *wyth* ryght,
 He byddyth the sende forthe a knyght,
 That wyll sone for the fyght ;
 And, yf owres be slayne *wyth* force *and* myzt, 3668
 He wyll the geue trewage be yere
 And serue the, as hys lorde dere ;
 And, yf hys knyght thorow grace
 Ouercome yowrys in the place, 3672
 Thou schalt delyuyr hys londe rathe
 And restore hym ageyne hys skathe.
 Wyth the emperowre, y the say,
 Of thys thyng thou take a day. 3676
 And, yf that þou wylte not thys,
 Telle me, whyt thy talente ys.
 Here y am for my lordys sake :
 Yf ony wyll the batell take, 3680
 I wyll defende my lordys londe,¹
 Whyll y leue, *wyth* myn honde.’
 ¶ Þen seyde þe sowdan : ‘what art þou,
 That comes into my courte nowe ? 3684
 Ther was neuer² knyght nor squyere,

After an impre-
 cation on all
 believers in
 Mahomet,

he delivered his
 message.

[leaf 184 b, col. 2]

The Soudan
 asked his name.

¹ *ho* blotted out before *londe* in MS.

² *h* blotted out before *neuer* in MS.

- That durste speke so to me ere.
 He did not conceal Gye seyde : 'y schall the saye
 My name, or y wende awaye. 3688
 I wyll þe nor no nodur beswyke .
 that he was Guy of Warwick. Y am Gye of Warwyke.
 The Soudan ¶ 'Art thou,' he seyde, 'þat ylke page,
 That hast done me all þe owtrage? 3692
 Thou slewe my cosyn Coldrane :
 Hys hedde thou smote of allone.
 I schall neuyr ete bredde
 To day, or þat þou be dedde. 3696
 Thy lorde the louyd nothyng,
 When he comawndyd þe þys message to brynge.
 Now y schall vengyd¹ bee :
 Thou schalt be hongyd on a tree.' 3700
 commanded him to be seized and thrown into a pit. ¶ He comawndyd, he schulde be tane
 And in a pytte caste allone.
 When he had etyn *and* made hym at ese,
 He thoght Gye for to sese. 3704
 Abowte Gye was grete thronge.
 'God wott,' quod he, 'y stonde to longe.'
 There he faryd, as he wolde wede :
 Wyth hys spurrys he stroke hys stede. 3708
 'Sowdan,' he seyde, 'þou schalt aby
 Furste of all thys companye.'
 He smote the sowdan wyth hys sworde,
 That the hedde trendyld on þe borde. 3712
 The hedde he toke in hys honde :
 Owte of þe pales dud he wonde.
 He smote of many a hevydde²
 Of þem, þat wolde haue hyt fro hym revydde. 3716
 The hedde wyth strenckyþ awaye he bare
 And knytt hyt in hys lappe thare.
 ¶ Faste he pryckyd þorowe þe ooste
 On hys stede, þat moche coste. 3720

¹ *g* in *vengyd* has not quite its regular form.² MS. *hedde*.

- The sarsyns hyed þem full faste
 Aftur Gye, when he was paste.
 Gye to take they were preste : [leaf 185 a, col. 1]
 Many a man dud hys beste. 3724
 Gye rode to a roche of stone :
 The paynyns folowde hym euerychone. He was pursued
 Ofte he turned them ageyne : by the Saracens,
 Many of them hath he slayne. 3728 of whom he killed
 Ther was neuer 3yt man on grounde, a large number.
 That durste agenste so many stonde.
 Now of Harrowde wyll we speke : In the mean tyme
 For sorowe, he þo3t, hys herte dud breke. 3732 Harrowde had
 He haþe so moche sorowe *and* woo, been very uneasy
 That he may not oon fote goo.
 For Gye all þat sorowe hath he : about Guy.
 He wende, he schulde hym neuer see. 3736
 'Alas, Gye,' *syr* Harrowde seyde,
 'That þou were so fowle betrayed.
 Now wott y wele, *wythowten* drede,
 I schall hym neuer see on stede. 3740
 Then were y schente : what shall y doo ?
 I haue no man to moone me too.'
 ¶ As he was in sorowe *and* dud wepe, In his sorrow
 Vppon hys bedd he felle on slepe. 3744 he fell asleep,
 He can mete a straunge swevon :
 He thoght, he sawe *syr* Gyowne
 On a stede faste syttande
 And a scharpe spere in hys hande. 3748
 Lyons *and* lebardes assayled hym faste, from lions and
 That had made hym sore agaste, leopards,
 Hys schylde was brokyn eyn in two,
 And hys hawberke was reuyn also. 3752
Wyth moche pyne he helde hys lyfe :
 He was in so moche stryfe.
 ¶ When Harrowde of hys slepe dud wake, As soon as he
 For drede faste can he quake. 3756 awoke,

- his fellows at
his command On hys felows dud he calle :
 'Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'arme yow all.
 To helpe Gye, loke, no man fayle ;
 For he ys in moche batayle.' 3760
 Hastyly were they dyght
- [leaf 185 a, col. 2] On ther horsys redy to fyght.
role with him Faste they redyn forthe in hye
towards the For drede of ther maystyr Gye, 3764
Soudan's camp. That he schulde be woundyd or slane¹
 Or ellys wyth þem to preson tane.
- At last they saw ¶ At the laste they sawe the ooste
 Of the sarsyns, that made boste. 3768
 Of armed men were full þe feldes,
 Some *wyth* hawberkys *and* some *wyth* scheldes.
- Guy chased by
his pursuers, All they chasyd there *syr* Gye ;
 Hym to sloo they were redye. 3772
 They hym assayled on euery syde,
 And he gaue þem strokys vnyryde.
- who were so near
him as to have
seized the bridle
of his steed. So nerehonde þe paynmys yede,
 They had þe brydull of hys stede. 3776
 Then was Gye in sorowe and woo,
 That he myght not passe þem froo.
 All tho, that wolde hym take,
 He made þe rugges for to crake. 3780
- But now
Harrawde and
his followers
reached him, ¶ Then came *syr* Harrawde :
 To a paynym he made asawte.
 He hyt hym hye vppon þe crowne :
 There halpe hym not *syr* Mahowne. 3784
 To þe breste þe swyrde went ynne :
 Therof thocht he no synne.
- and slew a great
many Saracens. Echeoon of the companye
 Slewe two paynmys or thre. 3788
 Than þere was a batell stronge,
 And many sarsyns dyed amonge.
- Guy and
Harrawde were ¶ Now hath Harrowde yoye *and* game,

¹ MS. *slayne*.

- That he *and* Gye were mett same. 3792 very glad to see
 For yoye, that they were mette, each other again.
Wyth ther eyen bothe þey grette.¹
 Then kyssyd Gye euery man,
 When he was fro thronge tane. 3796
 The sarsyns be ageyne wente The Saracens
 All wyth sorowe *and* beschente. turned back.
 Gye *wyth* yoye and hys meyne Guy went into
 Turned ageyne to the cyte 3800 the city,
 All wyth pryde and yolytee, [leaf 185 b, col. 1]
Wyth moche game and more glee. where bells
 Then beganne þe bellus to ryng, were rung,
 Prestys *and* clerkys meryly to synge. 3804 and priests and
 When þey sawe þe hed than, clerks sung
 Moche yoye made many a man. merrily.
 All they seyde : ' wythowte lese, All were glad to
 Of the sowdan schall we² haue pese. 3808 see the Soudan's
 Thankyd be god all weldyng, head.
 That he vs hath sende that tythyng.'
 ¶ Gye ys gone vnto the towre Guy presented it
 And presentyd the hedde to the emperowre. 3812 to the Emperor,
 ' Syr,' he seyde, ' vndurstande :
 The hedde, that y bere in³ hande,
 Ys the hedde of the grete sowdan :
 I hym slewe myselfe allone. 3816
 Y yow make thys present :
 Take hyt wyth gode entent.'
 When þe emperowre sawe þat thyng,
 He myȝt hym not holde fro wepeyng. 3820 who wept for joy,
 An hundurd sythe he hym kyste : and kissed Guy
 What yoye he made, no man wyste. a hundred times.
 All they thankyd heuyn kyng,
 That þe warre was broght to endyng. 3824
 ¶ Gye made or the thrydde day

MS. *wepte*. ² *h* blotted out before *we* in MS.³ *in* altered from *on* in MS.

- Guy caused a marble pillar to be erected with a crowned head of brass on it, containing the Soudan's head,
as a warning to any other enemy.
The Emperor again offered Guy
his daughter's hand.
He also sent messengers through his realm [leaf 185 b, col. 2]
to restore what had been lost. One day the Emperor
went hunting, accompanied by Guy and others.
Guy saw a lion coming wearily towards him,
pursued by a hideous dragon.
- A pyller of marbull grett *and* graye :
Aboue he set a hedde of brasse,
In that the sowdans hed was. 3828
Aboue all he sett a crowne ;
Ryght in mydwarde of the towne,
That all odur warned myght bee,
That wolde do harme to the cyte. 3832
¶ Than spake the emperowre Ernys :¹
' Gye, herkyn to myn avyse.
I thynke to do the gret honowre :
Take *pou* my doghtur in hur bowre.' 3836
' Syr,' he seyde, ' gramercy :
That ys vnderued, sekerlye.'
¶ The emperowre comawndyd hys men
To make þem redy be ix and tenne, 3840
' And thorowwt my londe fare
And store ageyne, *þat* lorne was are.'
¶ The emperowre rose erlye :
Matens *and* messe he harde in hye 3844
And sythen he lepe on a mewle browne
And toke *wyth* hym *syr* Gyowne,
Dewkys *and* erlys, that there were,
That had hym *serued* far *and* nere : 3848
To hunte they went that day.
The wedur was hote in þe waye.
Gye sawe, as he dud ryde,
As he blenchyd hym besyde, 3852
A lyon come towarde hym werelye,
But vnnethe he myght drye.
He brayed faste *and* gaped wyde :
He wyste not, where he myȝt hym hyde. 3856
Aftur hym come a dragon;
That folowde faste the lyon).
Hys hed was gret *and* grennyng
And hys eyen, as fyre, brennyng. 3860

¹ MS. *in ernys*.

- Hys tethe scharpe, hys mowþe wyde :
 Hys body was grett *and* vnryde.
 He was grymme *and* he was felle :
 He went, hyt had be þe deuyll of helle. 3864
 ¶ Then seyde Gye to hys meyne :
 'I wyll go forthe sekerlye.
 Y wyll preue *wyth* all my myght,
 Whedur y dare *wyth* þe 3ondur dragon fyzt. 3868
 Loke, ye store not of þat stedde,
 Whedur y be quyck or dedde.'
 ¶ Gye a spere toke in hys honde :
 Fro hys felows he hym wonde. 3872
 He went forthe a gode spede
 To helpe the lyon at that nede.
 When þe dragon sawe Gyowne,
 He came to hym *and* lefte þe lyone. 3876
 Gye sawe hym come fleande :
 He toke hys spere in hys hande.
 He lokyd, where he myzt do hym skathe,
 And he aspyed hyt sone full rathe. 3880 [leaf 186 a, col. 1]
 Vndur the wynghe he schett þe spere :
 Thorow þe body he dud hym bere.
 Then the dragon felle to grownde
 And dyed in a lytull stownde. 3884 soon expired.
 He drewe hys swerde made of stele
 And smote of hys hedde euery dele.
 He behelde the body on grownde :
 Hyt stanke, as a pylyd hownde. 3888
 ¶ Gye rode to hys men warde :
 The lyon folowed hym full harde.
 He went before Gye pleyng
 And *wyth* hys tayle hym faynyng. 3892
 He lykkyd Gyes fete also
 And lepe abowte hys stede halse.
 Gye had wondur of that dede
 And lepe downe of hys stede. 3896

Forbidding
his men

to follow him,

he assailed the
dragon,

which, pierced
by Guy's spear
under one of its
wings,

When Guy
returned to
his men,
the lion followed
him.

	He strokyd hym on þe rygge ofte And leyde hys hande hys hedde on lofte. The lyon walowed on the grownde	
like a dog.	Before Gye, as dothe an hownde. Sythen he playde <i>wyth</i> hym faste : Of hym Gye was not agaste. Gye lepe on hys stede than : The lyon before hym faste ranne.	3900 3904
	He folowed Gye est and weste : Gye hym louydde at the beste. Gye to the emperowre dud ryde : The lyon yede be hys syde.	 3908
	Gye hym tolde euery dele, How that he had spedd wele. All þey wondurde on the lyon, That he louyd so <i>syr</i> Gyone.	 3912
	¶ The emperowre <i>and</i> hys meyne Went vnto the cyte. Bothe Gye and the emperowre Togedur þey went to the towre.	 3916
	Gye into hys chaumbur ys gone And <i>wyth</i> hym went hys gode lyone. Into what stede þat Gye wente, The lyon folowed hym, verament.	 3920
He followed him everywhere, [leaf 186 a, col. 2]	Before Gyes bedde he laye : Ther myȝt no man brynge hym awaye. Of hym was Gye full fayne, For he was hys chaumburleyne.	 3924
and Guy was fond of him.	¶ When þey had the londe rede thorowe, Castels, cytes, towne and borowe, To Constantyne þey came in hye.	 3928
After their return	The emperowre callyd to hym <i>syr</i> Gye. 'Gye,' he seyde, 'grathe the therforne : My doghtur þou schalt wedde to morne. Tyme ys comen, <i>and</i> y am payde : Hyt schall no lenger be delayde.'	 3932
to Constantinople, the Emperor told Guy he should be wedded to his daughter the next day.		

Gye answeyrd, as a knyght :

‘Yow therfore zelde þe kynge of myght.’

¶ On þe morne Gye dyzt hym nobullye

And went to the churche merelye,

And hys felows euerychone

Wyth hym full feyre they gone.

Ther was none so lytull of all,

But they were cladde in palle.

All men, that sye *syr* Gye,

Of hys degre they had ferle

Gye came to churche than

And there he sawe many a man),

Kynge, dewke and barowne,

The beste of all that regeowne.

There were ryche byschoppes for hys sake,

That the maryage schulde make.

¶ ‘Gye,’ seyde Ernyse,¹ ‘come to me :

My doghtur here geue y the

And, whyll y leue, halfe my londe

And, when y am dedde, all in þy honde.

Thou schalt be emperowre aftur me :

Before my baronage y grawnte þe.’

All men, þat þere dud stande,

Were fayne of that tythande.

Gye hym thankyd² nobullye

Of hys honowre and hys curtesye.

¶ Then came the byschoppe revyscht

And broght ryngys of the beste.

When he sawe þe ryngys³ broght,

On feyre Felyce was hys þoght.

‘A, Felyce,’ he seyde, ‘þat feyre wyght,

I haue þe louyd wyth all my myght.

Schall y for ryches forsake now þe ?

On the morrow
Guy went to
church with his
fellows.

3936

3940

3944 There were many
great lords
assembled,

as well as bishops.

3948

Guy, as the Em-
peror's son-in-law,

was to have half
the empire now,
and the whole
after Ernis's
death.

3952

3956

But when the
bishop brought
[leaf 186 b, col. 1]
the wedding rings,

Guy was reminded
of Felice.

3964

¹ MS. *Armyse*.

² *answeyrd* originally in MS., but the scribe has blotted it out, adding *thankyd* in the margin.

³ MS. *rynge*.

	Hyt schall neuyr for me so bee. Thy bare body ys darre to me, Then all the gode in crystyante.'	3968
He fell on the ground,	Wythowte ony more he felle to grownde : Soche an euyll toke hym in þat stownde.	
and requested the Emperor	¶ 'Syr emperowre,' seyde Gye, 'For the loue of owre lady,	3972
to put off the marriage.	Do thys spowsage in respyte (Ye may me nothyng wyte), Tyll that y amendyd bee Of stronge peyne, þat greuyþ me.'	3976
All were very sorry for him.	'Me forthynkyth,' quod þe emperowre, 'sore, That hyt schulde be delayed more.' The emperowre made euyll chere And all, þat euer abowte hym were.	3980
	¶ Now be they partyd aweye Wyth moche sorowe, be thys daye. The mayde for Gye sorowed faste : Sche poght, hur herte wolde tobraste.	3984
The Emperor's daughter was quite discon- solate.	Ther myzt no man brynge hur away : Sche swownyd soo ¹ that ylke day. Gye leyde hym on hys bedde : Ther wyste no man, what euyll he hedde. ²	3988
Guy lay in bed : none knew the nature of his illness.	Thre dayes he helde hym styлле In hys chaumbur at hys wylle. Ther wyste no man, þat was wroght, Of hys fantyse and hys thoght.	3992
The lion was so grieved	So grete dole hath the lyon For hys lorde syr Gyowne :	
as to touch no food for three days.	Thre dayes owte and owte Ete he no mete, wythowte dowte.	3996
At last Guy unbosomed him- self to Harrawde,	¶ Gye calde Harrowde to hym þat day : 'What ys the beste? thou me saye. Harrowde,' he seyde, 'what ys thy redde?	
[leaf 186 b, col. 2]	For sorowe y am nere dedde.	4000

¹ soo added over the line in the same hand.² MS. hadde.

- Redyst thou, that y weddyd bee,
 Or to wende to my cuntre ?
 In Ynglonde ther ys a maye
 (Now to the y dare well saye), 4004
 The erlys doghtur Rohawte :
 Sche hath my loue, *wythowte* defawte.
 Men calle hur feyre Felyce :
 In all thys londe ys none so wyse. 4008
 Sche ys feyre *and* bryght of hewe :
 In all þys worlde ys none so trewe.’
 ¶ ‘Syr,’ seyde Harrowde, ‘y schall þe say who advised him
 The beste cowncell, *þat* y maye. 4012
 The emperowrs doghtur, loke, *pou* take
 (A ryche man sche may þe make) to marry the Em-
 Aftur hym to be emperowre. peror’s daughtir
 God haþ geuyn yow grete honowre : nevertheless. 4016
 In all þys worlde schall none bee
 Of yowre ryches *and* yowre poste.
 Soche twenty schulde be at þy hande
 Of ryche erledams *wyth* wode *and* lande, 4020
 Than ys erle Roholde the gode.
 He, *þat* forsakyth worschyp, ys wode.’
 ¶ ‘Let be, Harrawde : *pou* louyst me noght,
 When *pou* me soche cowncell broght. 4024
 When *pou* me seyst forsake *þat* maye.
 I schall be dedde that ylke day.’
 ¶ ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘holde yow style ;
 For now y wott, what ys your wylle. 4028
 That ye hur so louyd, wyste y noȝt.
 When ye of cowncell me besozt,
Wyth all my myght, be thys day,
 Gode cowncell y wyll geue yow, yf y maye : 4032
 Whyll ye so loue Felyce,
 Forsake hur not, yf ye be wyse.’
 G ye rose vp at the laste :
 To courte went he full faste. 4036

exhorted him not
to forsake her.

Guy rose and went
to court,

- All had yoye, *þat þere ware*,¹
þat he was couyrde of hys care.
 accompanied by the lion,
 [leaf 187 a, col. 1] Wyth hym came hys lyone,
 Thorow whome felle treson). 4040
 Tho bad the emperowre grete,
 That Gye schulde dwelle at mete,
 To do hym some solace ;
 For þorow hym he delyuerd was. 4044
 The lyon went thorow þe pales
 And of hym spake all the Gregyes
 And of the boldenes of Gyowne,
 How he slewe the dragon). 4048
 which the Steward determined to kill.
 The steward had grete envye :
 He þoght, þe lyon schulde abyen.
 ¶ Aftur mete a longe owre
 Gye went *wyth* the emperowre : 4052
 While the lion lay
 The lyon went in that palees
 Meryly and in feyre pese.
 asleep in the garden,
 In the garden ageyne þe sonne
 He laye to slepe, as he was wonne. 4056
 Guy having gone home again,
 Gye went and laye to slepe :
 Of the lyon toke he no kepe.
 In a soler² stode the stewarde
 At a wyndowe to loke owtwarde. 4060
 He þoght to sloo hym *wyth* hys hande,
 As that he laye slepande.
 He wolde venge hym³ on *syr* Gye :
 He was a traytowre, verelye. 4064
 the Steward pierced him with a spear.
 In hys honde he toke a spere :
 Thorow the lyon he can hyt bere.
 The lyon vp starte *wythow*ten more,
 But he was woundyd passynge sore. 4068
 A maiden saw it.
 That sawe a maydyn in hur bowre
 And cryed on Morgadowre

¹ MS. *were*.² MS. *seler*.³ *on* blotted out before *hym* in MS.

- And seyde : ‘*pou* haste done grete wronge.
 Thou schalt hyt fynde, or hyt be longe. 4072
 When Gye wottyth, *pat* he ys slayne,
 He wyll hym venge *wyth* grete mayn.’
 ¶ The lyon ranne forþe into þe strete :
 Hys bowels trayled at hys fete. 4076 The lion ran
home, trailing his
guts,
 Also faste, as he myght renne,
 He came home to Gyes ynne.
 In hys chaumbur he hym fonde
 On hys bedde slepande. 4080 [leaf 187 a, col. 2]
 He came before Gyowne :
 At hys fete he felle downe. and fell down at
Guy’s feet.
 Hys fete he lykkyd *wyth* mornynge :
 Hyt was a tokyn of loueynge. 4084
 ¶ When Gye hym sawe woundyd þore,
 For hys lyon he wepyd sore.
 ‘God,’ he seyde, ‘of mekyll myght,
 Who hath do me þys vnryght? 4088
 Now he hath my lyon slane,
 All my yoye ys fro me tane.
 Be god, that dyed on a tre,
 I wolde not for thys feyre cyte, 4092
 What some euyr that he bee,
 That hath thus betrayed me.’
 ¶ *Wyth* that he sawe before hys eye
 Hys lyon gode there dye. 4096 The lion died.
 He seyde : ‘now haue y care :
 Ther was noþyng, y louyd mare.
 Thou art dedde in thys place :
 To venge me gode geue me *grace*. 4100 Guy resolved to
revenge his death.
 Yf y wyste, who had the slane,
 Sone schulde y be hys bane.
 In all þys lande ys none so wyght,
 Dewke, erle, baron nor knyght, 4104
 But my lorde the emperowre,
 But y schall slee that traytowre.’

- ¶ He toke hys swyrde abowte hys swyre :
 To the cyte he came wyth yre. 4108
 A knyght sawe, þat he was wrothe,
 And seyde : ' who dud yow lothe ?
 He askyd thorow the halle :
 ' Lordyngys, y prey yow all, 4112
 Yf any wote, he wyll me saye,
 Who slewe my gode lyon þys day.
 Y schall hym geue ryche mede
 And be hys man in euery stede. 4116
 Thys þynge schall be hys¹ medys :
 xv hawkys and xv stedys
 [leaf 187 b, col. 1] And an hundurd besawntys of golde :
 Therefore he schall to me be beholde.' 4120
 Nobody could tell
 him. They seyde all, sekerlye :
 ' We can not telle yow, *syr* Gye.'
 He made inquiries
 everywhere. ¶ Sythen he went fro the halle :
 Knyghtys and squyers he askyd all. 4124
 Fro chaumber to chaumber Gye went :
 At the laste he mett þe maydyn gente.
 Sche askyd tho Gyone,
 Who had slayne hys lyone.² 4128
 Sche was not fayne, wytterlye :
 ' I sye hym smetyn þorow þe body.'
 ' Now,' quod Gye, ' my dere lemman,
 Telle me sone : spare for no man. 4132
 I schall geue the golde schynande
 And *serue* from fote to hande.'
 that the Steward
 was the culprit. The maydyn seyde : ' Morgadowre
 Hath the done thys dyshonowre. 4136
 I sye hym smyte hym sore :
 I wote, he myght leue no more.'
 Guy ¶ When Gye herde speke of þat felon,
 That had slayne hys lyone, 4140
 Owt of þe chaumbur hyed Gye :

¹ MS. *þer*.² Apparently corrupt. See the note.

- To seke þe steward he was besye.
 Into a chaumbur can he gone :
 He fonde the steward þere anon). 4144 found him in
 He pleyde at chesses *wyth* hys cosyn), his chamber,
 When he sye Gye loke so grymme, playing at chess
 Then seyde Gye : 'traytowre, þou be drawe. with his cousin.
 Why haste þou my lyone¹ slawe? 4148
 Thou haste *wyth* the no reson
 For to do me thys treson).
 Defende þe now, as a knyght :
 I wyll þe smyte *wyth* all my myght.' 4152
 He drewe hys swyrde : or he stynte,
 Hys hedde he smote of at a dynte, Fighting with
 ¶ When hys cosyn sye that dede, him,
 For wo, he þoght, hys herte wolde blede 4156 His cousin
 He starte on a nodur parte attempted to
 And in hys honde he hent a darte. [leaf 187 b, col. 2]
 Gye hym kept *and* dud hym harme :
 He smote of hys ryght arme. 4160 but Guy cut off
 Tho he cryed : 'Gye, gramercye,' his right arm.
 And he went fro hym in hye.
 ¶ Comen he ys to the emperowre :
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'for yowre honowre 4164
 I haue the *seruyd* *wyth* my powere :
 Hyt ys me quytt on euyll manere,
 Whyll y haue lorne be treson)
 In yowre court my gode lyon). 4168
 Yowre steward slewe hym in grete yre :
 I haue quytt hym wele hys hyre.
 For euer he hath hys waryson) :
 Schall he neuer more do treson). 4172
 Who wyll be yowre *seruande*,
 When ye may hym not warande,
 Nor a straunge man yn yowre cyte,
 But he haue harme *and* vylene? 4176

¹ MS. *lemman*.

I wyll wende to my cuntre :
 Y desyre there for to bēe.
 To see my frendys y wolde be blyþe :
 I wyll haste me thedur swythe. 4180
 Yf any man wyll yow dere
 Odur in pees or in were,
 Do me to wyt anon ryght :
 I schall yow helpe *wyth* all my myzt.¹ 4184
 ¶ When the emperowre sye Gye,
 That he was wrothe *and* drerye :
 ‘Syr Gye,’ he seyde, ‘for goddys mercy,
 Yf any man haue done yow velany, 4188
 Take thyselfe vengeawnce :
 I hyt grawnte, so haue y chawnce.
 Let be youre frendys in *your* cuntre :
 To morowe schall yow weddyd bee.’ 4192
 ¶ Gye seyde : ‘syr, y thynke, noght.
 Wyfe to take ys not my thoght.
 Yf y had weddyd þy doghtur dere
 And ye had made me lorde here, 4196
 Yowre men wolde among þem saye
 And oftesythe make deraye,
 That ye had made the emperowre
 But of a pore bachelowre, 4200
 And that hyt were a grete dysperage
 To the and all thy baronage.
 Bettur hyt ys to wende *wyth* honowre,
 Then to dwelle here *wyth* grete dolowre. 4204
 Therfore y sey yow, *syr* emperere :¹
 I wyll wende on all manere.
 Haue gode day, now wyll y fare :
 God yow schelde fro sorowe *and* care.’ 4208
 ¶ When the emperowre harde hys wyll,
 That he wolde not dwelle styllle,
 Wyth hys eyen he wepyd sore

In vain Ernis
 tried to assuage
 his anger.

Guy declared he
 was afraid that,
 if he married
 the Princess,
 he should excite
 the envy of the
 Greek barons.

[leaf 188 a, col. 1]

¹ MS. *Empere*.

- And all þe men, that þere wore.
 Fyfte somers *and* fyfte stedys
 He badde Gye to hys medeys,
 But he had wonne before ynowe
 Of þe sarsyns, that he had slowe.
- ¶ The emperowre dud, as a lorde hende,
 To Gyes men, when þey schulde wende :
 He gaue them goide for Gyes sake
 As moche, as they wolde take.
- All they seyde, the emperowre
 Was a man of grete valowre.
- ¶ Knyghtys and squyers, þat þere ware,
 All dud wepe, when Gye dud fare.
 Wyueys, maydenys and chylde also
 All þey weped, when he schulde goo :
 Whyll he was in that lande,
 Ther wolde no man brynge warre on honde.
- ¶ The emperowre *syr* Harrowde calde
 And askyd hym, yf he dwelle wolde
 Wyth hym in that cyte,
 And a ryche man schulde he bee :
 He schulde hym geue, sekurlye,
 Of all þat lande þe feyrest lady.
 ‘Syr,’ seyde Harrowde, ‘gramercy.
 Wytt ye wele, y am wyth Gye :
 Hym schall y neuyr fayle
 For no ryches, þat may awayle.’
- ¶ Now ys Gye in the see :
 God saue hym for hys pyte
 And all hys feyre companye.
 Faste they sayled, wytterlye.
 So longe þe wynde haþ þem dreuyn :
 At Almayne they be vp reuyn.
 To the emperowre þey come swythe :
 For Gyes comyng he was blythe.
 The emperowre honowred Gye
- 4212
- The Emperor
 offered him much
 wealth,
 but Guy had won
 enough of the
 Saracens.
- 4216
- So Ernis gave
 Guy’s men as
 much as they
 wished.
- 4220
- All were sorry for
 Guy’s departure.
- 4224
- 4228
- The Emperor
 asked Harrawde
 to stay with him.
- 4232
- But Harrawde
 would not part
 from Guy.
- 4236
- [leaf 188 a, col. 2]
- Guy,
- 4240
- 4244
- having stayed
 with the German
 Emperor for
 some time,

	And all hys feyre companye.	4248
	When Gye a stownde had dwellyd pare, To hys cuntre wolde he fare. They hyed on ther way faste :	
passed into Lorraine.	They come to Loren at the laste.	4252
	They were resseyuyd nobullye For ther grete cheualrye.	
One day in spring,	¶ Hyt was in may on a daye, When euery fowle makyth hys laye :	4256
travelling through a wood,	Thorow a foreste as þey dud ryde (A feyre cyte was besyde), Wyth grete loue Gye badde hys men	
he sent his men to the next town to bespeak and prepare lodgings.	Wende vnto the cyte then To take þer innes, þere þey dud knowe ; For þere he wolde be a throwe To here fowles merely synge And see feyre flowres ¹ sprynge.	4260 4264
Having remained alone,	¶ Hys men haue the wey tane : In the forest Gye ys allane. As he lay myrthe to here, Hys þoght chaungyd <i>and</i> hys chere.	4268
	Forthe he went in that foreste : There was many a wylde beste. As he wente in that solace, He harde besyde at a place	4272
	A grete mornyng of a man) : Thedurwarde he drew hym than. Vndur an ² hawþorne tree he fandē A man lyeng sore bledande.	4276
he found under a hawthorn bush [leaf 188 b, col. 1] a wounded Knight,	He thoght, he was a gentyll knyght, That had be woundyd at some fyght. He behelde hym, wytterlye : He had of hym grete farlye.	4280
	Feyre <i>and</i> grete <i>and</i> moche he was :	

¹ MS. *fowles*.² *hande*, as it seems, blotted out after *an* in MS.

Gye had wondur of that case And seyde, be Mary of heuyn quene, A fayrer man had he not sene.	4284	
Hys berde was longe, as a spanne : Hys vysage was boþe pale <i>and</i> wanne For the blode, that he had bledde, And for þe woundys, that he hedde. ¹	4288	
Hys eyen were black, hys vysage brade, Longe forhede and wele made. Feyre and longe was he thore : A godelyar man was none bore.	4292	
In a robe of scarlet was he cladde. Thorow þe body a wounde he hadde. Hosyd <i>and</i> schode he was ryght : He semyd wele to be a knyght.	4296	
Hys neck was feyre, whyte <i>and</i> longe. Hys fyngers were boþe grete <i>and</i> stronge. Hys schouldurs thyck, hys breste brade. On euery syde he was wele made	4300	
And gyrde <i>wyth</i> a swyrde of stele. Hys schylde laye at hys hedde wele. ¶ Gye behelde and had pyte And askyd hym : ‘pur charyte, Knyght,’ he seyde, ‘what ys þy name ? Where were þou borne ? who dud þe shame ? Say to me anon ryght. <i>Wyth þat</i> couenande y schall þe plyght, Of me schalt thou haue no skathe, But y schall helpe the as rathe.’ ¶ ‘Syr knyght,’ he seyde, ‘aske me no mare ; For y haue so moche care. I may not telle, be my crowne, To no wyght my chesowne. Yf y rehersyd now my care, Then schulde y haue moche mare.	4304	He inquired his name and country, and who had wounded him.
	4308	
	4312	The Knight refused to answer these questions
	4316	[leaf 188 b, col. 2]

¹ MS. *hadde*.

- Wende ye hens, *syr*, y the pray ;
 For wyt ye not of me to day,
- unless Guy would engage But yf ye wyll graunt me a þyng,
 That y schall say, *wythowte* lesynge, 4320
 And yowre trowthe to me plyght
- to assist him with all his might. To day me to helpe *wyth* all *your* myzt ,
 And y schall telle þe all my case,
 Fro whens y came *and* what y was 4324
 And who me haþe woundyd sore
 Thorowe chawnce *and* wyckyd lore :
 Ellys y schall yow neuer saye,
 Thowe ye wolde helpe me þys day.' 4328
- Guy, ¶ Gye thoght in hys herte ryght,
 Whedur he wolde be trowþeplyght.
 But he was in soche atyre,
 That for to wyt he had desyre. 4332
 'Syr knyght,' he seyde, 'in þy ryght
 The to helpe my trowþe y plyzt,
 So þat þou wylte the sothe saye,
 Who hath done þe all þys deraye.' 4336
- Then Guy heard the story of the Knight.
 He was Tyrry, son to Earl Aubry of Gormoyse.
 ¶ Then seyde to hym þe woundyd man) :
 'I schall þe telle, *syr*, as y can.
 I was the erlys sone Awbrye
 Of Gormoyse, *syr*, sekurlye. 4340
 Wyth þe dewke Lorayne¹ y was :
 I *seruyd* hym in many a case.
- He loved, and was loved again by, Ozelle, daughter to the Duke of Lorraine.
 He had a doghtur, a feyre wyght :
 In all þe worlde ys none so bryzt. 4344
 Y louyd hur wythowte fayntyse :
 So dud she me on all kyns wyse.
 Sche behett to loue me than)
 Before ony odur erthely man). 4348
- In her honour, after having been dubbed a Knight, he sought adventures in foreign countries.
 For hur loue y made me knyght :
 Owt of my cuntre y me dyght
 Farre into vncowthe londe

¹ MS. *lowan*).

Dedes of armes for to fonde	4352	
In Frawnce and in Burgoyne,		
In Almayne and in Sesoyne. ¹		[leaf 189 a, col. 1]
Ther was no justes nor turnament		
In all the lande, where y wente,	4356	
But y had the beste of all.		
On me soche pryse þere dud falle.		
¶ Sythen harde y speke beyonde þe see		
Of warre in a farre cuntre.	4360	
The sarsyns, þat were so many <i>and</i> stronge,		
In Rome had bene <i>and</i> warryd longe.		Being at Rome,
They had dystroyed that ² cuntre		
And moche of all crystyante.	4364	
Thedur y went lose to wyne		
And slewe many a sarsyne.		to defend it against the Saracens,
I was preysed for doghty of hande,		
As for the beste in all þat lande.	4368	
There y ³ slewe a paynym kyng		
And broght the warre to endyng.		
¶ Then came swythe to me a sonde,		he was informed
That broght me wyckyd tythande,	4372	
How the dewke Oton of Payuye		
Wolde do me grete vylenye.		
He schulde on the syxte daye		
Wedde Ozelde, that feyre maye,	4376	that Ozelle would be married to Duke Otoun of Pavia if Tyrry did not come in time to deliver her.
And bad, þat y schulde come swythe		
To helpe þat maye, or sche were wyfe,		
And at þat tyme redy be thare		
To feche hur or neuyr mare.	4380	
¶ Thedur y toke the wey than		He was then journeying there
And wyth me went many a man.		
Nyght nor day restyd we noght,		night and day.
Tyll we were to þe cyte broght.	4384	
There was wyth the dewke Oton		

¹ MS. *sysayne*.

² *in* blotted out before *that* in MS.

³ MS. *he*.

	Many a knyght <i>and</i> many a gode baron.	
	They were redy at that weddyng	
	Wythowte any more dwellynge	4388
As Ozelle was being led to church,	Toward the church	
	For to be wedde :	
	Betwene two lordys sche was ledde.	
	Faste y prekyd in that thronge,	
	Tyll y myght that lady fonge.	4392
[leaf 189 a, col. 2]	Wyth hur sone there y mette :	
	I toke hur <i>wythowten</i> lett.	
he took her upon his horse and rode away.	Y sett hur on hors myn me behynde :	
	I rode away, as dothe þe wynde.	4396
	¶ Thorow the cyte rose grete crye,	
	That Ozelde wente wyth Tyrrye.	
	Than armed was many a knyght	
	And on hors full sone dyght.	4400
He was pursued,	All they chacyd me at the laste	
	And my dethe they sworn faste.	
	I kepte them full hardlye :	
	So dud many of my companye.	4404
	Then was there a grete fyght :	
	Many of myn þey dud vnryght.	
and lost all his men.	At the laste y was lefte allone,	
	And all my men fro me were slone.	4408
	When y sye my men so dedde,	
	Full of sorowe was my redde.	
	Y was nye ¹ owte of my wytte.	
	Many of them sore y hytt	4412
	And slewe þere in a lytull stownde	
	Twenty men vpon the grownde.	
	In þe worlde, y went, þer was no knyght,	
	But <i>syr</i> Gye, that ys so wyght,	4416
	That schulde haue done so wele allone,	
	But yf that he had be slone.	
	¶ Then sye y come many and thycke	

¹ *y* blotted out before *nye* in MS.

- Of¹ Lorens and of Lumbardes wycke. 4420
 All þey sayled me, euery man :
 I myght not defende me than.
 Y toke my lemman me behynde
 And rode forthe, as the wynde. 4424
 They chasyd me that ylke day :
 Fro the stedde y wanne away.
 Tyll hyt came to darke nyght,
 Euyn they folowed me ryght. 4428
 All þat londe thorowe y rode,
 Tyll y came to a watur brode.
 Schyppe myght y there fynde none.
 They chasyd me þedur euerychone. 4432
 Brode and depe the watur was,
 And odur wey myght y not passe. [leaf 189 b, col. 1]
 I hastyd me vpon my stede,
 That was gode at euery nede : 4436
 The watur y toke *and* passyd wele
 Wyth goddys grace euery dele.
 Forthe y wente a gode pase :
 Ther durste no man come, þere y was. 4440
 ¶ Hedur y came to thys foreste
 Wyth my lemman, y lound beste.
 I wente, none had be in þys wode,
 That wolde haue done me, but gode. 4444
 What for wakyng *and* for fastyng,
 What for trauell *and* for fyghtyng,
 I restyd me on thys grownde
 And² felle aslepe in a stownde 4448
 And tyed my hors tyll a tre :
 My lemman sate before me.
 Then came theuys fyftene,
 Bolde men and eke kene. 4452
 All slepyng þey woundyd me :

At last, he came
to a broad water,

through which his
horse swam.

But his pursuers
turned back.
In that forest

he purposed to
rest a little,

but, while asleep,
he was wounded

¹ Of before *Lorens* omitted in MS.

MS. A.

by some robbers, who also carried off Ozelle and Tyrry's steed.	I am dedde, as thou mayste see. Sythen þey toke Ozelde, þat maye, And my stede and wente awaye. ¶ I haue þe tolde now all my lyfe, How y haue bene in mekyll stryfe. Of the dethe geue y noght : On þat maye ys all my thoght. Of þe þeuys she getyþ grete shame. God venge me for hys holy name. Thou haste harde now my care : I wot, y may leue no mare.	4456
He conjured Guy	Yn goddys name y conyure the, That þy trowþe þou plyght to me :	
to bury him as soon as he was dead,	As soone, as þat y am dedde, Thou bere me to some gode stedde, To churchē or to abbaye, Or y be any wylde bestus praye.	4468
and to rescue Ozelle from the robbers,	To þe 3ondur hylle, loke, þat þou fare, And þe theuys þou schalt fynde þare. Yf þou myght þem confownde	4472
[leaf 189 b, col. 2]	And þe theuys brynge to grownde, Thou mayste wynne to þyn honde	
getting at the same time the best horse in the world.	The fayrest maydyn in þys londe And also the beste stede, That euer knyght rode on at nede : Y want hym in paynym londe Owt of a scarsyns honde. For hym men bydde me at a tyme Fyftene castels of stone and lyme And xv cytees, þe beste on molde, And also many horsys chargyd wyth golde : All þat me badde a sarsyn kynge. He was tryste in all fowndynge. My schylde and spere here thou take And helpe þe maydyn for my sake. Thynke on þy trowthe and do þy myght :	4476 4480 4484
		4488

God the helpe in my ryght.'

When Gye sye, hyt was Tyrrye,
That was bolde and hardy,

Guy was very
sorry for Tyrry.

4492

Faste he moonyd hym, wele y wate,
þat he was in so euyll estate,

And þoȝt, he shulde neuer be glade nor blyþe,

4496

Or he had vengyd Tyrrye swythe.

He toke hys schylde and hys spere

And hys swyrde *wyth* hym dud he bere.

To þe mowntayne can he fare :

A grete logge fonde he thare.

4500

He found the
robbers,

Before þat dore he fonde þe stele.

He farde than, as he wolde wede :

Downe he lepe and drewe hys bronde,

In he bare hyt in hys honde.

4504

¶ When he sye the theuys prowde,

He began to crye lowde :

'Trayturs, þeuys, þe deuyll yow honge.

Why haue ye do soche a wronge ?

4508

Ye haue slayne a doghty knyght :

Ye schall hyt bye, my trowþe y plyght.'

He, þat furste cownturd þere *wyth* Gye,

Hys hedde loste he smertlye :

4512

and slew all of
them.

The seconde and þe thrydde also,

The fowrthe, þe v. and also moo.

[leaf 190 a, col. 1]

Nyehande he slewe þem *wyth*hynne,

Or þey myȝt þer wepons wyne.

4516

Ther was lefte there but oon,

But þey were woundyd or ellys slone.

He ys paste, as y yow say,

But depeys wounde he bare away.

4520

¶ Gye starte to þat maydyn ȝyng

And seyde : 'make no dole, my swete þyng.

Ryse vp and come *wyth* me :

To Tyrrye y wyll lede the.'

4524

On a mewle he sett þat maye

Coming back with
Ozelle

- And to þe wode he toke þe way.
 to the hawthorn bush,
 he missed Tyrry. When he came to þe hawethorn tree,
 Away was syr Tyrry. 4528
 Therfore he made grete deraye,
 For he was so gone away.
 Sory was tho syr Gye ;
 For he wende full sekurlye, 4532
 That wylde bestys of þat foreste
 Wyth hym had made ther feste.
 ¶ He lokyd hym a lytull besyde
 Looking about him,
 he saw tracks of horses' feet.
 And he sye fete of horsys vnryde. 4536
 Leaving Ozelle,
 He set þe mayde on þe grownde
 And rode hymselfe forþe in þat stownde.
 he folowed them
 He folowed the trace swythe faste
 And he sye knyghtys at the laste. 4540
 till at last he saw
 several knights carrying off
 Tyrry.
 Syr Tyrrye wyth þem þey dud lede
 And he hyed hym aftur a gode spede.
 Full sone þen came he þem nere :
 He bad þem on feyre manere 4544
 To delyuer to hym þat woundyd knyght.
 'I haue to hym my trowthe plyght
 (Y wylle hyt holde, yf þat y myght.
 Ye do hym, me þynkyþ, no ryght), 4548
 That y schulde, when he wore dedde,
 Bery hym in some gode stedde ;
 And y bydde yow now pur charyte,
 That body ye delyuyr to mee.' 4552
 [leaf 190 a, col. 2]
 but he was
 menaced by
 Otoun's Steward,
 who had crossed
 the water in a boat
 with four other
 knights.
 ¶ There turned ageyne a Lumbarde,
 That was Otons stewarde.
 In a bote he passed owre¹
 Aftur Tyrrye and odur fowre. 4556
 To Gye he seyde : 'what art thou ?
 Thou loueyst full lytull þyn own prowre,
 When thou came on thys manere

¹ MS. *ouyr*. After this line *In a bote and odur fowre* struck out.

- Thys body for to chalenge here. 4560
 Thou art hys felowe : be my crowne,
 Thou schalt be ladde to dewke Oton).
 There schall yow bothe hangyd bee
 Hye vppon a galowe tree.' 4564
- ¶ 'Syr,' *quod* Gye, 'þou seyest not ryght :
 3yt had y leuyr *wyth* yow all fyght.'
 He gaue oon a stroke on the heuydde,¹
 That hys boste soone þere was leuydde. 4568
- To þe gyrdull came the dynte :
 3er wolde not þe swyrde stynte.
 Another he smote also thare,
 For nothyng wolde he spare : 4572
 Of hys hedde he smote clene,
 That hyt flewe on the grene.
 Than cam syr Hewchowne,
 That was cosyn to dewke Oton) : 4576
 He can Gye faste assayle,
 That þe steroppe he made hym to fayle.
 So nye Gye dud he goo,
 That Gye-smote hys body in twoo. 4580
 The fowrthe fledde at the laste :
 I trowe, he were somewhat agaste.
 Gye toke vp syr Tyrrye
 And set hym on hys hors hym bye. 4584
- Gye hym to þat thorne broght,
 But þat maye fonde þey noght.
 ¶ Now wyll we leue of syr Gye
 And of the maydyn speke in hye, 4588
 On what maner sche was gane
 And owt of the foreste tane.
 Of Gyes felows wyll we telle
 In the foreste, as we spelle. 4592
- In the cyte, there þey ware,
 They dyȝt hys mete and made hyt yare

Guy killed them
all :

only one escaped.

When Guy
returned with
Tyrry to the
hawthorn bush,
Ozelle, in her turn,
was missing.

[leaf 190 b, col. 1]
Meanwhile Guy's
fellows,

having made all
preparations in
the town,

¹ MS. *hedde*.

- Of hym they all had meruell grete,
 Why he came not to hys mete. 4596
 Harrawde then, the gode knyght,
 To the foreste wente full ryght.
 Thorow all þe wode þey haue hym sozt,
 But, for sothe, they fonde hym noght. 4600
 ¶ Then they harde a playnte mylde,
 Os a woman were wyth chylde.
 Ofte sche moonyd hur of care.
 Harrawde, nerre hur can he fare : 4604
 Vndur a thorne they hur fande,
 Hurselſe allone sore wepande.
 Harrowde askyd hur of hur name
 And what she soght *and* fro whens she came 4608
 And why she made so¹ grete mornynge.
 Sche wolde þem seye no nodur thyng,
 But þat sche was a wrecchyd woman
 And for hur lorde sche made that mone. 4612
 Sche bad, no man schulde hur see,
 But kepe hur feyre in pryete.
 To the cyte they went in hye,
 For they myght not mete wyth Gye. 4616
Now go we to a nodur matere
 And speke we, þere as we were ere,
 How þat Gye wyth syr Tyrrye
 To the hawthorne faste dud hye. 4620
 When Gye come þedur, he fonde noght.
 Vp and downe there he soght.
 When he ne myght fynde that maye,
 Vp and downe there he soght.
 When he ne myght fynde that maye,
 To hys ynne he toke the waye. 4624
 ‘Syr,’ they seyde, ‘make gode chere,’
 When they sye Gye hole and² fere.
 Then seyde Gye : ‘syr, take þys knyght
 And loke, that he be wele ydyght.’ 4628
 Gye sende aftur the lechys in hye
 and sent for physicians.

¹ so over the line by the same hand.² MS. *Gye all in.*

For to helpe syr Tyrrye.

[leaf 190 b, col. 2]

¶ As he stode and he hym bye,¹

Standing there,
he heard a moan.

He thoght, he harde a rewoff crye.

4632

He callyd to hym hys chaumberleyn

Upon inquiry,

And soone he can to hym sayne :

he learnt that

‘What was *þat* noyce *and* *þat* dynne?’

there was a
maiden that
Harrawde had
found in the
forest.

And he seyde, *þer* was a maye *wythynne*,

4636

‘That Harrowde fonde in *þe* *zondur* foreste :

Of all, *þat* euer y sye, she ys *þe* feyreste.’

‘A,’ seyde Gye, ‘for god allmyght,

Sende² aftur hur yn anon ryght.’

4640

The chaumberleyn went in hye

And broght *þat* maye vnto *syr* Gye.

‘Welcome,’ he seyde, ‘my swete wyzt :

He welcomed
Ozelle heartily.

Y am bothe gladde and lyght.’

4644

¶ When sche sye Tyrrye lye thare,

The maiden,
seeing Tyrrye
lying there,
fell into a swoon.
Guy tried to
comfort her.

Sche felle in swowne for sorow *and* care.

Gye hur in hys armes plyght

And seyde : ‘be styлле, my swete wyzt.

4648

Make no more none euyl chere :

Thy lemman shall be hole *and* fere.’

Sche sye *þe* body lye on *þe* grownde

And *þeron* many a bytter wounde.

4652

Sche seyde : ‘Tyrrye, my dere lemman,

But she gave vent
to her sorrow by
many complaints.

Thou art now boþe pale *and* wan.

Some tyme *þou* were of grete honowre,

And rodye, as rose, was *þy* colowre.

4656

In wyckyd tyme *þou* trowest my redde,

When *þou* for my loue shalt be dedde.

I schall be dedde also *wyth* the :

God gyf me grace, *þat* hyt so bee.

4660

Yf ye dye, y schall me sloo :

Schall y neuer fro hens goo.’

On hys bodye, *þere* hyt laye,

¹ Line 4631 seems corrupt. See note.

² The first *e* in *Sende* looks a little irregular.

- Sche felle downe þere *þat* daye. 4664
 Sche kyssyd hys mowþe *and* hys face
 And ofte sche cryed : ‘allas, allas !’
 Sche waxed bloo, as any ledde,
 And felle downe, as she were dedde. 4668
- [leaf 191 a, col. 1] ¶ Gye toke that swete wyght
 In hys armes vp wyth myght
 And seyde : ‘my dere lemman, let be þy fare,
 For thy lorde schall welfare.’ 4672
- The physician,
 however, assured
 her that Tyrry
 would be cured.
 The leche seyde at that stownde,
 He shulde be bothe hole *and* sownde.
 Gye hur cōmfortyd wyth gode wyll.
 He seyde : ‘feyre lady, be styll.’ 4676
- Guy was very
 careful about
 Tyrry.
 Now dud Gye hele Tyrrye
 And kept hym wele *and* tendurlye.
 But Gye wolde telle no wyght,
 Fro whens he came nor what he hyzt. 4680
 Gye hym purueyde lechys gode
 And for hys loue chaungyd hys mode.
 In the cyte þey dwellyd longe,
 Tyll that Tyrrye was styffe *and* stronge 4684
 And myght vpon an hors ryde :
 Howndys they had on euery syde.
 When he was hole, þere was game
 Betwene Gye and hym in same. 4688
 They went to þe wode *and* to þe ryuere
 And louyd togedur on all manere.
- One day Guy ¶ Fro huntynge as þey came vpon a day,
 Gye dud to Tyrrye saye : 4692
 ‘Y haue the done curtesye,
 Whyll y haue dwellyd þus longe þe bye
 In thys londe and thys cuntre :
 All was for the loue of the. 4696
 Wyll we nowe trowthe plyght
 And be felows day and nyght
 And, whyll *þat* we be leuande,
- offered to be
 Tyrry's ‘fellow,’

- Nodur fayle odur in no lande ?' 4700
- ¶ Then bespake the erle Tyrrye : and Tyrry gladly accepted him.
- 'Syr,' he seyde, 'gramercye.
- Thys ys a grete specyalte,
- That ye wyll my felowe bee. 4704
- God of heuyn geue me grace
- Yow to quyte in some place.
- 3yt þou art the trewest knyght,
- That euer slepyd in wynturs nyght. 4708
- Ye had a wyckydde redde [leaf 191 a, col. 2]
- For to saue me fro the dedde,
- But y yow louyd on all manere
- And seruyd¹ yow, as my lorde dere : 4712
- Y were ellys gretly to blame,
- As god schylde me fro schame.'
- ¶ Than the toon kyssed the todur
- And eyther dud, as other brodur 4716
- To the cyte can they fare,
- As yoyfull men *wyth*owten care.
- They be comen to ther ynne
- Wyth grete yoye *and* mekyll wynne. 4720
- ¶ Gye dud make hys thynges yare : Guy now proposed to return home,
- Into Ynglonde wolde he fare.
- Tyrrye he wolde *wyth* hym take accompanied by Tyrry.
- And many odur for hys sake. 4724
- To the kynges wolde he fare
- And entendyd to leue þere full yare
- He þoght of hym to haue honowre
- And ryche castels *wyth* many a towre. 4728
- ¶ Gye in a wyndowe stode
- And spake to *syr* Tyrrye the gode
- Of hys passage ouyr the see
- And how he wolde wende to hys cuntre. 4732
- Than came oon prekande ryght : he saw a knight coming.
- He semyd full wele to be a knyght,

¹ MS. *serue*.

- That had had grete trauayle.
 Gye hym askyd, wythowte fayle, 4736
 Of whens he was *and* what tythande,
 What he hyght *and* of what lande
 And what he soght in that cuntre :
 ‘Lye thou not, but telle mee.’ 4740
- This knight was
 in search of
 Tyrry, ¶ He answeyrd hym sone full wele :
 ‘I schall the telle euery dele.
 Y wynde to seke syr Tyrrye,
 Of Gormoyse the erlys sone, sekurlye. 4744
 I haue hym soght in many a cuntre.
 Also god haue parte of mee,
- [leaf 191 b, col. 1] I schall yow the sothe saye :
 Of grete dole here ye may. 4748
 Tyrrye *seruyd* dewke Loyere,
 And hym louyd *and* helde hym dere
 And dud hym grete honowre :
 He was a man of grete valowre. 4752
- who had eloped
 with Duke
 Otoun's bride-
 elect, Duke
 Loyere's
 daughter, The dewke had a doghtur in bowre :
 Whyte sche was, as lylly flowre.
 The dewke Oton vpon a day
 Came for to wedde that maye. 4756
 Than came Tyrrye, y yow say,
 And *wyth* strenkyth had hur away.
 They chasyd there Tyrrye longe
 And gaue hym there batell stronge. 4760
 Many of them he broght to grownde
 Wyth yre in a lytull stownde.
 Whedur he be dedde, y wote noght :
 In many londys y haue hym soght. 4764
- for which offence
 Tyrry's father
 Aubry had been
 attacked by
 Loyere and
 Otoun. ¶ Then hym thoght the dewke Loyere
 Of Tyrryes fadur to venge hym þere.
 Grete oost he thedur broght :
 The dewke Oton forgate noght, 4768
 He broght *wyth* hym a companye,
 Many oon of Lumbardye.

At Gormoyse y them lefte.

The lande ys stroyed *and* all torefte : 4772

But y haue grace to fynde Tyrrye,

That londe ys lorne, sekurlye.

Hys fadur ys olde *and* whytehore :

Hys strenkyth lassyth more *and* more.' 4776

¶ 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'be god almyght,

Thou schalt lenge *wyth* me alnyght.

All, that y may, y schall þe wysse,

Where that Tyrrye of Gormoyse ys.' 4780

Gye comawndyd his meyne

To resseyue the knyght so free.

'Leue *syr*,' quod Tyrrye to Gye,

'Of my fadur haue mercye. 4784

As we be felows plyght,

Helpe my fadur *wyth* þy myght ;

For he hath grete mystere

[leaf 191 b, col. 2]

Of vs now, that be here. 4788

Yf he be tane or euyll fare,

I am dystroyed for euyr mare.

Hyt were grete,' he seyde,¹ 'for me

And schame also, me thynkyþ, to the.' 4792

¶ Quod Gye : 'Tyrrye, þou spekest yn vayne.

Thou woldyst neuer halfe so fayne

Helpe thy fadur in his mystere,

As y wolde *wyth* my powere. 4796

I schall the neuyr fayle at nede,

Whyll y may ryde on any stede.'

'Syr,' quod Tyrrye, 'gramercye.

Now þou wylt go, y am merye.' 4800

¶ Then sende Gye a messeger

To Almayn to the emperere.²

He sende hym knyȝtys bolde *and* wyght

Fyve hundurd wele ydyght. 4804

The knight stayed
with Guy.

Tyrry asked Guy
to assist his father.

Guy answered
that he was more
willing to do so
than even Tyrry
himself.

At his request the
German Emperor
sent him 500
knights.

¹ *he seyde* seems to be miswritten for some substantive.

² MS. *Emperowre*.

- 'Tyrrye,' he seyde, 'make the redye
 For to helpe thy fadur in hye.'
 Than belyue þey were dyght :
 They reden bothe day *and* nyght. 4808
- When they arrived at Gormoyse,
 ¶ When they come to Gormoyse,¹
 There they harde moche noyse.
 They enturde in sone in haste,
 For they were nothyng agaste. 4812
- Aubry was very glad.
 Grete yoye had erle Awbrye.
 Of hys sone, syr Tyrrye,
 And also of syr Gyowne,
 That was a nobull barowne. 4816
- There he kyssyd erle Awbrye :
 For yoye he wepte, wytterlye.
 'Dere fadur,' quod Tyrrye,
 'On all thyng honowre Gye. 4820
- Y wyll, that ye wete hyt ryght,
 That we be troutheplyght.
 He sauyd me fro þe deþe,' quod Tyrrye.
 'God hym 3ylde,' quod erle Awbrye. 4824
- 'All, that ys in my lande,
 Schall be redy to hys hande,
 [leaf 192 a, col. 1] Cyte, castels, towne and towre :
 I make hym maystyr *wyth* honowre. 4828
- Guy was made commander-in-chief.
 Y am now waxyn olde
 And vnmyghty and vnbolde :
 I wyll, he haue the maystry
 Of all thys lande, verylye.' 4832
- ¶ Nowe be they in myddes þe cyte
 All wyth pryde and yolyte.
 The next morning They rose vp in the mornynge
 And made grete gederynge 4836
- Before the erle Awbrye :
 There þey made a grete crye.
 Gye askyd oon in preuyte,
 there was great excitement in the town

¹ MS. *Gorgomoyse*.

- What was the noyce in þat cyte 4840
 And wherefore þey made þat crye,
 That he harde, wytterlye.
 He seyde, hyt was dewke Loyere, because of Duke
 That oftetyme had be here. 4844 Loyere being
 before it.
 ‘Of cheualre he hathe the flowre
 And therto grete socowre.’
 ¶ Then seyde anon *syr* Gye Guy and his men
 To hys feyre companye : 4848
 ‘Lordyngys, y prey yow, arme yow sone
 Aȝenste þe yondur men we wyll gone.’
 ‘Syr,’ þey seyde, ‘we be redye resolved to fight
 Aȝenste þem for to fyght in hye.’ 4852 with the enemy.
 To hys ynnys dud he fare
 And armyd hym soone thare.
 ¶ When they were all redy dyght After they had
 In a stedde togedur *wyth* helmes bryght, 4856 armed them-
 selves,
 Quod Gye to Tyrrye : ‘herkyn me, first Tyrry sallied
 Two hundurd knyghtys take the out with 200
 The Lorens boldely to assayle. knights,
 Loke, yowre hertys not afayle.’ 4860
 Tyrrye toke the knyghtys wyght
 Armed on ther stedys ryght.
 Forthe of the cyte dud he fare :
 To the ooste he came full yare. 4864 [leaf 192 a, col. 2]
 There came prekyng before þe ooste
 A knyght wyth ¹ mekull boste.
 Tyrrye hyt hym *wyth* hys spere,
 That hys hors fete myght hym not bere. 4868
 A nother þere he woundyd depe :
 Schylde nor hawberk myght hym not kepe.
Wyth strenkyth he smote hym thore,
 That on hys fete he yede no more. 4872
 ¶ When Tyrrye sye hys men fyght,
 He slewe many a doghty knyght.

¹ MS. *that*.

- There lay in the felde slone
In a whyle many oon). . 4876
- They were all very
valiant, Boldelye faght syr Tyrrye
And all hys feyre companye.
Tyrrye smote the constabull
Of hys stede, wythowte fabulle. 4880
He had hym wonne in that fyght,
But þat þere came soone many a knyzt :
Icheoon) soone vpon) an hepe
Abowte Tyrrye dud they lepe. 4884
He defendyd hym, as a nobull knyght :
Many a hedde he smote of ryght.
All he slewe, that were hym abowte,
Were they neuer so holde nor stowte. 4888
Gret angwysche to hym came þen) ;
For soone he had lorne all hys men)
Thorowe the Lorens, þat abowte þem wende :
There were slayne many an hende. 4892
What tane and what slone,
Hys felows were away euerychone.
Tyrrye defendyd hym, as a lyon) :
Many an hedde he smote of, be my crowne ; 4896
For lothe he was for to flee :
He had wele leuyr slayne bee.
- Guy, at
Harrawde's
summons,
[leaf 192 b, col. 1] ¶ Then seyde Harrowde to Gye :
'Se ye not syr Tyrrye ? 4900
- But yowreselfe, þer ys none so wyght.
Helpe hym,' he seyde, 'pur charyte :
Hyt ys tyme, so mote y thee.' 4904
Then hyed he forthe a gode spede
To helpe Tyrrye in hys nede.
- hastened to
Tyrry's relief. ¶ Now comyth Gye to that batayle :
The Lorens sone dud hym assayle. 4908
- He took Gayere Sone Gye smote Gayere,
The dewkys cosyn Loyere.

- He smote hym downe *wyth* hys spere
 And he hym toke, as falleth to were. 4912 prisoner,
 Gye to a nodur rode :
 Hys spere þorow the body glode.
 He smote a nodur, so dud he moo : and killed many.
 Many he made to dethe goo. 4916
 Then þey smote togedur thare :
 Ther wolde none of them odor spare.
 There dyed many a knyght,
 That were bolde, hardy and wyght. 4920
 Who so had sene Gye
 And *wyth* hym Harrowde *and* Tyrrye,
 There they dud that ylke day,
 That hyt ys wondur for to say. 4924 performed
 Of Lorens grete plente miracles of valour.
 Dyed that day ryght in hye.
 ¶ Gye the constabull hyt thare,
 That of hys hors he hym bare. 4928 The Constable
 He toke hym than in þat batayle. also was taken :
 The Lorens flewe, *wythowten* fayle :
 Gye and Tyrrye chasyd faste.
 All the Lorens at the laste 4932
 Were woundyd *and* slone that day :
 Vnnethe xxx^{ti} passyd away. scarcely thirty
 Gye wente home and Tyrrye of his men
 Wyth ther gode companye. 4936 escaped.
 ¶ Then þer came a messengere
 Faste to dewke Loyere. A messenger
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'herkyn to mee. brought this news
 Loke, þou thynke vengyd to bee. 4940 [leaf 192 b, col. 2]
 In the mornynge to day
 To the cyte we toke þe way
Wyth fyve hundurd knyghtys wyght,
 And euyll chawnce came to vs ryght. 4944
 All we be takyn *and* slayne :
 Ther be not xxx^{ti} comen agayne.

Hearing that Tyrry, Guy,	There ys comen syr Tyrrye And wyth hym þe doghty Gye And a knyght of grete pryce ;	4948
and Harrowde were in the town,	Harrowde of Ardyrne hys name ys. All they be wyght and bolde :	
	Thorow þem owre knyztys are colde.	4952
the Duke was afraid	¶ Then seyde the dewke : 'ys þat no lye, That to þem ys comen Tyrrye and Gye And Harrowde, that ys so wyght,	
of more defeats.	Then we go to schame anon ryght.'	4956
The next morning the Duke himself,	T he dewke rose 3erlye And vnto Gormoyse dud he hye. He toke in hys companye	
with a thousand knights, marched against the town.	A thowsande ¹ knyghtys hardye. He manaste Gye and Tyrrye : Yf he þem fonde, þey shoulde aby.	4960
	¶ As Gye come þorow a churche 3arde, He lokyd to the felde warde.	4964
Guy saw Otoun's host,	He sawe, the ooste of dewke Oton Be an hylle came passande downe He callyd to hym Tyrrye And schewyd hym, that he sye.	4968
	Gye seyde : 'what wyll we doo ? The ooste of Lorens cometh vs too.	
and was de- termined to fight with this old enemy of his.	The dewke Oton of Payuye, He ys myn olde enemye. Y knowe hym wele redylle . Wyth hym to fyght y am redye. Let we arme vs sone wele Bothe in yron and in stele	4972
	And an hundurd knyghtys wyth vs take And moche shame we shall hym make. We schall be vengyd thorow þe grace	4976
[leaf 193 a, col. 1]	Of hym to day in the place.'	4980
	¶ When þey were armed all preste,	

¹ *n* in *thowsande* is gone in consequence of a worm-hole.

They range þe bellus : þey wolde not reste.	
Now they be gedurde same :	
They þoght for to worche no game.	4984
Owte of the cyte dud they fare :	
They fonde þe Lorens redy thare.	
They smeten togedur faste :	
The speres sone in sonder braste.	4988
Then þey drewe swyrdys bryght	There was a hard
And faght togedur <i>wyth</i> þer myght.	struggle,
There were many slayne on bope <i>partes</i> :	
The warse had the Lumbardes.	4992 but the Lombards
Of ther men be many slane	lost most men,
And many vnto preson tane.	
Gye smote the erle Jurdan,	Earl Jurdan,
That was lorde of Melayn,	4996
A grete stroke in the schylde,	
That he felle downe in þe felde.	
¶ Then came prekyng ¹ syr Tyrrye :	
Wyth force he smote Amerye :	5000 Otoun's steward
He was þe dewkes steward Oton.	Amery,
Of hys hors he felle downe.	
He drewe there hys fawchone	
And slewe Amery there anon	5004
<i>Wyth</i> hys swyrde, that was of stele.	
That sawe the dewke Oton wele.	
There they slewe the Lumbardes :	and many other
They felle downe, as cowardes.	5008 Lombards,
Grete was that dyscowmfyte :	were slain.
To a Lumbarde came dole tyte.	
¶ On a syde faste prekande	
Came dewke Oton faste fleande.	5012 Otoun fled,
No man hym sye, but Harrawte :	pursued by
To hym he thoght to make assawte.	Harrawde.
He flewe faste and can nye wende,	
And Harrowde aftur, that was hende.	5016

¹ *n* in *prekyng* gone (cf. 4960).

- ‘Turne þe,’ he seyde, ‘so muste þou thryue :
 [leaf 193 a, col. 2] Here ys no man, but y, on lyue.
 Reproached by
 him with his
 treachery,
 Otoun turned
 round.
 ¶ Defende here that felonye,
 That þou duddyst in Lumbardye.’ 5020
 ¶ The dewke turned hym to ageyne,
 And therof was Harrowde fayne.
 Then began a
 strong fight.
 Faste they smote on helme *and* shyldes,
 Tho two knyghtys, in the felde. 5024
 The fyre flewe owte at euery dynte :
 Nodyr wolde for odur stynte.
 They brake helmes *and* hawberkys gode :
 The blode be þer bodyes downe yode. 5028
 Betwene þem two was stronge batayle :
 Eyther can odur faste assayle.
 Thoght Harrowde : ‘y schall vengyd bee
 Or ellys be dedde, so mote y thee.’ 5032
 He hyt the dewke Otoun sare :
 A pece owt of the helme he schare.
 Harrowde
 wounded Otoun
 severely,
 The swyrde¹ in the schouldur wode
 Halfe a fote, or hyt stode. 5036
 Downe felle that nobull syre :
 Harrowde hym hyt wyth grete yre.
 and he would
 have struck off
 his head,
 save for the attack
 of a hundred
 knights.
 He wolde haue smetyn of hys heuydde,²
 But *wyth* strenkyth he was hym reuydde : 5040
 An hundurd knyghtys came wele dyght
 Abowte Harrowde anon ryght.
 To sloo Harrowde þey dud þer myght
 And he defendyd hym, as a nobull knyght. 5044
 ¶ Then he hyt a Lumbarde wele :
 The hedde yede of euery dele.
 He faght *wyth* hys swyrde of stele :
 At the laste he felyd hym euyll. 5048
 He wolde haue to the cyte fare,
 Harrowde’s horse
 was wounded,
 But hys hors was woundyd sare.
 Tho þey all on Harrowde thronge

¹ MS. *schylde*.² MS. *hedde*.

- And wrought hym moche wronge : 5052
Wyth ther speres, þat were scharpe,
 They brake helme¹ *and* hawberke. his helmet and
 He was there nere dedde : hauberk
 [leaf 193 b, col. 1]
 Hys body ranne on blode redde. 5056 damaged,
 ¶ Then owte starte a Lumbarte :
 Felle he was, as a lybarte.
 Barant was hys ryght name.
 He þoght to do Harrowde shame : 5060
 He gaue Harrowde a wyde wounde
 Thorowe the body in a stownde.
 He vengyd hym sone full hote :
 Hys hedde of there he smote. 5064
 Anodur he þoght to smyte ryght :
 Hys hedde þere on the ȝorthe lyght.
 But hys swerde glasedde lowe
 And stroke vpon the sadull bowe : 5068
 So faste hys swerde he dud owt take,
 That in hys hande hyt all tobrake. and, at last, his
 sword broken.
 ‘Allas,’ seyde Harrowde, ‘now haue y care :
 I may defende me now no mare. 5072
 Allas, swerde, who made the,
 Hongyd be he on a tree.
 Why haste þou fayled me so sone ?
 My lyue dayes be now done. 5076
 Me had leuer here haue be slane,²
 Then þus amonge þese men tane.’
 ¶ Then starte vp a Lumbarde : But a Lombard,
 For sothe, he was a cowarde. 5080
 ‘Thefe,’ he seyde, ‘thou schalt abyge :
 Thou haste done vs moche vylenye.’
 Harrowde *wyth* hys fyste hym smate,
 That hys neck in two brake. 5084
 Tho seyde Harrowde : ‘so mote y the,
 Harme schall y none haue of þe.’

¹ MS. *helmes*.² MS. *slayne*.

- ¶ There came forthe a doghty knyght :
 Of Frawnce he was, Joscpe he hyght. 5088
 He was þe dewkys sowdyere :
 He seruyd hym for mystere.
 'Harrowde,' he seyde, 'ȝylde þe to me.
- [leaf 193 b, col. 2] Ther schall no skape be done to the 5092
 Of the dewke and hys meyne,
 Also muste y thryue or the.'
 'Syr,' seyde Harrowde, 'be seynt Mychell,
- At last Harrawde
 surrendered to a
 French soldier. To þat couenawnde y graunt well, 5096
 So þat ye me slo in the felde,
 Or ye me to the dewke ȝelde.'
 They sett Harrowde on a stede,
 Towarde þe ooste þey dud hym lede : 5100
 They were gladde euerychane,
 When they had Harrowde tane.
- Now turne we ageyne to *syr* Gye
 And to the bolde erle Tyrrye. 5104
 þe Lumbardes þey had ouercomen echon),
 Some fledde, some taken and slone.
- When Guy missed
 Harrawde, 'Where ys Harrowde?' seyde *syr* Gye,
 'I haue wondur and ferlye.' 5108
 Then seyde oon : 'be my crowne,
 I sye hym chace dewke Oton).
 He hym folowed¹ owte of þe fyght
 Prekyng on a stede wyght.' 5112
 'Allas,' seyde Gye, 'þat y was borne,
 Now y haue Harrowde forlorne.
 Forthe a whyle y wyll fonde,
 If y may of hym here tythande. 5116
 Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'pur charyte,
 Wenlyth home to the cyte ;
 For y wyll wende nyght and day,
 Harrowde yf y fynde may. 5120
 schall neuer ete bredde,

¹ e in *folowed* gone (cf. 4960).

- Or y fynde hym quyck or dedde.
 Tyrrye,' he seyde, 'come wyth me
 To seke Harrowde, pur charyte.' 5124 and went in quest
 of him, accom-
 panied only by
 Tyrry.
- ¶ They toke þer stedys wyth þer sporys :¹
 They prekyd ouer rugges *and* forys.²
 To the ooste can they fare
 To loke, yf Harrowde were thare. 5128
- Gye lokydde, wytterlye :
 He sawe dewke Oton of Payuye
 And wyth hym Harrowde, þat nobull knyght,
 Euyll woundyd and euyll dyght. 5132 They saw Har-
 rawde, severely
 wounded, with
 Duke Otoun.
 [leaf 194 a, col. 1]
- 'Allas,' seyde Gye, 'Harrowde ys tane :
 Amonge hys enemyes he ys allane.
 Tyrrye,' he seyde, 'my dere felowe,
 Helpe me now a lytull throwe.' 5136
- '3ys,' seyde Tyrrye, 'so mote y the,
 Whyll that y lyueande bee.'
 ¶ Gye a Lumbarde smote faste :
 Hys hors and hym downe he caste. 5140 After a valiant
 attack on the
 Lombards,
- Tyrrye hyt a nodur wele
 The hed wente of euery dele.
 There þey drewe þer swyrdys bryght
 And slewe many a doghty knyght. 5144
- To Harrowde Gye sone wanne,
 A gode swyrde he toke hym than
 And bad hym to defende hym, as an hardy knyzt.
 There þey were in a grete fyght. 5148
- Tho þre knyghtys faght so faste,
 That þe Lumbardes were scowmfet at þe laste.
 ¶ To the ooste flewe dewke Oton :
 Gye hym chacyd vp and downe. 5152 By these three
 knights the
 Lombards were
 vanquished.
 Otoun fled, but he
 was pursued by
 Guy almost as far
 as the camp, and
 all but killed,
- Wythynne the oost a bowe draght
 Gye wyth hys swyrde hym raght.
 He thoght for to smyte sore
 And for to be avengyd thore : 5156

¹ MS. *spurres*.² MS. *forows*.

- Betwene the body *and* the arson)
 Felle hys dynte therẽ adowne.
 The sadull of golde *and þat* stede
 He smote a too in that nede. 5160
 Guy, though
 assailed by many,
 There they prekyd abowte *syr* Gye,
 But he defendyd hym manlye.
 Gye prekyd thorow the ooste :
 They hym folowed *wyth* grete boste. 5164
 got back to his
 fellows,
 He mette Harrowde and Tyrrye :
 Of hym they had ferlye,
 On what maner he passyd away.
 They thankyd god *þat* same day, 5168
 That þey had so mette the Lumbardes,
 [leaf 194 a, col. 2] They schulde not sey, þey were cowardes.
 They gaue them strokys vnryde
 And woundyde them on euery syde. 5172
 with whom he
 returned into the
 town.
 ¶ Then seyde Gye to hys felows tho :
 ‘ Hyt ys tyme, that we goo.’
 To the cyte can they fare
 And carefull lefte þe Lumbardes þare. 5176
 Gye *and* Tyrrye be hole and sownde,
 Harrowde hath an euyll wounde.
 Harrowde had
 been severely
 wounded,
 Forthe they wente all thre
 Wyth yoye vnto the cyte. 5180
 All the men of that cuntre
 Looueyd god in trynyste,
 That *syr* Harrowde had hys lyfe ;
 For he had be in so moche stryfe. 5184
 Gye made to come to hys honde
 The beste lechys of that londe.
 Harrowdes wounde þey helyd wele
 In a whyle, so haue y hele. 5188
 but good
 physicians soon
 cured him.
 They were then full blythe
 And thankyd god fele sythe,
 That þey had ouercomen þer enemyes
 Thorow goddys helpe and *syr* Gyes. 5192

Now þey drad þem no mare,
For they were broght owt of care.

¶ The dewke Oton ys comen hame :
Of hys dede he had grete schame.

Duke Otoun was
also cured.
5196

Lechys he had there gode :
They helyd hym sone, be my hode.

When hys woundys were whayle,
He wente to the dewke, sawns fayle,

And tolde hym of hys wykkyd care,
How he had be in sorowe sare.

¶ To dewke Loyer seyde Oton :
'Herkyn to my reson.

Now he advised
Duke Loyere,
5204

But ye haue þe better cownsayle,¹
Ye lose yowre londe, wythowte fayle,

Thorowe þe men Harrowde *and* Gye
And wyth them þe erle Tyrrye.

5208 [leaf 194 b, col. 1]

All yowre knyghtys þey haue tane
And yowre frendys many slane.

The stronge cyte may no man wynne
Nodur wyth force nor wyth gynne.

as Gormoyse was
impregnable,
5212

They haue of many a londe socowre :
Yf we fyght, we gete the worre.

Yf ye wyll my cowncell trowe,
Wyth some wyle we wyll venge yow.

to have recourse
to some artifice.
5216

Men schulde preue in all wyse
To venge them on þer enmyse.

¶ Sende ye wyth loue vnto Tyrrye
And to hys fadur, erle Awbrye,

He should send
word that he was
5220

And sey, þou wylt ȝeue þy doghtur dere
To syr Tyrrye wyth full gode chere,

And bydde hym come to thys cyte
(And sey, ye wyll acordyd bee

willing to bestow
his daughter's
hand on Tyrry
in his capital,
5224

All seker and not dredande

Wyth all the knyghtys of þe lande :

All wyth loue and charyte

whither Tyrry
was to repair with
his men,

¹ MS. *cownsell*.

	Here schall they weddyd bee.	5228
	When they be fro þe cyte gone	
But on their way they were all to be seized.	But þe mowntenans of a rone, ¹	
	Ye schall take the trayturs all	
	And euyll schall them befall.	5232
	Echoon of them schall dampned bee	
	In yowre courte to hyng on a tre.	
	Y prey yow, syr, hertely,	
	Geue me Harrowde, Tyrrye <i>and</i> Gye.	5236
	They be my dedly enmyse :	
	Y schall them peyne in all wyse.	
Harrawde and Guy should die in Otoun's prison, but Tyrry be sentenced to death.	They schall be broght into Payuye	
	And in pryson depe they schall dye.	5240
	And dampne hym to dethe, Tyrrye : ²	
	So schall hyt be, sekurlye.	
Then Otoun might marry Ozelle.	Then schall y haue þy doghtur dere	
	In Payuye for to wedde hur there.'	5244
Duke Loyere at first would not [leaf 194 b, col. 2] listen to this advice.	¶ Tho hym spake the dewke Loyere :	
	' Let be, Oton, thy wyckyd manere.	
	For all the gode in thys towne	
	Y wolde not do Tyrrye þys tresown.	5248
	I wolde not Tyrrye so begyle	
	Nor qwyte hym not so hys wylle	
	For hys gode dede and hys serues	
	Nodur Gye nor Harrowde þe marches.	5252
	Yf syr Tyrrye haue done any skathe,	
	Sone he may amende hyt rathe.	
	Gye and Harrowde, be thys day,	
	Hyt were pyte so þem to betraye.'	5256
But as Otoun a little modified his plan,	¶ Then spake the dewke Oton :	
	' Me thynkyth, ye speke no reson,	
	When ye loue the theuys so well,	
	That ye wyll do be no cowncell	5260
	Nor put them in yowre pryson	

¹ Lines 5229-30 very probably corrupt. See note.² MS. syr *Gye*.

- To 3elde to yow rawnsome
 Odur do þem¹ gode costage
 To amende þer² owtrage. 5264
 Y schall haue³ Harrowde and Gye
 Tyll þey be swagyð a gode partye
 And chastysed thorow þer owtrage.
 Then schall ye þorow your baronage 5268
 Wyth them sone acordyd bee
 To wyinne þer loue to þe and me.'
 ¶ He thoght a nodur trecherye :
 Yf he myȝt gete þem to hys baylye, 5272
 He wolde not for all Lumbardye,
 But þey were dedde full ha telye.
 He besoght dewke Loyere
 Wyth soche wordys and preýere, 5276
 That he grauntyd for hys sake
 A messengere for to make.
 They toke þe byschopp of þat lande
 And tolde hym all that tythande, 5280
 How þey wolde make acordynge,
 Wythowte any lesynge.
 Forthe he wente that ylke day
 Wyth grete fare and nobelaye. 5284
 Or hyt were dayes thre,
 Comyn he was to that cyte.
 There he fonde the erle Awbrye
 And he hym kyssed curteslye. 5288
 'He grett yow wele, þe dewke Loyere,
 And byddyth yow on feyre manere
 Come to hys cyte, verament :
 And, yf ye wyll. to hym assent, 5292
 He wyll geue thy sone Tyrrye
 Hys doghtur to wyfe, sekurlye,
 And in that same feyre cyte

Loyere yielded to
 his entreaties.

A Bishop was sent

[leaf 195 a, col. 1]

to Aubry

with the treacher-
 ous offer of peace;

¹ MS. *hym*.

² MS. *hys*.

³ *u* in *haue* partly gone (worm-hole).

- Schall the brydale holdyn bee. 5296
 Yowre baronage schall come þedur
 To make yoye all togedur,
 And also all yowre cheualrye
 Muste be there wyth yow redye. 5300
 Of bothe halues many schall bee
 In pavelons before that cyte.
 There schall ye acordyd¹ bee,
 Y tryste, in grete specyaltee.' 5304
- and this was
readily accepted. ¶ All þey seyde in feyre manere :
 ' Blessyd be god *and* seynt Rogere.
 Wyth owre lorde, dewke Loyere,
 We wyll be attone on þys manere. 5308
 We wyll come at hys comawndement,
 When he aftur vs thus haþ sente.
 We haue done agenste hys wyll :
 We schall amende hyt, *and* þat ys skylle.' 5312
- Guy, it is true,
had misgivings, ¶ Gye seyde : ' dowte ye noght,
 Leste þat þey haue treson wrought ?
 The dewke Oton of Payuye
 Hatyth vs full dedlye : 5316
 He may geue an euell redde,
 Thorow whych we myght be dedde.
 I wott, the dewke Loyere
 Wolde do but gode to hys powers.' 5320
- but the Bishop
assured them
that there was no
wicked thought
[leaf 195 a, col. 2]
in Otoun. The byschopp seyde : ' drede ye noght :
 In hym ys no wyckyd thoght.
 He wolde not for all thys towne
 Do yow any tresowne.' 5324
- On the appointed
day, ¶ Now wendyth þe byschopp to Loreyne.²
 The erle Tyrrye ys full fayne.
 When the tyme was nye tolde,
 All the knyghtys yonge and olde 5328
 Dyghtyd them, as men hende,
 And to the parlement dud þey wende :
- ¹ *co* in *acordyd* in part gone (worm-hole). ² MS. *loren*.

The erle Awbrye and Tyrrye, Harrowde and gode <i>syr</i> Gye ; <i>Wyth þem v hundurde knyghtys</i> wyght, Echon on ¹ stedeys feyre <i>and</i> lyght. They were all clothed well In scarlet and in ryche sendell. They had <i>wyth þem þe</i> maydyn 3ynge. Of treson wyste they nothyng.		Aubry, Tyrry, 5332 Harrowde, Guy, and 500 knights
¶ They came to the parlement : They thoght to make acordement. There were straungers of many a cuntre, That came the weddyng for to see : Of Lorayne ² the dewke Loyere And wyth hym mony a bachelere And of hys baronage grete plente, That came the maryage for to see ; The dewke Oton of Payuye And fele erlys of Lumbardye.	5336 5340 5344 5348	came, all unarmed, with Ozelle to the place assigned for their meeting with Duke Loyere.
¶ 'Lordyngys,' seyde dewke Oton, 'Herkenyth to my reson). Well ye wott, that Tyrrye, Of Gormoyse the erlys sone Awbrye, Trespasyd agenste dewke Loyere, Whyll he was to hym lefe <i>and</i> dere. In hys courte was he longe, Tyll he was waxyn stronge : He made hym knyght rychelye, And he qwytt hym euyll, wytterlye, When he soche þynge toke on hande, To lede hys doghtur owf of hys lande. To Costantyne he hur broght, There as the dewke ys ³ louyd noght. And hys knyghtys he hath slayne And hys londe dystroyed <i>wyth</i> mayne.	5352 5356 5360 5364	Here, after a speech made by Otoun, in which he declared that in spite of Tyrry's misdemeanour, [leaf 195 b, col. 1]

¹ MS. *of*.

² MS. *loyere*.

³ *ys* omitted in MS. See note.

- 3yt he hath done more, be þys day,
But y wyll not all say.
- he advised Loyere I beseche¹ hym pur charyte
And all thys baronage, sekerlye, 5368
That the dewke in hys parlement
to forgive him, Hym forgeue hys maleentente
And geue Tyrrye wyth honowre
Hys doghtur bryght in bowre 5372
Wyth hym to the cyte for to fare
A ryche brydale to make thare.
For syr Tyrrye there schall bee
Grett myrthe and yolyte. 5376
Then schull we euyr frendys bee,
And þen wyll y wende to my cuntre.
Thus the dewke Oton can say :
'For goddys loue, graunte vs þat to daye.' 5380
- the mock peace
was concluded. ¶ Than seyde dewke Loyere :
'As ye haue seyde, y graunt hyt here.
I forgeue hym myn euyll wyllle :
I schall hym loue lowde and styлле.' 5384
- Otoun wished
to be kissed by
Guy in token of
forgiveness and
future friendship. ¶ Then spake dewke Oton) :
'I prey yow all, beseche Gyowne,
Yf y haue oght ageyne hym done,
That y muste amende hyt sone. 5388
Wyth þat couenande kysse me here
Euyr to be my frende dere.'
- But Guy had no
mind to kiss him. 'Syr dewke,' seyde Gye, 'holde þe styлле :
To kysse the y haue no wyllle. 5392
Thou me betrayed in þy cuntre
And slewe my nobull knyghtys thre.
That ys not to reherce here :
Speke we of a nodur matere. 5396
Go and do, what thy wyllle ys,
The erle Awbrye for to kysse.
Acorde wyth hys sone Tyrrye :

¹ MS. *besecheyd*.

- To the hyt ys no vylenye.' 5400
 ¶ Then þey kyste all same [leaf 195 b, col. 2]
 Bothe wyth yoye *and* wyth game.
 Gye hym drewe bakwarde :
 He wolde kysse no Lumbarde. 5404
 They kyssed then euery man :
 At the dewke Gye began.
 ¶ 'Dewke Loyere,' seyde Awbrye, Earl Aubry
 'Here y take the my sone Tyrrye : 5408
 Here y the take a gode knyght :
 My blessynge haue he day *and* nyght.'
 The erle hym turned sone anon : returned home,
 The wey to Gormoyse¹ ys he gon. 5412
 The dewke Loyere went hys way but the rest
 And all hys baronage wyth hym þat day. followed Loyere.
 Harrowde ledde þat maye bryght :
 Sche was bothe feyre *and* whyght. 5416
 Sche had hur fadurs wylle
 For to be wyth Harrowde styll.
 Gye, Harrowde² and Tyrrye
 Rode syngyng merelye. 5420
 Grete game was in þer thocht :
 For of treson wyste þey noght.
 Or hyt were none of the day,
 They schulde synge : 'wele away.' 5424
That ylke day þey rode faste. After a long ride
 Sone they sye at þe laste
 Besyde þem a³ feyre playne :
 Therof was þe dewke fayne. 5428
 He bad them all downe lyght
 To reste þer horsys a lytull wyght.
 Hyt was hote that ylke day,
 As they had redyn aftur þe way. 5432
 Sone, when þey lyght downe,

¹ MS. *Gorgomoyse*.² *d* in *Harrowde* gone (worm-hole).³ *a* added over the line.

- Vp rose dewke Otoun.
 ¶ 'Herkyn,' he seyde, 'owre companye
 Of Loren and of Payuye : 5436
 All, þat euer now be here
 On þe dewkys halfe Loyere,
 I comawnde yow, wythowte more
 Take the trayturs, that be þore, 5440
 And loke, that ye them bynde
 All ther handys þem behynde.
 We schall them to Loreyn brynge
 And dampne þem on galowse to hyng. 5444
 He, that spareth any of alle,
 In the same jugement he schall falle.'
 ¶ The Lumbardes starte vp full bolde
 As thycke, as schepe do in folde, 5448
 And wyth them knyghtys of Loreyne,
 That of the dede were fayne.
 Tyrre was besett abowte :
 They helde hym in, he myȝt not owte. 5452
 They toke Tyrre at that fyght
 And also syr Harrowde the wyght.
 ¶ 'Dewke Loyer,' seyde Gyowne,
 'Why haue ye do thys treson? 5456
 I helde yow for a gode knyght,
 Tyll hyt was nowe ryght.
 Were we not kyste¹ and made at oon
 Before the barons¹ euerychone? 5460
 Ye haue trowed dewke Oton,
 That euer was lefe to doo treson.
 Had ye neuer thys thyng wrought,
 But be Otons avyse and thoght.' 5464
 Grete dole had dewke Loyere :
 He myght not speke a worde there.
 He rode owte at the oon syde :
 For dole he myght no lenger abyde. 5468

¹ e in *kyste* and *n* in *barons gone* (worm-hole).

Here Duke Otoun
commanded his
and Loyere's men

to seize and bind
what he styled
the traitors.

[leaf 196 a, col. 1]

Tyrre and
Harrawde were
apprehended.

Guy reproached
Loyere

for having
listened to Duke
Otoun's
treacherous
advice,

which made
Loyere feel very
uncomfortable.

¶ Than starte forthe a gode knyght,
A bolde man and a wyght.

Guy killed with
his fist a knight
who tried to seize
him by his
mantle.

Be the mantell toke he Gye

Wyth grete yre, wytterlye,

5472

That the lace brake in thre :

Many a man hyt can see.

Gye hym turned sone hote

And *wyth* hys fyste he hym smote.

5476

He rose no more for to fyght,

For sothe, as y the behyght.

They assayled faste syr Gye,

The Lumbardes, *wyth* grete trecherye,

5480 [leaf 196 a, col. 2]

That hys robe of sendell

Guy's robe was
torn to pieces by
the Lombards.

Was reuyn in pecys euery delle.

Euery man a pece hente :

All the robe was torente.

5484

Gye *wyth* strenkyth dud vp lepe

And fellyd mony on a hepe.

Hys stede sone he bestrode

And lepe on hym, as he were wode.

5488

Having killed
many, Guy be-
strode his steed
and rode away.

He smote the stede in the syde :

Forthe of the place dud he ryde.

¶ When he hym sye, the dewke Oton),

That syr Gye was so gone,

5492

Lowde he cryed to hys meyne :

By Otoun's
command

'Lepe on yowre stedys : what do ye ?

And faste ye¹ haste aftur Gye.

For goddys loue, be redye :

5496

Yf he passe, y am schente.

Hym to take do yowre entente.

Be god, þat made boþe nyght *and* day,

Yf he fro yow passe away,

5500

I schall yow sloo *wyth* myn hande

All, that be of my lande ;

And he, þat bryngyth hym quyck or dedde,

¹ part of *h* blotted out before *ye* in MS.

- He schall haue golde redde 5504
 And odur ryches, y yow say,
 All my lande aftur my day.'
- he was pursued by 200 men. ¶ Aftur Gye rode many a knyght,
 Two hundurde wele ydyght. 5508
 They chasyd Gye, he flewe allone :
 Wepon had he neuer oone.
 Hym to slee or to take
 All abowte hym dud they schake. 5512
 Forthe starte oon of that lande
 Wyth helme on hedde *and* spere in hande.
 To Gye he rode wyth dyspyte :
 Thorow þe body he wolde hym smyte, 5516
 But god wolde not, þat he had skathe.
 Gye bare hys spere downe rathe :
- [leaf 196 b, col. 1] Betwene hys arme and hys syde
 The spere away feyre dud glyde. 5520
 Hyt carue hys skynne in manere :
 He thoght, hyt came a lytull to nere.
 Gye hym turned, as he had nede :
 He smote hym downe of hys stede. 5524
 Fro hym passyd tho syr Gye :
 A nodur came full hastelye.
 He bare a swerde ¹ wele growne :
 Be Gyes syde þe stroke felle downe 5528
 Into the sadull a large fote.
 Gye flewe faste : god hyt wote.
 ¶ They hym folowed swythe faste.
 Gye lokyd besyde hym at þe laste : 5532
 A polle he sawe a man bere.
 He rode to hym in feyre manere :
 'Geue me that powle, dere frende,
 And, as y am a knyght hende, 5536
 I schall the quyte thys ylke day
 Also sone as euyr y maye

At last, Guy saw
 a man carrying a
 pole,

which he
 borrowed of him.

¹ MS, *spere*.

- And he answeyrd : 'hende knyght,
 Ye schall hyt haue anon ryght. 5540
 'Well y see thy traueyle :¹
 God the helpe, þat wyll not fayle.'
 In hys hande he toke the polle
 And hym defendyd, be my nolle. 5544
 The furste man,² he mett þore,
 Wyth³ the polle he stroke sore :
 He smote hys necke euyn in two
 And toke þe stede *and* can goo, 5548
 Tyll he came to that man) :
 'Haue thys stede,' quod Gye than) ;
 'Take thys for thy gode dede :
 God quyte the thy mede.' 5552
 'Knyght,' he seyde, 'gramercye !'
 Vp he lepe and went in hys,
 And forthe wente *syr* Gyowne :
 He spared nodur felde nor towne. 5556
 Ther was neuer 3yt no knyght,
 That defendyd hym so in fyght.
 When he had nede in the fyght,
 He hym defendyd, as a knyght, 5560
 Tyl he came to a watur brode :
 In he wente *and* ouyr he rode.
 Ther durste⁴ none aftur hym þere passe,
 For the watur so stronge was. 5564
 Ageyne they turned euerychone
 Vnto the dewke Oton).
 That Gye was passyd so allone,
 He blamed hys men) euerychone. 5568
 ¶ 'Syr dewke Loyere,' seyde Oton),
 'He ys paste, that false felon).
 To Payue now let vs dyght
- With the horse of
 the first enemy
 that he killed
 with this weapon,
 he requited the
 loan of it.
- Guy rode hastily
 on
 [leaf 196 b, col. 2]
- till he came to a
 broad water,
 which he crossed.
- His pursuers, not
 daring to follow,
- turned back to
 Otoun, who
 blained them
 vehemently.
- Otoun now meant

¹ MS. *trauell*. ² part of *h* blotted out before *man* in MS.³ *Wythe* originally in MS., but *e* is erased.⁴ *r* of *durste* added over the line.

- To wedde Ozelde, þat maye bryght. 5572
- to have both
Tyrry and
Harrawde,
Tyrrye and Harrowde schall wende wyth me :
In my pryson schall¹ they bee
(They schall haue¹ no harme for me,
But as ye thynke, so mote y the), 5576
Tyll that ye wyll do yowre wyll
Of þem bothe, as hyt ys skylle.
The todur knyghtys take wyth yow
And kepe þem for yowre own prowre.' 5580
- but Loyere
refused to give
him Harrawde,
¶ 'Dewke Oton,' quod Loyere,
'Hytt schall not be so, be seynt Rogere.
Take the erle Tyrrye wyth the
And, yf þou wylt haue þe loue of me, 5584
Kepe hym to hys honowre,
For he ys a knyght of grete valowre.
Kepe hym wele, for hyt ys skylle,
Tyll y wytt, what y do wyllle. 5588
Harrowde, wende wyth me to towne :
I schall the put in my pryson.
That ye kepe hym, wyll y noght :
Thou woldyst hym sloo, hyt ys þy þoght.' 5592
There þey kyssed and toke ther leue :
Ther was none of þem, þat wolde odur greue.
- [leaf 197 a, col. 1]
They parted,
¶ To Loren wente dewke Loyere
And wyth hym Harrowde wyth euyl chere. 5596
The dewke Oton to Payuye wente :
Ozelle accom-
panying Otoun.
He toke wyth hym that maydyn gente,
So he dud the erle Tyrrye,
That was a man full sorye. 5601
- Tyrry was put on
a nag, with his
hands bound
behind his back.
Wyth a thonge þe dewke dud hym bynde
Bothe hys handes hym behynde.
He set hym on a bare palfrey
And led hym vnto Payuye. 5604
- Ozelle was very
sorry for him,
When Ozelde sye hym so dyght,
Of hur hors sche felle downe ryght.

¹ *so of schall and u of haue gone (worm-hole).*

- Sche swownyd then ofte for woo :
- Sche þoȝt, hur herte wolde breke in two. 5608
- ¶ When the dewke lokyd on that maye,
He can to hur sone saye :
'Woman,' quod he, 'art thou madde,
When thou for an harlat ladde 5612
Makyste dole in soche manere ?
I the swere be seynt Rogere :
Make þou dole, that y may see,
And y schall hym slee before þy nye. 5616
Dere lemman, be gladde *and* blythe.
We schall come to Payuye swythe :
There schalt þou weddyd bee
And wele at ese þou schalt hym see. 5620
I schall hym *serue* on all manere,
Yf thou wylt make gode chere.'
¶ 'God yow ȝelde,' quod that maye ;
'But of oon thyng y wolde yow pray : 5624
That xl dayes ye wolde hyt respyte.
Ye may me not moche wyte :
Be that y schall be redy in bowre,
That ye may me wedde *wyth* honowre.'
5628
'I graunte the þat, my swete maye.'
Wyth þat to Payue he toke þe waye,
But sche thoght a nodur þynge :
Or he schulde abowte þe spowsage brynge, 5632
Sche wolde in hur bowre allone
Wyth a knyfe hurselſe slone.
Sche had cownforte of a thyng,
That Gye was paste *wythowte* hurtyng. 5636
Sche hopyd thorow Gyes cowncell
To haue helpe be some wyle
And, that Tyrre hur lemman
Thorow hym fro prison schulde be tane. 5640
¶ Wyth that to Payuye were þey brought.
The dewke Oton forgate noght,

but Otoun
threatened to slay
him if she did not
look cheerful.

She, however,
persuaded Otoun
to defer his
marriage with her
for forty days.

But she was
resolved to kill
herself rather
than become his
wife.

[leaf 197 a, col. 2]

Her only hope
was Guy.

Arrived at Pavia,
Otoun threw
Tyrre

	He dud Tyrrye in hys pryson	
Into a dark pit of his dungeon.	In a pytt depe there dōwne.	5644
	Whyll þat hē in pryson laye,	
	He myȝt not wytt, when hyt was daye.	
	Mete nor drynke had he nane.	
	Gye sone bethoght hym than :	5648
	He made ¹ sorowe nyght and day	
	For Tyrrye, that in pryson laye.	
Guy, after having escaped from his pursuers,	¶ Of Gye to speke ys my redde,	
	That god had sauȝd fro the dedde.	5652
	When he was paste þe watur vnryde,	
	He lokyd abowte on euery syde.	
	He sawe, he was there allone :	
	Felowe had he there none.	5656
was in despair at the loss of his fellows.	He þoght on hys felows gode	
	And for sorowe he waxe nere wode.	
	‘Lorde,’ he seyde, ‘how schall y fare ?	
	Y am full of sorowe and care.	5660
	I haue lorne gode Harrawte	
	And syr Tyrrye, wythowte defawte.	
	Wele y wot, þey schall be slane,	
	Wythowte othe, now þey be tane.	5664
	Allas,’ he seyde, ‘dewke Loyere,	
	How myȝtyst þou do on þys manere ?	
	As for the dewke Oton,	
	He hath done eyr treson :	5668
	But for cawse of hys fauowre	
	Thou schalt be holde a traytowre.	
	Lorde, how schall y wyth þe emperowre fare ?	
[leaf 197 b, col. 1]	Amonge þem may y come no mare.	5672
	When y came to thys cuntre,	
	He sende me knyȝtys gode and free	
	To helpe me, when mystere ware,	
	And þey be now in grete care.	5676
	Now haue y not so lytull a grome	

¹ e written over the line.

- To holde my hors, where þat y come.
 Allas,' he seyde, 'for Tyrrye!
 We be departyd, sekerlye. 5680
 I trowe, y schall the neuer see:
 My lyfe y schall lose for the.
 And Oton^h schall haue Ozell,
 Yf sche hur kepe neuer so well. 5684
 Fro the dethe schall y not flee,
 Tyll that y avengyd bee.'
- ¶ All that day Gye dud ryde
 Thorow þe lande, þat was vnryde. 5688
 At the laste he sye nerhande
 A castell be a watur stande.
 There he þoght to dwelle all nyght,
 For no forther he ne myght. 5692
 At the gate he fonde a knyght:
 He was curtes and wele dyght.
 Be hym stode knyghtys thre:
 He hym bepoght, whych lorde schulde be. 5696
 'Knyght,' quod Gye, 'god the see,
 That for vs dyed vpon a¹ tree.
 I am a knyght of farre cuntre:
 I aske harbowre for charyte.' 5700
 The lorde answeyrd on feyre manere:
 'Syr, ye schall be welcome here.'
 He made oon hys hors to stabull lede,
 'And kepe hym, as myn owne stede.' 5704
 ¶ The lorde was curtes þerewythhall
 And ledde Gye to the halle.
 He toke a mantell of ryche colowre
 And caste on Gye for hys honowre. 5708
 Then seyde the lorde vnto syr Gye:
 'Syr, y the beseche specyallye,
 Telle me, what ys thy name,
 Who þou art and fro whens þou came.' 5712

He rode through
the country till
night,

when he came to
a castle,

whose lord
received him
hospitably.

[leaf 197 b, col. 2]
His host inquired
his name,

¹ a added over the line.

and, being
informed,

Then seyde Gye: 'y schall þe say,
Syth that ye me so feyre pray.

Gye of Warwyk men clepe me :

I am knowyn in many a cuntre.'

5716

'I kenne þe wele for a knyght hende :

Some tyme þou were my frende.

Y was then yowre squyere :

Ye louyd me wyth yowre powere.

5720

Ye made me knyght wyth yowre hande

And ledde me sythen to many a¹ lande

To justes and to bordys :²

Then was y of grete pryce.

5724

Sythen toke y wyfe, as ye may see,

Ames de la Mowntayn, so mote y thee.'

¶ Also sone as Gye hyt wyste,

Well hartelye he hym kyste.

5728

Then seyde Ames: 'where haue ye gone

In thys londe³ thus allone ?

Me þynkyth, þat ye haue had tene,

As ye had yn grete batayle bene.

5732

Where be all yowre meyne,

And syr Harrawde, where ys hee ?'

Then seyde Gye: 'y schall the telle

All my case, how hyt felle.'

5736

There he tolde lesse and more,

How he fonde Tyrrye sore

And how þat he broght hym home

To helpe hys fadur fro schome

5740

And how þat þey were betrayedde echeon

At a parlement, that they had tane,

And how he was paste away

Wyth angwysche that ylke day

5744

And how Harrowde and Tyrrye

Were takyn to pryson, sekerlye,

¹ MS. *to my.*

² MS. *bordes.*

³ *e* in *londe* gone (worm-hole).

discovered him-
self as a former
squire of Guy's,

Amys de la
Mountaine.

Guy told him his
story.

- ' And *wyth þem* fyue hundurde knyȝtys bolde :
 All, y wote, they be in holde, 5748
 I wot not, whedur qwyck or dedde :
 Therefore sory ys my redde.' [leaf 198 a, col. 1]
 ¶ When Gye had tolde euery dele
 Of hys wo and of hys wele, 5752
 Then seyde Ames : '*syr*, a whyle be styлле
 And here me, yf hyt be thy wyлле. Amys offered to
 I haue nodur castell nor towre
 In thys londe *wyth* honowre, 5756
 But they schall be at thy wyлле
 And my men lowde and styлле.
 Fyue hundurd knyghtys may y brynge
 To helpe yow in all thyngre. 5760
 assemble 500
 knights against
 Otoun.
Wyth my strenkyth and my meyne,
 That be in thys cuntre,
 We schall wrath þe dewke Oton
 And stroye hys castels *and* hys towne. 5764
 Wele schall ye vengyd bee
 On the dewke and hys meyne.
 We schall neuer fro hys lande gone,
 Or that he be takyn and slone.' 5768
 ¶ '*Syr*,' seyde Gye, '*gramercye* !
 Hyt were to longe, wytterlye,
 For to gedur ooste so stronge :
 The vengeawnce wolde dwelle to longe. 5772
 I schall sone vengyd bee :
 Fro the dethe y wyll not flee.'
 Gye syxe dayes was thare :
 Euyr he had sorowe and care. 5776
 Ames cownfortyd hym well þan),
 For hym he was a sory man).
 Ames wolde *wyth* hym wende :
 'Do wey,' seyde Gye, 'my dere frende.'
 Ames ys styлле, Gye toke the waye :
 For hym bad Ames ofte that day, 5780
 who in vain
 wished to accom-
 pany him.

	That god, for hys grete grace, Schylde hym fro schame in <i>pat</i> place.	5784
He arrived at Pavia	¶ Now ys Gye to Payuye towne : He þoght to do schame to Otoun. He smeryd hym, or he came there,	
with his face and hair tinged black, [leaf 198 a, col. 2]	Hys vysage <i>and</i> hys yelowē here Wyth a black oyntmente, That he was black <i>and</i> beschente. Ther was none so wyse a man), That cowde Gye knowe than).	5788
so that no one knew him.	At Payuye he fonde dewke Oton) : Herke, how he shewyd hys reson). ¶ 'Syr dewke,' he seyde, 'god ¹ the see : A ryche man thou art of poste. Comyn y am fro ferre cuntre Day and nyght to seke the.	5792
He presented Otoun with a good steed.	I haue þe broght þe beste stede, That euer knyght rode on at nede. Furste hym wanne a sarsyn), Sythen y had hym of my cosyn). Ther ys none in þys worlde so wyght Lyon nor swalowe nor fowle in flyght : Yf a dromande were seylande, He wolde passe hym be the lande. In the see the grete brymme He wyll sone ouyr swymme. Yf ye leue not, that y say, I wyll hyt preue thys ylke day. He hath an euyll manere : Ther ys no man, <i>þat</i> comeþ hym nere, He wyll hym slee day or nyght, But yf that y kepe hym myght.'	5800
	¶ Then seyde Oton) : 'gramercye ! Hyt ys a feyre gyfte, wytterlye. Thou schalt dwelle wyth thy stede :	5804
Otoun thanked him for this present,		5808
		5812
		5816

¹ *g* blotted out before *god* in MS.

Golde and syluyr schall be þy mede.

I haue mystere of soche a stede

For to ryde on at my nede.

Of myn enmyse y haue tane

A grete parte, but oon ys gane.

God, that dyed on a tre,

Geue, he were in my poste :

Hys lyfe dayes were awaye ;

He schulde be hongyd ȝyt to day.'

¶ 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'for the tryuȝte,

What traytur may that bee?'

'My frende,' he seyde, 'be thys day,

Gye he hyght, wythowte delaye,

Of Warwyk, that thefe stronge :

He wyll do me mekyll wronge.'

'Syr, full wele know y Gye :

God wolde, that he stode me bye.

He slewe my brodur ones in fyght :

I wolde be vengyd, yf y myght.

Knowe ye not oon Tyrrye ?

That ys my dedlye enmye :

He slewe my brodur, þat was me dere,

Hyt ys not gone ȝyt halfe a yere.

God let me neuyr dye in lande,

Or y may venge me wyth my hande.'

¶ 'My frende,' seyde dewke Oton,

'I haue hym in my pryson.

Y wyll, that þou kepe Tyrrye

And do hym schame *and* vylanye.'

'Syr,' he seyde, 'gramercye !

I schall yow sey, wytterlye :

Y schall hym kepe ȝerlye *and* late.

I trowe sone to chaunge hys state.'

He gaue hym the keyes there

And made hym hys geylere.

The dewke askyd, what he hyght,

5820 which he said
would be of good
use to him in his
battles : he had
taken some
enemies, but one
had escaped.

5824

5828 Guy asked whom
he meant.
[leaf 198 b, col. 1]

Otoun named Guy
of Warwick.

5832

5836 Guy now asked
if he knew Tyrry :

he had had a
brother slain by
him,

5840

and should like
to be revenged.

5844 Otoun appointed
Guy

5848

5852 to be Tyrry's
jailer.

As Guy gave a
sham name,

And he seyde¹
The dewke comawndyd, he schulde haue
A feyre chaumbur and a knaue.

5856

Otoun did not
suspect who he
was.

Lytull wyste dewke Oton),
Who schulde kepe hys pryson).
¶ For seynt Thomas loue of Cawnturberye,
Fylle the cuppe and make vs mery.

5860

Now haþ Gye all hys wylle
In the courte boþe lowde *and* style.

Guy found Tyrry
in a prison 40
fathoms deep.

To the court Gye ys gone :
He fonde a pryson) of lyme *and* stone.
xl fadoms hyt was depe :
Thereynne he harde oon sore wepe.

5864

[leaf 198 b, col. 2]

Gye askyd hastelye,
Who hyt was, þat made that crye.

5868

Hearing the
prisoner's moan,

'I am a wrecche, a caytyfe :
Me forthynkyth, y am on lyfe.
Erle Tyrrye was my name :
Ther was neuer man, þat had more shame.
I am in a dongeowne
And myssayde of dewke Oton).

5872

I bere on me yron more
Then euyr man) dud before :

5876

All my body weyeth, as ledde,
Lorde, þat y wolde fayne be dedde.

I was felowe wyth a knyght :
In all þys worlde ys none so wyght.

5880

For þe dewke myght not hym sloo,
On me þe vengeawnce wyll he doo.

Thys thre dayes ete y no mete :

I muste dye for hungur grete.'

5884

Guy discovered
himself.

¶ 'Be style,' seyde Gye, 'herkyn a prowē ;
For y am Gye, þyn owne felowe :
I schall delyuyr the of pryson).'

¹ So in MS. : *a name, but not the right*, or something to the same effect, is missing. See the note.

- Then seyde Tyrrye to Gyowne : 5888
 ‘For goddys loue and seynt Mary,
 Wende away faste in hye. Tyrry bade him
flee hastily,
 How came *pou* heder? telle *pou* me.
 Skathe schall y haue for the : 5892
 Yf Oton wytt, that *pou* be here,
 He wyll *þe* sloo on all manere. Iest Otoun should
slay him.
 Hyt ys bettur to dye myselfe allone,
 Then we togedur schulde be slone. 5896
 For the loue of heuyn kynge,
 Wende hens wythowte lettynge.’
 ¶ All þat harde a Lumbarde, Their convers-
ation was over-
heard by a
Lombard,
 Of ther speche how hyt farde. 5900
 He beganne for to crye : who threatened to
tell Otoun.
 ‘Gye, y schall the sone bewrye.
 Ye schall bothe hangyd bee
 On the galowse, so mote y the.’ 5904
 ‘For god, that dyed on a tree,
 Haue mercy of Tyrrye *and* of me.
 Well y wote, that thou may
 Make vs to haue grete harme to day 5908
 What schall thou therof wyne,
 Yf we be slayne *wyth* schame *and* synne?
 I schall become thy man here
 And serue the, as my lorde dere. 5912
 Thou schalt be a nobull knyght;
 And *þerto*, my trowthe y plyght,
 We schall sese into thyn hande
 Halfen dele of all owre lande.’ 5916
 ‘Do wey,’ seyde the Lumbart,
 ‘Of heuyn haue y neuyr part,
 But y telle dewke Oton :
 Y wolde not ellys for all *þys* towne.’ 5920
 ¶ To the courte sone he ranne
 And Gye hym folowed than.
 He hyt *þe* Lumbarde on *þe* crowne, killed him before
Otoun’s eyes.

- That to þe grounde he felle downe. 5924
 He rose no more tales to telle :
 For soþe, hyt was done full well.
 Then seyde Oton : ' what haste þou done ?
 Thou schalt be hangyd longe or none. 5928
 How durste thou be so hardy
 To slee my man before my nye ?'
 But pretending ' My lorde,' seyde Gye, ' here, how hyt was :
 I schall telle yow all the case. 5932
 Y went in þys courte abowte
 Bothe wythynne and wythowte :
 Then y fonde thys traytowre
 Wyth Tyrrye spekyng in þe towre. 5936
 He broght hym mete at hys wylle :
 Of wyne and ale he had hys fylle.
 Me forthoght that full sore,
 And he manaste me to sloo thore. 5940
 Y seyde to hym redelye,
 I wolde yow telle, sekerlye ;
 And wyth hys fyste he smote me sore :
 [leaf 199 a, col. 2] Sythen he flewe away full ȝore. 5944
 Wyth wrath þefore y smote hym here.
 Y pray yow þefore, my lorde dere,
 Forgeue now thys trespas :
 For yowre prowre done hyt was. 5948
 All schall be chastysed in þys towne
 Thorow hym to kepe yowre prysowne.'
 ¶ The dewke sware : ' be heuyn kynges,
 Was hyt done for no nodur thynges ?'
 5952
 ' No,' he seyde, ' be goddys grace.
 I had leuyr be hongyd for þe trespas
 Or some odor dethe dye,
 Then he schulde scape so, sykerlye.' 5956
 ' Y forgeue the then in þys place,'
 And Gye hym thankyd of hys grace.
 ¶ Gye went into that cyte

that he had
detected him in
providing Tyrry
with food,

he was easily
pardoned.

- And boght mete grete plente. 5960
- He broght hyt yn preuelye
 And gaue hyt to syr Tyrrye. Guy now carried provisions to Tyrry,
- Thus dud Gye many a day,
 Tyll Tyrryes sorowe was away. 5964
- Awey he toke euery dele and took off his irons.
 All the bondys of yron^d and stele.
- ¶ Into þe chaumbur Gye came on a day, One day he went to see Ozelle,
 There he fonde that swete maye. 5968
- All in mornynge was hur songe :
 Sche was then in parell stronge.
 Gye seyde to that maye bryght :
 'Ye oght to knowe me well ryght. 5972 who, learning who he was,
- I hyght Gye of Warwyke,
 Thogh y be not now hym lyke.
 Y am comyn to thys cyte,
 Ther ys no man, þat knoweth me. 5976
- Y am comyn to delyuer Tyrrye,
 That y loue so specyallye.'
- ¶ When sche harde, hyt was Gyowne,
 For yoye there sche felle downe. 5980 fainted away.
- Gye toke hur vp hastelye
 And seyde : 'þou doyst grete folye.
 Thou wylt vs here sone confownde, [leaf 199 b, col. 1]
 Yf þou fare thus any stownde. 5984
- And hyt be perceyuyd anyþynge,
 We schall haue schame wythowt dwellyng.'
- Than beganne þat maye to crye :
 'Of me þou¹ haue some mercye : 5988 Being told that the marriage was to take place three days after,
- The terme ys on þe prydde day,
 That we schall be wedde wythowte delaye.
 And, or that y be hys wyfe,
 I schall me² sloo wyth a knyfe.' 5992
- ¶ 'Do wey,' seyde Gye, 'holde þe style.
 Folowe ay all hys wyllle. he promised

¹ MS. *to*.² MS. *hym*.

	Of hys errande he schall mys, Or he come to þe churche, ywys.	5996
to deliver her in time.	I schall hym sloo, or ¹ he come þare, And then schalt þou wyth me fare.'	
Going now to the prison, he liberated Tyrry,	¶ He wente to the pryson ȝare And the maydyn lefte he þare. 'Tyrrye,' seyde Gye, 'for þyn honowre, Hye the faste fro thys towre. Loke, þou stynte not nyght nor day, But wende faste on thy way,	6000
and told him to repair to Amys de la Mountaine.	Tyll þou come to Ames de la Mowntayn In a castell vp in Spayne. Grete hym wele, as he ys hende. Dwelle wyth hym : he ys þy frende. Tyll y come or my sonde sende, Loke, þat þou not fro hym wende.' 'I graunte,' quod Tyrrye than ; Y wyll sone thedur ganne.'	6004
	Gye hym kyste in that tyde : Fro þe towre faste he hyedde. He broght hym to þe hye waye And betaght hym there gode day. Tyrrye went, Gye was lefte þare : He came to þe towre full ȝare. He sawe the mayde at the laste And þedurwarde he hyed faste. He cownfortyd hur all, þat he myȝt,	6008
[leaf 199 b, col. 2]	Bothe be day and be nyght.	
Tyrry found	¶ As Tyrrye wente fro þat cyte, Longe and brode was þat cuntre : Hyllys, wodes and feldes wyde Was in that cuntre on euery syde. So longe Tyrrye trauelde ywys, To Ames castell comen he ys. Ames in the halle he fande	6012
Amys in his hall.		6016
		6020
		6024
		6028

¹ part of *h* blotted out before *or* in MS.

- Feyre at the chesses pleyande ;
 Wyth hym xxx^{ti} of bolde knyghtys,
 That serued hym on dayes *and* nyȝtys. 6032
 They were wyth hym dwellande
 For warre, þat had be in þat lande. .
 ‘Syr,’ seyde Tyrrye, ‘god the see. Tyrry
 I prey þe, a worde þou speke wyth me 6036
 Be yowreselfe preuelye,
 Nor man bye, but ye and y.’
 ‘Syr,’ seyde Ames, ‘at þy wylle
 I schall speke wyth the styлле.’ 6040
 Vp rose Ames *and* þat anone :
 To a wyndowe ys he gone.
 ¶ ‘Ames,’ seyde Tyrrye, told Amys
 ‘Be me well gretyþ yow syr Gye. 6044
 He sende me hedur at yowre wylle
 To be here wyth yow styлле,
 Tyll he come or sende sonde.
 To speke wyth Oton he wyll fonde.’ 6048
 ‘Syr,’ seyde Ames, ‘sekerlye,
 Thys ys a grete curtesye,
 That he wolde þe hedur sende.
 What ys þy name, dere frende?’ 6052
 ‘Syr, y hyght Tyrrye,
 Of Gormoyse þe erles sone Awbrye.’
 ‘Syr,’ seyde Ames, ‘so mote y the,
 Thou art full welcome vnto me.’ 6056
 He hym kyste then full swete
 And wyth hys eyen dud he grete,¹
 That he was so fowle ydyght :
 To amende hyt he dud hys myght. 6060
 He made hym full wele at ese
 And made hys men hym to plese.
 He hym cladde in a wede nobull,
 In ryche sylke and purpull : 6064

Amys welcomed
him heartily,

and supplied him
with all he
wanted.

[leaf 200 a, col. 1]

¹ MS. *repe.*

- The rychest of all þat lande
 He made to be broȝt to hys hande.
 Feyre he preyed hym þere to lynge,
 Tyll he of Gye harde tythyngē. 6068
- S**peke we now of dewke Oton
 And of þe knyȝt, *syr* Gyownl.
 The dewke let make þen a crye,
 þat all men to þe brydale be redye, 6072
 All, that were in Lumbardye
 And in the cyte of Payuye.
- He was very joy-
 ful that his wed-
 ding-day was
 come, The dewke was a yoyfull manl,
 That þe terme was comyn thanl. 6076
 Comen he ys to that maye
 Wyth grete game þat ylke day.
 ‘Lemman dere, dyght þe :
 To day schalt þou weddyd bee.’ 6080
 ‘Syr,’ sche seyde, *wyth* glade¹ chere,
 ‘All thy wyllle y wyll do here.’
 Sche greythed hur nobull well
 To plesē þe dewke þat day, as y yow telle. 6084
 Sche lepe on a palfray,
- He rode to church
 with Ozelle. To the churche sche toke þe way
 Thorow þe cyte *and* the towne :
 Wyth hur wente dewke Otonl. 6088
 He wened to haue wedde *wyth* yoye þat maye :
 Sorowe to hym came þat ylke day.
- Guy, having
 armed himself ¶ Gye hym armed tho in stele :
 He had armer at hys wyllle. 6092
 Forthe he wente, þe dewke Otonl :
 That mayde þey had in þer bandownl.²
- and bestridden
 his steed, Gye hys stede sone bestrode
 And owte of þe castell faste he rode. 6096
 Faste he prekyd þorow þe towne
 And ouyrtoke þe dewke Otonl.
- overtook him. ‘Dewke, stonde þou styllle thare :

¹ *e* of *glade* gone (worm-hole).² See the note.

- Y comawnde þe, þou store no mare. 6100
 Thynkyst þou not of that treson),
 That thou dydyst to *syr* Gyon)
 At the pase, there we went?
 At þat tyme my men were schente. 6104
 Therwyth woldyst þou not holde the,
 But wythynne these monythys thre
 Thou dydyst me a vylanye,
 When þou betraydest *syr* Tyrre. 6108
 Thys ys Gye, that thou seyst here :
 Thou schalt abyde, be seynt Rogere.'
 ¶ He breyde owt hys gode bronde
 And helde hyt nakyd in hys honde. 6112
 The dewke he smote vpon the hode,
 That to the gyrdylstede hyt wode.
 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'be my lewte,
 Yf any starte owte aftur me, 6116
 Sone schall he lese hys hedde ;'
 And wyth þat mayde away he yede.
 He set hur on hys hors hym bye
 And rode away full hastelye. 6120
 ¶ All they folowed tho *syr* Gye
 And þorow þe cyte rose grete crye.
 Fro þem all he paste away :
 Ther came none hym nere þat ylke day, 6124
 But a man of grete renowne,
 That was cosyn to dewke Oton).
 He was bolde, Barrarde he hyght :
 He rode on a stede lyght. 6128
 He folowde Gye thorow þe londe
 Wyth a spere in hys honde.
 When he had folowed hym v myle,
 'Gye,' he seyde, 'abyde a whyle. 6132
 For hys loue, that dyed on tree,
 Oon tyme thou juste wyth me.'
 ¶ Gye hym turned þat ylke stownde

[leaf 200 a, col. 2]
 He charged him
 with his many
 treacheries,

and discovered
 himself.

Killing Otoun,

Guy carried away
 Ozelle.

He was pursued
 by many.

But only a cousin
 of Otoun's,

named Barrarde,
 came near him.

Barrarde called
 upon Guy

to joust with him.
 Guy complied.

- And set þe mayde to þe grownde. 6136
- Having first
received himself He toke hys spere *and* hys schelde
And he hyt brake : Gye hyt felde.¹
- [leaf 200 b, col. 1]
a heavy thrust
with a spear, Gye had wondyr of that dynte
And turned ageyne, or he wolde stynte, 6140
- Guy hit his
adversary so
effectually as to
wound him
severely and to
upset his horse. And *wyth* hys spere he smote Barrarde
On hys schelde, þat was so harde,
Thorow all hys armour a wyde wounde,
That hys stede and he felle to grounde. 6144
- Barrarde starte vp full tye
And drewe hys swyrde *wyth* dyspyte
And smote þe stedys rugge in two
And bad, þe deuell schoulde hym sloo, 6148
- Barrarde in his
anger killed the
animal. When he myzt not on fote stonde
For a dynte of a knyghtys honde.
He seyde : ‘Gye, adowne lyght
A whyle *wyth* me for to fyght. 6152
- Hyt schall be seyne þys ylke day,
Who schall bere the pryce away.
The grace of god be me reuyd,
But y smyte of thy heuydde.’² 6156
- Guy refused to
renew the fight on
foot. ‘My frende,’ seyde Gye, ‘let be þy fare :
I wyll fyght *wyth* the no mare.
We may come, wythowte fayle,
In better tyme to batayle.’ 6160
- Guy rode on, ¶ On hys hors Gye toke þe way
And passyd forþe that ylke day.
Barrarde wente to hys cuntre
Ageyne vnto that feyre cyte. 6164
- Otoun was buried. They brozt þe dewke to chyrche in hye
And beryed hym wele rychelye.
Barrarde to þe emperowre ys gone
And tolde, how þe dewke was slone. 6168
- Barrarde went to
the German
Emperor, who
invested him with
Otoun’s
inheritance, He gaue to hym all hys senyorye :
That was the dewche of Payuye.

¹ MS. *feledde*.² MS. *hedde*.

- He gauē hym armes at hys wylle
 And all, þat he wolde aske wyth skylle. 6172
 He made hym steward of Almayne :
 Therof was many a man fayne. and made him
 steward of
 Germany.
- ¶ And Gye went wyth that mayde trewe :
 Then beganne hur sorowe to newe. 6176
 'Syr Gye,' sche seyde, 'how schall y fare ? [leaf 200 b, col. 2]
 Schall y neuyr see Tyrrye mare ?
 Wele y wot, he schall be dedde,
 Yf he be lefte wythynne þat stedde. 6180
 I wolde be there ageyn full ȝare :
 Then had y yoye wythowten care.'
 'Be style,' quod Gye, 'for, be my hode,
 Tyrrye schall eyle noþyng, but gode. 6184
 Y spake wyth the geylere,
 That he schulde hym kepe on feyre maner.'
 ¶ So longe had they redyn on faste,
 They came to þe cyte at þe laste, 6188
 On the mowntayn þere hyt stode,
 Thedur he sende Tyrrye the gode.
 To the cyte when þey came,
 To þe halle þe wey þey name. 6192
 Ames sawe Gye and knewe hym well.
 'Welcome,' he seyde, 'be seynt Mychell.'
 When Tyrrye¹ sawe Gye þe wyght
 And wyth hym¹ þat mayde so bryght, 6196
 To the mayde can Tyrrye goo
 And toke hur in hys armes twoo
 And kyste hur there anon.
 'Welcome,' he seyde, 'my dere lemmon.' 6200
 Aftur he went vnto syr Gye
 And kyste hym there, sekurlye.
 'Welcome,' he seyde, 'for sothe, ye bee
 And wyth yow my lemman free. 6204
 That ye be comyn to thys place,

¹ e in *Tyrrye* and h in *hym* gone (worm-hole).

	Thankyd be god of hys grace. I prey to god in trynyte, Let vs neuer efte departyd bee.'	6208
	¶ Now be þey all comen same : There was moche yoye <i>and</i> game. When þat mayde sawe Tyrrye, That sche louyd spëcyallye,	6212
Ozelle swooned with joy.	For grete yoye amonge þem all In a swowne sche dud downe falle. Sche had not wente to haue fonde hym þare. ¹	
[leaf 201 a, col. 1]	Tyrrye toke hur vp full ȝare And seyde : ' lady, let be thy fare. To game <i>and</i> yoye ys turned owre care. I am,' he seyde, ' bothe hole and fere, ² And so art thou, y see well here.'	6220
	There þey dwellyd all longe : Yoye <i>and</i> game was þem amonge.	
One day Guy and Tyrry resolved	¶ Gye hym þoght vpon a day Of gode Harrowde, þat was away, And callyd Tyrrye and Amys And seyde : ' lordyngys, here myn avyce.	6224
to repair to Aubry in order to find means	Wyll we to Gormoyse wende To the erle, that ys so hende ? For vs, y wote, he ys sorye. Vs to venge he wyll helpe in hye	6228
of liberating Duke Loyere's prisoners,	And brynge my men owt of pryson), That Loyere holdyth wyth gret treson).' Then bespake Tyrrye anon : ' Full glad wyll he be wyth yow to gone And ellys y wolde, þat he were colde ; For he ys þerto moste beholde.'	6232
Amys	¶ Then bespake Ames the hende :	6236
accompanied them	' Y wyll also wyth yow wende To helpe yow in all thyng.	

¹ After this line the catch-word *Tyrrye toke hure* in another hand.

² MS. *clere*.

- Fyue hundurd knyghtys wyll y brynge 6240 with 500 knights
And of squyers a thousande : and 1000 squires.
They schall be redy to yowre hande.'
'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'gramercye ;
For in yowre helpe y me affye.' 6244
Ames sende aftur hys knyghtys all :
They came sone to hys calle ;
So dud hys squyers euerychone :
They fayled hym neuer oon). 6248
¶ When they were redy dyght,
Forþe þey went on stedys lyght.
To Gormoyse they toke the way :
Loreyn þey stroyed that same day. 6252 On their way
they wasted
Lorraine.
As þey went in þat londe,
They slewe all, that they fonde. [leaf 201 a, col. 2]
They come to Gormoyse in hye :
Joyfull was the erle Awbrye. 6256 Aubry was glad
of their coming.
He was so yoyfull a man),
That he swownyd, when þey came.
He wende full sekurlye
Neuer to haue sene Tyrrye nor Gye. 6260
All the men of that cyte
Of þer comyng made game *and* glee.
¶ Tyrrye tolde hys fadur than,
How Gye was a nobull man) 6264 Tyrry acquainted
him with his new
obligations to
Guy.
And toke hym fro the pryson
And *wyth* hys hande slewe dewke Oton).
'Amonge þem all he forgate noght,
But my lady away he broght. 6268
Now he þynkyþ bothe day *and* nyght
Dewke Loyere for to stroye *wyth* myght.
He wyll not¹ *wyth* grete yre
To be vengyd on that syre.' 6272

But, when þe dewke harde tythande,
þat Gye was comyn to hys lande,

Duke Loyere too
was glad of the
news.

¹ *but* seems to be omitted after *not*.

	Wyth hym Ozelde, hys doghtur dere :	
	He was gladde <i>and</i> made gode chere.	6276
He told it to Harrowde,	He calde Harrowde to hym in hye	
	And tolde hym, how þat Tyrrye <i>and</i> Gye	
	Were comyn <i>and</i> grete power broght	
	And in hys londe grete harme had wroȝt	6280
	And Ames de la Mowntayne	
	And wyth hym all the men of Spayne.	
	When he harde tythyngys of Gye,	
	That he was comyn wyth Tyrrye,	6284
	He was neuer so gladde nor blythe :	
	He thankyd god fele sythe.	
whom he asked to be his messenger to Aubry,	¶ 'Harrowde,' seyde the dewke Loyere,	
	'Y wyll, þou be my messengere.	6288
	To erle Awbrye þou schalt gone,	
Guy, and Tyrry, to whom he wanted to be reconciled,	To Gye and Tyrrye <i>and</i> þat anon	
	And prey them pur charyte	
	For to be at oon wyth mee ;	6292
	And y wyll amende at þer wyll	
[leaf 201 b, col. 1]	And all þer harmes to fulfyllen	
	And all, þat euer þat þey wyll craue ;	
	And my doghtur Tyrrye schall haue	6296
	And, whyll y leue, halfe my londe	
	And, when y am dedde, all in hys honde.	
	I prey the, bere wytnesse	
	Of all þese wordys nrore <i>and</i> lesse.'	6300
	'Syr,' seyde Harrowde, 'wyth gode chere	
	Wyll y be yowre messengere.	
	I wyll do myn entente	
	Faste abowte that cordement.'	6304
	¶ The dewke let the constabull calle	
The prisoners were all delivered	And bad hym brynge owt þe prisoners all	
	And delyuyrde them full yare	
	And all þer harnes lesse <i>and</i> mare :	6308
	Ther was none, þat fayled onyþynge	
	The mowntance of a farthyng.	

- He seyde, þey schulde all *wyth* Harrowde fare
 To speke abowte the cordement þare. 6312 in order to accom-
pany Harrawde.
- ¶ Now ys Harrowde redy dyght
 And *wyth* hym many a doghty knyȝt :
 They were felows euerychone,
 To Gormoyse they be gone. 6316 When they were
approaching
Gormoyse,
- Gye and Ames went *þat* day
Wyth Tyrrye into þe felde to play.
 They lokeyd besyde þem on þe playne :
 Ther came knyghtys þem agayne. 6320 Guy and his
fellows were
amusing them-
selves in the field,
and seeing them,
- They were agaste of treson).
 Ames seyde to syr Gyon) :
 ‘Yonder comeþ a meyne,
 But y wot not, what þey bee. 6324
- Hedur, me þynkyþ, þey take þe way.
 I schall wytt, yf that y may,
 Whedur hyt be in pece or in werre.’
 In hys honde he toke a spere : 6328
- Forthe he rode prekande,
 Tyll he came nerehande.
 He stode *and* avysyd them euerychone : [leaf 201 b, col. 2]
 Harrowde hym knewe *and* þat anon). 6332 Harrawde knew
him at once.
- ‘Ames,’ he seyde, ‘where ys Gye
 And whedur wyndyst þou þus¹ hastelye?’
 ‘Harrowde,’ quod Ames, ‘y schall þe saye,
 Thou schalt see Gye thys ylke day. 6336
- I lefte hym on the ȝondur hylle
 And hys meyne hove style.’
 Then seyde Harrowde : ‘go we thedur,
 Euerychone and all togedur.’ 6340
- ¶ There they redyn a gode pase,
 All the knyghtys, *þat* pere wase.
 Gye hounyd there style,
 Tyll þey were vpon the hylle. 6344
- ‘Lorde,’ seyde Gye, ‘god almyght,

¹ s blotted out before þus in MS.

They all kissed
one another.
Harrawde
delivered his
message.

[leaf 202 a, col. 1]

The offer of
reconciliation

3ondur y see Harrowde the wyght
 And my felows euerychone :
 Y wene, they be owt of pryson tane.' 6348
 When Gye and Tyrrye¹ and Harrowde were mett,
 They kyste eyder oder¹ wythowten lett.
 'Syr,' quod Harrowde, 'y prey yow here,
 A² gode counsell þat yow lere. 6352
 For y am comen, as a messengere,
 From the dewke syr Loyere.
 Y oght to loue hym, as my brodur :
 He honowred me afore all odur. 6356
 Y sey yow for yowre prowre :
 He wyll be at one wyth yow.
 He wyll geue Tyrrye hys doghtur dere
 (And be at oon on all manere) 6360
 And all hys londe more and lesse
 And therto fynde sekernesse.
 Wyth þys message he hath me sente
 To yow, syr Gye, and Tyrrye presente. 6364
 He wyll amende in all thyng,
 That he haþ trespass, at yowre askyng.
 I wyll, þe parell be on me leyde,
 That he wyll do, as y haue³ seyde.' 6368
 ¶ There þey preyed all syr Gye
 And wyth hym erle Tyrrye,
 That þey schulde graunt for to bee
 Wyth hym in loue and charyte. 6372
 To the cyte wente syr Gye
 And tolde hyt to erle Awbrye,
 How þat Harrowde was comen home
 And wyth hym hys felows euerychon 6376
 And how he wolde acordyd bee
 And geue to Tyrrye hys doghtur free

¹ The second *r* of *Tyrrye* and *o* of *oder* gone (worm-hole).

² MS. *And*.

³ *y haue* is written by the same hand over *he hath* struck out.

- And make amendys for hys trespas
 'And put hym in owre owne grace.' 6380
 'Therto my gode wylle y graunt here,'
 And so dud all, þat þere were.
 ¶ On þe morowe þey made þem all ȝare
 Vnto Loren for to fare, 6384
 The erle Awbrye and *syr* Gye,
 Ames, Harrowde and Tyrrye,
 And wente vnto þe dewke Loreyne,¹
 And he of þem was² full fayne. 6388
 They were made at oon thore
 And louyd togedur for euermore.
 There was forgeuyn euery trespas
 And grete yoye in that cyte was, 6392
 That Tyrrye was on feyre manere
 Acordyd wyth the dewke Loyere.
 The dewke hys doghtur gaue to Tyrrye
 And of hys londe the more partye 6396
 Before all hys baronage,
 That were of dyuers langage.
 The brydale was ordeygned than :
 A feyrer sawe neuyr no man 6400
 Of kynge nor of emperowre.
 Hyt was made *wyth* grete honowre.
 ¶ At the partynge of the feste,
 That was made so honeste, 6404
 They toke þer leue, knyghtys free :
 Home þey wente to þer cuntre.
 The erle Ames hys leue hath tane
 And to hys castell he ys gane. 6408
 There was Gye a whyle styлле
 And had ynogh of hys wylle ;
 Tyll he wente vpon a day
 Wyth howndys hym for to play, 6412
 And also the dewke Loyere

was readily
accepted by
Aubry.

The next morning
they all set off for
Lorraine,

where the recon-
ciliation took
place,

to the great joy of
all.

Duke Loyere
bestowed on Tyrry
Ozelle's hand, and
the greater part
of his duchy.

There were splen-
did wedding
festivals.

After their
conclusion,

[leaf 202 a, col. 2]
Guy remained
some time longer
with Loyere.
One day

¹ MS. *loyeren*).

² *a* of *was* gone (worm-hole).

there was a hunt-
ing in a wild
forest.
A boar was
unsloughed.

He was pursued
by the hunters
as long as their
horses could go.

At last he was
followed only by
three hounds

and Guy,

who chased him
as far as Brittany.

Wente for to chace the dere :
Wyth hym he toke þe erle Tyrrye
And many a nodur knyght ¹ hardy. 6416
¶ They enturde into a wyld foreste
And þere þey fonde a bore wyld *and* preste.
All þe howndys, they had, than
Aftur the bore faste they ranne. 6420
The bore away faste ys gone
And many of þe howndys he hap slone :
Moo, þen twenty, in a stownde
Had he broght vnto the grownde. 6424
He passyd the foreste hastelye :
They folowed hym wyth grete crye.
Faste he passyd thorow þe londe :
Ther durste no hownde come nerehonde. 6428
The knyghtys prekyd aftur faste,
Tyll þer horsys myght not laste.
The howndys, that folowed þat day,
Were slayne all be the way : 6432
Thes odur were werye,
They went home, þey ² myzt not drye,
All, but thre, that were wyght,
That folowed alwey wyth ther myght, 6436
Tyll they come to Bretayne.
Ther folowed þem nodur knyzt nor swayne :
Of them all was no hunttere,
That wyste, where the borre were, 6440
But *syr* Gye hymselfe allone,
That folowed faste wyth grete randone
On hys stede faste prekynge
And wyth hys horne faste blowynge. 6444
¶ Gye chasyd the borre so faste,
He came to Bretayne at the laste.
Be then was þe boore full hote :

¹ *ky* blotted out before *knyght* in MS.

² Another *went* blotted out after *þey* in MS.

- He fonde a dyke *and* yn he smote. 6448 [leaf 202 b, col. 1]
 There he wandyrde faste abowte
 And wrotyd faste *wyth* hys snowte.
 Gye sawe the bore well
 And, what he dud, euery delle.¹ 6452
 Downe he lyght of² hys stede
 And to the bore soon he yede.
 He toke hys swyrde in hys hande :
 The boore hym sye *and* came rennande. 6456
 Gye on þe rygge smote hym soo,
 That hys body felle in twoo. Here he killed the
 The boore felle downe at þe laste, animal,
 And Gye *wyth* hys horne blewe a blaste. 6460 and wound his
 He wende to haue had some felowe, horn.
 But ther was none, þat dud hym knowe. Looking about
 He was in a farre cuntre him, he saw he
 All aloone fro hys meyne, was quite alone in
 And, as he openyd there the boore, a distant country.
 Euyr he blewe more and more. 6464
 ¶ Then bespake erle Florentyne : Earl Florentine
 ‘What may thys be, for seynt Martyne, 6468
 That y here blowe in my foreste ? heard the sound
 Takyn they haue some wylde beste.’ of Guy’s horn.
 Forthe he clepyd there a knyght,
 Hys owne sone, that was wyght. 6472
 ‘My dere sone,’ he seyde, ‘hye the,
 That he were broght anon to me. He sent his son
 Whedur he be knyght or hunttere, for the hunter.
 Brynge hym hedur on all manere.’ 6476
 ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘hyt schall be done.’
 He lepe on a stede sone.
 To the foreste he came in hye
 And sone he mett *wyth* syr Gye. 6480 This young
 He bare a staffe *and* that a longe : knight met Guy
 Ther*wyth* he þoght to do Gye wronge.

¹ *d* erased before *delle* in MS.² MS. *on*.

- 'Harlot,' he seyde, 'what art thou,
 That comen art into þys foreste nowe 6484
 Wythowte þe leue of my fader?'¹
 [leaf 202 b, col. 2] In wyckyd tyme come thou here.
 How durste þou take thys wyld besta
 Wythowte leue in thys foreste ? 6488
 and demanded his Geue me thy horne : be thy swyre,
 horn. I schall þe brynge vnto my syre.'
 After a short ¶ 'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'wyth gode chere,
 altercation, Yf ye hyt aske in feyre manere.' 6492
 'Nay, traytour, y the say,
 Thou schalt not passe fro me away.'
 Be the brydull he toke þe stede :
 He had hym leuyr, þen any mede. 6496
 he struck Guy Wyth hys staffe Gye he smote,
 with a staff; That he felyd hyt full hote.
 for which offence Gye seyde : 'þou doyst vncurteslye
 For to smyte me wrongeuslye.' 6500
 Guy killed him Wyth hys horne Gye² brake þan
 with a blow of his horn. Hys hedde vnto þe brayne panne.
 'Felowe, take þou that therfore.
 Loke, þou smyte no knyght no more.' 6504
 Riding away, ¶ Forthe he rode a gode spede,
 When he was lopyn on hys stede.
 He went the foreste nye abowte,
 Or he myght wende owte. 6508
 He lokyd abowte hym on euery hande,
 But he knewe noþyng of þat lande :
 He sawe a towne be the way.
 He fasted all that same day. 6512
 He had not redyn, but a whyle,
 Vnnethe þe mowntawnce of a myle :
 He sawe a castell nerehande
 Feyre on an hylle stande. 6516
 He hyed hym thedur faste rydande :

¹ MS. *ffadur*.² *he b* blotted out before *Gye* in MS.

- He mett *wyth* oon of that lande.
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'for thy lewte,
 Who owyth the 3ondur cyte?' 6520
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'y schall the say.
 A bettur lorde leuyth not to day :
 Men calle hym Florentyne.
 A better man dranke neuer wyne.' 6524
 ¶ Gye rode to the castell gate :
 Porter fonde he none therate.
 He went to the halle 3are
 And of hys stede he lyght thare. 6528
 In he wente a gode pase :
 He fonde syttynge at the deyse
 An olde man, an hore knyght.
 He senyd of moche myght. 6532
 To hym came syr Gye
 And gret hym full curteslye.
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'herkyn to me :
 I am a kny3t of straunge cuntre. 6536
 Yf hyt yowre wylle bee,
 I aske mete for charyte
 But for oon meel of thys day,
 And sythen y wyll wende away.' 6540
 He seyde : 'syr, so mote y the,
 Thou art welcome vnto me.'
 ¶ He bad hys men *and* þat in haste
 Go feche forthe of the beste. 6544
 Gye ete faste on feyre manere
 Of hys mete *wyth* gode chere.
 He harde bellys faste rynge
 In the cyte *wyth*owte cessynge. 6548
 All, þat þere were, aferde was,
 For they harde soche noyse.
 'Lady,' þey seyde, 'heuyn quene,
 What may all thys sorowe bemeene?' 6552
 ¶ *Wyth* þat they come *wyth* sory chere

[leaf 203 a, col. 1]
 he came to
 Florentine's
 castle.

He went into the
 hall,

and asked the
 Earl for a meal.

While he was
 enjoying it,

- the young dead knight was brought in on a bier. And broght hys sone layde on a beere
And leyde hym there in the halle.
'Lorde,' seyde he, '*þat* boght vs all, 6556
Ys thys,' he seyde, 'my dere sone,
That on beere ys thus come?'
He drewe hys cloþys *and* hys hare :
- [leaf 203 a, col. 2] He þoght, hys herte myȝt breke for care. 6560
'Allas,' he seyde, 'my dere chylde,
Who hath þe slone in the felde?
God, that dyed on a tree,
Leve, he stode here be me : 6564
Y wolde not leeuē for all þys lande,
But y wolde slee hym *wyth* myn hande.'
- A squire recognized the guest as the murderer. ¶ Then bespake a squyere :
'He syttyth now before yow here. 6568
I knowe hym ryght wele :
Y sawe that dede euery dele.'
¶ When þe erle harde, *þat* hyt so was,
He starte hym vp fro the dayse. 6572
A spere he toke in hys hande
And came to Gye rennande
And seyde : 'traytour, þou schalt dye here,
For þou slewe my sone dere.' 6576
Vp he drewe then hys arme :
He þoght to do Gye grete harme.
- The Earl threw a spear at Guy, without hitting him. Wyth grete wrath he can mynte,
But he fayled of hys dynte. 6580
Halfe a fote the spere stode
And into the borde wode.
- Guy protested he had killed the youth in his defence. 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'for goddys merceye,
Smyte not, but ye wott, why. 6584
If y haue slayne thy dere sone,
Me defendawnt hyt was done.'
¶ Tho they lept Gye abowte,
Knyghtys, *þat* were styffe *and* stowte. 6588
Getting his shield Gye wanne hys schelde, þere hyt stode,

And in hys hande an axe gode.		and an axe,
He turnedde hys rygge to a walle		he killed several
And hym defendyd for them all.	6592	of his assailants.
Tho starte forthe the steward :		
Hyt semyd, he was no cowarde.		
Wyth a swyrde he smote Gye		
On the schelde hardelye.	6596	
Wyth hys axe Gye to hym mynte :		
He fayled not of hys dynte.		[leaf 203 b, col. 1]
He claue hys hedde eyn in twaye :		
Hys lyfe he loste that ylke day.	6600	
Gye wyth hys owne hande		
Defendyd hym wyth hys axe bytande.		
There he slewe knyghtys thre,		
The strengyst of all þat cuntre.	6604	
¶ 'Erle Florentyne,' seyde Gye,		Guy urged
'For the holy crosse loue, mercye !		
Thou art holdyn a doghty knyght,		
A wyse man of werre and fyght :	6608	
Yf thou slee me in thys halle,		
All men wyll the traytour calle.		
Hyt were a ¹ grete schame vnto the,		that it would be
When þou harbarowste me for charyte.	6612	a great shame for
Were hyt wyth ryght or wyth wronge,		the Earl
Hyt wolde þe turne to schame stronge		
And moost of all in that case,		to slay him while
When y at the mete was.	6616	sitting at his
Therefore do wythowte blame,		table,
That hyt turne not to no schame.		and requested him
Do me now to haue my stede		to order
And owte of the ȝate me lede.	6620	his horse to be
Hyt were to the more honowre,		brought and
Then y were slayne in thy towre.'		himself let out of
¶ The erle wythdrewe hym than.		the castle.
He was a sory man),	6624	After renewed
		lamentation,

¹ a over the line in MS.

- When he sye þem¹ þere lye dedde.
 What he myȝt do, he cōwde no redde.
 ‘Allas,’ he seyde, ‘and wele away !
 My sone ys dedde thys ylke day. 6628
 Now schall y eyr mare
 Leue in sorowe and in care.’
 He swownyd soone vpon the beere.
 Ther was no man in þat place þere, 6632
 But of hym they had pyte.
 He comawndyd nys² meyne,
 That none were so hardye
 To assayle hym before hys yee. 6636
- [leaf 203 b, col. 2] He dud delyuer to hym hys stede
 the Earl complied. And also all hys odur wede.
 When he were owt of the towre,
 He schulde be slayne wyth dyshonowre. 6640
- Guy now, sitting
 on his horse, ¶ Gye toke hys gode stede
 And on hym lepe, as he had nede.
 Hys swyrde he forȝate noght,
 And hys spere was to hym broght. 6644
 Owte of the castell ys he gane :
 The way he hath soone tane.
 Be þat the erle was armed wele
 Bothe in yron and in stele. 6648
 Faste he sewyd there syr Gye
 Wyth hys grete companye.
 Gye turned the hed of hys stede
 And farde, as þat he wolde wede. 6652
- slew many of his
 pursuers. He mett a knyght and smote hym sore,
 That he rose neuyr more.
 A nother there soone he smote.
- Even the Earl The erle came then full hote 6656
 (To slee Gye he dud fonde)
 Wyth a spere in hys honde.

¹ þem is very probably miswritten for *hym* or for *hys sone*.

² *pyte* blotted out after *hys* in MS.

- Gye hym turned *and* dud hym see :
 To fyght *wyth* hym wolde he not flee. 6660
 They faght togedur þere full faste,
 Whyll þere speres myght laste.
 The erle smote tho *syr* Gye
 Thorow the schelde hardelye. 6664
 Gye smote at hym a nodur dynte :
 Hys hors *and* hym downe he tynte.
 ¶ Gye had pyte of that knyght,
 When he sawe, he had be of myght,¹ 6668
 And þat he had hys sone slone.
 'Twenty wyntur hyt was gone,
 Sythen he myght armes bere,
 Or helpe hymselfe in any were. 6672
 Gye seyde : 'haue here thy stede
 And hye þe whome a gode spede.
 Hyt were bettur for þe to be in church
 And holy werkys for to wyrche, 6676 [leaf 204 a, col. 1]
 Then to welde schelde or spere
 Or any² odur armes to bere.
 I haue ȝyldyd the thy mede :
 For þy mete haue here thy stede. 6680 restored it to him.
 I wolde haue askyd þe none, yf y had wyste,
 Thogh y schulde haue dyed for hungur *and* þryste.³
 I schall neuyr more come to the
 To aske mete for charyte. 6684
 God let me euyr wele fare,
 At þy courte or y come mare.'
 ¶ Also so god geue yow reste,
 Fylle the cuppe of the beste. 6688
Now wendyþ Gye faste away :
 He wolde not ȝelde hym þat day.
 þer came knyȝtys on euery syde
 Yonge *and* of moche pryde. 6692

¹ *m* in *myght* uncertain in MS. : *on* might be read as well.² *armes* blotted out after *any*.³ MS. *þurste*.

- Wyth the helpe of þat cuntre
 They chasyd Gye grete plente.
 Gye rode faste thorow þat londe :
 A grete foreste there he fonde. 6696
- Guy defended himself so well,
 Ofte he turned them hys¹ vysage
 And dud them grete qwtrage.
 Many a wownde away þey bere
 And many slayne eke in fere. 6700
- and his horse was so quick,
 that he escaped.
 ¶ Gye on hys stede rode faste :
 Fro þem all soon he paste.
 His pursuers turned back
 The erle and hys companye,
 Ageyne they went hastelye. 6704
- to bury the Earl's son.
 He toke hys sone, that was dedde,
 And beryed hym in a holy stedde.
 Guy continued riding
 All that day Gye dud ryde
 (He wolde not there abyde), 6708
- till the next morning,
 when he saw he was in Lorraine.
 Tyll hyt were on a nodur morne :
 He sawe Loreyn hym beforne.
 He knewe that cuntre :
 He wente to that cyte. 6712
- His fellows were glad to see him
 [leaf 204 a, col. 2] again.
 All hys men þere he fonde,
 That were for hym sore dredeande.
 All they made gode chere,
 When þey sawe Gye hole *and* fere. 6716
- He tolde þem all, or he wolde blynne,
 What parell that he was ynne.
 Then they þankyð seynt Mychell,
 That he was delyuyrd so well. 6720
- After some time
 Guy resolved to return to England.
 ¶ When he had a stownde dwellyd þare,
 Into Ynglonde wolde he fare.
 He took leave of Loyere
 of Loyere
 He toke leue of dewke Loyere
 And he hym bad on feyre manere 6724
- Of hys tresure for to take
 And þat he schulde hyt not forsake.
 Of the tresure kepte he noght :

¹ *hys* omitted in MS.

On odor thyng was hys þoght. 6728
 To Tyrrye went Gyown
 And schewyd hym hys reson.
 'Tyrrye,' he seyde, 'y wyl fare : and Tyrry.
 Into Ynglonde y wyll ȝare 6732
 For to see there my kynne
 To wyt, what state þat þey be ynne.
 I wot not, whethur þey be leueande,
 And therefore y wyll passe þe sande. 6736
 Thys vii yere y sawe not thame :¹
 For sothe, therfore y am to blame.
 Yf anythyng come to the,
 What some euyr that hyt bee, 6740
 Sende to me for anythyng,
 And y wyll come wythowte lettyng.
 Now þou haste þy wyfe hende
 And all þy warre broght to an ende : 6744
 Thyn enmyse, they be slone,
 For soþe, that y knowe, euerychone.
 In pese now ys all thy londe :
 Ther dar no man brynge þe warre on honde. 6748
 Thou art holdyn of pryce,²
 Therfore the wyll drede thyn enmyse.
 I schall the sende my messengere :
 Thou do also, my brodur dere. 6752
 Myselfe wyll come to þe some day,
 And þat schall be, when þat y may.'
 ¶ 'Syr,' seyde Tyrrye, 'gramercye !
 I am sorowfull, sekerlye. 6756
 Thou haste me sauyd fro þe dedde
 In mony a dyuers stedde.
 Yf þou wylte now wende fro me
 Y not, whethur euer y schall þe see. 6760

¹ MS. *them*.² *y* in *pryce* altered from some other letter in MS.

- Then schall myn enmyse¹ wyt full wele,
 How we be departyd-euery dele :
 The Almayns wyll geue me were,
 Wyth þer myght þey me wyll dere. 6764
 They be of Otons kynne,
 And many a lande ys therynne.
 I schall be in grete stryfe
 Euyr, whyll that y haue lyfe. 6768
 Yf we be togedur here,
 Me þar not drede on no manere.
 Yf ye wyll dwelle wyth me,
 Castels *and* cytees y schall geue þe 6772
 (The beste, that in thys londe be,
 Schall be thyn), so mote y the)
 And dwelle wyth þe dewke Loyere :
 All Gormoyse ye schall haue here. 6776
 I sey *wyth* my herte, god hyt wote,
 Schall y neuyr chalenge fote
 Of all Gormoyse eche a thyng,
 Not so moche, as a farthyng.' 6780
 ¶ 'Tyrrye, bydde me no more :
 Hyt ys no saluyng for my sore.
 I desyre that londe fayne
 And for þy loue y wolde *turne* agayne. 6784
 Yf hyt ne were for my lemman dere,
 I wolde not go fro the here.
 Togedur we wolde be, *wythowte* othyng,
 Tyll we came to endyng. 6788
 Dere brodur, let be thy care :
 Y wyll come ageyne full zare.'
 They kyste togedur ryght thore
 And wepte *wyth* ther eyen sore. 6792
 Ther was none, when Gye dud goo,
 But he wepte *wyth* hys eyen twoo.
 ¶ Gye lepe on a softe palfray

and offered Guy
 his earldom in
 order to prevent
 him from going.

But Guy longed
 to see his leman.

[leaf 204 b, col. 2]

All wept
 when Guy left.

¹ Perhaps we ought to read *When myn enmyse schall*.

- And he wente forthe on hys way. 6796
 The erle lefte styлле thare :
 For Gye he made moche care.
 Gye, forthe euyr dud he ryde,
 Tyll he came to the see syde. 6800
 A schyppe he fonde *and* gode fare :
 Into Ynglonde he came 3are.
 To Wynchestur he came ryght :
 The kynge was þere *wyth* myght. 6804
 When he came to that cyte,
 Agenste hym came þe kynge free.
 All the men of that cuntre
 Preysed Gye for hys bewte. 6808
 The kynge hym nome abowte þe halse
 And *wyth* yoye¹ he kyste hym else.
 All men of hym had ferlye,
 That he had passed so, *syr* Gye. 6812
 ¶ At the chesses vpon a day
 Gye *wyth* the kynge dud play.
 Then came knyghtys prekande :
 ‘Syr,’ they seyde, ‘here tythande. 6816
 A beste ys comen to the lande :
 Ther may no man agenste hym stande.
 He ys comyn fro Yrelande :
 Moche care he bryngyþ on hande. 6820
 He sleyth bothe beste and man
 And all, that euer he fynde can).
 He ys a dredefull beste :
 Hys hedde ys black *and* *wyth* þe meste ; 6824
 Hys wombe ys black, hys rygg donne,
 Hys body ys gretter þen a tonne.
 Wyngys he hath on euery syde :
 Hys body ys longe and vnryde 6828
 (Skales he hath all abowte :
 Of no wepon he þar not dowte),

¹ *h* blotted out before *yoye* in MS.

Coming to
Winchester,
Guy was very
honourably
received by the
King.

One day the King,
while playing at
chess with Guy,

heard that a
Dragon was
desolating the
country.

- Hys breste brode *and* black skynne.
 [leaf 205 a, col. 1] At hys mowthe a sted^e myght ynnē. 6832
 Powes he hath, as a lyon.
 He ys an vgle, fowle dragon.
 Hys tayle ys grete *and* þerto longe.
 Ther ys no knyzt halfe so stronge, 6836
 Were he armed neuer so wele,
 But, *and* þe dragon hyt hym wele
 Wyth hys tayle a lytull mynte,
 But he schulde dye of that dynte.' 6840
- The King was
 sorry,
 ¶ When the kynge harde well,
 What they seyde, euery dell,
 He was in sorowe stronge :
 He myght not speke aftur longe. 6844
- but Guy under-
 took to kill the
 beast.
 'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'let be thy thoght :
 Of þat beste drede the noght.
 I schall wende to that cuntre
 And, yf that beste fowndyn bee, 6848
 I schall hym sloo *wyth* force *and* myght
 And come ageyne anon ryght.'
- Though advised
 to take 200
 knights with
 him,
 'Nay,' seyde the kynge to Gyowne,
 'Ye schall not wende owt of þys towne, 6852
 But *wyth* yow an hundurd knyztys or two :
 All the sykerer may ye goo.'
- he *would* go
 alone.
 Gye hym answeyrd hastelye :
 'God forbede and seynt Marye, 6856
 That for a beste all oonlye
 Men schulde brynge soche compenye.'
 ¶ Gye toke hys leue *wyth*owten more,
 And to hys ynnē he went thore. 6860
 He hym dyght soone that day :
 To that beste he toke þe way.
- Not even his
 fellows were
 allowed to
 accompany him,
 except Harrawde
 and two more
 knights.
 Hys felows wolde *wyth* hym wende :
 He wolde not let þem, so god me mende. 6864
 Wolde he none let *wyth* hym goo,
 But *syr* Harrowde and odor twoo.

¶ When he pedur came, *syr* Gye,
 There he sawe the beste lye,
 Gye hym armed soone then :
 Sythen he comawndyd all hys men,
 That none were so hardye
 To come to hym, þogh he schulde dye.

6868 Having arrived at
 the place where
 the Dragon was,

Vndur an hylle went *syr* Gye,
 There as, he sawe, þe beste dud lye.
 Gye sate vpon hys stede :
 Of hym he had grete drede.

Guy armed him-
 self,
 [leaf 205 a, col. 2]
 and forbidding
 his men to assist
 him,

6872

He smote hym *wyth* hys spere faste :
 Hyt brake in pecys at the laste.
 So thyck was hys skynne,
 That he myȝt not thorow wyne.

6876

assailed the beast.

¶ When the beste feled the dynte,
 Wyth hys hedde he dud mynte.
 To Gye he starte, as he wolde wede,
 And smote hym downe and hys stede.
 There was Gye stonyed sore :
 Soche a dynte had he neuer ore.
 Gye starte vp and lay not longe.
 ‘God,’ he seyde, ‘of myght so stronge,

6880

6884 He and his horse
 were thrown
 down.

That madyst bothe day *and* nyght
 And dyed on tre for synfull wyght
 And sauȝd Sampson fro the lyon,
 Kepe me to day fro thys dragon.’

6888

6892

¶ Hys swyrde anon he drewe owte :
 To þat beste he starte full stowte.
 Before the hedde dud he smyte,
 But the swyrde wolde not byte.
 So grete wondur had Gye there,
 That no wepon myght hym dere.

6896 His sword did not
 hurt the Dragon.

He was now in batell stronge :
 The dragon faght agenste hym longe.
 As Gye assayled hym in the place,
 Hym befelle auenturs case :

6900

- So nye Gye the beste wente,
 That *wyth* hys pawes he hym rente 6904
 Guy's hauberk
 was damaged.
 The pecys of hys hawberke,
 That was bope stalworthe *and* starke.
 In aventure was Gye than :
- [leaf 205 b, col. 1] To a tre faste he ranne 6908
 To loke, yf he myght better fare,
 And for to defende hym thare.
 He on Gye faste dud bete
 And *wyth* hys tayle faste he dud hym smete 6912
 Another time he
 fell upon the
 ground.
 Thorow þe schelde in a stownde,
 That Gye felle flat to þe grownde.
 ¶ Than there a lytull whyle
 Gye was in grete paryle : 6916
 He foldyd hys tayle hym abowte,
 That he myght not on no syde owte.
 Hys tayle was grett *and* vnryde :
 He brake two rybbes in Gyes syde. 6920
 Gye seyde : 'y am but dedde,
 But god sende me þe bettur redde.'
 He smote hym þere *wyth* all hys myght
 He succeeded,
 however, in cut-
 ting off the tail.
 About þe tayle in two full ryght. 6924
 Wyth grete angwysche *and* wyth woo
 At þat tyme he wanne hym fro.
 Then perseyuyd Gye full wele,
 That no wepon made of stele 6928
 Fro the tayle to the heuydde¹
 Myght hym not þe lyfe haue reuydde.
 ¶ The beste hym felyd smetyn sore :
 The Dragon,
 feeling itself
 wounded, roared
 fearfully.
 He caste a crye and a rore. 6932
 Thorow þat cuntre was the dynne :
 All myght here, þat was þerynne.
 Ther was no man, þat herde þat crye,
 But that they wente for to dye. 6936
 3yt ranne Gye abowte the tre :

¹ MS. *hedde*.

- He þoght, fro hym he wolde not fle.¹
 Hys hawberke þere was all torente :
 Hys body was full nere schente. 6940
 At the laste Gye hym bethoght,
 To smyte before hyt helpyþ noght.
 As the dragon was turnande,
 Gye had hys swyrde in hys hande : 6944
 Euyne betwene the wyngys twoo
 He smote the body almoste a too.
 He felle downe *and* myght no more,
 But beganne to crye *and* rore. 6948
 Gye *wythdrew*e hym sone than² :
 For grete stynke he was nye slane.³
 He restyd hym vpon the playne :
 Of hys dede he was full fayne. 6952
 ¶ When Gye had rested hym well,
 He rose *and* mett hym euery delle :
 Syxty fote was he longe.
 Therof men had wondur stronge : 6956
 All, that came be the way,
 Wondurd on hym, þere he lay.
 The hedde of soone he schare.
 To the kynge a man hyt bare : 6960
 To ȝorke the hed dud he brynge
 And presentyd hyt to the kynge,
 And *wyth* a grete precessyowne
 They broght Gye to the towne. 6964
 At ȝorke the hed was hangyd þan :
 Theron lokyd many a man.
 ¶ He toke leue at þe kynge thare
 And to Walyngforde dud he fare. 6968
 The kynge was then full blythe
 And thankyd god fele sythe.
 Longe was paste, *wythowte* lesynge,

At length,

Guy pierced it
between its wings,

so that it died.

[leaf 205 b, col. 2]

It was 60 feet
long.Its head was
carried to the
King at York.Now Guy, taking
his leave, went to
Wallingford.¹ *fle* written twice, but the first time blotted out.² MS. *then*.³ MS. *slayne*.

	Or he of hym harde more tythynges.	6972
His father had died long ago.	Hys fadur was dedde longe gone :	
He was his only heir.	Odur heyre, ¹ bote he, ¹ was ther none.	
He bestowed his inheritance upon Harrawde,	¶ Gye callyd Harrowde on a day,	
	That hym had seruyd aye :	6976
	He gaue hym þe castell <i>and</i> þe towre	
	And all hys londe <i>wyth</i> honowre.	
and rewarded all his other companions.	To euery knyght ferre <i>and</i> nere,	
	Lesse <i>and</i> more, that <i>wyth</i> hym were,	6980
	That had bene <i>wyth</i> hym in fyght,	
	He gaue þem waryson full ryght.	
Coming to Warwick, he was received very honourably.	¶ To Warwyk dud he wende	
	And þere he fonde þe erle so hende,	6984
	That honowred hym <i>wyth</i> hys myght :	
[leaf 296 a, col. 1]	So dud all the londe, baron <i>and</i> knyght.	
	The erle dud hym honowre aye	
	And wolde not leue hym an owre of a day :	6988
	They went to þe wode <i>and</i> to þe ryvere	
	To solace them on all manere.	
He told Felice all his adventures, and that he had declined the hands of several daughters of Kings and Emperors	¶ He tolde Felyce all hys wyll <i>and</i> lyfe,	
	And, how he was bedyn ryche wyfe,	6992
	Kyngys doghtur and emperowre,	
	And <i>wyth</i> hur moche honowre :	
	‘Of them all wolde y noght,	
out of love to her.	For on yow was all my thoght.’	6996
She answered that she also had been desired in marriage	¶ ‘Syr,’ sche seyde, ‘gramereye !	
	I yow sey, sekerlye :	
	For me þer hath be preyere	
by Kings and Dukes, but Guy had taken her heart with him.	Of kynges <i>and</i> dewke ferre <i>and</i> nere.	7000
	Of them all wolde y nane :	
	Ye had my loue <i>wyth</i> yow tane.	
	I am yowrys (hyt ys skylle)	
	To do <i>wyth</i> me at yowre wyll.’	7004
Guy felt very happy.	¶ Gye hur kyste <i>wyth</i> yoye than :	
	He was neuer so gladde a man).	

¹ *heyre* and *he* omitted in MS.

- He toke hys leue *and* home wente :
 Of myrthe *and* yoye was hys entente. 7008
 He made yoye nyght and day,
 When he was seker of þat maye.
 ¶ Hyt happenyd, þe erle calde hys doghtere
 And resonyd hur on hys manere 7012
 And seyde : ‘ doghtur, odor heyre haue y noon
 Nor neuer schall haue, but þe allone.
 Hyt were tyme, þou toke an husbonde
 Aftur my day to kepe my londe. 7016
 Dewkys dyuers of farre cuntre
 Haue comen for to aske the :
 Of þem all wolde þou none.
 How longe schalt þou maydyn gone ? ’ 7020
 ‘ Syr, y schall yow the sothe say
 Be the space of the thrydde day.’
 ¶ When the pryddde day was gone,
 The erle came ageyne anone. 7024
 ‘ Doghtur, now wyll y wytt,
 Haste þou takyn þy cowncell 3yt ? ’
 ‘ Syr,’ sche seyde, ‘ blame me noght,
 Yf that y telle yow now my thoght. 7028
 Hyt ys Gye, the nobull knyght,
 That y haue louyd *wyth* all my myght :
 Sertys, but yf he haue me,
 Weddyd schall y neuyr bee.’ 7032
 ‘ Doghtur,’ he seyde, ‘ for thy reson
 Haue þou goddys benyson),
 When þou desyrest soche a knyght,
 That may mayntene ¹ my londe *wyth* ry3t. 7036
 I had leuyr, then thys cyte,
 That Gye wolde haue the.
 He hath forsakyn, be thys day,
 The loue of many a ryche maye, 7040
 Dewkys doghtur and emperowre,

One day the Earl
mentioned to his
daughter that it
was time for her
to marry.

She asked three
days for
consideration.

After these had
passed,

[leaf 206 a, col. 2]

she confessed to
her father that
she would marry
none but Guy.

The Earl
approved her
choice with all his
heart.

¹ MS. *maytene*.

- That were *and* are of grete valowre.
 Y schall wytt, so mote y the,
 Of hym *wythynne* þese dayes thre, 7044
 What he wyll sey, trewlye,
 Whyll þou louest hym so specyallye.'
- ¶ Gye and he wente, on a day
 To the wode them to play : 7048
 Venyson they had plente.
 The erle callyd Gye in preuyte :
 'Gye,' he seyde, 'y prey the here,
 Telle me þy wyll on all manere. 7052
 What tyme wyll yow weddyd bee ?
 I prey yow, leyne hyt not fro me.'
- 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'y schall the say,
 In all the worlde ys no maye, 7056
 But oon, that euer y wyll wedde,
 And brynge hur vnto my bedde.'
- ¶ 'Gye,' he seyde, 'loke in a throwe :
 I haue a doghtur, þat ye well knowe. 7060
 I haue no heyre, but hur, lyueande :
 Sche wyll be yowrys, y vndurstande.
- [leaf 206 b, col. 1] I geue hur the *wyth* herte free,
 And lorde of my londe schalt þou bee.' 7064
- Guy protested To þe erle tho spake Gye
 And seyde : 'syr, for yowre *profur* gramercye !
 I had leuyr the body all bare
 Of yowre doghtur *wythowten* mare, 7068
 Then þe doghtur of þe emperowre
 Wyth all hys londe *and* hys honowre.'
- ¶ The erle anone kyssed Gye
 And thankyd hym full curteslye : 7072
 'Now wote y,' quod he, 'full well,
 That ye loue me, be seynt Mychell,
 That ye wyll my doghtur take
 And soche ladyes for to forsake. 7076
 From hens be the seuynth day

- Schall be the weddynge, yf y may :
 At Warwyk, myn owne cyte,
 There schall that ryche brydale bee. 7080
 All the lordys of thy cuntre,
 At that brydale schall they be.'
 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'y wyll fulfyll
 Yowre ordynaunce at yowre wylle.' 7084
 ¶ Syr Gye tolde Harrowde euery dele,
 How the erle seyde, full wele.
 'Harrowde, now may y synge,
 That y haue wonne that swetynge, 7088
 That y trauelde fore day *and* nyght,
 And euer hur louyd *wyth* all my myght.'
 ¶ Now ys the weddynge ordeyned soone :
 There the brydale schulde be done, 7092
 There came grete meyne,
 Lordys of many a cuntre,
 Dewkys, erlys and baronage,
 Knyghtys, squyers of grete lynage. 7096
 The mayde was rychelye dyght
 And weddyd to Gye, þat nobull knyght.
 A ryche brydale was ordeyned thare :
 Hyt stode fowrtene nyghtys *and* mare. 7100
 There were mynstrels on all manere :
 Moche yoye there men myght here.
 Ther was none so lytull a grome,
 But þey had gyftys of *syr* Gyowne. 7104
 He gaue them robes many oon :
 Golde nor syluyr he wantyd none.
 ¶ They partyd on the fyftenyth day :
 Euery man wente hys owne waye. 7108
 Gye had of yoye hys fylle,
 When he had of Felyce hys wylle.
 Fyfty dayes and no mare
 Lasted hur¹ yoye *wythowten* care. 7112

The wedding was
to be that day
week.

Guy exultingly
told Harrawde

that he had won
the Maiden for
whom he had
suffered so much.

Their splendid
marriage
festivals

[leaf 206 b, col. 2]
lasted a fortnight.

Guy was very
munificent.

He had now his
fill of joy.

But the happiness
of the young
couple was at an
end after 50 days.

¹ *þer*?

Felice conceived
a male child.

¶ Hyt felle on the furste nyght,
When Gye laye *wyth* that wyght,
He gate of hur a man chylde,
That afturwarde was full mylde. 7116

¶ For the gode, that god made,
Fylle the cuppe and make vs glade.

Hyt was in a somers tyde,
That Gye had moche pryde: 7120
He came fro huntynge on a day
Wyth grete solace *and* mekyll play.

þey toke plente of veneson
And broght hyt vnto the towne. 7124

One evening Guy
ascended a tower,

At euyn he wente into a towre
Wyth moche yoye and honowre.

and enjoyed the
prospect.

He behelde there the ayre
And the lande, þat was so fayre. 7128

The wedur was clere *and* sternes bryzt.

There he was
struck with the
thought that he
had been so
highly honoured
by God,

Gye beganne to thynke ryght,
How god, that sate in trynyste,
Had made hym a man of *grete* poste, 7132

And how he was preysed in euery lande
Thorow dedys of hys hande,
And how he had many slane

And castels *and* towres many tane 7136

And how in many londys longe

[leaf 207 a, col. 1]

He had bene in parell stronge
And all for þe loue of þat maye,
That he¹ trauelde fore nyght *and* day, 7140

and had done
nothing at all
for Him.

And not for god, hys creatowre,
That had done hym that honowre.

He determined
in future

¶ He thoght þere *wyth* all hys myzt
To serue hym bothe day *and* nyght. 7144
Gye beganne to syke sore.

In hys herte he thoght more:

He thoght for to chaunge hys lyfe

¹ MS. *y*.

- And to leue thys worldys stryfe 7148
 And ordeygne hym in all wyse
 To leue *and* dye in goddys seruyse. to live and die in
 ¶ Wyth that Felyce thedur soght : God's service.
 Sche fonde hur lorde in a thoght. Felice found him
 7152 in his reverie,
 'Syr,' sche seyde, 'what thynke ye? and asked the
 Telle me, for seynt Charyte.' reason of it.
- 'Lemman,' he seyde, 'stande styлле, He replied that,
 And y schall telle þe all my wylle. 7156
 Sythe þe tyme, þat y þe knewe,
 For þe my sorowe was euyr newe.
 I wene, ther was nevyr knyght,
 That had so moche sorowe in fyght 7160
 For none, as y haue had for the.
 Farre in many a dyuers cuntre
 I haue many a man slane,
 Abbeys brente and cytees tane : 7164
 All þat euyr y haue wrought,
 Syth furste þat y on þe thoght,
 And all y dud, my lemman free,
 For to wynne the loue of thee. 7168
 And all, þat euer y wanne þere,
 I haue geuyn hyt knyzt *and* squyere.
 Had y bene warre and wyse
 And spendyd hyt in goddys seruyse, 7172
 Halfen dele my trauayle,
 Of heuyn schulde we neuer haue fayle.¹
 I haue done for hym nothyng,
 Therefore y may in sorowe synge. 7176 [leaf 207 a, col. 2]
 I haue done mekyll schame :
 God hath leyde on me þe blame.
 All thys worlde y wyll forsake
 And penaunce for my synnes take. 7180
 Wende y wyll yn goddys seruyse,
 Ellys were y nothyng wyse.

¹ MS. *fayled*.

- half the merit of
his future life was
to be hers. Euyr schalt þou, *wythowten* fayle,
Haue halfe þe mede of my trauayle.' 7184
- Felice, who feared ¶ 'Syr,' quod sche tho full tyte,
'Haue ye me now in soche dyspyte?
Well y wot, so god me redde,
Ye haue a lemman in odor stedde, 7188
And now ye wyll vnto hur fare
And come ageyne neuyr mare.
Allas,' quod sche, 'that y was borne.'
Sche felle in swownynge hym beforne. 7192
He toke hur in hys armes twoo
And seyde: 'lemman, let be thy woo.
I holde the a grete fole,
Yf thou make seche dole. 7196
I haue now þys vyage thoght:
For all þys worlde y leue hyt noght.
Dwelle wyth thy frendys here
And, y prey the, make gode chere 7200
And bydde thy fadur cownfort the,
Yf þou wylt haue þe loue of me.
Thou haste conceuyd a chylde be me:
Kepe hyt wele, pur charyte; 7204
For thyselfe *and* all thy kynne
May haue of hym yoye *and* wyne.'
¶ 'Allas,' sche seyde, 'how schall y fare,
Wrechyd woman full of care, 7208
When ye wyll wende me froo?
Bettur hyt were me for to sloo.
Yf ye wyll leue my redde,
Ye schall not wende fro þys stedde. 7212
Abbeyes, syr, let thou make,
And so schall y for thy sake:
Holy men schall for the pray
Wyth þer myght bothe nyght *and* day. 7216
Thus may yow saue yow fro paryle:¹

¹ MS. *parelle*.

Why wyll yow wende in exsyle ?'

¶ 'Lemman,' he seyde, 'let be thy fare :

Speke thou therof no mare.

7220

But he adhered
to his purpose.

Thou louyste lytull þyn own) prowē,

Yf þou make me to breke my vowe :

That y haue *wyth* my body wroght,

And *wyth* my body hyt shall be boght.'

7224

¶ When sche sawe, for lefe nor lothe

That he wolde not chaunge hys othe,

Sche clepyd hurselſe caytyfe :

'Allas,' quod sche, 'that y haue lyfe.'

7228

Downe sche felle vnto þe grownde :

Ofte sche swowned in that stownde.

she again fainted
away

¶ Then seyde Gye : 'y wyll fare,

But, dere lemman, take no care ;

7232

For y schall come ageyne soone,

When y haue my penaunce done.

Also oon thyng y bydde the :

Yf thou wylt loue me,

7236

Do so moche for my sake,

That no man see þe sorowe make,

As þou derelye loueste me here.

Grete wele ofte thy fadur dere

7240

And Harrowde, þe knyght so fre,

And all myn odur meyne.

Loke, þat þou be meke *and* mylde.

Fro þe tyme, þat þou haue chylde,

7244

Kepe hyt, tyll hyt can goo,

And aftur to Harrowde þou hym doo.

He wyll hym kepe *wyth* gode chere

And norysche hym on all manere.

7248

Ther was neuer 3yt a trewer knyght

Leuyng in 3orthe day nor nyght,

Then he hath be vnto me :

Therefore y loue hym *wyth* herte fre.

7252

Take here my swyrde of stele

When their boy
could walk,
he was to be sent
to Harrowde.

[leaf 207 b, col. 2]

- And kepe hyt to thy sone wele :
 In ȝorthe ther ys noȝe bettur nowe.
 Therwyth may he wynde prove.¹ 7256
- At parting, ¶ Tho he kyssyd Felyce swete :
 He myȝt not speke, for he dud grete.¹
 There was dole in þat stownde :
 They swownyd boþe on þe grownde. 7260
 Gye rose fro swownynge
 And went forthe in mornynge.
 ‘Syr,’ sche seyde, ‘pur charyte,
 Abyde *and* take þys rynge of me.’ 7264
- Felice gave him a ring as a keep-sake. Gye toke at hur feyre þat rynge.
 Dole was at ther partynge.
 ¶ Then went hym forþe syr Gyowne
 Hys wey soone owte of þe towne. 7268
 Gye wolde speke wyth no wyght
 Nor wyth Harrowde, þat trewe knyght.
 Forthe he wente to the see :
 At Jerusalem wolde he bee 7272
 And in many an odor londe,
 There holy men were lygande.
- Guy intended going to Jerusalem and other holy places. ¶ In þe towre Felyce he lefte þare.
 Sche was in grete sorowe *and* care : 7276
 ‘Lorde,’ quod sche, ‘what may y say ?
 How schall y leue þys wofull day ?’
 Hur handys sore dud sche wrynge :
 Sche felle downe in swownynge. 7280
 Hur cloþys sche drewe *and* hur hare :
 Ther was neuer woman, dud so fare.
 On hur handys brake the rynge :
 Sche was tho a sory thyng. 7284
 At hur nayles þe blode braste owte.
 Thys lyfe sche ladde þe nyght owte.
 Ofte sche cryed there : ‘allas,’
 [leaf 208 a, col. 1] That euyr sche borne was. 7288

¹ MS. *wepe*.

Owte sche toke þe swyrde bryght		She would have slain herself,
And set hyt to hur harte ryght		
And thoght to seche ¹ þe harte blode,		
For sche had lorne hur lorde goode.	7292	
Then sche bethoght hur full wyselye,		
That sche was tempted wyth grete folye		
And þat sche had a chylde hur wythynne :		but for the child in her womb,
Hyt to sloo hyt were grete synne ;	7296	
And þat sche myȝt not hurselfe sloo,		
But yf sche slewe bothe twoo.	•	
Sche þoght also anodur manere :		and for fear lest her death should be imputed to Guy.
When he hyt wyste, hur fadur dere,	7300	
Hur fadur and hur frendys all		
Wolde in grete sorowe falle :		
They wolde sey, that syr Gyowne		
Had slayne hur, or he went fro towne.	7304	
Therfore folye sche thoght than :		
Ellys sche had hurselfe slane. ²		
¶ Of all þe nyght sche had no reste		After a restless night,
More, then had a wylde beste.	7308	
In the mornynge vp sche rose		
And to hur fadur soone sche gose.		
‘Fadur,’ sche seyde, ‘wot ye noght ?		she informed her father
Wyckyd tyþyngys y haue yow broght :	7312	
My lorde ys wente fro thys cuntre.		of Guy's departure.
I trowe, y schall hym neuyr see.		
Yn exsyle he ys gone :		
For sorowe y may myselfe slone.’	7316	
Wyth þat she felle to þe grounde		
And swowned soone in þat stounde.		
¶ ‘Doghtur,’ he seyde, ‘let be þy mornynge.		The Earl thought
I may not leue hyt for nothyng,	7320	
That he wolde wende in exsyle		

¹ *seche* seems miswritten for *schede*. The Caius MS., p. 150, gives the line : *And thought to shede her herte blode*.

² MS. *slayne*.

- And put hym in soche paryle.
 Guy had left her only in order to test her love. He hath done hyt to proue þe now,
 How he may thy loue trowe.' 7324
- [leaf 208 a, col. 2] 'Nay,' sche seyde, 'so mote y the,
 He wyll neuyr come to me.'
- But Guy could nowhere be found. ¶ Vp he rose *and* dwellyd noght,
 And thorow all þe cyte he soght. 7328
- When he myght not fynde Gye,
 Aftur hys men he sente in hye
 And tolde, how that *syr* Gye
 Was went, *and* no man wyste, whye. 7332
- All were sorry. When þey wyste that tythyngē,
 All they made moche mornyngē.
- Harrawde ¶ When *syr* Harrowde herde sey,
 That hys lorde was gone away, 7336
- He ne blanne nyght nor day,
 But he sorowed for hym ay.
 To the erle he toke the way.
 'Syr,' quod he, 'what may y say, 7340
- When y haue lorne my lorde so free?
 I wene, y schall hym neuer see.
- advised the Earl to send a messenger in quest of Guy all over England. Y rede yow, sende yowre messengere
 Thorow all þys londe boþe farre *and* nere. 7344
- Yf he be not fowndyn here,
 He ys in Loreyn, be seynt Rychere,
 Wyth gode erle Tyrrye,
 That he louyth specyallye.' 7348
- But the search ¶ A messengere was forþe sente
 And all the londe þorow wente.
 He myght not fynde hym thare :
 Whome ageyne he can fare 7352
- was successless. And seyde, all Ynglonde he had soght,
 But Gye he cowde fynde noght.
- Harrawde then sent two messengers into foreign countries, ¶ There þoght Harrowde, he wolde fonde
 To seke hym in odur londe. 7356
- He toke two messengerys ryght,

Bothe a squyer and a knyght.

He gaue them tresoure grete plente

And bad þem wende bezonde the see 7360

To seke euery londe *and* gode towne

To spere tythyngys of *syr* Gyowne.

Harrowde hymselfe forthe ys gone :

Wede of palmer hath he tone.

The erle of Warwyk soone he fonde

And betoke hym all hys londe

And seyde : 'in wede of palmere

I schall seke Gye boþe farre *and* nere 7368

Yn euery stedde, in euery londe,

There he hath bene beforehonde.'

When he sye Harrowde so dyght,

He seyde : 'þou art a full trewe knyght.' 7372

¶ Harrowde went forþe fro þe erle þare.

To the see he came full ȝare :

Schyppe he fonde *and* passed in hye.

Comen he ys to Normandye,

Sythen to Frawnce *and* Burgoyne,

To Almayne *and* to Cesoyne :¹

He harde no man speke *wyth* mowthe,

That of Gye telle cowthe.

Then he þoght, þat he was schent,

And into Ynglonde soone he went.

All that londe was sorye,

That no man myght fynde Gye :

Kynge, erle and baron,

All made dole for Gyowne ;

For þey wenyd full sekerlye

Neuyr to haue seyne hym *wyth* eye. 7388

¶ God, þat dyed on a tre,

Saue Gye fro schame *and* vylane !

Now turne we ageyne *and* speke of Gye,

As we fynde in owre storye.

7392

[leaf 208 b, col. 1]
and went, besides,
himself in the
habit of a palmer.

7376 Neither in Nor-
mandy, France,
Burgundy,
Germany, nor
Saxony,

7380 could he hear any
news of Guy.

He returned to
England alone.

¹ MS. *Cesyone*. The Caius MS., p. 153, has *sosayne*.

Guy went first	All þat yere Gye can gone þorow kyngys landys many oon All he wente thorow and thorow	
to Jerusalem.	Ryght vnto Jerusalem, þe borowe. Longe wolde he not dwelle thare.	7396
On his way from this city	Furthermore wolde he fare Into hethen cuntre :	
to Antioche	To Anteoge, that cyte, Thedurwarde thoght hee. Hyt was a grete jurne.	7400
[leaf 208 b, col. 2] he met with a pilgrim	Vndur an hawthorne þere ¹ he fonde A pore pylgryme there stonde. Hyt semyd wele a sarsyne,	7404
who was very sorrowful.	That had moche pyne. He semyd ² comen of hye lynage. He had grete eyen <i>and</i> stronge vysage, Hys hed whyte, hys berde ³ longe. He semyd a bolde man <i>and</i> a stronge. He made grete mornynge : Gye had pyte of that tythyng. He drewe hys berde <i>and</i> hys hare : He swownyd anon þere for care And seyde : 'allas,' þat he was borne ; 'Harde wordys ys me beforne.'	7408 7412 7416
Asked by Guy,	¶ Then seyde Gye : ' what art thou, That makyst all pys dole now ? I see well be thy chere, That þou art noyed on some manere : Therefore, syr, telle thou me, In the name of the trynyte.'	7420
he told his story.	'Syr,' seyde the pylgryme, 'Thou haste me congrude at þys tyme : Sone y schall telle the, why That y am so sorye.	7424

¹ *tree*? See the note. ² MS. *semyth*. Caius MS. *semed*.³ MS. *herre*. Caius MS. *berd*.

- I trowe, þou wylt haue pyte,
 When þat y haue tolde hyt the. 7128
- ¶ I was some tyme doghty of hande,
 And to me felle moche lande.
 I was a bolde man *and* a wyght :
 Erle Joonas so y hyght. 7432- His name was
 Earl Jonas.
 I had sonnes fyftene, He had fifteen
 Bolde men and therto kene. sons, all of them
 bold men.
- I wene, þer was neuer man lyueande,
 Syth crystendome was broȝt to lande, 7436
 That had so many sonnes wyght
 Echeoon in hys owne ryght,
 As y had onys be the way
 (Allas, that euyr y abode þys day) 7440
 At a batayle certeyne
 Of sarsyns, that haue done trayne.
 To Jerusalem comen they were
 And dystroyed farre and nere : 7444 a large heathen
 We gedurde ooste, as men wyght, army
 And gaue þem batayle anon ryght.
 A grete batayle was there oon,
 For there dyed many a man. 7448
- I and my sonnes fyftene
 Made the sarsyns for to flene. was routed.
 At þat tyme wyth strenkyth toke we
 Seyn amerallys *and* kyngys thre. 7452
- ¶ We chasyd them þorow þat londe,
 I and my sonnes, a kynge folowande :
 Hys name was Triamore :¹
 He ys a man of grete honowre. 7456
 To Alysawndur he fledde ryght,
 There he was kynge of myght.
 We dud there a folye stronge,

Jonas and his
 sons, having
 pursued
 Triamour,

King of Alex-
 andria,

¹ In lines 7455, 7476, 7489, 7495, the abbreviation of *ri* is written with darker ink, with which also *r* of *therto* in line 7434 seems to have been freshened up.

too far,	That we folowde hym so longe.	7460
	There was redy in a wode	
	Two hundurde knyghtys, þat were gode.	
	Owte of the wode þey came anon	
	And belapped vs euerychon.	7464
	Many of them we smetyn sare :	
	For nothyng we wolde spare.	
	Owre stedys þere soone they slowe	
	And many oon abowte vs drowe.	7468
	On fote we faght faste than	
	And slewe there mony a man :	
	Or we wolde 3ylde vs or be tane,	
	Many of þem þorow vs was slane.	7472
	Tyll owre swyrdys were brokyn of stele,	
	We defendyd vs full wele.	
	We sawe there no socowre :	
where taken prisoners by him,	We 3yldyd vs to kyng Triamore.	7476
	We made soche couenande,	
	Therto he helde vp hys hande,	
	That we schulde for owne rawnsome	
[leaf 209 a, col. 2]	Be delyuyrde fro pryson.	7480
	¶ To Awfryke he led vs thare	
and put in his dungeon,	And put vs in a pryson 3are :	
	Mete <i>and</i> drynke we had smalle	
where they suffered for more than 12 years.	And euyll lyfe led wythall.	7484
	Hyt ys xii wynter <i>and</i> more,	
	Syth we were put in pryson þore ;	
	Tyll hyt befelle soon in a tyde,	
	That the sowdan wyth grete pryde,	7488
	That was þe kyngys lorde Triamore,	
At a festival of the Soudan,	He made a feste wyth honowre :	
	Thretty kyngys þere were ryght,	
	That were vnto the sowdan plyght,	7492
	And amerallys þere were fowrtye,	
	That were vndurnethe hys crye.	
	Theder wente kyng Triamore	

- And *wyth* hym hys sone Fabore. 7496 to which
He was yonge *and* also wyght Triamour and
And therto newe made knyght. his son Fabour
¶ At the thrydde day of the feste, had repaired,
That was ryche and honeste, one day
The sowdon¹ sone rose vp full ryght 7500
(Syr Sowdan¹ of Perce he hyght) : Fabour and the
'Faber,' quod Sowdan, 'y bydde the Soudan's son,
To playe at þe chesses wyth me.' named 'Sowdan
'Syr,' quod he, '*wyth* myn entente of Perce,
I schall do yowre comawndement.' 7504
To Faber chaumber þere þey wente
And aftur the chesses soon þey sente. 7508
They sate downe frendys in all wyse, played at chess.
But þey were wroþe, or þey dud ryse.
Syr Faber at þe chesses a worde seyde :²
Sowdan³ was wroþe *and* owte brayde 7512 Sowdan, getting
And clepyd hym horeson thore angry, called
And *wyth* a roke he smote hym sore : Fabour names,
On the hedde he brake the crowne, and broke his
That þe blode faste ranne downe. 7516 head with a rook.
'Syr, thou doyst me dyshonowre,'
To Sowdan⁴ seyde Fabowre,
'When thou haste brokyn my heuedde.⁵
The grace of god be fro me reuedde, 7520 [leaf 209 b, col. 1]
Yf thou were not my lordys sone, Fabour, reproach-
Thou schuldyst abyde, þat þou haste done.' ing him with his
Then seyde Sowdan : 'what seyste thou? behaviour,
Haste thou me manest nowe ? 7524
In euyll tyme þou hyt thoght :
Thyn own depe þou haste wrought.'
And *wyth* hys fyste he wolde hym smyte,

¹ The spelling of the MS. *Sowdan*¹, though evidently wrong for *Sadoyne*, yet has been left unaltered.

² Corrupt without doubt. The Caius MS., p. 158, has *At a cheke, that Fabour seyde*.

³ MS. *The Sowdan*. ⁴ MS. *To the Sowdan*. ⁵ MS. *hedde*.

was threatened
by Sowdan,

who even aimed
a blow at him
with his fist.

- But Faber thoght hyt dyspyte : 7528
- So Fabour struck
him dead with
the chess-board. On hys fete dud he stonde
And toke the chekur in hys honde.
He smote Sowdan vndur the ere :
He felle to grounde and dyed pere. 7532
- He ran ¶ When Faber sye, that he was dedde,
For fere he flewe fro that stedde.
He yede as faste, as he myȝt renne,
Towarde hys fadurs ynne then 7536
- to his father, And tolde hys fadur there anon,
How the sowdans sone was slone.
The kynge dowtyd hym thare :
For the depe he had grete care. 7540
- who, fearing the
Soudan's ire, On hys hors lepe he swythe :
Forþe þey rode in hye vnblythe
Faste fleande to Alysawndur,
Or þer were resyn more sclaunder. 7544
- immediately
returned to
Alexandria. Owte of the londe soone þey went,
Or any wyste, þat Sowdan was schent.
When he came to that cyte,
A sory man, for sothe, was hee. 7548
- ¶ But therof be, as be may,
Let vs be mery, y yow pray.
- The Soudan **B**ut, when hyt wyste þe sowdan,
þat hys sone so was slaue,¹ 7552
- was very sorry, He was, y trowe, a sory syre,
Full of tene and of yre
And beryed hys sone rychelye,
And þoght to venge hym hastelye. 7556
- and, having
buried his son,
meant to revenge
him. He sente hys sonde to the kynge,
As man, þat louyd hym nothyng, e,
And bad hym come hastelye
And defende hym of felonye 7560
- [leaf 209 b, col. 2] And brynge hys sone wyth hym, Fabowre,
That slewe Sowdan, as a traytour.
- King Triamour
- and his son
were summoned
to appear before
the Soudan's
court

¹ MS. *slayne*.

- 'Yf he wyll not do that couenande,
Bydde hym flee forþe of hys lande,
Or ellys soche jugement suffur þere,
As in courte ordeygned were.'
- ¶ The kynge dyght hym full ȝare :
To the sowdan dud he fare,
And *wyth* hym Faber, þe hende knyght,
Before the sowdan came ryght.
He askyd hym *and* that anon,
How he had hys sone slone :
- Yf he myght hyt not defende,
That dede he schulde derely amende.
He broght forthe a sarsyne :
A fowler dranke neuyr wyne.
Comyn he ys fro the lande of Ynde,
A stronger man may no man fynde.
He ys black, as any pyck,
And also felle, as a lyon in his swyck ;
Hys breste brode, hys body grete :
He ys more, then a nete.
Ther were not þre in all þat lande,
That durste stande a stroke of hys hande.
He ys two fote and more
Hyer, then any, that was þore.
Yf þe kynge durste *wyth* hym fyght
And hym defende *wyth* all hys myght,
That Sowdan¹ was neuer dedde
Thorow hym nor hys sonnes redde,
And hym vnto dethe brynge,
He schulde passe quyte² in all thynges.
- ¶ Triamore³ had drede stronge
Of that sarsyn, þat was so longe.
Neuer þe lesse before them all
- 7564 upon pain of banishment.
- 7568 When they came thither,
- 7572 Triamour learnt that he could exculpate himself only by fighting, either in person or by deputy, a gigantic Saracen.
- 7576
- 7580
- 7584
- 7588
- 7592 Afraid as Triamour was of the Giant, he yet accepted the combat,

¹ MS. *the Sowdan*.

² *quyte* omitted in MS., but cf. l. 7600, and the Caius MS., p. 160, *He shuld go quyte of all thynges*.

³ MS. *Tamore*.

	The sarsyn ⁿ there he dud becalle	7596
[leaf 210 a, col. 1]	And seyde, that ¹ Sowdan was neuer dedde Thorow hym nor hys sonnes redde, And, yf he myght hym to depe brynge,	
which was to take place a year	That he schulde passe quyte in all pynges.	7600
and thirty days after.	A xii monyth þe trewse was tane And thretty dayes, tyll he was gane. Soche a man in hys cuntre Neuyr was nor neuyr schall bee.	7604
	Yf he durste not hymselfe fyght, He schulde fynde anodur knyght. ¶ To Alysawnder the kynges ys went And to hys barons he hath sente	7608
	And made crye thorow the lande, Yf they had ony man fande, ² That durste for hym þat batell craue ; And halfe hys londe he schulde haue.	7612
But in his own country he found none ready to undertake the fight.	He myzt neuer fynde none so wyght, That durste agenste þat gyawnt fyght.	
He took Jonas out of his prison and asked him if he knew any.	¶ He toke me owte of hys pryson And askyd me thys reson, Yf y knewe any knyght, That durste agenste þe gyawnt fyght.	7616
	A ryche man he wolde hym make And do hym honour for hys sake And geue hym golde grete plente And halfe hys londe euyrmore free.	7620
	I knewe none, y seyde to thame (For to lye me þoght hyt schame), In no cuntre nor in no lande, That durste þat batell take on hande,	7624
Jonas named Guy	But yf hyt were Gye, the knyght, That, all men seyde, was so wyght.	7628
and Harrawde.	‘ And y myght fynde Gye or Harrawte,	

¹ MS. *the* ; but the Caius MS., p. 161, has *that*.² Perhaps corrupt. See the note.

They wolde do hyt, *wythowte* defaute :
Then myght þou be seker, sawns fayle,
To haue the vycторыe of that batayle.'

7632

¶ When the kynge stode me bye
And herde me speke of *syr* Gye,
Hys hande he leyde vpon me.

'But y haue helpe,' he seyde, 'of the,
I schall neuer of man leueande
Haue helpe, y vndurstande.

7636 [leaf 210 a, col. 2]

Yf y myght haue Gye,
That ys knyght so hardye !
Into Ynglonde schalt þou fare
For to loke, yf Gye be thare.

7640 Triamour at once
dispatched him
in search of them.

Yf he may not fowndyn bee,
Loke, Harrowde thou brynge *wyth* þe ;
And y schall delyuer þe owt of pryson
And all thy sonnes *wythowte* rawnsome.

7644 If he should
succeed in
bringing one or
the other,
he and his sons
were to be set free
without any
ransom.

Thou schalt haue for thy seruyse,
Yf thou wylt be ware and wyse
And of tonge be trewe *and* holde,
Fyftene somers chargyd *wyth* golde.'

7648

Sythen y sware on all manere
For to be trewe messengere ;
And, yf þat y of þem fonde none,

7652

I schulde come ageyne allone :
Y schall be hangyd on a galowe tre,
Wyt ye wele, y am sore.

7656

¶ I went into Almayne
Fro Fraunce vnto Hyespayne,¹

But Jonas could
nowhere,

Sythen to Pole and Burgoyne,
Into Sysyll and Cesoyne²

7660

And sythen into Ynglonde
(And askyd euery man, þat y fonde)
To Warwyk, hys cyte,
There he was wonte lorde for to bee.

7664 , not even at
Warwick,¹ MS. *hys* *spayne*.² MS. *Cesyone*.

hear where to find
either Harrowde
or Guy.

I harde neuer man speke wyth mowthe,

That anythyng telle cōwthe
Of Harrowde odor of *syr* Gye :

Therefore a sory man am y. 7668

Gyes men tolde me on a day,

For sothe, *syr*, as y the say,

That Gye was in exsyle wente :

In holy weyes was hys entente. 7672

And Harrowde aftur hym ys gone

For to seke hym, be seynt Iohan.

Longe dwellyd y there noght

[leaf 210 b, col. 1] And many landys syth haue y soght. 7676

I myght neuer fynde no wyght

That cowde telle me of that knyght.

¶ Now come y hedur thys ylke day

And restyd me be the way. 7680

More than a year
had now passed
since he had left
the King.

Hyt ys xii monythys *and* mo,¹

Syth y the kynge wente fro.²

And now y wende to hym agayne,

Well y wote, for to be slayne : 7684

For the dethe wyll y not flee

(I haue the tolde, how hyt wyll be) ;

For y haue my trowthe plyght,

That y schall come ageyne ryght. 7688

He was sure
Triamour would
order the death of
himself and his
sons.

Then, y wott, y schall be slone

And my sonnes euerychone.

Of my lyfe yeue y noght,

But for my sonnes ys all my thoght. 7692

They were knyghtys bolde *and* wyght

And well defendyd þem in euery fyght.

Yf they³ myght leue and olde⁴ bee,

They⁵ myght moche helpe crystyante. 7696

¹ MS. *more*.

² MS. *fore*.

³ MS. *y*.

⁴ MS. *bolde*.

⁵ MS. *I*. Cf. Caius MS. p. 164 :

*Xf they myght leue and old men bee,
They myght much helpe crystiante.*

Now to hym wyll y fare

And take my dethe ryght thare.'

¶ Wyth that he swownyd before Gye,

And therefore he was sorye.

7700

Gye had sorow *and* moche care,

Guy, feeling for
Jonas,

For he sawe the erle so fare.

'Leue pylgryme,' seyde Gye,

'That for thy sonnes art sorye

7704

And Gye *and* Harrowde bope haste soght

In far londys *and* fonde þem noght,

Yf thou haue dole, hyt ys no ferlye,

When þou mayste þem nowhere aspye :

7708

Thorow þem þou wenyst delyuerd to be

Owte of pryson *and* thy sonnes fre.

Some tyme y was in my lande

Holdyn doghty of my hande.

7712

For the loue of god allmyght,

That he me gaue soche myght,

And for syr Gye and Harrowdes sake

[leaf 210 b, col. 2]

That batell for þy loue wyll y take,

7716

offered to under-
take the combat.

And þorow þe grace of heuyn kynge

The *and* þy sonnes owt of prison brynge.'

¶ When erle Joonas sawe Gye,

That he was bolde and hardye

7720

To do that batell, yf he myght,

And wyth þe gyawnte for to fyght,

He avysed hym full wele

Fro þe hedde downewarde euery dele.

7724

Jonas looked at
him :

Hys body, he þoght, was feyre *and* longe

he appeared tall

And wele ymade to be stronge :

and well-made,

Hys bones were bare of flesche.

but very lean.

He semyd all of wyldurnesse :

7728

Hys berde was longe,¹ fowle farande.

He lokyd vp steype starande.

'Syr,' he seyde, 'for thy reson

Jonas thanked

¹ Perhaps we ought to add *and* after *longe*.

- him for his good-
will, but expressed
his apprehension,
lest in the
presence of the
Giant his heart
should fail him.
But Guy
answered
that, feeble as he
seemed to be, God
could make him
so strong as to be
victorious.
Jonas swooned
with joy.
[leaf 211 a, col. 1]
They went
together to
Alexandria.
The King asked
if Jonas had
brought Guy or
Harrawde.
- Haue thou goddys beneson).
Thou knowest not *pat* sarsyne,
That ys so wyckyd *and* so kene :
Had he ones lokyd vpon the
Wyth hys eyen, wytterle,
He wolde the agaste make,
That *pou* schuldyst the batayle¹ forsake.
¶ Then seyde Gye : ‘ *perof drede þe* noght.
God ys myztfull, *pat* ys my thoght.
Many haue prouyde to do skathe
And wyth *þer* eyen lokyd wrathe :²
Fro *þem* flewe y neuer in no batayle.
My harte schall not therfore fayle.
Yf *þou* thynke, y febull bee,
God ys soche of poste,
That he may geue me grace *and* myght
To slee *þe* gyawnt in *þe* fyght.’
‘ Syr,’ seyde *þe* pylgryme, ‘ gramercye !
God, that borne was of Marye,
Ȝylde hyt the, or *þou* be dedde.’
For yoye he swownyd in *pat* stedde.
¶ Tho seyde Gye :³ ‘ as haue y hele,
Let vs go forthe, we schall fare wele.’
To Alysawnder þey can *þem* dyght :
Before *þe* kynge þey came full ryght.
When the kynge Joonas sawe,
Full soone *þere* he dud hym knowe.
‘ Jonas,’ seyde the kynge than),
‘ Where ys Gye, that nobull man),
And Harrowde, *pat* *þou* haste soght ?
Haste *þou* any of them broght ?’

¹ MS. *hym*, but Caius MS., p. 165 : *That thou shuldyst the batayle forsake.*

² MS. *rathe* ; but Caius MS., p. 165 :

And wyth hys eyen lokyd wrathe.

³ *Gye* omitted in MS. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 166 :

‘ *My frende,*’ *quod Gye,* ‘ *so haue i hele.*

- ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y schall the saye :
 I wyll not lye, be thys day. 7764
 Y haue bene in many a cuntre :
 Harrowde nor Gye y myzt not see.
 I was farre in many a londe
 And askyd euery man, þat y fonde. 7768
 They seyde, he was in exsyle wente,
 Therfore the londe was nye schente ;
 And seyde, Harrowde had take þe way
 To seke Gye nyght and day. 7772
 But y haue broght a nobull knyght,
 In armes þat ys bolde and wyght :
 For yow he schall do thys batayle
 Thorowe helpe of god *and* not fayle. 7776
 He wyll defende þe full ryght
 And *wyth* þe gyawnt wyll he fyght.’
 ¶ Tho seyde þe kyng to erle Joonas :
 ‘Loke, þou lye not in thys case. 7780
 Yf y be betrayed thorow the,
 Hongyd hye schalt thou bee,
 And þy sonnes euerychone
 Wyth þe the same wey schall gone.’ 7784
 ‘I grawnte,’ *quod* Joonas, ‘that ye saye.
 God vs helpe, that beste maye.’
 ¶ The kyng clepyd soon Gyown
 And tolde hym there all hys reson. 7788
 ‘Pylgryme,’ he seyde, ‘what ys þy name?’
 And he hym tolde, but not þe same.
 ‘Frende,’ seyde tho the kyng,
 ‘Telle me wythowte lesynge, 7792
 Where haste þou bene *and* in what lande?
 Was þer þere no corne growande?’¹
 ‘Syr,’ quod he, ‘syth y was knyght,’²

¹ Perhaps corrupt. Cf. Caius MS., p. 167 :

Was there no brede ne corne growande?

² Here the MS. is evidently corrupt ; giving a single line instead of three. Cf. Caius MS., p. 167 :

He replied

that he had found
neither,

but yet brought a
noble knight.

The King
threatened

to hang Jonas and
his sons if he
should be
betrayed by him.

The King

asked the
pilgrim's name;
but he did not
learn the right
one.

[leaf 211 a, col. 2]

	I haue bene in mony a fyght.'	7796
Hearing he was an Englishman, the King made inquiries about Guy	¶ 'Art þou Englysche,' seyde the kynge, 'Me oght to hate þe ouer all thynges. Knewe thou oght <i>syr</i> Gyowne	
and Harrawde.	And <i>wyth</i> hym Harrawde, <i>þat</i> bolde baron? Yf that þey be nowe leueande, They be full bolde <i>and</i> stronge of hande.	7800
Guy, he said, had deserved his hate for slaying several relations of his,	I oght to hate Gye <i>wyth</i> yre : He slewe my fadur, Clynant of Tyre, And my neme <i>wyth</i> hys hande And þe sowdan at mete syttande. I sawe hym smyte of hys hedde, And <i>wyth</i> strenkyth away hyt ledde.	7804 7808
	Awey he pryckyd at the laste, All we chacyd hym full faste. The deuell hym sauēd : we slewe hym not þan, But he slewe of vs many a man).	7812
But all should be forgiven if he would undertake the combat against the Giant.	Lorde geue, that he were here : Then schulde y make gladdē chere. Yf he wolde fyght for me, All forgeuyn schulde hyt bee.'	7816
Guy answered that, if either Guy or Harrawde would espouse the King's cause,	¶ Tho Gye answeryd curteslye : 'Well,' quod he, 'knowe y <i>syr</i> Gye And Harrowde also, so mote y goo : I knowe þem wele bothe twoo.	7820
he might be sure of victory. Triamour further observed to Guy, that as he looked so lean, he must have served unkind lords,	Yf ye had owder Harrowde or Gye, Ye myght be sekur of vycторыe.' ¶ 'Telle me,' seyde the kynge than, 'Why art thou so lene a man)? Vnkynde men thou seruest aye, When þou partyste so pore awaye ; Odur hyt ys for thy folye, That þou fareste so porelye.'	7824 7828

*'Sir,' he seyd, 'in Englonde
Was i borne and moste dwellinge :
Sethen that i was dubbed knyghte,
I haue bene in meny fyght.'*

'Hyt may,' quod he, 'full wele befalle,

My state-knowe ye not ȝyt all.

I was some tyme in gode¹ seruyse :

My lorde me louyd in all wyse.

7832

For hym y had grete honowre

Of kyng, prynce *and* maydyns in bowre.

But ones y dud an hastenesse :

Therfore y loste bope more *and* lesse.

7836

Sythen y went fro my cuntre.'²

¶ Then to hym spake þe kyng free :

'Telle me þe soþe, so mote þou the.

Wylt þou take þe batell for me ?

7840

Or ellys y schall gete a nodur.

Telle me þe sothe, lefe brodur.'

And Gye seyde : 'þerfore come y hedur,

Joonas and y now togedur.

7844

Thorow þe helpe of þe trynyste

The batell y schall take for the

And slo þe gyawnt *wyth* my hande,

Yf ye wyll graunt me þys couenande,

7848

That Joonas *and* his sonnes echone

Fro pryson be delyuyrde anon.'

¶ Then seyde the kyng : 'y þe grawnte.

Mahownde þe helpe *and* Termagawnte.'

7852

'Nay,' seyde Gye, 'but³ Mary sone,

That for vs on a rode was done :

He may me helpe for his mercye.

Syr kyng, y sey, that ys no lye,

7856

But that Mahownde haþ no poste

To helpe nodur the nor me.'

¶ Then seyde þe kyng : 'my frende dere,

[leaf 211 b, col. 1]
Guy replied that
he had once been
in good service,

but had lost
everything in
consequence of a
rash deed.

At last the King
asked him if he
would undertake
the fight.

Guy said he
would,

on condition that
Jonas and his
sons should be
set free.

Granting this, the
King wished him
the assistance of
Mahomet and
Termagant.
'No,' said Guy,
'but of Mary's
Son.'

Triamour
promised,

¹ MS. *godlys*. Cf. Caius MS., p. 168 :

For soth, i was in good seruyse.

² After this five lines have been omitted in the MS., at the end of the fifth of which there was another *cuntre*. Line 7839 has been added after this omission. See the note.

³ MS. *be*. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 169 :

'Nay,' quod Gye, 'but Mary is sonne.

	I schall make þe a couenande here.	7860
if Guy should kill the Giant,	Yf þou may the gyawnt sloo And brynge me owte of thys woo,	
to honour the Christian God, too.	Thy god for the loue of the Schall haue also þe loue of me.	7864
[leaf 211 b, col. 2]	The crysten men, that y haue tane, Schall be delyuyrde euery man. Ther schall be none in heþynnes, Man nor woman, more nor lesse,	7868
	That ys of crystyante, But they schall delyuyrde bee. For þe and for þy goddys sake I schall in thys londe make,	7872
	That crýsten men schall wende Thorow þys londe feyre <i>and</i> hende, And, yf any be so hardye To do þem schame <i>and</i> vylenye,	7876
	Be he neuer so grete nor so stowte, He schall dye, wythowte dowte. 'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'gramercye! Thys ys a feyre gyfte for me.'	7880
Rich clothes	¶ The kyng bad, he schulde baped be, 'And geue hym robes grete plente: Loke, þat he wante noght.'	
Guy declined:	But Gye had of þat no thoght. 'Syr kynge,' he seyde, 'of þat be style Hyt ys nothyng at my wylle Ryche robes for to haue: I am but a pore knaue.	7884 7888
he only wanted his fill of food and drink,	Mete <i>and</i> drynke geue me my fylle, And þen y haue all my wylle. The kynge bad, þat he schulde haue, What some euer he wolde craue.	7892
As the day appointed for the combat was approaching, the King went	¶ When þe tyme was comen sone, That þe batell schulde be done, The kynge was full rychely dyght	

And <i>wyth</i> hym all hys baronage wyȝt :	7896	to the Soudan's court, followed by his barons
To þe sowdan wolde he fare.		
Swyþe he wente <i>and</i> came full ȝare.		
Gye wente armed <i>and</i> wele ydyght,		and Guy, who was well armed.
As felle to a gentyll knyght.	7900	
On hym he had an hawberke :		His hauberk was very valuable.
Hyt was made of ryche warke.		
In farre londe hyt was wroght		
And to þe kyng in present broght.	7904	
When hyt came to Jerusalem,		
Hyt was bryght, as sonne beme.		[leaf 212 a, col. 1]
A thefe hyt stale sythen <i>wyth</i> honde		
And broght hyt vnto hethyn londe.	7908	
The aunceturs of kyng Tryamowre		
Boght hyt <i>wyth</i> moche honowre.		
Hyt was of grete tresorye		
And in þat nede was geuyn to Gye.	7912	
Thretty wyntur was gone and more,		
That hyt came in no felde ȝore.		
Hyt was so clere and so bryght,		
That all þe halle schone of þe lyght.	7916	
¶ He had an helme of olde warke		His helmet
And on euery syde stonys starke.		
He, that on hys hedde hyt bare,		
Schulde not be vencowse in no warre.	7920	
Hyt was Alysawndurs, þe kyng :		had been King Alexander's, who had won it from King Porus.
He wanne hyt in hys fyghtyng.		
When he slewe kyng Pore, ¹		
He wanne hyt and moche more.	7924	
He bare a swyrde in hys hande :		His sword had been Hector's.
Ector hyt oght, y vnderstande.		
There were Gregyows many a wonne,		
Or he hyt gate, that were slone.	7928	
He had also a nobull targe :		His shield could not be hurt by anything.
Hyt was bothe bryght <i>and</i> large.		

¹ MS. *fawre*. See the note.

- Ther was noþyng, þat myȝt hyt dere,
 Knyfe, swyrde, axe nor spere. 7932
- All wondered who
 Guy could be. ¶ When he was dyght, syr Gye,
 Of hym all men had farlye.
 Echeon askyd, what he myght bee,
 Fro whens he came *and* fro what cuntre, 7936
 That schulde for the kynge fyght.
 They sawe neuer so semelye a knyght.
- Triamour
 presented Guy to
 the Soudan ¶ Then seyde the kynge to þe sowdan :
 ‘Herkyne me, syr, and that anon’ 7940
 Now y am comen to the here
 To defende me on all manere
 Of that wyckyd felonye,
- [leaf 212 a, col. 2] That was put on me vntrewlye, 7944
 as his champion. Thorow þe knyght, þat stondyth here,
 That Sowdan, thy sone dere,
 Thorow my sone was neuer dedde
 Nodur þorow my cowncell nor my redde.’ 7948
 The sowdan seyde : ‘syn þou haste hym broght,
 Hyt schall soone be sene, so ys my thoght.
- Ameraunt the
 Giant was
 brought forth. ¶ Brynge forthe,’ he seyde, ‘the gyawnt,’
 A paynym, that hyght Amerawnt. 7952
 He was armed nobullye :
 Euery man of hym had farlye.
 Hys body was boþe grete *and* longe :
 He semed to be owtrageus stronge.¹ 7956
- Guy, on seeing
 him, But, when Gye sye that sarsyn,
 That was so myghty and so kene,
 observed to the
 King that he was
 the Devil. ‘Be Cryste,’ he seyde vnto þe kynge þan,
 ‘3ondur ys þe deuell and no man. 7960
 Who schulde hym a stroke stande ?
 He wolde hym felle *wyth* hys hande.
- The two
 opponents,
 having gone to
 an islet, ¶ Forthe þey wente to that batayle
 Hastelye, wythowte fayle, 7964
 To an yle besyde the see,

¹ A word blotted out before *stronge* in MS.

There the batayle schulde bee.

When þey came þere, as þey schulde fyght,

They lepe on þer stedys full ryght.

7968 commenced their
fight.

Soone þey smote togedur faste,¹

Whyll þer sperys wolde laste.

Soone þer sperys dud glyde

Abowte þer hedys in pecys wyde.

7972

Soone þey drewe þer swyrdys of stele

And faght togedur faste and wele.

¶ Amerawnt drewe hys swyrde owte :

Amerawnt's sword
had formerly
belonged to
Hercules.

Hyt was scharpe all abowte.

7976

Hyt was Arcules swyrde þe wyght :

He hyt bare in euery fyght

And þerwyth slewe many a man.

Amerawnt hyt in warre wanne.

7980

Hyt was put in the watur of helle ;

For hyt was boþe scharpe *and* felle.

[leaf 212 b, col. 1]

God of heuyn thynke on Gye ;

For he came to hym full hastelye.

7984

¶ Togedur soone dud they smyte

Wyth brondys, þat full wele cowde byte.

Wyth grete wrath starte Amerawnt

Wyth hys strenkyth Gye sayleant.

7988

He smote hym on the helme bryght,

That was made of stele ryght,

That þe flowrys felle all abowte,

And hys schelde he smote þorowowte,

7992

That was neuyr peyred are

In stryfe nor in warre, but thare.

Thorow þe sadull he smote also

The gode stede euyng in twoo.

7996

The swyrde felle downe þore

Into þe erthe two fote *and* more.

Gye was at þe grownde anon ;

Hys gode stede þere was slone.

8000 'Guy was soon
thrown on the
ground.

¶ 'Lorde,' quod Gye, 'god almyght,

But after a
ayer,

	That made boþe þe day <i>and</i> nyght, Schelde me fro schamè thys day, As þat þou of all beste may.	8004
	Kepe me, for thy holy grace, That y be not slayne in thys place. ¹	
starting up,	On hys fote he starte vp ryght, As a nobull doghty knyght.	8008
	He toke hys bronde wyth envye And smote to þe gyawnt hardelye. On þe helme the stroke glode :	
	Besyde þe gyawnt downe hyt rode.	8012
he killed the Giant's horse.	Hys hors neck he smote in two : The gyawnt to þe grownde felle þo. Vp he starte <i>wythrowte</i> lettynge, But he playned hym nothyng.	8016
	He smote Gye <i>wyth</i> hys myght And he hym kepte, as a nobull knyzt.	
They fought very obstinately. [leaf 212 b, col. 2]	Then þey faght faste thare : Ther wolde nodur odor spare.	8020
	They faght togedur <i>wyth</i> grete yre : Of þer helmes sprange þe fyre. Ther strokys breke styffe scheldys, That þe mayles flewe to þe feldys.	8024
	¶ Amerawnt haþ hym bethoght, That in many a stowre he had foght, But neuer are before that day Was he so stadde in no jurnaye.	8028
	Therefore hys armes he lyfte vp ryght And smote Gye <i>wyth</i> all hys myght : Gye was bothe stronge <i>and</i> lyght And kept hym, ¹ as a nobull knyght.	8032
	Then they faght so faste thare, That nodur of þem wolde odor spare. He smote Gye on the hedde tho, That the perlys dud downe goo,	8036

¹ MS. *hyt*.

- At the drawyng of that bronde
 That Gye on hys kneys felle to grounde.
 ¶ Vp he starte, as a man,
 But hyt greuyd hym sore than. 8040
 Greuyd was Gye sore :
 ‘Lorde Cryste,’ he seyde, ‘thy nore.
 Neuyr in batayle nor in no fyght
 Knelyd y are for dynte of knyght.’ 8044
 He lyfte vp tho hys hande
 And smote vnto Amerawnde
 In the helme, that clere was,
 That golde felle downe a gode pase ; 8048
 The mayles he smote also in twoo.
 Then was Amerawnt full woo,
 That nothyng helped the mayle,
 But all tobrake hys ventayle. 8052
 He hyt hys flesche : þe blode downe ranne.
 Hys necke he made lyke no man.
 Hys targe, þat was golde belokyn,
 Hyt was all tofruschyd *and* brokyn. 8056
 To þe bokull, þat was golde begone,
 He made hys bronde to go anon.
 Sythen he brayde ageyne soo,
 To þe grownde þat he dud goo 8060
 On kneys *and* on handys also,
 As he had had no frendys tho.
 Amerawnt dud, as a gode knyght :
 He lyfte hys swyrde anon ryght. 8064
 Gye sore there he smote :
 So eydur odur, wele y wote.
 Of ther helmes flewe the fyre :
 So faste they faght *wyth* grete yre. 8068
 Betwene þem was so grete fyght,
 That no man þe bettur knowe myght.
 So stronge batayle was neuer made :
 Of þem, þat hyt sye, hyt was so sayde. 8072

Guy was brought
on his knees,

which had never
happened to him
before.

But he hit the
Giant so luckily

[leaf 213 a, col. 1]

as to make him
fall upon his
knees and hands.

They fought so
bravely that no
one knew which
was the better.

- The weather was hot,
 it being the morning after
 Midsummer-Day.
- ¶ Hyt was in somer, the wedur was hote :
 The story so tellyth, wèle y wote.
 On þe morne aftur mydsomyr day,
 As we in boke telle yow may, 8076
 Was the batell of the barons,
 That frescher were, þen any lyons.
 Amerawnt drewe hym ageyne
 And helde hys hedde, as men seyne. 8080
 What for blode, þat he had leuyd,
 And what for yre, þat he was greuyd,
 Thurste he had euellye :
 But yf he dranke, he muste dye. 8084
- Ameraunt was very thirsty.
- He asked his opponent
- ‘Telle thou me, *syr* knyght,’ quod he,
 ‘Of whens þou art *and* of what cuntre.
 Art thou Gye of Warwyke,
 That, men sey, ther ys none lyke ? 8088
 I wolde fayne fyght *wyth* hym,
 For he hath slayne mony of my kynne.
 Hys hedde y schulde smyte of here :
 He schulde neuyr moo men dere. 8092
 Of vs he slewe twenty thousande
 Wyth hys dyntes¹ of hys hande.
- He should like to kill Guy and Harrawde.
- [leaf 213 a, col. 2]
- Yf that y had hym ones slayne
 And *syr* Harrowde, þat ys hys swayne, 8096
 Two the beste then slayne had y :
 Then myght y be full yolye.’
- Asked, if Guy had ever done him any harm, he answered :
- ¶ ‘Now þe deuell,’ quod Gye, ‘þe honge :
 Dud he the euyr any wronge, 8100
 That thou wolde hys hed of smyte ?
 Of synne þou art gretly to wyte.’
- ‘Not to me, but to my kin.’
- He seyde : ‘nay,’ *wyth* moche vnwynne,
 ‘But he hath mysdone to my kynne. 8104
- He requested Guy
- ¶ Crysten man, vndurstande me :
 The wedur ys hote, as þou may see.
 For the lordys loue, þat þou leuyste ynne,

¹ Perhaps *Wyth the dyntes*?

- And as he may¹ forgeue þe þy synne, 8108
 Geue me leue to go styлле to let him quench
his thirst,
 To drynke of water but my fylle.
 Thurste y haue vndurgone :
 My herte wyll breste *and* that anon 8112
 Yf y for thurste ouyrcomen ware,
 Thou schuldyst be preysed *neuer* þe mare,
 But schame therof þou schuldyst haue,
 And thou warne me; that y craue, 8116
 Y prey the for goddys sone,
 That made boþe þe sonne *and* mone
 And geue the grace well to spede
 In euery place and euery nede. 8120
 And, yf thurste vpon the falle,
 3eue þe leue to drynke y schall.' promising Guy
the same favour
when needed.
 Then seyde Gye : ' y grawnte the
 To drynke ynogh in safete, 8124
 So that eft þou geue me leue
 For to drynke, yf þurste me greue.'
 ¶ But, when þat he the leue hadde,
 He was *neuer* before so gladd. 8128 Having by Guy's
permission
 He ranne to þe watur, *wythrowte* fayle,
 And vnasyd hys ventayle,
 There as he was moste hate :
 For to drynke ynogh he thrate. 8132 drunk his fill,
 'Knyȝt,' seyde þe gyawnt, '3elde þe to me :
 Thy endynge day thou haste ysee. he called upon
Guy to surrender.
 Euyll y haue begyled the, [leaf 213 b, col. 1]
 When þou to drynke leue gaue me. 8136
 I am freschar, then y was are :
 Thou schalt dye, *wythrowten* care.
 My custome ys soche, y the say :
 Fyght y *neuer* so moche on a day, 8140
 And y myght haue ony space
 My mouthe to wete *wyth* ony gras,

¹ g blotted out after *may* in MS.

- Sythen anon geue y no tale
 To fyght, where that euer y schale.' 8144
- But Guy did not
 fear him. Then seyde Gye : ' noþyng drede y þe.¹
 That þynge getyst þou not of me.'
- ¶ Togedur they streke, as ye may herke,
 And on þe helmes strokes they marke. 8148
 Nother flewe a strawe brede :
 In þat tyme no dethe they drede.
 Togedur þey smeten to make þem tame :
 On ther bodyes þey dud schame. 8152
 In pecys scheuyrde þey þer scheldus :
 They schente þer vysage wyth þer swyrdu.
 Amerawnt greuyd tho full hote
 And on the hedde Gye he smote. 8156
 The pomell, þat on þe helme was,
 In sonder was smyten into þe place.
 The dynte felle on Gyes schoulder :
 Hys hawberke he smote þere in sonder. 8160
 Wyth that he brake an hole wyde
 And woundyd Gye in the syde.
 In the 3orthe a fote he smote :
 Of that men spake, wele y wote. 8164
 Of that dynte Gye wondur hadde,
 That euer he myght set ony so sadde.
 Gye hym to 3elde had grete desyre
 And Amerawnt he smote wyth grete yre : 8168
 Wythynne the schelde a fote and more
 Hys swyrde hyt and bote sore.
 Sythen ageyn he hyt droghe,
 As a man, that was wery ynogh. 8172
- [leaf 213 b, col. 2] ¶ Then seyde Gye to Amerawnt thore :
 'To the y telle wythowten more :
 Soche a thurste ys me befallē,
 But yf y drynke, y dye wythalle. 8176
 Therefore, Amerawnt, y prey to the,

Guy was wounded
 in his side.

He now wanted
 to drink in his
 turn.

¹ Line 8145 after 8146 in MS.

- Of me þou woldyst haue pyte.
 Now that boone thou quyte me,
 That þou are behyghtest me, 8180
 That y to drynke leue schulde haue,
 At what tyme y wolde hyt craue.
 Amerawnt seyde: 'was þat þy thought?
 Leeue to drynke getyste þou noght.' 8184
 To that sarsyn answeyrd Gye:
 'Of me thou haue some mercye.
 Yf y for thurste dedde bee,
 For cowardyse men wolde wyte the. 8188
 Wylt þou suffur, þat y drynke nowe
 (For hyt were gretly for my prow),
 Then,' seyde Gye, 'we may fyght same,
 To wytt, who schall haue harme or game.' 8192
 ¶ The gyawnt seyde: 'thou art smarte:
 I wyll not the holde for no cowarte.
 Y wolde not for þys cyte wyth þe gylte towre,
 But y myght stroye kynges Tryamowre. 8196
 When y haue thy hedde of schorne
 And þe slayne the kynges beforne,
 Hys landys y nede not for to craue;
 For the beste of them y schall haue. 8200
 The sowdan hath a doghtur dere:
 In all þys worlde y knowe not hur pere.
 Y loue hur well, so dothe sche me:
 The sowdan þynkyth to geue hur me. 8204
 3elde the,' he seyde, 'vnto me
 And of thy harnes vnlace the,
 And thy lyfe y schall saue soo:
 And, yf thou wylt not, y schall þe sloo.' 8208
 ¶ Gye answeyrd then wyth grete yre:
 'Y wyll not 3yt, leue syre.
 Hyt ys not þe custome of my londe.
 Arste wyll y be drawyn wyth horsys stronge, 8212
 Then eyur y schulde in soche a nede

But the Giant had
no mind to allow
it.

He was bent upon
destroying
Triamour, and,
therefore, upon
killing his
champion.

But if Guy would
surrender,

his life should be
spared.

Guy answered
that to surrender
was not the
custom of his
country.

[leaf 214 a, col. 1]

- 3elde me vnto soche a quede.'
- Amerawnt then offered to let Guy drink if he would tell his right name.
- ¶ Then seyde Amerawnt: 'sey me now,
Where were þou borne *and* what hyght þou? 8216
To let the drynke haue y thoght;
For why þy name þou layne noght.
Thou makeste men to clepe the,
I trowe, not so, os hyt schulde bee. 8220
Yf þou on þe that name bare,
Thou schuldyst be knowyn wyde whare.
- Guy complied.
- ¶ Gye answeyrd: 'thou schalt here;
Loke, thou ley hyt to thyn ere. 8224
Gye of Warwyk clepyd am y,
Borne in Ynglonde, wytterlye.
I fyght for Tryamowre the kyng
The to take ouer all thyng 8228
And to delyuyr hym of fame stronge,
That ys put on hym wyth wronge.'
- But Amerawnt, knowing that his opponent was Guy,
- ¶ But, when Amerawnt vnduryode,
That Gye there before hym stode, 8232
That so moche preysed was,
Of hym had he wonder in þat place.
He seyde: 'Gye, welcome mote þou bee.
Ouyr all thyng desyred y the. 8236
Now wot y well, that sothe hyt ys,
That men haue spokyn of þe or þys.
But so, or y go, y schall the dere,
That þy hed fro¹ þe body y wyll schere, 8240
And present hyt to my lemmon):
Hyt schall be so, be seynt Mahowne.
- declared that not even for the whole of Hungary would he allow him any drink.
- Now þat y am seker of Gye,
Yf men wolde geue me all Hungurrie, 8244
To drynke y wolde not geue þe leue:
Thou myghtest me sore aftur greue.'
- ¶ 'Lorde,' quod Gye, 'what schall y done?
Leeue to drynke haue y noone.' 8248

¹ *fro* altered from *foo* in MS.

[leaf 214 a, col. 2]
So Guy leapt into
the river without
the Giant's leave.

Syþen he hath beþoght hym there
To lepe into the ryvere.
Thedurwarde ys he gone :
Drynke he muste or dye anone. 8252
Amerawnt folowed *wyth* hys swyrde :
Gye was then sore aferde.
Of the watur he was fayne.
But god hym helpe, he ys but slayne. 8256
Now ys Gye bestadde sore,
In þe water to þe gyrdull and more.
Into þe watur hys hedde he threste
To þe schoulders, or he wolde reste, 8260
And Amerawnt smote hym soo,
That in þe water he knelyd thoo :
The colde water abowte hym ranne.
Gye start vp then, as a man. 8264
Then seyde Gye, that all myght here :
'Thou haste me hyt on ylle manere.
Thou haste me baptysed, hyt ys þy schame.
But 3yt þou haste not chaunged my name.' 8268
¶ Forthe of the water he came, y wote,
And Amerawnt full soone he smote.
Eyther hath other bethoght,
How þey myght to grownde be broght. 8272
Of acorde was not speke :
Eyther of odur wolde be awreke.
'A, felle fende,' seyde syr Gye,
'Thankyd be god full hastelye. 8276
Thorow þe water at þe brymme
I was well holpyn soone þerynne.
Yn þe affye y me no more,
Traytoure,' he seyde, 'be goddys ore.' 8280
¶ Then they togedur rathe
Smote, as men, þat were wrathe.
Fro the morne to the nyght,
And at eyn were sterrys bryght, 8284

Ameraunt by a
stroke drove Guy
on his knees in
the water.

The battle soon
was renewed.

They fought from
morning to night.

	So haue þey foghtyn all that day,,	
[leaf 214 b, col. 1]	That no man þe bettur knowe may.	
	At a dynte, that Gye caste,	
At last, Guy cut off the Giant's right arm,	Amerawnt to smyte he hyed faste.	8288
	Of he smote hys ryght arme :	
	Into þe felde hyt flewe full warme.	
	When Amerawnt was smetyn soo,	
	He was greuyd, as y troo.	8292
	Vp he nome hys grete bronde	
	And helde hyt faste in hys honde	
	And assayled Gyowne,	
	As he were a lyone,	8296
	That had fasted xiiii nyght.	
	But Gye defendyd hym, as a knyght :	
	Fro Amerawnt he nobyng drowe,	
	And Amerawnt was hote ynowe.	8300
	Thorow þe blode, þat fro hym ranne,	
	The dyntys lessud of that man).	
	At a dynte, that Gye smote	
	(Amerawnt felyd hyt full hote),	8304
and a short time after his left one too.	The lyfte arme wyth þe schoulder boon),	
	Hyt yede of and that anon).	
	So nye Gye dud he gone,	
	That almoste he felle hym vpon).	8308
	Gye smote to hym faste	
The Giant fell down,	And to þe grounde þe gyawnt caste.	
	Hys ventayle he vnasyd, y wote,	
and Guy struck off his head.	And hys hedde of soone he smote.	8312
	¶ Wyth the boot he came passynge	
	And caste hyt to Tryamowre þe kyng.	
Triamour was acquitted,	The sowdan þere hym quyte made	
	And all, that euyr he there hadd.	8316
and returned with Guy to Alexandria, where he immediately	To Alysawndur he went, þe ryche towne,	
	And wyth hym broght he syr Gyowne	
	And sythen he sende aftur erle Joonas,	
	And he came to hym a gode pase.	8320

- He kyssyd hym there full soone
 And hys sonnes euerychone
 And wythowte any respyte
 Of pryson he made þem þere quyte. 8324 [leaf 214 b, col. 2]
released Jonas
and his sons.
- ‘Erle,’ seyde tho the kynge,
 ‘Thou schalt be my darlynge.’
 ¶ The kynge seyde : ‘lorde, þat þe wroght,
 Geue, hyt were in thy thoght 8328 He tried in vain
to prevail upon
Guy to stay with
him.
 To dwelle styll here wyth me.
 Golde and syluyr y wolde geue the :
 I wolde geue parte of my londe
 To cese hyt now into þy honde.’ 8332
 Gye seyde : ‘hyt ys not in my thoght :
 To dwelle wyth þe kepe y noght.’
 ¶ The erle at þe kynge toke hys leue
 And prayed hym, þat he wolde hym not greue. 8336 Jonas set out
for Jerusalem.
 To Jerusalem, the gode towne,
 The erle Joonas þoght to gone.
 But he at Gyes partynge
 Wolde wytt of hym some tythyng 8340 At parting,
 And, as they wente on þer waye,
 At þer partynge þe erle can say :
 ‘Telle me, syr, for seynt Symonde,
 What ys þy name, in þys stownde, 8344 he requested Guy
to tell him his
right name.
 That makyste vs to clepe the
 Other weyes, then hyt schulde bee.
 I prey the, now we be same,
 Telle to me thy ryght name. 8348
 I prey þe for þe loue of þe trynyte,
 Thy ryght name þou layne not fro me.
 ¶ Then seyde Gye to hym in haste :
 ‘Erle Joonas, be Jesu Cryste, 8352 Guy did so,
on condition
that Jonas should
not betray it to
any one.
 Loke, that þou layne hyt wole.
 Yf þou me bewrye, hyt ys dole.
 Gye of Warwyk ys my name.
 Yf þou me bewrye, þou mayste me shame. 8356

- For the toke y the fyght
 And slewe þe gyawnt^a be goddys myght.
 ¶ But, when he harde verelye,
 That hyt was syr Gye, 8360
 [leaf 215 a, col. 1] To Gyes fete dud he falle,
 And Gye toke hym vp þerwythall.
 ‘Syr,’ seyde þe erle, ‘for goddys mercye,
 That thou goyst thus, say me, whye, 8364
 And þou art so doghty and stronge :
 God made neuer a bettur schorte nor longe.
 The erledame of Durras y geue the,
 And many a man schall serue the, 8368
 And y myselfe become thy man
 And my sonnes euerychone :
 All we schall be trewe to the
 And swere on boke to serue the. 8372
 We schall nopynge chalenge fro þe
 Of honowre nor of dygnyte.
 Thou haste wonne hyt wyth þy hande,
 Thogh hyt were bettur, þen any lande ; 8376
 For, yf thou thyselfe ne were,
 We had be dedde *and* leyde on bere.’
 ¶ ‘Erle Joonas,’ tho seyde Gye,
 ‘I thanke the moche and gramercye. 8380
 To dere thou haddyst hyred me,
 Yf y thy landys toke fro the.
 Wende whome on þy way nowe :
 Goddys blessyng haue thou. 8384
 I wyll home to myn own lande
 (Y haue so thoght, y¹ vndurstande)
 And neuyr efte see the more.’
 Wyth þat they kyssed *and* leue toke þore. 8388
 The Earl went home.
 To Durras þe erle wente agayne,
 As man, þat was nothyng fayne.
 ¶ Now goyth Gye god thankende²
 Guy,

¹ *ye shall?*² MS. *thankunde*.

For the honowre, god had hym sende.	8392	
The londe he hape thorow gone		having visited the shrines of all the Saints in that country,
And soght the halowse euerychone.		
He sogernede wythynne þat londe nobell		
And sythen he went to Constantyne þe nobell.	8396	repaired to Constantinople. [leaf 215 a, col. 2] In the mean time Felice
O ff þe lady now wyll y telle,		
Of Gyes wyfe, <i>and</i> nothyng dwelle.		
Of charyte þer was none hur make,		was very charitable at home.
Sythen hur lorde þe wey dud take	8400	
Halowse to seke mony oon:		
He neuyr stynte, or he had done. ¹		
Abbeyse, churchys sche dud make		
At that tyme for Gyes sake	8404	
And pore men bothe clothe <i>and</i> fede		
Mony, sythe þat Gye fro þe londe yede.		
Neuyr for game, that was done,		She never once laughed since Guy went.
Loghe sche, sythe þat Gye was gone.	8408	
That lady had a sone free :		She had a son
A feyrer myght no man see.		
They crystenyd hym in a fant stone		
And clepyd hym Reynbowrne. ²	8412	named Reyn- brown.
To Harrowde þey delyuyrde þe chylde,		
As Gye badde the lady mylde.		According to Guy's orders, his education was superintended by Harrawde.
Harrowde toke the gode grome		
And kepte hym, as hys lordys sone.	8416	
He betoke hym two knyghtys þore		
To kepe hym well <i>and</i> do no more.		
When the chylde was vii yere olde,		At seven years old,
Well waxen he was <i>and</i> feyre <i>and</i> bolde.	8420	he was very tall, beautiful, and bold.
¶ Many marchandys of wyde where,		It happened that some Russian merchants,
Of Rosse, as ye harde 3erre,		
Golde <i>and</i> syluyr þey had broght thoo,		

¹ *done* altered from *don*, which shows clearly that the flourish did not mean *e*; and what else could it mean? Cf. 9094.

² *Reynbrown[e]* is the correct form, but the MS. always has *Reynbowrn[e]*.

	Copur and tynne <i>and</i> brasse þerto,	8424
	Veire and gryce <i>and</i> þylches armyne	
	And clothys of sylke <i>and</i> of satyne.	
	Ryght at deuer ¹ haue þey reuyn	
	And to kyng Athelston a present geuyn.	8428
	To þer schyppes be they gone	
	And soght townes many oon,	
coming to Wallingford,	So þat þey came to Wallyngforde	
	x myle tolde fro Oxonforde.	8432
	Hyt was a cyte gode wythall	
[leaf 215 b, col. 1]	And wele yclosyd <i>wyth</i> stone walle ;	
	And, syþen <i>wyth</i> warre hyt was caste down,	
	Hyt was neuer syth so gode a towne.	8436
	The marchandes þoght not to be schente	
brought a present to Harrawde.	And to Harrowde broght a presente,	
	And Harrowde toke hyt <i>wyth</i> gode wylle	
	And thanked þem bothe lowde <i>and</i> style.	8440
Struck with the beauty of the boy,	¶ When the marchandes sye that chylde	
	Pley in þe halle so wanton <i>and</i> wylde,	
	Wondur had the marchandys there :	
	A fayrer chylde sawe þey neuer ere.	8444
	They asked the knyghtys ² in that place,	
	Whose that feyre chylde wase.	
	They answeyrd, sekerlyke : ³	
	‘Hytt ⁴ ys <i>sy</i> r Gyes sone of Warwyke.’	8448
	In feyrenes they hym preysed tho	
	And thoght, that he schulde <i>wyth</i> þem goo ;	
	For þey thoght to selle hym full dere,	
	In what londe so that they were.	8452
they kidnapped him with the porter’s assistance.	And <i>wyth</i> ⁵ the portar they spake tho	
	And <i>wyth</i> the chylde away þey dud goo.	
	To London þey wente soone agane,	
	But of that chylde wyste no man.	8456

¹ London? See the note.² MS. *knyght*.³ *ke* in *sekerlyke* altered from *e* in MS.⁴ *t* in *Hytt* altered from *s* in MS.⁵ Part of a letter struck out before *wyth* in MS.

- ¶ To Russye the wey they dud take,
 And, when þey sawe þe londe, *grete yoye* þey dud¹ make.
 They wende to haue reyn feyre *and* wele,
 But to them befelle grete sorowe *and* dele. 8460
 The nyght waxed soon black, as pycke :
 Then was the myste boþe marke *and* thycke.
 The weder waxe þycke, þe wynde blewe faste :
 Almoste the schyppe hyt dud downe caste. 8464
 Then were þey turmentyd soo,
 That they wyste not, whodur to goo.
 The wawes ouyryede þe schyppe soo,
 That þey were wete fro toppe to too. 8468
 Hyt brake þer cordys *and* eke ther maste :
 Then wende þey to dye all at þe laste.
 Ouyr all greuyd them that turmente :
 They preyed to god omnypotente, 8472 [leaf 215 b, col. 2]
 That he schulde þat lowde wynde felle
 And borowe þer sowles owt of helle.
 Farre in þe see þe schyppe ys dryuen :
 In Awfryke well soone þey be yryuen. 8476 carried them
 ¶ When þe marchandys can þat see, away to Africa.
 That they in Awfryke aryuen bee,
 They þoȝt Reynbown, þat chylde, to take
 The kyng wyth hym a present to make, 8480
 That þey may freschly and well
 Go þorow þe londe feyre *and* well
 For to selle and for to bye,
 That no man schulde þem affraye. 8484
 Sythen they toke two marchans²
 Wele ydyght of Romans :
 To þe kyng þey presentyd þat chylde,
 And he hym resseyuyd wyth wordys mylde. 8488
 The kyng had a doghtur in þe towne :
 Of þe selfe age was Reynbowne.
 Sche preyed þorow hur modur wylle

Returning to
 Russia,
 they were near
 the coast of their
 country

when a tempest

Here they
 presented
 Reynbown to a
 King,

who had a
 daughter of the
 same age :

¹ *dud* over the line in the same hand. ² MS. *marchandys*.

	Of ¹ hur lorde boþe lq̃wde <i>and</i> styлле,	8492
in her chamber,	The chylde myzt in hur chaumber be	
Reynbrowns education was completed.	To norysche hym <i>wyth</i> hur own mayne, Yf þat he myght serue hur wele.	
	The kyng e hur grauntyd euerý dele.	8496
Harrawde ordered	W hen Harrowde perseyued soo, þat þe chylde was stolen hym fro,	
Reynbrowns to be searched for everywhere,	He made hym to be sozt þorow þe towne And þorow þe cuntre be dale <i>and</i> downe.	8500
	When he wýste, for soþe, þat case, That þe chylde stolen wase,	
	Tho beganne moche of hys woo ; For he had so lorne hys lordys two.	8504
	In all Russye he dud hym seke And in many a straunge lande eke ;	
but in vain.	And, when he myzt not be fownde, He swowned, as a man for sore wounde.	8508
Now it came to pass that the English King, Athelstan, [leaf 216 a, col. 1] assembled all his Earls and Barons,	¶ Then so befelle, kyng e Athelston Let gedur hys barons euerýlkon), Boþe hys erlys and hys barons, The wysest þat were of all resons.	8512
Harrawde being among the rest. The King's good opinion of Harrawde	Harrowde of Arderne þedur yede : The kyng e hym louyd for hys gode dede More, then any of hys lande ; For he was doghtyest of hys hande.	8516
raised the envy of others.	And odor lordys therof had envy e, And betwene them they can seye, That the kyng e dud grete wronge To honowre so moche Harrowde þe stronge ;	8520
	For he was but a pore knyght : 'Hys lorde he hath done moche vnryght.'	
The King asked his Lords' advice	¶ 'Lordyngys,' þen seyde þe kyng e, 'Vndurstandyth wele my tythyng e. Y wyll yow now of cowncell praye, For y wot well, ye haue harde saye,	8524
with regard to		

¹ MS. *And of*,

That the kyng Anlate ¹ of Denmarke,		
That ys full felle, styffe and starke,	8528	the news of King Anlaf of Denmark
Wyl come on vs wyth moche heer		being about to invade England.
All owre londes for to dere		
And þem to haue <i>wyth</i> grete myght,		
But we defende vs <i>wyth</i> grete fyght.	8532	
Many yerys hyt ys gone,		
Syth he claymed thys kyngdome.'		
¶ Then answeyrd syr Harrawte :		Harrawde
'We dowte hym not, <i>wythowte</i> defawte.	8536	
Yf þey come in yowre landes,		
We schall þem sloo <i>wyth</i> owre handes.		
Gode men haue ye <i>and</i> cytees stronge :		
Ye nede not to dowte none of hys wronge.	8540	
In olde dayes, men seyden, aplyght,		
That Danes schulde haue þys lande <i>wyth</i> ryzt ;		
But þorow batell þey were slone :		
Therfore now ryght haue þey none.	8544	counselled Atheistan to command all his men
But now comawnde thy barowns,		
Tho that haue castels and townes,		
<i>Wyth</i> horse <i>and</i> harnes to be made ȝare		[leaf 216 a, col. 2] to keep themselves ready for fight.
Into batell <i>wyth</i> the to fare	8548	
And to yowre knyghtys of armes all,		
That þey be redy at yowre calle :		
They may yow helpe on all manere,		
What tyme ye haue to þem mystere,	8552	
Or þey haue yowre londe <i>wythowten</i> ryght,		
Yf the Danes <i>wyth</i> yow fyght.		
For yowre men þen schall be redy		
And fyght <i>wyth</i> þem well manlye.	8556	
Thorow helpe of god all weldande		
We schall haue the hyer hande.'		
¶ 'Syr,' seyde the kyng, ' <i>wythowten</i> fayle,		The King promised to do so.

¹ The first letter in the name of the King of Denmark is in part gone, in consequence of a worm-hole. But if we may conjecture from what remains, it was not *A*, but *E*.

	Thys ys a nobull cownsayle.	8560
	As þou haste seyde, euery dele	
	Y schall do, also haue y hele.'	
Then Duke Merof, starting up,	¶ Vp starte þe dewke Merof in yre :	
	He was a cruell lorde <i>and</i> syre.	8564
	He was a whytehore knyght	
	And also he had be bolde <i>and</i> wyght.	
cautioned the King against Harrawde,	'Syr kynge,' he seyde, 'for yowre honowre,	
	Leue ye no more that losengeowre.	8568
	Yowre barons haue well euell wyll	
	To greue yow odur lowde or styлле,	
	But well more ye loue hym allone,	
	Then yowre barons euerychone ;	8572
	And we can well bettur geue yow cownseyle	
	And in a saye wyll more auayle,	
	Then that traytour, that y see thare.	
who (he said) had betrayed Guy	He hape betrayed hys lorde well zare,	8576
	That made hym knyght of grete renowne	
	Of a mysprouwe garesowne ;	
	And, sythen he hath had grete honowre,	
	That furste was a pore vauesowre,	8580
	He hath quytt hym full euyll hys mede,	
by selling his son to the Russian merchants.	When he solde hys soone for nede.	
	To men of Russye he hym solde	
[leaf 216 b, col. 1]	And many a peny for hym he tolde.	8584
	He wyll bothe yow <i>and</i> yowre sone	
	Begyle, as hyt ys hys wonne.'	
	¶ When he harde that grete syre,	
	Vnnethe he myght speke for yre.	8588
	On hys fete he starte full zare,	
	Os man, that was agreuyd sare.	
Harrawde, giving him the lie,	'Thou lvest,' seyde Harrowde full egerlye,	
	'When þou me blameste of felonye.	8592
	When þou before my lorde, þe kynge,	
	Repreuest me of soche a thyng,	
	Yf thou wylte that thyng avowe,	

- That þou haste seyde here nowe, 8596
 Loke, þou arme the hastelye
 To preue thy false testimony.
 And y not defende me,
 I wyll, that men do hange me. 8600
 Thou haste me sclawnduryd of a lesynge
 Here before my lorde, the kynge,
 That y solde þe chylde Reynbowrne,
 My lordys sone, syr Gyowne. 8604
 Also helpe me god, þat all hath wrought,
 That þynge came neuer in my thoght.
 The ryche marchandys, be god veray,
 Stale þat chylde be nyght away. 8608
 Gretter sorowe had neuyr no man,
 Then had y, when he was gane,
 And sythen y wente and odor thre
 To Russye, that feyre cuntre ; 8612
 But y cowde not fynde hym in no stedde,
 Therfore sorowfull ys my redde.
 Be y false or be y noght,
 I am for euyr in sclawndur broght. 8616
 Before þe kyng y schall hym hyght
 And therto my trowthe hym plyght
 Owte of thys londe for to fare
 And come ageyne neuyr mare, 8620
 Or y myght my lordys sone
 Fynde, yf he be vndur þe mone.'
 ¶ 'Be styлле,' seyde the dewke so felle,
 'The deuell þe honge, þat ys in helle. 8624
 Whyll þou art in þys cuntre,
 Traytour schalt thou holdyn bee.'
 ¶ All that harde a nobull knyght,
 Syr Edgare, for sothe, he hyght. 8628
 Trewe he was and doghty of hande.
 He was steward of Harrowdes lande.
 Soche sorowe had þat ylke knyght,

challenged him to
combat.

He would go
once more in
quest of
Reynbrown.

[leaf 216 b, col. 2]

The Duke
answered that
Harrawde would
be considered a
traitor as long as
he stayed in
England.

Harrawde's
steward,

- That he ne wyste, what he do myght. 8632
 Before the dewke he starte in hye
 And spake to hym *wyth* grete envye.
 ‘Syr dewke,’ he seyde, ‘be heuyn kyng,
 When *pou* on my lorde seyste soche *þynge*, 8636
 Thou lvest falsely¹ of that dede ;
 The whych y wyll preue vpon my stede
 Allone *wyth þe* for to fyght :
 Then men may see, who hath *þe* ryght. 8640
 The helpe of god be fro me reuyd,
 But y smyte of thy heuydde.’²
 ¶ The kyng comawndyd on *þer* lyfe,
 That *þer* schulde be no more stryfe. 8644
 When *þe* kyng had all seyde
 And hys charge on them leyde,
 That *þey* schulde kepe well hys londe
 And be euyr redy to hys honde, 8648
 Home *þen* wente the knyghtys free
 Euerychone to ther cuntre.
 ¶ Home wente also Harrowde *þe* free
 To Wallyngforde, hys cyte. 8652
 Harrowde had ay gret tene *and* schame,
 That he was brozt in soche false fame ;
 And all was but a lesynge,
 That *þe* dewke had tolde *þe* kyng. 8656
 ‘Edgare,’ he seyde, ‘dwelle thou here
 And kepe my londe *wyth* thy powere,
 Bothe my chylde and my wyfe
 And my cyte, wythowten stryfe ; 8660
 For moost of all men tryste y the.’
 ¶ ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘gramercye ;
 But, swete syr, leue thys folye,
 And wende wyll y in farre cuntre. 8664
 Y schall not blynne day nor nyght,
 Or y see that chylde *wyth* syght.

also challenged
Merof.

But the King did
not allow of any
fight.

Harrawde,
after his return
to Wallingford,

entrusted his
family and estate
[leaf 217 a, col. 1]
to the care of
Edgar,

who in vain
offered to go
himself,

¹ *y* in *falsely* altered from *e* in MS.

² MS. *hedde*

- I was ones seuyn yere
 Yn the see a marynere : 8668
 In crystyante ther ys no lande,
 But y haue be therin dwellande ;
 And ye be oolde and whytehore :
 Ye may not well trauell no more ; 8672
 Wherefore y prey yow, leue yowre wyllle.¹
 ¶ 'Edgare,' he seyde, 'holde the styllle.
 For all the gode, that euyr god made,
 Y wolde not cese, or¹ y hym hade. 8676
 Full well y wott, when y am gone,
 Myn enmyes wyll come anone
 And sege the wyth grete batayle :
 Defende þe then, wythowten fayle.' 8680
 'Syr,' he seyde, 'so god me mende,
 Yf any come, we schall vs² defende.'
 ¶ Now wendyth Harrowde fro that cyte :
 A well sorowfull man was he. 8684
 Schyppe he fonde and passed yare
 And soght Reybowrne wyde whare :
 In Denmarke and in Yrelonde,
 In Norway and in Scotlonde, 8688
 Yn Almayne and in Sossyrrye,
 In Cesoyne³ and in Turkye
 Euyr hys lordys sone he soght,
 But, for sothe, he fonde hym noght. 8692
 When he myght nowhere fowndyn bee,
 Another tyme he wente to the see.
 At Costantyne wolde he bee,
 And tho come a tempaste on the see 8696
 And chased þem þen belyue :
 Ryght at Awfryke þey can ryue.
 He sawe besyde hym on the londe

and left England
 in search of
 Reynbrowne.

Having passed
 through many
 countries

without any
 success,

and going to
 Constantinople,
 he was by a
 tempest carried
 [leaf 217 a, col. 2]

into Africa,

¹ or all but completely gone (worm-hole).

² vs omitted in MS. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 200, *Yf they come, we will vs defende.*

³ MS. *Cesyone.*

A swythe feyre cyte stonde : 8700
 But¹ the wallys of that towne
 To þe 3erthe were brokyn downe.
 ¶ 'Lorde,' seyde a marynere,
 'Moche sorow schall we haue here. 8704
 We be now faste ryuande
 Into the kynge Harkes² lande.
 He ys a full ryche kynge
 Of golde and syluyr *and* other þynge. 8708
 Then seyde Harrowde : 'who owyth þys cuntre,
 That ys dystroyed, and thys cyte ?'
 'Syr,' seyde a schypman),
 'Ther ys none so felle to fleme Jordan). 8712
 Y schall yow telle, as y can).
 Hyt ys admyrals Presane :
 He hatyth crysten men) echon).
 Full well y wote, he wyll vs slone. 8716
 The kyng Harkes hath seged hym here
 And stroyed þys londe bothe far *and* nere.'
 ¶ Wyth þat þe paynmys were kene³
 And armed them all bedene, 8720
 And Harrowde and hys companye
 They broght þem to þer lorde⁴ in hye,
 And caste them in hys pryson) all :
 Of mete *and* drynke they had small. 8724
 ¶ When the dewke Merof hyt fonde,
 That syr Harrowde was owt of þat londe,
 He gedurde grete ooste of Cornwayle
 And þe stewarde faste he can assayle ; 8728
 But he hym defendyd day *and* nyght
 Full well, as a doghty knyght.

where he was
 thrown into
 Amiral Presane's
 prison.
 When Merof
 heard of
 Harrowde's
 departure,

he attacked his
 Steward,

¹ MS. *Bothe*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 201, *But, for soth, the wallis of that town*.

² Corrupt for *Argus*, which the Caius MS. has.

³ Line 8719 is repeated as the next line in MS. thus, *Wyth that the paynmys were kene*.

⁴ MS. *to þat londe*. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 201, *And browt hem to her lord in hye*.

- He hyred men of that londe
 And full rychely he them fonde. 8732
 He gaue þem golde *and* ryche tresoure¹
 And kepyd þat londe *wyth* grete honowre. [leaf 217 b, col. 1]
 All that yere owte and owte
 He defendyd hym, as a knyght full stowte. 8736
 He gaue the dewke batayle stronge
 And slewe hys men euyr amonge.
 A thousande were there slayne
 Of the dewkys men, certayne. 8740
 The dewke myght spede nothyng
 Of that ylke longe segeyng :
 To Cornwell he went agayne
 And lefte þere hys men *wyth* schame slayne. 8744
- Now wyll we speke of *syr* Gye,
 As we fynde in storye :
 At all seyntes he had bene
 In Costantyne þorow *and* bedene. 8748
 He thought in hys harte yare
 Into Ynglonde for to fare :
 Hys wey he hath sone tane.
 So longe on hys wey hath he gane 8752
 Bothe *wyth* trauell *and* *wyth* payne,
 That comen he was to Almayne.
- ¶ As he came on a day,
 In that wylde cuntraye 8756
 A cros he fonde standyng
 And thervndur a pylgryme syttyng.
 He made sorowe on all thyng,
 And euyr he seyde *wyth* mornyng : 8760
 ‘Allas, my sorowe, þat arte² so stronge,
 And my lyfe, that lastyth so longe.’
 ¶ When Gye þat sawe, he had pyte
 And seyde to hym *wyth* herte free : 8764

¹ MS. *tresure*.² The Caius MS. p. 203, has *ys*, which appears to be right.but, after losing
many men,he was obliged to
return with
contumely.

Guy,

having been at
the shrines of all
the Saints in
Constantinople,
determined to
return to
England.

One day,

8756 travelling through
Germany,he found under a
cross a sorrowful
pilgrim,

- who, asked 'Y bydde the for my loue nowe,
So god the slake of thy sorowe,
Thou me telle wyth gode harte,
Fro whens *pou* came *and* what thou art.' 8768
- whence he came
and who he was, ¶ He answeyrd, as he myght :
- after some
hesitation, 'Yf y tolde the anonⁿ ryght,
Thou woldyst of me haue pyte,
And y schulde neuyr *þe* better bee.' 8772
- [leaf 217 b, col. 2] Tho Gye answeyrd and seyde : 'nay,
Y may *þe* comforte, par ma faye.
Par auenture y myght *þe* say,
How *þy* sorowe may passe away. 8776
- Hyt befallyth to trauelde men
Eyther other some gode to kenne.'
Tho seyde *þe* palmer : 'soþe seye ye.
Almes hyt were to teche me. 8780
- told Guy Lefe syr, now wyll y telle
All my sorowe, how that¹ hyt felle.
- that he had
formerly been a
rich knight, ¶ I was a knyght of ryche lande
And castels *and* towres in my hande. 8784
- Of gode y had grete plente :
All *þat* londe had drede of me.
In crystendome *þer* was no lande,
But y was preysed of my hande. 8788
- Y was bothe kynde and hende
And also y had mony a frende.
Golde y had grete plente
And helde mony meyne. 8792
- but that he now
had not a half-
penny left to buy
food with. Now haue y not an halpenye
My mete nor drynke for to bye.
Y am nowe a pore caytyfe :
Hyt ys wonder, y haue my lyfe.' 8796
- For sorowe myght he speke no more,
For sorowe *and* for wepynge sore.

¹ *how that* omitted in MS. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 203, *All my sorrow how that hyt befell.*

- 'Lo here my sorowe, let be þy fare :
 Aske me now of thys no mare, 8800
 What y hyght or fro whens y came ;
 For to telle me thynkyth hyt schame. His name and
 Yf y my lyfe to þe schulde telle, country he would
 To longe here schulde y dwelle. 8804 not tell.
 Whereto aske ye me soche thyng ?
 Thou mayste not me fro sorowe brynge.
 I had leuyr haue some mete ;
 For y haue grete myster to ete.' 8808
 ¶ Gye seyde : 'pylgryme, so mote þou the,
 And for goddys loue in trynhte,
 Telle me þy name, *and* lye noght, But further urged,
 And why þou art in soche state broght. 8812
 And Iesu, that ys myn affyawnce, [leaf 218 a, col. 1]
 May happe to geue þe ryȝt gode chaunce.
 And owre mete schall y bye :
 ȝyt y haue lefte a penye.' 8816
 He answerd : 'y schall the saye.
 I wyll not lye, be my faye.
 My name ys erle Tyrrye.
 I was ryche, syr, sekerlye : 8820
 Now am y a wreche *and* a caytife,
 Me forthynkyth, þat y haue lyfe.
 All Loren was to me sworne :
 In that londe y was borne. 8824
 I had a felowe, þat hyght Gyown :
 Sythen god suffurde hys pascioun,
 Was neuer, þen he, a trewer borne.
 To be hys fere y haue sworne : 8828
 A trewer man was neuer beforne.
 In Warwyke þere was he borne. of Warwick,
 We were felows trewtheplyght :
 We louyd well, hyt was ryght. 8832
 Twyes he sauȝd me fro the dyeng :
 He louyd me ouyr all other þynge ; who twice saved
 his life,

	Tyll hyt befelle, that <i>syr</i> Gye,	
	That was my felowe t'rewlye,	8836
and kille ^d Otoun of Pavia.	Slewe the dewke of Payuye :	
	He had done hym velenye.	
	Amonge hys knyghtys euerychone	
	Gye hym slewe <i>and</i> passed anon	8840
	And broght my lemman <i>wyth</i> hym ¹ dere,	
	That y louyd on all manere.	
But O'oun's cousin	¶ That dewke had a cosyne,	
	That ys preuyd a felle hyne :	8844
Barrarde	Barrarde ys hys ryght name.	
	Lorde god geue hym moche schame.	
	He was then but a squyere	
	And serued the emperere.	8848
	The emperowre louyd hym wele	
became a power- ful lord.	And gaue hym Payuye euery dele.	
	Thys ylke Barrarde tho beganne	
[leaf 218 a, col. 2]	For to be a prowde man,	8852
	So prowde and so felle,	
	That no man myght be hym dwelle.	
	In þe worlde ys none hys pere,	
He was a stalwart man, dreaded by all.	None so stalworthe nor none so fere.	8856
	Men drede hym more allone,	
	Then an hundurd knyghtys echone,	
	Yf any man were armed wele	
	Odur in yron or in stele,	8860
	And he hyt hym in the felde,	
	But he kepte hym <i>wyth</i> hys schelde,	
	Wyth þe myght of hys swyrde dynte	
	The hed schulde of, or hyt stynte.	8864
	Thou harde neuer speke of soche a knyght :	
	In all þys worlde þer ys none so wyght	
	Nor none so stronge in thys lande,	
	But, <i>and</i> he hyt hym <i>wyth</i> hys hande,	8868

¹ Perhaps we ought to read *wyth hym my lemman*. The Caius MS. p. 205, has, *He broght from hym his leman dere*.

- He wolde breke hys neck in two
Wyth oon dynte wythowten moo.
 Barrarde ys so felle a page
 And so stowte of hys corage, 8872
 Ther ys no knyght in all *þys* londe
 Nor none so wyght of hys honde,
 And Barrarde were wroþe, þogh he were stowte,
 When he sawe hym loke abowte, 8876
 But for feere he schulde quake
 And flee away for hys sake.
 He ys wyght of hys honde
 And sore dredde þorow þe londe. 8880
 Steward hym made þe emperowre
 And gaue hym feys to hys honowre.
 Men drede hym more allone,
 Then hys barons euerychone. 8884
 Yf ther be dewke or erle in lande,
 But þey be to hym boweande,
 The steward wyll anone ryse
 And dystroye hym on all wyse : 8888
 He schulde anone *wyth* hym be slane ,
 Or ellys to pryson sone be tane.
 Men drede hym moche þe more ;
 For, yf a pore man þer wore, 8892
 And Barrarde hym louyd *wyth* herte fre,
 He myght be of moche poste.
 Dewke, erle or nobull knyght,
 Were he neuyr so ryche a wyght, 8896
 Thogh he were prynce or kynge,
 And he¹ greuyd hym anythyng,
 He wolde hym brynge vnto the grownde
 And make hym pore in schorte stownde. 8900
 ¶ Hyt befelle, that the emperowre
 Helde a cowncell of grete valowre
 Of erlys, dewkys and barons

Barrarde was
made the Empe-
ror's steward.

[leaf 218 b, col. 1]

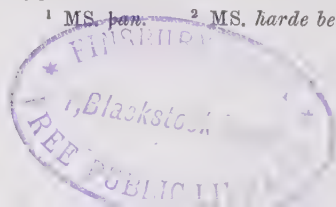
He has the power
to make a poor
man rich,

and a prince poor.

¹ MS. *þey*.

	And to me he made somons,	8904
	And thedur y wente <i>wyth</i> grete meyne :	
This Barrarde accused Tyrry	An hundurd knyghtys came <i>wyth</i> me.	
	When y came before the kynge,	
of having caused Otoun's death.	Barrarde me askyd of soche thynges	8908
	And seyde, Oton þorow my meyne	
	Was broght to dethe, sekerlye.	
	¶ Forthe y starte full hardelye	
	To defende me of felonye	8912
Tyrry challenged him to combat,	And ȝaue my gloue before þe kynge	
	To fyght wythowten dwellynge	
	Agenste hym and all odur men,	
	That cowde oght sey agenste me þen. ¹	8916
	The emperowre hyt toke full ryght	
	And set a day, when we schulde fyght.	
but being unable to find any securities,	At that cowncell fonde y no man,	
	That durste be my borowe than,	8920
	For drede of the dewke Barrarde.	
	The emperowre þen helde me harde.	
	I was lound more, then he,	
	But he was drad in that cuntre.	8924
	All my frendys dysseyuyd me :	
	Ther durste not oon my borowe bee.	
	I was sory at the laste :	
	All dud me fayle, that y dud aske.	8928
	Thorow cowncell of Barrarde	
[leaf 218 b, col. 2]	I was then bestadde harde. ²	
he was imprisoned,	The emperowre put me at hys wylle	
	In hys pryson for to spylle.	8932
and his possessions seized.	He sesyd then my londe soone :	
	He wolde my wyfe þen haue fordone,	
	But sche hyed away on hur stede,	
	I wot not, whodur, so god me rede.	8936
Having suffered in prison for some time,	¶ When y was in pryson thare,	
	Nyght and day y was in care.	

¹ MS. *þen*. ² MS. *harde bestadde*. See the note.



- Thorow me he wened to wynne
 Gye of Warwyke *wyth* some gynne. 8940
 Were he vengyd vpon Gyown
 Wyth some maner of treson,
 Soone þen aftur schulde y be dedde :
 For me schulde go no golde redde. 8944
 Yn that pryson was y longe
 And suffurde there peynes stronge.
 I sawe neuer there no lyght
 No more, þen hyt had be nyght. 8948
 Y ete neuyr there my fylle
 Nor spake neuer þere *wyth* men¹ at wylle.
 ¶ My frendes came at the laste
 And preyed þe emperowre for me faste 8952
 And gaue hym gyftes grete ynowe
 And to Barrard they dud also,
 That y myȝt wende fro pryson
 Thorowe thys condycyon, 8956
 That y schulde wende to seke Gyown
 To euery lande and euery towne :
 I schulde not reste day nor nyght,
 Tyll y had fonde þat gentyll knyght, 8960
 And brynge hym to the emperowre
 To defende hym, as a traytowre,
 Of that grete owtrage
 Before all hys baronage 8964
 And to defende me that day
 Of þynge, þat men wolde to me say.
 ¶ Then y wente *wyth* grete care
 And in mony a londe haue y fare. 8968
 I haue soght Gye in fere²
 Thorow Inglonde far and nere.
 When y came þere *and* fonde hym noght,

he was at last set
free by the inter-
cession of his
friends,

on condition that
he should bring
Guy

to prove his
innocency
by combat.

But he could find

[leaf 219 a, col. 1]
neither Guy

¹ MS. *me*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 209 :
Spake i neuer ther wyth man my fyll.

² Corrupt. See the note.

nor Harrowde.	Then on Harrowde was all my thought; And bothe were gone fro that lande, And that was wyckyd tythande.	8972
	Men seyde, Harrowde bothe nyght <i>and</i> day Soght hys lordys sone, that was away, And Gye was in exsyle wente.	8976
	Then me þoght, þat y was schiente. Ther was no man, there y dud goo, That cowde telle me of þem two.	8980
	And sythen haue y soght Gye þe fre In mony a straunge cuntre And y fonde neuer man be þe way, That oght of Gye cowde say.	8984
He thought Guy was dead.	I can not thynke, but he ys dedde, And therefore sorowfull ys my redde. ⁷ Therwythall he wepyd sare : He was full of sorowe and care.	8988
Guy, seeing his friend Tyrry before him in such a miserable condition	¶ When Gye sye Tyrrye, þe knyght, That was so doghty <i>and</i> so wyght, That he louyd so trewlye, He lokyd on hym soberlye. He was pore for þe nones, He had noþynge to hylle hys bones : Hys lymmes were bare and euyll beseyn, That some tyme were clad in scarlet in greyne.	8992
fainted away,	For dole Gye felle to the grownde : Ofte he swowned in that stownde. When Tyrrye hym sye falle to grownde, He toke hym vp in that stownde. Tyrrye seyde : ‘be of gode harte.	8996
which Tyrry attributed to falling sickness.	Me þynkyth, þys euyll holdyþ þe smarte. Telle me, yf hyt be thy wylle, How longe ye haue had thys euyll. Hy ¹ ys the fallynge euyll ryght, Therefore y hate hyt <i>wyth</i> my myght. ⁷	9000
		9004

¹ MS. *Hys*.

- ‘ Hyt ys,’ quod Gye, ‘ longe not agone,
 Sythe of thys euyll y had none.’ 9008 [leaf 219 a, col. 2]
- ¶ Tho seyde Tyrrye vnto Gye than):
 ‘ Hyt ys greuawnce to euery man).
 To day twelfmonyth, for soþe, hyt was
 Sythe y for Gye toke the pase, 9012
 And sythen y dwellyd neuer a day,
 There y on the nyght laye.
 I haue bene ay trauelande,
 What be see and be lande. 9016
 Hyt was me tolde wythowte fayle,
 At Spyre¹ schulde be a cownsayle
 Of the emperowre Raynere,
 And all hys baronage schall be þere : 9020
 Ther ys none in that cuntre,
 But he schall at þat cowncell bee.
 Hyt² ys my terme daye
 To come, yf any happe be may 9024
 To brynge Gye in my hande,
 Yf that he were lyueande.
 Yf y fynde hym nowhare,
 I may not come in þat lande no mare. 9028
 Yf y come, y schall be dedde,
 And therfore y can no redde,
 Whedur y schall take þe wey fro þen)
 Or ellys thedur turne ageyne.’ 9032
 ¶ Gye hym harde all sorowande :
 Vnnethe myȝt he vpryght stande.
 ‘ Lorde,’ he seyde, ‘ of myght stronge,
 Why haue y leuyd þus so longe, 9036
 That y see hym thus euyll dyght
 And thus pore a nobull knyght.
 A trewar felowe, þen he was oon),

It was just a year
 since Tyrry had
 left the court in
 quest of Guy.

It was the last
 day for him to
 return with Guy.

¹ MS. *sypurs*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 211 :
At Spire ther shuld be a gret counceyle.

² MS. *ȝyt*.

Guy was
determined to
revenge his
fellow.

Was neuer made of flesche *and* boon). 9040

Hangyd be y thys ylkeⁿ daye,

But y venge hym, and y maye.

¹Now may y speke my fylle :

I haue my spyrytes somewhat at wylle.¹ 9044

But y reue Barrarde hys lyfe

Odur wyth swyrde or wyth knyfe

[leaf 219 b, col. 1]

And venge Tyrrye, my gode felowe,

God let neuer me of gode knowe.' 9048

Then spake Gye to syr Tyrrye :

'Pylgryme, be not sorye.

Hyt may the helpe nothyng

Sorowe to make or mornynge. 9052

No man may wete, be my hode,

That we wyll proue for any gode².

We wyll drawe nerehande,

That we may here tythande, 9056

That we may the better bee.²

'Syr,' seyde Tyrrye, 'so schall hyt be.'

They set off for
Spire,

¶ They toke the wey to the cyte,

And a sory man was Tyrrye. 9060

Gye goyth Tyrrye comfortynge,

But in hys harte he made morenyng.

Gye to wepe forbare nothyng,

When he sawe Tyrrye so faste wepyng : 9064

He couyrde hys face wyth hys slaveyne,

That Tyrrye schulde not knowe hys peyne.

but after a three
miles' walk,

They were gone but myles thre

In the way to that cyte : 9068

'Lorde,' seyde Tyrrye, 'what schall y do ?

Heuynes ys comen me too.

Tyrry felt so
sleepy

But y slepe here a whyle,

I dye, or y haue gone a myle.' 9072

'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'lye down stylle

¹ Corrupt. See the note.

² Seems corrupt. See the note.

- A throwe *and* slepe all þy fyllē.
 I schall for þe loue of the
 At thy hedde reste me.' 9076
 'Syr,' seyde Tyrrye, 'gramercye!
 Thou doyst to me grete curtesye.'
 ¶ Now lythe Tyrrye on þe grownde
 And slepyd but a lytull stownde. 9080
 Also faste as Tyrrye dud slepe,
 Also faste can Gye wepe.
 As Tyrrye lay in slomerynge,
 Owt of hys mowþe wente a þynge 9084
 Also whyte, as any armyne.
 Gye lokyd theron wele and fyne.
 To an hylle went hyt than
 And in at an hole hyt ranne. 9088
 Hyt dwellyd not longe, os y yow say :
 Ageyn hyt came soon þat same day.
 In at þe mowthe dud hyt goo,
 There as hyt came froo. 9092
 When Gye had þat syght sene,
 He had wondur, what hyt myzt mene.¹
 ¶ Tyrrye wakenyd soone thore :
 Vp he rose and sykyd sore. 9096
 'A, lorde,' he seyde, 'heuyn kynge,
 I haue a grete wonderynge.
 Me þoght, y was on a hylle gone
 And y fonde þere a roche of stone : 9100
 Full hyt was of golde redde,
 And there lay a dragon dedde.
 A bryght swyrde be hym lay :
 Ther ys none bettur in þe worlde þys day. 9104
 Also me thoght, that syr Gye
 Was here be me, full sekerlye,
 And my hed in hys armes lay :
 Me þoght, my sorowe was away.' 9108

as to lie down on
the ground.

Guy saw a white
thing like an
ermine creep out
of Tyrry's mouth,

[leaf 219 b, col. 2]

and disappear in
a neighbouring
hill.

After a short time
it came back and
ran into Tyrry's
mouth.

Tyrry, on
awakening, said

he had dreamt
he went to a hill
and found there a
large treasure
with a dead
dragon and a
bright sword
upon it :

also that he had
lain in Guy's
arms without any
sorrow.

¹ *mene* altered from *men* in MS. Cf. 8400.

- Guy, interpreting
the dream, Tho seyde Gye : 'my dere frende,
Thorow þe grace of god so hende
Schalt þou wynne þorow Gyownd
All thy londe, castell and towne. 9112
We schall fare wele þys ylke day :
To spyre þe gate take we þe way.¹
- advised going to
the hill, But furste y rede, þat we abyde,
And we wyll wende to þe hylle besyde, 9116
There, þou þoght, þat þat tresure laye.
Yf that we hyt fynde maye,
Hyt may vs helpe on all manere,
And therof we haue mystere.' 9120
'I graunte,' quod Tyrrye, 'be þys day :
Goo we þedur wythowte ony more delaye.'
- There they really
found ¶ To the hylle þey came hastelye
And fonde the hole, certenlye, 9124
As Tyrrye had thoght beforehande :
- [leaf 220 a, col. 1]
the treasure
and sword. The tresure, þe swyrde þere þey fonde.
The swyrde was styffe ynoghe :
Owte of þe schepe Gye hyt droghe. 9128
'God of heuyn,' seyde Gye than,
'Was ther neuyr crysten man',
That had any soche bronde.
Y trowe, hyt came fro far londe.' 9132
The poynte was couyrde euery dele
Wyth bryght golde gayly wele.
- Guy took the
sword, Of þat swyrde was Gye fayne :
He put hyt into þe skabarde agayne, 9136
And sythen he seyde to Tyrrye :
- leaving the
treasure to Tyrry. 'That tresure, þat þou seyst there lye,
Take hyt vnto thy poste ;
For þe swyrde schall byde wyth me.' 9140
Tho seyde Tyrrye : 'at yowre wyll.
Of tresure haue y my fyll.
- But at that time Ther ys so moche dole in my thoght,

¹ Corrupt. See the note.

- That of no trespere yf y noght.
 To that cyte wyll we gone :
 Me pynkyth, we be to longe fro home.'
 ¶ 'I graunte,' in haste seyde syr Gye :
 Bothe they wente forthe in hye.
 Then wenyd Tyrrye knowen to haue be
 Of some man, þat hym had see.
 When they came to that cyte,
 A sory man was erle Tyrrye.
 They were harbarowde at þe townes ende
 And aftur mete dud they sende.
 ¶ Gye rose vp, full hardelye,
 And lefte hys swyrde wyth Tyrrye.
 He hyed faste to the towre
 To speke wyth the emperowre.
 The emperowre fro the churche come,
 Gye hym kepyd sone and anon ;
 And Gye hym grett hendelye,
 As a man, that cowde of curtesye.
 'God saue¹ þe,' he seyde, 'syr emperowre.
 Ye be a man of grete valowre,
 And y am pore and of far cuntre :
 I aske the gode for charyte.
 Of yowre helpe y haue mystere,
 As ye may se, in all manere.'
 The emperowre answeyrd : 'gladlye
 I wyll þe helpe, be seynt Marye.
 To the pales come wyth me :
 Thou schalt haue mete to plesse þe.'
 ¶ When þey were comen to þe halle,
 The emperowre and hys meyne all,
 The lordys to the mete yode,
 And Gye there before þem stode.
 'Pylgryme,' seyde the emperowre,
 'Telle me, y prey þe pur amowre.

9144 Tyrry did not
care for any
treasure.

9148

They reached the
town,

9152

in the end of
which they took
lodgings.

9156

The next morning
Guy left his
sword with Tyrry,
and went to the
Emperor's tower.

9160

The Emperor was
just coming from
church.

9164

[leaf 220 a, col. 2]
Guy asked
charity,

9168

and was by him
invited to his
palace.

9172

Here the Emperor

9176

¹ he blotted out before þe in MS.

- inquired after his travels, Thou semeste trauelde for to be :
Where were *pou* borne *and* in what cuntre ?' 9180
- and being answered, 'Syr,' he seyde, 'ye schall vndurstande,
That y haue be in mony a lande :
In Jerusalem and in Surrye
And in Costantyne *þe* nobull, sekerlye.' 9184
- was anxious to know what people used to say about him.
Guy replied that they blamed the Emperor for having banished Tyrry ¶ 'Pylgryme,' he seyde, 'be thy lewte,
What sey men *þere* of me ?'
'Syr,' he seyde, 'ye schall here :
Schame *and* skathe on all manere, 9188
When ye thorow wyckyd cownceyle
Of yowre steward, *þat* may¹ not avayle,
That ye² banysched Tyrrye, *þe* knyȝt,
And many odor wythowten ryght. 9192
Therfore of *þe* ys spokyn schame
And in euery lorde moche blame.
Ye do yowreselfe moche dyshonowre
To leue soche a losengeowre,' 9196
- whom a losenger had accused.
At these words Barrarde, starting up, ¶ Barrarde harde, that Gye sayde,
And he beganne to geue a brayde.
He fared, as a wode man),
And wolde haue smeten Gye than, 9200
But he hym helde, *þat* stode hym bye,
That he dud Gye no vylanye.
He seyde : 'thou lvest, traytowre.
Yf hyt were not for the dyshonowre 9204
Of my lorde, the emperowre,
Thou schuldyst haue a scharpe schowre.
I schulde schake *þy* berde so sore,
That thy tethe schulde falle me before 9208
Thou art a lyar and *þat* a stronge :
Thys lyfe haste *pou* vsyd longe.
If y the fynde wythowte *þe* towne,

¹ *may* in the same hand over *myȝt* blotted out.

² For *That ye* we ought perhaps to read *Haue*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 217, *Hath banesshyd Terry, the noble knyȝt*.

- I schall þe caste in stronge presowne. 9212
 Thys vii yere þou schalt not passe away :
 Thou schalt not wytt, when hyt ys day.
 Men schall so chastyse soche glotons
 For to myssaye gentyll barons.' 9216
 ¶ 'A, gode syr,' seyde Gye, 'what be ye ?'¹
 A nobull baron ye seme to bee. Guy rejoined
 I sawe yow neuer are, *syr*, verelye :
 Ye seme bothe bolde and hardye. 9220
 To do a pylgryme skathe vtterlye
 To yow hyt were grete vylenye.
 Hyt wolde yow turne to muche owtrage,
 When ye be of so grete lynage. 9224
 I seyde here no nodur thyng
 (Y take recorde of the kynge),
 But *wyth* synne and vnryght
 That ye had dyssheryted Tyrrye þe knyzt 9228
 And chased hym fro hys londe,
 Becawse ye bere hym wronge on honde,
 That yowre cosyn schulde be dedde
 Thorowe hym and hys redde. 9232
 Ofte harde y sey, wytterlye,
 That he was nothyng geltye.'
 ¶ Then spake þe dewke wyth yre : Barrarde wished
 'Be² god, that made water and fyre, 9236
 3yf þou were that same knyght,
 That durste for Tyrrye take þe fyght !'
 Tho Gye answeyrd wythowten more
 (He sawe þe dewke greuyd sore) : 9240
 'Lo, here ys my gloue all redye
 For to fyght for erle Tyrrye,
 That he neuer³ slewe þe dewke Oton), [leaf 220 b, col. 2]

¹ Corrupt. See the note.

² *Be* added in the margin by the same hand.

³ *neuer* omitted in MS. Cf. line 9332, and the Caius MS. p. 219 : *He slew neuer the duke Otoun*.

- That was þe felle *and* false gloton.¹ 9244
 Gye seyde to the emperowre :
 'Take here my wedde, for your honowre ;
 For *wyth* hym wyll y fyght
 To helpe Tyrrye in hys ryght.' 9248
- The Steward ¶ Tho vp start then that syre,
 That was full of farvente yre.
 'Pylgryme,' he seyde, 'þou art stowte
 And bolde þerto, *wythow*ten dowte, 9252
 Whyll þat þou wageyst þys batayle.
 I am seker, *wythow*ten fayle,
 The deuell hath bedyn the
 And hedur he hath broght þe 9256
 For to do þys same dede,
 And y schall quyte the thy mede.
 The grace of god be fro me reuyd,
 But y smyte of soone thy heuydde.'² 9260
- was sure he
 should strike off
 his adversary's
 head.
 Guy asked the
 Emperor ¶ 'Syr emperowre,' seyde Gyown),
 'Herkyne to my reson.
 Comen y am fro far cuntre :
 Here ys no man, þat knowyth me. 9264
- to provide him
 with armour. Armer haue y none redye
 Nor no syluyr none wyth to bye.
 Ye muste for þe ordur of knyght
 Helpe the pore in hys ryght 9268
 And in hys mystere do hym socowre :
 Hyt ys mekyll for yowre honowre.'
 ¶ To the emperowre be þey gane :
 Bothe þer weddys hath he tane, 9272
 And syþen he comawndyd þem full ryzt,³
 3erly that þey schulde be dyght.
 He wyll hymselfe the batell see
 And bad, 3erlye þat hyt schulde bee. 9276

¹ Probably corrupt. See the note.² MS. *hedde*.³ *z* in *ryzt* all but illegible in MS.

¶ The dewke hym hyed þo full swyþe :
He þoȝt in þe morne to make some vnblyþe.

The emperowre clepyd hys doghtur dere
And bad hur on all manere,
That sche schulde kepe þe pylgryme wele
And arme hym boþe in yron and stele.¹

9280 The Emperor
committed Guy
to the care of his
daughter.

To a chaumbur sche hym ladde

[leaf 221 a, col. 1]

And dud, as hur fadur hur badde.

9284

He preyed hur for godys loue of myght
To arme hym well at all ryght.

¶ All men, that dud hym see,
Had wondur and grete pyte,
That he durste agenste Barrarde fyght.
They preyed to god full of myght,
That he schulde geue þe pylgryme grace
To ouercome Barrarde in the place.

9288 All men admired
Guy's courage,

¶ Ȝerly rose the emperowre
And masse he herde wyth honowre.

9292 and wished him
good luck.
The next
morning

To hys pales he ys gone

And hys barons euerychone,

9296

And redy was there Barrarde

Also ferse, as any lybarde,

Barrarde was
ready for the
fight.

Armed on a gode stede.

To the courte þey dud hym lede.

9300

The maydyn then forgate noght :

To arme þe pylgryme was hur thoght.

Sche cawsyd hym to haue a stede,

Guy was armed
by the Princess,

That seker was at euery nede.

9304

Hys swyrde þen forgate he noght :

Queyntlye hyt was wroght.

and went secretly
for his sword.

He fett hyt fro Tyrrye,

That no man wyste, sekerlye.

9308

Therof had he mystere,

As ye may afturwarde here.

¹ After this line follows the catchword *To a chaumbur sche* in another hand.

- ¶ When sche had armed hym wele, *þat* maye,
 On all manere, that he cowde saye, 9312
 Sche broght hym before *þe* emperowre.
 He was of grete bewte and valowre
 All, that lokyd on syr Gye,
 Of hym they had farlye. 9316
 He was a semely knyght,
 When he was armed ryght.
 All swere be seynt Rychere,
 Hyt was neuyr the palmere, 9320
 That toke *þe* batell *wyth* Barrarde to fyght;
 For he semed a doghty knyght.
 ¶ ‘Lordyngys,’ seyde the emperowre,
 ‘All, that be at thys honowre, 9324
 Thes two knyghtys, *þat* stonden here,
 Be men of grete powere.
 A batell they haue waged here,
 Ye wote all, on what manere. 9328
 Thys pylgryme, *þat* stondyth me bye,
 Wyll defende erle Tyrrye
 Of felonye and treson),
 That he neuer slewe *þe* dewke Oton), 9332
 Agenste the dewke Barrarde,
 That ys a champyon felle *and* harde
 For hys cosyns dedde,
 That he was slayne þorow hys redde. 9336
 We schall see at thys batayle,
 Who hath *þe* wronge, *wythowten* fayle.’
 The lordys seyde: ‘we assente,
 We graunte to hyt *wyth* gode entente.’ 9340
 ¶ They wente *þedur*, *þe* batell shulde bee,
 On an hylle besyde the cyte.
 The boke was broght *þem* before
 And, when *þey* had *þer* othes swore, 9344
 To the hylle dud they gone
 And smeten) togedur *and* that anon).]
- When he was brought into the presence of the Emperor,
- he looked so doughty
- that all wondered whether he was [leaf 221 a, col. 2] the pilgrim of yesterday.
- The Emperor recapitulated the occasion of this fight.
- It was to take place on a hill near the city.

There beganne a stronge batayle :

The battle was
very obstinate.

9348

Eyther other faste dud assayle.

They smote togedur on helmes bryght,

And there beganne a stronge fyght.

They brake bothe sterop and paytrelle

And all the harnes of ther sadelle.

9352

Ther styffe hawberkys wolde not ryue.

Of ther stedys þey dud downe dryue.

They stode on fote bothe,

But soone þey began to waxe wrothe.

9356

On þer stedys they lepe stowte :

Nayther had of odur dowte.

Then þey drewe þer swyrdys stronge

[leaf 221 b, col. 1]

And faght togedur swythe longe.

9360

The cantels of ther scheldes

Flewe into the felde.

¶ Gye was armed well thore,

But Barrarde had wel more :

9364

Barrarde had
two helmets

He had two helmes styfe *and* bryght

And two hawberkys for drede of fyght

and two coats of
mail.

Rychelye sett wyth precyus stones

All abowte for the nones.

9368

They seyde abowte euery man,

That Gye was no 3erthely man :

All said Guy was
no earthly man,

He was no man 3erthelye,

He was an aungell, sekerlye.

9372

but an angel.

Whedur of them was hardear,

Ther wyste no man, þat was thare.

¶ All, þat were in þat cyte, wythowten fayle,

Came to see that batayle :

9376

All inhabitants of
the city were
spectators,

Men, women and chylder also

And freres *and* nonnes thedur dud goo.

Lesse and more in that cyte

Came that batell for to see,

9380

But all oonlye syr Tyrrye

In a church was preuelye

except Tyrry,
who was in a
church praying
to God.

A priest found
him there, and
observed he must
be a holy man,
that he did not go
to see the combat
of the pilgrim for
Tyrry.

[leaf 221 b, col. 2]
Tyrry then,

though afraid, lest
he should be
known, went to
the place of the
fight.

Seeing the
Steward bleeding,
he was very glad.

Tyrry wondered
if the pilgrim was
the same that he
had met with the
day before.

He was reminded
of Guy.

To god preying, *þat* he wolde here
And hym to helpe in hys mystere. 9384

¶ In came a preste syngynge
And fonde Tyrrye there lyyng.
'Pylgryme,' seyde the preste than,
'I trowe, thou art a holy man. 9388

Wherefore wylt *þou* not 3onder goo
To see *þe* fyght of knyghtys twoo?
A pylgryme ys the oon knyght
And for erle Tyrrye doyth he fyght.' 9392

'Who ys *þe* pylgryme?' *quod* erle Tyrrye.
'I wot not,' *quod* he, 'sekerlye.
He ys doghty in the felde:
Brokyn he hath *þe* dewkys schelde.' 9396

¶ Tho vp rose Tyrrye anon
And to the batell can he gone.
He had grete drede of knowynge:
That made hym to loke drowpyng. 9400

Soone he knewe Barrarde:
He bledde full sore *and* full harde.
He had yoye *wythowten* care,
When he sawe Barrarde euyll fare: 9404

Euyr the pylgryme hym sayled faste.
Then *quod* Tyrrye at the laste:
'Thys ys not the palmere,
That be *þe* way was my fere. 9408

Hyt ys a bolde man *and* a wyght:
He semeth to be a nobull knyght.
He semed leene *and* febull in syght,
Hongre and olde and euyll dyght: 9412

Now ys he whyte *and* noþyng wanne.
I wene, he be no 3erthely man).

When y hym see, y thynke on Gye:
He ys lyke hym, wytterlye. 9416
Yf Gye were not dedde, y wolde say,
That hyt were he, be thys day.'

- Then for Gye he wepyd sore.
 To church he turned *wythowten* more. 9420 Weeping for Guy,
 Ofte he preyed god that day he returned to his
 To helpe hym, as he well may. prayers.
 ¶ The batell lasted swythe longe The combat lasted
 Fro morowe vnto euynsonge. 9424 till night.
 They wolde not let of ther fyght,
 Tyll hyt came to the nyght.
 Whan they lackyd lyght¹ of day,
 They wyste not, what þey myȝt say. 9428
 Messengerys were sente :
 To the emperowre they wente.
 They tolde hym, þat hyt was nyght,
 They myght see no more to fyght. 9432
 ¶ The emperowre clepyd in þat stowre
 Fowre barons of grete honowre.
 ‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘take Barrarde nowe
 And kepe hym, as ye mowe 9436 [leaf 222 a, col. 1]
 As in yow y affye,
 ȝylde hym to me ȝerly,
 And y schall kepe my pylgryme wele,
 Tyll hyt be day, so haue y hele. 9440 while he took
 Then schall they togedur goo : himself care of
 Men schall see of them twoo, the pilgrim.
 Whether schall haue the vycторыe
 Thorow helpe of seynt Marye.’ 9444
 ¶ They toke Barrarde, þe nobull knyght,
 And kept hym, as they myght,
 And the emperowre toke *syr* Gye
 And kepyd hym tendurlye. 9448
 The dewke Barrarde, þe fals gloton), But Barrarde
 Bethoght hym of a treson).
 Fowre cosyns, that he hadde,
 Preuely he them badde, 9452 sent four cousins
 of his

¹ MS. *syght*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 225 :

For they lakkyd the lyght of the daye.

to slay the pilgrim.	<p>That they schulde to þe courte goo The pylgryme þere for to sloo. They were armed <i>and</i> that anon And came to þe courte euerychon.</p>	9456
They found him,	<p>Forthe they yede full preuelye, Tyll þey came þere, as was <i>syr</i> Gye. Gye lay in a lofte bedde</p>	
as well as his keepers, fast asleep.	<p>Wyth golde cloþys well yspredde. Hys kepears were faste slepeande, And euery man on þe bedde leyd hande.</p>	9460
They took Guy, without awaking him, on his bed,	<p>The bedde they toke vp thare And to the see they hyt bare. But euyr slepyd <i>syr</i> Gye : God of hym haue merceye !</p>	9464
and threw him into the sea.	<p>They caste the bedde into þe see : But god helpe, drowned had he bee. Hyt was caste wyth a wawe Vp a whyle and downe a thrawe.</p>	9468
Guy, when he awoke,	<p>¶ Gye wakyd at the laste And hys hedde vp he caste.</p>	9472
[leaf 222 a, col. 2] saw only stars	<p>He sawe þe sterres bryght schynande : On no syde sawe he no lande,</p>	
and water.	<p>But brode watur all abowte. Therefore he had grete dowte.</p>	9476
He prayed to God fervently.	<p>‘ God,’ he seyde, ‘ all weldande, That stabulde boþe watur <i>and</i> lande, Who hath done to me þys dede ? Lorde, y faght for no mede, For golde nor syluyr, þou doyst knowe, But for my trewe felowe To delyuyr hym of paryle, That hath be in exsyle.</p>	9480
	<p>Some tyme he was a doghty knyght And now he ys a wrechyd wyght. Ageyne Barrarde y toke the fyght For to haue getyn Tyrrye hys ryght.</p>	9484
		9488

- Yf y had that traytowr slayne,
 Tyrrye¹ schulde haue hys lande agayne.
 I am but dedde, well y wote :
 Thorow me he getyth² no bote. 9492
 And all ys³ thorowe Barrart :
 God let hym neuer of blysse haue part.’
 ¶ Wyth that came a fyscher A fisherman came
 In a bote Gye full nere. 9496 near him.
 What he was, he bad hym say,
 And whethyr he leuyd on goddys lay.
 Vp he heuyd hys hedde, Gye,
 And cryed the fyscher mercye. 9500
 ‘My frende,’ he seyde, ‘haue no drede :
 I leue in god, so he me spede.
 Knowest þou oght of a fyght
 Betwene a pylgryme *and* a knyght?’ 9504
 ‘Ȝysse,’ quod the fyscher, ‘y sawe hyt,
 The batell, to the darke nyght.
 The emperowre parted them late
 And made to kepe þem, wele y wate.’ 9508
 ‘I am,’ quod Gye, ‘the pylgryme,
 That faght þen agenste hym).
 We were partyd ȝystur nyght :
 We no lenger myght see to fyght. 9512
 Into a chaumbur was y broght :
 Of no treson y ne thoght.
 Ynto a bedde was y done :
 I was wery and slepyd soone. 9516
 Now am y here, but y not, howe.
 My dere frende, helpe me now.
 For thy trewthe and thy lewte
 Haue thou some mercy of me.’ 9520
 ¶ The fyscher for hym was sorye The fisherman

¹ The first *y* in *Tyrrye* altered from *h* in MS.² *y* in *getyth* altered from *h* in MS.³ Part of *h* blotted out before *ys*.

- took him home in his boat. And toke hym into hys bote hym bye
And ledde hym home þat ylke nyght
And kepte hym wele *wyth* all hys myght. 9524
- The next morning the Emperor, after hearing Mass, ¶ The emperowre rose well 3erlye
And masse he harde in grete hye.
Sythen he came into hys halle
And *wyth* hym hys barons all. 9528
- sent for the two combatants. He bad brynge to hym Barrardyne
And afturwarde hys pylgryme.
Fowre barons forthe dud wende
And broght þe dewke, as men hende. 9532
- Barrarde was brought; To the emperowre they dud say,
but the pilgrim could not be found. That the pylgryme was away :
Bothe was away he and hys bedde.
The knyghtys, þat stale hym, were fledde.¹ 9536
- The Emperor, being very angry, Ther wyste no man, where he was done.
The emperowre was wrothe sone
And sware be god and seynt Marye,
That they schulde be hangyd hye, 9540
- That had betrayed hys pylgryme
And hys wardens, be seynt Martyne.
Tho he spake *wyth* grete yre
To the dewke, that stowte syre. 9544
- and suspecting Barrarde, ordered him upon pain of death to bring forth 'Dewke,' he seyde, '*wythowte* stryfe,
Brynge hym forthe ypon þy lyfe,
That þou haste takyn in þy kepeyng,
Or y schall juge the for to hynge. 9548
- the pilgrim dead or alive. [leaf 222 b, col. 2] Dede or quyck brynge hym to me :
Thou haste hym slayne, wele y see.'
- Barrarde ¶ Barrarde starte vp, *wythowten* dowte,
As man, þat was boþe styffe *and* stowte. 9552
- 'Syr,' he seyde, 'now fynde y wele,
That men me tolde euery dele.
I haue serued yow, as y knowe,

¹ Corrupt. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 230 :
And hys wardeyns were all fled.

- And kept yowre lande to yowre prowē : 9556
 Wolde ye now thus juge me ?
 Ye schall not so, so mote y the.
 Yf here be any man so hardye,
 That dar hyt proue *and* byde þerby, 9560
 I schall hym *wyth* my swyrde so smyte,
 That hys hedde schall of tyte.
 And ye, that haue þus juged me,
 Y schall yow teche, so mote y the : 9564
 Wynde y schall to Lumbardye
 And gedur my power, hardelye,
 And thorow þy lande come ageyne,
 And all, *þat* y fynde, schall be slayne. 9568
 I schall dystroye the euery dele
 And all thy londe, so haue y hele.
 ¶ The emperowre harde þys wele
 And knewe hys maners euery dele. 9572
 He beganne to waxe wrothe
 And often sware then hys othe,
 Yf he went, he schulde be slane,¹
 And he myght hym fynde or tane. 9576
 ¶ Then came forthe the fyschere
 And sayde to the emperere :
 ‘Syr, y prey yow pur charyte,
 Here me, yf yowre wylle bee. 9580
 Of that pylgryme y can sey,
 Where he ys, be thys day.’
 ‘My frende,’ seyde the emperowre,
 ‘Saye me, so god geue þe honowre. 9584
 Thou schalt haue, be he not dedde,
 An hundurd besawntes of golde redde.’
 ¶ Tho seyde þe fyscher : ‘herkyn me trewlye ;
 For, *syr*, y wyll not to yow lye. 9588
 To nyght late was y gone
 On þe see to fysche allone.

threatened the
Emperor that he
would go to
Lombardy for a
host,

with which to
punish the wrong
done him.

But the Emperor

swore it would be
his death if he
went.

At that moment
the fisherman
came and said
that he had found
the pilgrim.

[leaf 223 a, col. 1]

¹ MS. *slayne*.

	I fonde a lofte bedde fletynge And therin a knyght lygyngē.	9592
	Y askyd hym, what he was, And he me tolde in that case, That he was that pylgryme, That faght wyth dewke Barrardyne.	9596
	Y leyde hym in my bote wythynne And ladde hym home to myn ynne And haue kepyd hym þys nyght. Sende aftur hym anon ryght.'	9600
	'My frende,' seyde the emperowre, 'Thou schalt haue grete honowre.'	
The Emperor sent for him,	¶ Aftur þe pylgryme sone he sente, And he came at hys comawndement.	9604
	Hastelye, wythowten fayle, They were do to batayle.	
and the combat recommenced,	¶ Now togedur can they goo : They dalte strokys many tho And wyth þer swyrdys þere of stele They smetyn togedur wele. Hyt was wonder for to see : A stronger fyght myght none bee.	9608 9612
	They faght tyll vnderne of þe day : 'Thys ys grete wonder,' they can say.	
Barrarde	¶ The dewke was full of felonye And smote Gye wyth envye And repulde hys face and hys chynne And of hys cheke all the skynne. Downe ¹ be þe schoulder þe stroke dud glyde : Hyt brake many a mayle vnryde.	9616 9620
	Of þe schelde brake a quaterē, Os he wolde ² take hys swyrde hym nere.	
cut Guy down on his hands and knees,	Gye felle also skete Bothe on hondys and on fete.	9624

¹ e in *Downe* illegible in consequence of an ink-blot.² MS. *schulde*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 233 :*As he wold draw hys swerd nere,*

- ¶ Gye starte vp, as sparke of fyre,
 And smote Barrarde *wyth* grete yre.
 He smote hym on þe helme so there,
 That away flewe a quartere 9628 [leaf 223 a, col. 2]
 And of hys odor helme¹ *wyth*hall,
 And made hym to þe grownde falle.
 Wyth hys swyrde he smote also
 Bothe hys hawberkys quyte in two, 9632
 Hys arme *and* hys schoulder bothe
 Fro the body, wythowten othe :
 Thorow hys bowels also hyt yode,
 Two fote into þe grounde hyt glode. 9636
 Downe he felle to the grownde
 And dyed in a lytull stownde.
 All the men, that stode besyde,
 Had wonder of that stroke vnryde 9640
 And seyde, no man in 3erthe lyueande
 Myght smyte soche a stroke *wyth* hande.
 ¶ On the 3orthe Gye set hym downe
 And seyde : ' Barrarde, false felowne,
 Nowe art thou here forlorne. 9644
 A lack, that euer þou was borne !
 A boldear knyght was neuer lyueande
 Nor a doghtyar of hys hande : 9648
 Yf thou a false traytowr ne were,
 In all þys worlde had not be þy pere.'
 All, that euer abowte hym stode,
 Sayde, he was of sarsyns² blode. 9652
 Gye ys to the emperowre gone
 And to þe barons euerychone
 And askyd, yf Tyrrye my3t be quyte
 And³ of all chalengeys tyte, 9656

But then Guy,
 starting up with
 great wrath,

struck off an arm
 and shoulder of
 the Steward,
 and wounded his
 stomach besides,

so that he died
 in a short time.

Guy thought it
 was a pity

that so bold a
 knight

had been a
 traitor.

MS. *schelde*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 233 :

As on that other helme wythall.

² *sarsyns*, at least, corrupt. See the note.

³ As the context is, *And* cannot be right. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 234, *Of all perell and all dyspyte*.

And all cryed *wyth* oon voyce :

'Ye, be the holy croys,¹

All schall be forgeuyn here

Wyth the wyлле of owre emperere.'²

9660

The Emperor

The emperowre answeryd also tyte :

'I graunte well, that he be quyte.

All forgeue y here Tyrrye

My euyl wyлле *and* my malycolye.

9664

was ready to
reinstate Tyrry.
[leaf 223 b, col. 1]

Y schall delyuyr hym all hys lande

And all þe honowre into hys hande.

And y wyste, where he wore,

Y schulde delyuyr hym lesse *and* more.'

9668

Gye answeryd : 'yf y may,

Ye schall hym see thys ylke day.'

'My frende,' he seyde, 'hastelye

Go seke me erle Tyrrye.'

9672

¶ He wente all the cyte abowte

And soght Tyrrye *wythynne and* owte.

At the laste he dud hym fynde

In a churche faste prayinge.

9676

'Ryse vp,' seyde Gye, 'pur charyte,

The emperowre hath sende aftur þe.'

Guy, having
found Tyrry in
a church,
told him to follow
him to the
Emperor.
Tyrry thought he
was betrayed by
the pilgrim.

¶ Vp he helde hys hedde, Tyrrye,

And seyde : 'lorde Iesu Cryste, þy mercy !

9680

In whome may any man trowe

For to telle hys cowncell nowe ?

Thou semed trewe for to bee

And now þou haste bewryed me :

9684

To the emperowre þou haste tolde

And to Barrarde, that ys so bolde.

Now muste y dye, or y ete mete :

Thou haste takyn gyftes grete. .

9688

Thou haste me betrayed *and* do me schame.

Allas, þat euer thou *knewe* my name.

I wende, þou haddyst be full trewe :

¹ MS. *crois*.

² MS. *Empere*.

- Wele away, that y the knewe ! 9692
 Y schall wende now wyth the :
 Yf y dye, thou arte gylte.
 Me thynkyth lothe to wende *wyth þe*.
 God of me haue pyte.' 9696
 ¶ Tho seyde Gye : 'Tyrrye, make gode chere.
 Thou schalt now newe tythyngys here :
 The dewke Barrarde, he ys dedde
 (Of hys counsell y can no redde) 9700
 Thorow a pylgryme, hardelye,
 That the defendyd of felonye.'
 ¶ When þey before þe emperowre came,
 3yt had Tyrrye drede of blame. 9704
 To the emperowre spake Gye :
 'Lo, here ys erle Tyrrye.'
 Tho seyde Tyrrye : 'thus am y :
 Longe haue y be thus drerye. 9708
 Y haue be in sorowe stronge :
 Thys odur halfe yere me þoȝt to longe.
 Y had neuyr reste a day,
 But in wo trauelde aye 9712
 To seke Gye, yf he myȝt be fownde,
 Far in many an vncowthe londe.
 In Ynglonde there harde y say,
 There he was borne *and* norysched ay, 9716
 He was wente in exsyle :
 Therfore the londe was in paryle.
 And now here y saye, the pylgryme
 (Haue he goddys beneson) *and* myn), 9720
 That hath þe dewke Barrard schent :
 Y weene, god hym hedur sente.'
 And tho on kneys felle Tyrrye
 And seyde : 'emperowre, mercye !' 9724
 ¶ Dewkys, erlys grete plente,
 That were curtes men *and* free,
 Downe þey felle *and* þat anon :

But he was
informed

that Barrarde
was dead.

[leaf 223 b, col. 2]
Before the
Emperor

Tyrry complained
of the hardships
that he had
undergone.

- For Tyrrye they preyed euerychon). 9728
 The teerys fro þe emp^{er}owre yede þo.
 'Tyrrye, gentyll baron,' seyde he thoo,
 'Thou haste had grete trauayle.
 Gentyll knyght, *wythowte* fayle, 9732
 Of thy gode y haue plente ;
 To day wyll y cese the
 In all þy lande, castell *and* towre.
 3yt schalt þou haue more honowre : 9736
 Y make þe steward of my londe.
 Y hyt the geue vnto thy honde.'
 All they seyde at oon crye :
 'Syr emperowre, gramercye !' 9740
 [leaf 224 a, col. 1] The emperowre then kyste Tyrrye¹
 And forgaue hym hys malycolye.
 Dewkes and erles euerychone
 Kyste Tyrrye and that anone. 9744
 ¶ The emperowre seyde to Tyrrye :
 'Say me now, for þe loue of me,
 What man ys the pylgryme ?
 Ys he thy brodur or of thy kynne, 9748
 That faght *wyth* Barrarde so hardelye
 To defende the of felonye ?
 I went, ther had be no knyght
 That *wyth* Barrarde durste take þe fyght. 9752
 Tyrry answered 'Syr,' seyde Tyrrye, 'as y trowe,
 And be the feyth, y haue to yow,
 Thys pylgryme sawe y neuer are,
 But be þe way, as y dud fare, 9756
 Nor neuer wyste or now ryght,
 That for me he had tane þe fyght,
 And now y wote wyth glad mode :
 God, that dyed on the rode, 9760
 3elde hym hys mede, *wythowte* fayle.
 He hath me delyuyrde of trauayle.'

¹ After this line 9746 is written, but struck out again.

- ¶ The emperowre full curteslye
 Into a chaumbur ladde Tyrrye 9764
 And cloped hym in a ryche mantell
 Lynyddde wyth gode sendell
 And gaue hym stedys two or thre,
 The beste in all that cuntre. 9768
 He went to Gormoyse hastelye
 And wyth hym he ladde godde *syr* Gye.
 ¶ To that cyte came Tyrrye :
 He was resseyuyd worschypfully. 9772
 The pylgryme *wyth* hym he broght :
 That hyt was Gye, wyste he noght.
 Hys cowntes soght he thorow þe londe
 And at the laste he hur fonde, 9776
 There sche was hydde for grete dowte
 Of Barrard, þe steward, þat was so stowte.
 ¶ Now ys Tyrrye bolde and wyght
 And in all þat londe moost of myght. 9780
 He wolde not forgete in no manere
 The tresure in the hye rochere,
 That þey fonde betwene them twoo
 Be the way, as þey dud goo. 9784
 Vnto Gormoyse he dud hyt brynge :
 There was mony a ryche thyng.
 He gaue hyt vnto *syr* Gye,
 But he wolde none, verelye. 9788
 Of golde nor syluer roght he noght :
 To serue god was all hys thoght.
 Tho seyde Gye : 'geue some to pore menys hande
 And *wyth* the remlawnt store thy lande.' 9792
 ¶ On a day Gye hym bethoght :
 Lenger wolde he dwelle noght.
 He toke hys leue at erle Tyrrye
 And spake to hym full drerelye : 9796
 'Syr, *wyth* thy leue now wyll y fare.
 Wyth þe may y dwelle no mare.

Tyrry, who had
 been treated
 very well by the
 Emperor,

repaired to
 Gormoyse,
 leading the
 pilgrim with him.

He found his
 Countess where
 she had hidden
 herself for fear
 of Barrarde.

[leaf 224 b, col. 1]

Remembering the
 treasure in the
 hill,

Tyrry sent for it.

He offered it to
 the pilgrim,
 but in vain.

One day the
 pilgrim

took his leave
 of Tyrry,

- asking him to go
with him a short
distance Y bydde the, yf thy wylle bee,
That on the way thou lede me. 9800
Soche thyngge may þou here say,
That þou schalt haue wonder to day.
- quite by himself. Looke, þat no man come wyth the.'
'Nay,' seyde Tyrrye, 'so mote y the.' 9804
Tyrrye lepe on a mewle awmblande
And thorow the cyte wente prekande :
Ther myght no man wyth hym goo;
But hyt were themselfe twoo. 9808
¶ When þey were paste but a myle,
They set them downe þere a whyle.
- Guy then dis-
covered himself. Tho seyde Gye to Tyrrye: 'herkyn me now.
Ye knowe not me, as y trowe. 9812
Yf ye vndurstode wele,
Ye oght to knowe me some dele.
May ye not Gye knowe,
That was some tyme yowre felowe, 9816
That slewe for yow þe dewke Oton
- [leaf 224 b, col. 2] And delyuyrd yow of pryson?
Furste y fonde yow woundyd sare
Yn the foreste, as y can fare, 9820
And slewe for þe theuys fyftene
And wanne þy lemman bryght *and* schene
And the fro fowre knyghtys wanne
And slewe them euerychane 9824
And on¹ my hors led þe a stownde
And helyd the of thy wounde
And sythen soyorned *wyth* þy fader dere
And halpe the on all manere 9828
And now slewe Barrarde wyth my honde,
That chasyd the owt of thy londe.
Thys ys Gye, that thou seyst here :
Thou oghtyste to knowe me on all manere.' 9832

¹ MS. *ouer*. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 241, *And on my horse led the a stounde*.

¶ When Tyrrye sye Gye, hys harte wolde breke :

Not a worde myght he speke.

To grownde soone felle he than :

More sorowe, þen he had, had neuer no man). 9836

‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘my dere felowe,

Wherefore myght y the not knowe ?

Allas, that euyr y bode thys day !

Myn eyen were blynde, so may y say. 9840

Y myght haue sene *and* knowen full ryght,

That ye were Gye, þat nobull knyght,

Be yowre strenkyth *and* be yowre myght

And be yowre strokys, that were so wyght. 9844

Who schulde haue be on lyue so stronge,

That durste agenste Barrard stonde so longe,

But yf hyt were yow, *syr* Gye ?

Therfore of me haue mercye. 9848

Y aske yow mercye, Gye, nowe,

That y dud mysknowe yow.’

¶ Downe he felle to Gyes fete

And full sore dud he grete.

9852 His poor
appearance
moved him with
compassion.

Hys legges were bare euery dele,

That were some tyme cloped¹ well.

Therfore he wepyd *and* wrange hys hande :

In thys worlde was none lyueande,

9856

That myght them boþe haue see,

[leaf 224 b, col. 2]

But þey wolde haue had pyte.

¶ Gye had grete moornyng :

He myght not a worde forþe brynge.

9860

Guy also was
mournful.

Gye toke vp erle Tyrrye

And kyste hym full tendurlye.

But þey had so grete moornyng,

They felle bothe in swownyng.

9864

Then seyde Gye : ‘my felowe dere,

He took his leave,

Now wyll y wende : þou schalt byde here.

¹ MS. *cloþe*. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 242, *That som tyme were clothed well*.

	I þe betече god almyght :	
	He þe kepe bothe day <i>and</i> nyght.	9868
recommending his son to Tyrry.	Y haue a chylde be my wyfe :	
	He wyll be a man, yf he haue lyfe.	
	Yf he haue to the mystere,	
	Helpe hym <i>wyth</i> thy powere.'	9872
Tyrry wanted to keep him back,	¶ 'My brodur,' seyde Tyrrye than,	
	'For hym, that thys worlde wan,	
	Dwelle here styлле <i>wyth</i> me	
	And my trowthe y plyght þe,	9876
	All, þat in þe worlde myn ys,	
	Halfe schall be thyne, so haue y blys,	
	Whyll that y leue maye.	
	Y prey þe, sey not þerto nay.	9880
	And yf þou wylt not so do,	
or to accompany him,	Whome <i>wyth</i> þe then wyll y goo ;	
	For leuyr me ys <i>wyth</i> þe to be,	
	Than here in woo for to dree ;	9884
	For y had leuyr to wende <i>wyth</i> þe,	
	Then all þe gode in crystyante.'	
	¶ Tho seyde Gye : 'so schalt þou noȝt.	
but in vain.	In ydull þou ocapyest þy thoȝt.	9888
	Ageyne þou schalt go <i>wyth</i> ryght	
	And <i>serue</i> þy lorde <i>wyth</i> þy myght.	
	Be not prowde, y the rede,	
	And <i>serue</i> þy lorde wele at hys nede.	9892
	I wyll go : þou schalt byde here.	
	Y the betake to goddys powere.'	
	¶ At þat partynge grete sorow þey made.	
[leaf 225 a, col. 1]	Togedur þey kyste : þey were not glade.	9896
They parted with tears, and never saw each other again.	All wepynge they went in twoo	
Tyrry went home;	And sye neyþer odyr neuer aftur moo.	
	The erle ageyne wente soone anon :	
	Into hys chaumbur he wente whome.	9900
for three days he touched no food.	Thre dayes myȝt he nodur ete nor drynke :	
	Hyt wolde not in hys body synke.	

- When the cowntas sye thoo,
 That hyt was Gye, that was agoo,
 Sche bemoonyd hym swyþe stronge
 And hur lorde sche blamed amonge
 And seyde : ' yf ye *wyth* loue ne holde hym myȝt,
 Ye schulde *wyth* strenkyþ haue do yowre myȝt.' 9908
- ¶ Now Gye goyth forthe full sorye
 And ofte he thynkyþ of Tyrrye.
 So longe he went in hys jurnayse
 Thorowe many vncowthe cuntrayse, 9912
 Tyll he came to whyte sande
 And ryued into Ynglande.
 There he askyd of many a oon),
 Where he myght fynde kynge Adelston),
 And þey seyde to hym : ' at Wynchestur,
 But twenty myle fro Chychestur.
 Grete ooste he begynneth þedur to bede
 (For he had neuyr more nede) 9920
 Of dewkes, erles and barowns
 And ryche lordys of many townes,
 All, that may *wyth* harnes spede :
 Ther was neuēr ȝyt more nede. 9924
 Byschoppes, archedekyns *and* abbottys,
 Wyse men of the churchē *and* no sottys,¹
 At Wynchestur be euerychone,
 The moost parte of the relygyown). 9928
 They haue sende thorow Ynglande
 To yonge and olde, y vnderstande,
 That þey schulde faste dayes thre
 And nyght *and* day in preyers bee, 9932
 That god them sende soche a man),
 That wyll and may, dar and can)
 Thorow helpe of god almyght
 For Ynglondes sake in batell fyght 9936
Wyth the gyawnt Collebrande

His wife blamed
 him for not
 having kept Guy
 back.

Guy arrived in
 England.

He heard that
 King Athelstan
 was surrounded

by his Lords
 temporal

and spiritual.

Three days were
 appointed for
 general fasting
 and praying that
 God might send
 a champion
 [leaf 255 a, col. 2]

against the giant
 Collebrande,

¹ MS. *suttēs*.

	And hym to stroye <i>wyth</i> hys hande.	
whom the King of Denmark had brought,	¶ For the kyng of Denmarke, A felle man and eke a starke, He ys comen into thys lande And grete warre hap broȝt vs on hande. The londe he stroyeth <i>and</i> cuntrayse And brennyth townes and abbayes. A champyon he hap broght <i>wyth</i> hym, Of Awfryke a felle man <i>and</i> a grymme : More he ys dowted in fyghtes, Then an hundurd armed knyghtes. Men sey, he hyght Collebrande : A strongar man ys none lyueande.	9940
giving Athelstan the choice	The kyng of Denmarke to owre kyng hap sente, Wherethorow ¹ he holdyþ hym nere schente,	9952
either to become a Danish liegeman	That he ȝylde vp Ynglande Hastelye vnto hys hande And hys man become <i>and</i> trewþe plyght And trewage hym ȝelde euery yere be ryght And, but yf that he graunt wylle To parforme all hys wylle,	9956
or to produce a knight	Or ellys that he wyll fynde a knyght, That may <i>and</i> dar mayntene hys ryght Agenste the kyng of Denmarke, A sterne man and a starke,	9960
that could vanquish Collebrande.	And to fyght <i>wyth</i> Collebrande, Yf <i>þat</i> he dar hyt take on hande, And therto sett a certen day Or ellys lose ² hys ryght for ay ; And to haue an answe in þys case He hath grauntyd a serten space.	9964
Athelstan could not find any one.	¶ But, we vndurstande, kyng Adelston) Amonge hys knyghtys may fynde none, That the batell dar vndurtake	9968

¹ *thorow* omitted in MS.² *ro* blotted out before *lose* in MS.

- For no preyar, that he can make. 9972 [leaf 225 b, col. 1]
- The gyawnt ys so stronge of myght,
That þer dar none *wyth* hym fyght ;
Wherefore we deme, *wythowten* fayle,
Thys londe wyll be loste *wythowte* batayle.' 9976
- ¶ 'Where ys,' quod Gye, 'gode Harrawte,
That in nede made neuer defawte ?'
They answeyrd hym *and* that anon :
'He ys owte of thys londe gone 9980 and learnt that
To seke Reynbowrne, Gyes sone, he was gone in
That marchandys haue away nome.' quest of
Gye wepyd then for grete pyte Reynbrown.
And sykyd sore, sekerlye, 9984
- And seyde : 'what doyp þe erles doghtur, þe cowntas ?' Upon further
They answeyrd : 'neuer a bettur woman was. inquiry
Woman borne neuyr none dud
So moche godenes in a stedde. 9988 he was informed
Pore men sche fedyþ *and* makyþ abbeyse about the
And makyth brygges *and* cawsayse virtuous life of
And preyeth to god to lende hur þat day Felice.
To see hur lorde Gye verraye, 9992
Quyck or dedde may þey hym fynde :
He ys euyr in hur mynde.'
- ¶ Toward Wynchestur wente *syr* Gye : Guy set off for
No man knewe hym, sekerlye. 9996 Winchester,
Hyt was at þe byrþe of seynt Iohan :
At Wynchestur was kynge Adelston
And also all hys baronye, where Athelstan
But none, þat he myght on affye. 10000 was with his
He calde then soone hys cowncell vnto : Lords.
'What ys beste,' he seyde, 'to doo ?
Lordys, y prey yow, vndurstonde,
And also erles *and* barons of my londe : 10004
Agenste the Danes we muste vs were,
That they may not vs dere.
Cowncell of yow y wolde craue,

The King asked them what was to be done against the Giant.	Yf hyt so were, y myght hyt haue, What were beste for to done Agenste the thefe <i>and</i> fendys sone, That men calle Collebrande,	10008
[leaf 225 b, col. 2.]	That þynkyth to stroye all my lande? So hath he promysed hys lorde, þe kyng : He þynkyþ hyt sewre on all þyng ; Whereþorowe moche ys þe kyngys pryde, Wherefore we may þe warse abyde.	10012 10016
	But we zelde hym trewage, He wyll do vs moche owtrage And dystroye my castels <i>and</i> my townes Boþe be dales and be downes, To ¹ polle my wodeys <i>and</i> forestys downe And let my game forthe gone.	10020
	Yf that here be any knyght, That <i>wyth</i> Collebrande dar fyght, Halfe my londe y wolde geue To hys mede, whyll y may leue.'	10024
But he got no advice whatever.	¶ All they sate stone style : A worde þey spake nodur gode nor ylle. Nodur erle nor knyzt, þat was þere, Durst speke a worde for pewre fere.	10028
	'A,' quod þe kyng at the fryste, ² 'Lorde, in whome may y tryste, When none of yow for my sake The batayle <i>wyth</i> hym dar vndurtake ?	10032
He was sorry that Guy or Harrawde were not with him,	A, <i>syr</i> Gye, thou gentyl knyght, And Harrowde, þy felowe so wyzt, Yf y had holdyn other of yow, Wele at ese had y be nowe.	10036
and that he had not formerly secured Guy's assistance by bestowing upon him half his realm.	Yf that y had done so wele Of my londe the halfen dele To haue geuyn to Gye <i>wyth</i> moche honour, Then had y be sekyr of socowre.	10040

¹ MS. *The*.² MS. *fyrste*.

- In proverbe hyt ys seyde full ȝare :
 Mony for þe lesse forgoyþ þe mare. 10044
 Yf y had Gye so moche betaght,
 Of myn enmyes y had not roght.
 ¶ Vp rose then the dewke of Kente The Duke of
Kent at last
advised him
 And to the kyng seide hys entente : 10048
 ‘Syr kyng, þou muste sende þy sonde
 Far into vncowthe londe [leaf 226 a, col. 1]
 To euery towne þorow *and* thorowe
 Bothe in cyte and in borowe 10052 to collect all men
that could wear
arms.
 All, that may armes bere,
 Swyrde, axe, schelde or spere,
 To come to þe at a day certeyne,
 And þat þey stande not þerageyne ; 10056
 For of the þey schall haue
 More wageys, þen þey wyll craue.
 Wyth þe kyng þen we schall fyght
 And hym ouercome wyth goddys myght. 10060
 I haue now my cowncell sayde :
 Yf hyt be wele, y am well payde.
 Wyth that they parted euerychone :
 Odur cowncell was ther none. 10064
 ¶ The kyng at nyght to bedde was broȝt The following
night,
 In cloþys of golde rychely wroght.
 All that nyght he lay and wakyde
 And to Iesu hys preyer maked, 10068 the King,
having fallen
asleep after
feruent prayers,
 That he wolde sende hym soche a man,
 That of þe batayle he myght tryste on ;
 And god forgate hym nothyng :
 As he was in slepeynge, 10072
 An aungell he sende to hym full euyn
 Hym to cownfort wyth mery steuyn,
 And seide : ‘kyng, slepyste thou ?
 The sendyth worde the kyng Iesu : 10076
 To morne, when þat hyt ys day,
 Take thou the redy way to go at dawn

to the north gate,	And go vnto the northe gate	
	And loke, whome <i>pou</i> fyndyst <i>þerate</i> .	10080
and there he should meet a pilgrim, who would undertake the battle.	A pylgryme <i>pou</i> schalt there mete. On goddys halfe thou hym grete And anon <i>pou</i> schalt hym lede <i>wyth</i> the And pray hym pur charyte,	10084
	That he the batell for the take In goddys name and for hys sake.' ¶ <i>Wyth þat þe</i> aungell wente hym froo : The kynge was blythe thoo.	10088
[leaf 226 a, col. 2] The King went thither	Tho 3erly he rose and that anon And to <i>þe</i> northe gate can he gone.	
with two Earls and the Bishop of Winchester.	Two erles <i>wyth</i> hym lad he And the byschoppe of that cyte.	10092
	Vnto mydmorne stode they, And many a pore man came <i>þat</i> wey.	
When he saw the pilgrim,	Amonge <i>þem</i> he sye a pylgryme : Well sone he knewe hym.	10096
	The kynge hys hande on hym layde And swythely to hym sayde :	
he asked his assistance,	'Pylgryme, pur charyte, Dwelle a whyle here <i>wyth</i> me.'	10100
	'Let me stonde,' seyde he, ' <i>Wyth</i> yow to goo ¹ hyt lykyth not me. Pore y am <i>and</i> hungry stronge : Here ye tarye me to longe.'	10104
	¶ 'Pylgryme,' he seyde, 'we byd pur charyte For grete nede, we schewe to the, Ageyne the kynge of Denmarke, That ys a sterne man <i>and</i> a starke,	10108
	That <i>pou þe</i> batell wylt vndertake. Y schall <i>þe</i> sey, for what sake. Thorow <i>þe</i> strenkyþ of a knyght Lese y schall my realme be ryght	10112
	Agenste the gyawnt Collebrande :	

¹ Part of *h* blotted out before *goo* in MS.

- Ther ys none so stronge in all þys lande.
 For hys loue y bydde the,
 That syttyth aboue in trynyste, 10116
 Thou thys batell for hys sake
 Agenste Collebrande þat þou take.¹
 ¶ Who so had the kynges beholde
 And hys barons, þat were so bolde, 10120
 Betterlye wepte they euerychone.
 ‘Syr,’ quod Gye and that anon),
 ‘For goddys loue in trynyste
 And, for yow all besече me, 10124
 Thys batelle y vndurtake :
 For no feer y schall hyt slake.’
 ¶ Owre kynges þankyng hym wyth gode wyll
 And to þe kynges of Denmarke sende a bylle, 10128
 How þat oon had takyn on hande
 For to fyght wyth Collebrande.
 And the day was ysett
 Of the batell wythowten lett 10132
 In a place, where þey schulde bee
 Yn an yle wythynne the see.
 Who was gladde, but kynges Adelston
 And hys lordys euerychone, 10136
 That the pylgryme wolde take on hande
 For to fyght wyth Collebrande
 And wyth the grace of god almyght
 To delyuyr ther enmyes wyth ryght? 10140
 ¶ The kynges comawndyd and that anon
 To hys armerars euerychone,
 That they schulde purvey armewre¹
 Of the beste and moost sewre 10144
 For hys champion, the pylgryme,
 In peyne of lyfe, lyth and lymme.
 Ynto euery place they sende and gone
 But mete armowre fonde þey none. 10148

which Guy readily
promised.

[leaf 226 b, col. 1]
The King
thanked him,
and sent word to
the Danish king
that he had found
a champion.
The day

and place of the
combat were
appointed.

Who was glad
but Athelstan?

No armour fitting
the pilgrim

could be found,

¹ MS. *armowre*.

till he himself
suggested to the
King

¶ When Gye sye, ther cowde non be fownde,
To þe kyng he went in that stownde.
'Syr,' he seyde, 'be goddys myght,
Y harde sey, ther was a knyght 10152

Some tyme dwellyng in Warwyk towne
Large *and* longe from fote to crowne,
And, but hys armowre wyll serue me,
Y trowe, in Ynglonde none ther bee ; 10156
Wherefore y rede yow, be my lyfe,

to borrow Guy's,

Sende for hyt to Gyes wyfe.'
As he seyde, so dud the kyng,

which Felice
readily lent.

And sche hyt sende *wythowte* grucchyng.
When hyt was comyn, they hyt assayed : 10160
Hyt was mete, þey were wele payde.

[leaf 226 b, col. 2]

Sche had hyt kept, *þat* lady hende,
That hyt was not peyred before nor behynde. 10164

On the appointed
day

When¹ þe tyme was ycomen
Of þe batayle, *þat* was nommen,

Guy was well
armed,

Gye was armed rychelye
Ryght feyre and gentullye. 10168

Hys helme was rychely dyght
Wyth a cros of golde, *þat* schone bryght.
The serkyll of golde was so ywroȝt,
That for noȝyng hyt cowde be boȝt. 10172

Therynne were set precyus stones
Well schynynge for þe nones.
Before an hye ouyr the nasel²
Was a charbokull set full wele, 10176

That so grete lyght caste on þe nyȝt,
As hyt were the day bryght.
On þe helme was a flowre,
That was wroght of many a colour. 10180

Gyrde he was *wyth* a swyrde of stele :
Kynge Adelston louydde hyt wele.

and mounted a
steed.

And syȝen men broȝt hym a stede :

¹ The initial *W* is wanting in MS.

² MS. *sayle*.

- In all þe londe was¹ none better at nede. 10184
 Hastelye he was hym vpon):
 The blessing he had of mony a man.
 He had a spere carvande
 And towarde the batell was rydande. 10188
 ¶ When he into þe place come,
 Of hys stede he lyght anone.
 On hys kneys he set hym downe
 And to Cryste he made hys orysowne 10192
 And seyde: 'lorde, þat reysed Lazerowne
 And Sampson werred fro þe lyon
 And socurde Susan fro þe felons,
 þat² wolde haue slayn hur be tresons, 10196
 Schylde me to day fro þe 3ondur gloton,
 That y thorow hym haue no confusyon.'
 ¶ Swyþe men broȝt a boke anon).
 The kynge of Denmarke swere þeron), 10200
 Yf hys man were to dethe woundyd,
 Slayne or ellys in batell confowndyd,
 That he schulde neuyr aftur þat day
 In peyne of renayenge of hys laye 10204
 Ryght to clayme in Ynglonde,
 But wende whome into hys londe
 And neuyr more in hys lyue
 Wyth Englysche nodur fyght nor stryue. 10208
 And sythen swore kynge Adelston
 Before the barons euerychon),
 That, yf hys man be slawe,
 That he schall stande to þys lawe: 10212
 Hys sworne man become he schall
 And of hym holde hys landys all;
 Grete trewage he schulde ȝolde
 And hys heyres aftur hym hyt holde. 10216
 ¶ When þey had sworne in þat stownde
 And eche of them hostage fownde,

Having arrived
at the place
of combat,
he alighted and
prayed for God's
assistance.

[leaf 227 a, col. 1]
The two kings
swore to maintain
the conditions of
the battle.

¹ was omitted in MS.

² MS. *Of þem þat*.

Collebrand was so big and stout that no horse could endure him.	Collebrande forthe schett. He was so large and so grett, That no hors hym bere myght Nodur in pese nor to fyght : Therfore on fote euyr he foght ; For odurwyse kepte he noght.	10220 10224
He had a great many weapons put upon the place.	Armowre he had of many a manere : Vnnethe a carte myght them bere. In the place they were leyde, That he myght take at hys nede. Gret was Collebrande, And hys hawberke was full stronge.	 10228 10232
His hauberk did not consist of mails, but of splints of steel.	Of mayles was not hys hawbarke : Hyt was of odur maner warke. Hyt was made of splentys of stele Before <i>and</i> behynde yoyned wele.	 10232
His legs were similarly guarded.	Hys legges were in the same case Wyth splentys, as hys body wase.	 10236
[leaf 227 a, col. 2] His helmet was strong, his shield long,	A helme he had bothe gret <i>and</i> stronge : Abowte hys swyre a targe longe. Wyth yron <i>and</i> stele bowndyn hyt was : No nodur metell theron was.	 10240
his spear sharp,	Black hyt was and lothelyche, Hys armowre, as hyt were pych. Hys spere carvande of stele And hys dartes fyredde wele	 10244
his axes thick with gads.	And hys axes also smeten) Wyth gaddes of stele, <i>pat</i> made <i>þem</i> to betyn) ; Mases of yron and gaddes of stele And gysarnys for to smyte wele.	 10248
Guy was afraid of him as of no one before.	¶ The champyons bene togedur ladde. Gye was then sore adradde : Neuyr in batell before he nas, That of hys deþe so ferde he was. Hys hors <i>wyth</i> þe spurres he prykkeþe (That ranne as faste, as fowle, <i>þat</i> flyeth)	 10252

- Towarde Collebrande *wyth* myght,
 And, or he to hym come myght, 10256 They assailed each
other first with
darts,
 He lawneyd to hym dartys thre :
Wyth ii he fayled, *wyth þe* þrydde hyt he
 Thorow þe schelde paynted *wyth* golde ;
 For þorow, he þoght, *þat* hyt schoulde. 10260
 Betwene hys arme and hys syde
 That scharpe darte forthe dud glyde
 And so forthe into the mede
 More, then an akers brede. 10264
 But Gye on þe helme hym smote
 Wyth a darte, that came hote ;
 And so faste hyt can dryve,
 That hyt brake in pecys fyve. 10268
 Collebrande drewe hys swyrde anon
 And smote Gye þe helme vpon :
 Betwene þe body *and* the arson
 Felle *þat* grete stroke adowne 10272
 And gaue the stede dethys wounde,
 And downe he felle to the grownde.
 ¶ Gye vp starte they full rathe :
 Blessyd be god, he had no skathe ! 10276
 And syþen hys swyrde soone he drowe,
 That was gode *and* carvande ynowe,
 And Collebrande he smote *wyth* myght
 That þe sparkes of fyre to grownde lyȝt. 10280
 A newe lesson he wolde hym teche ;
 But¹ he myght not hye reche.
 And hys swyrde was longe be syght :
 But hyer, þen þe schouldur, reche he ne myȝt. 10284
 On the schoulder felle the stroke :
 A grete splente owte hyt smote.
 The flesche hyt carue, þe blode owt ranne :
 He, that hyt smote, was a nobull man. 10288
 ¶ Collebrande tho was aschamed,

then with swords.

Guy's horse was
killed, and Guy
fell on the ground.

[leaf 227 b, col. 1]
But, starting up,

he wounded his
adversary.

¹ MS. *For*.

	When he sye hys blodde so tamedde.	
After some more mutual blows	Soche a stroke he smote to Gye Hye on hys helme, sekerlye :	10292
	The flowre felle <i>and</i> þe serkyll also, The schelde he carue also in twoo. Of soche a strokk y haue not harde. Stronglye Gye was aferde.	10296
	Sythen Gye <i>wyth</i> hys honde Stroke vnto Collebronde And hym smote so, os y yow seye, That þorow þe schelde hyt wente, <i>par faye</i> ,	10300
	That hys swyrde stycked faste. Tho was Gye sore agaste :	
Guy's sword broke.	Hys swyrde brake <i>wyth</i> the vpbrayde, And ther <i>wyth</i> was Gye dysmayede.	10304
The Danes exulted,	¶ Now the Danes prowde bene And seyde þemselfe þem betwene, That Gye was þen ouercomen And the kynge yschente <i>and</i> ynomen).	10308
and Collebrand	'Knyght,' seyde Collebrande, 'Thou haste no wepyn in þy hande. To werre þe þou art not myghtye :	
[leaf 227 b, col. 2] summoned Guy to surrender.	Come to me and crye mercye, And y schall haue mercy of the, Wyth that thou wylt beseche me. Y see, thou art an hardy man), Syn þou to fyght <i>wyth</i> me began).	10312
	And to my kynge y schall þe brynge : He wyll be gladde of that tyþynge. Thou schalt <i>wyth</i> hym acordyd bee : He schall the geue ryche fee.'	10320
	¶ 'Nay,' <i>quod</i> Gye, 'þerof speke noght ; For þerto schall hyt neuer be broght, That y schulde the mercye crye : Y wolde thynke hyt vylenye.	10324
	Thogh þat y haue lorne my bronde,	

- 3yt my lorde ys so stronge,
 That he may helpe me,¹ sawns fayle,
 Or y be 3oldyn in þys batayle. 10328
 Of harnes þou haste here gode oon²
 Grete and longe euerychone :
 Harnes þou haste grete plente,
 Whereof þou schalt lende me.' 10332
 Then seyde Collebronde full ryght :
 'So helpe me Mahownde of myght,
 Harnes getyst þou none of me :
 Furste y schall haue the hedde of þe. 10336
 Thou schalt not fynde me soche a brayton
 Harnes to take þe into þy bandone.'
 ¶ Or Collebronde hym turne myght,
 To the axes Gye lepe aryght : 10340
 An axe there vp he nome
 And to Collebronde þerwyth he come.
 When Collebronde that sye,
 Hastelye forthe he came to Gye. 10344
 Wyth strenkyth he smote to hym in hye
 A stroke, that was full myghtye.
 But Gye soone asyde schete³
 And ellys he had sore be smete. 10348
 Into þe 3orthe felle the bronde :
 Wrothe therfore was Collebronde
 Gye forgate that nothyng,
 The axe he⁴ hente, wythowte lesynge : 10352
 The arme he smote of of Collebrande
 Wyth the strenkyth of hys hande,
 When Collebrande felyd hym smyte,
 To hys bronde he lepe tye 10356
 And take hyt he wolde in hys lefte hande,
 When of the todur no helpe he fonde.

But Guy trusted
in God.

He asked the
Giant to lend him
some weapon,
which he refused.

But Guy leapt to
Collebrand's
weapons and
seized an axe.

The Giant's
sword,
missing Gye,

fell out of his
hand.
[leaf 228 a, col. 1]

Guy at once cut
off his opponent's
right arm,

¹ *me* added over the line in MS.

² *oon* I suppose to be miswritten for *noon*.

³ MS. *skyppte*.

⁴ *w* blotted out after *he* in MS.

- Toward the grownde he lowtud in hye,
 And Gye yede hym so nye : 10360
 Hys stalworthe axe well hye he hafe
 and soon after his And soche a strock in þe neck he hym gafe,
 head. That hys hedd of dud flye.
 Gye was fayn then, sekurlye. 10364
- After the death of ¶ The gloton felle downe to grounde anon :
 their champion, The Danyschmen were sory echon.
 the Danes left England. The kyng Anlafe was well woo
 And hys odor folke echoon alsoo. 10368
 To schypwarde they be wendande
 And anon homewarda þey be saylande.
 Athelstan and his And blythe ys kyng Adelston
 barons were overjoyed. And hys barons euerychone. 10372
- Guy was led into the town in There they toke syr Gye
 solemn proces- And lad hym forthe, sekurlye,
 sion. To Wynchestur, the ryche towne,
 Wyth songe *and* wyth precession 10376
 ‘Te deum laudamus’ syngyng
 And god almyghty therof thankyng.
 ¶ Gye wyth þat vnarmed hym
 And sythen askyd hys slauyn. 10380
 The kyng hym toke be the honde
 And askyd hym, in what londe
 He was in borne, and of hys name ;
 For he was a man of grete fame. 10384
- The King offered And bad hym gyftys gode *and* ryche,
 him great riches, Castels enclosed wyth depe dyche.
 [leaf 228 a, col. 2] And *syr* Gye hyt all forsoke,
 but Guy did not That he of hym ryght noght toke, 10388
 accept anything. But thankyd god, Maryes sone,
 That Collebrande was ouercome.
- Athelstan then ¶ ‘Mercye, syr,’ seyde the kynge,
 ‘For hym, þat schope all thyng
 And suffurde dethe vpon þe rode
 All for mankyndeys gode, 10392

- That þou thy name telle me,
 Where þou were¹ borne *and* in what cuntre.' 10396
 And he seyde: 'thou schalt here,
 When þou me byddyst on soche manere,
 Wyth that thou do, as y schall say.
 Brynge me forwarde on my way 10400
 And þyselve allone wyth me goo
 Bezonde þe towne a myle or twoo,
 And all þe soþe y schall yow telle,
 That of oon worde y lye ne wyll.' 10404
 ¶ Forthe of the cyte be they goo,
 But wel farre yede they not thoo.
 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'stynte a throwe.
 For ye me haue bettur knowe, 10408
 Y schall yow telle in thys stedde,
 Sythe ye me haue so often bedde.
 But,² syn ye schall wytt my name,
 Loke, ye put me to no grame; 10412
 For y telle yow on soche forwarde,
 That³ all þys yere hereafturwarde
 Of my cowncell me not bewrye,
 But kepe hyt secrete betwene vs tweye 10416
 Bothe in felde and in towne,
 As þou art gentyll kyng wyth crowne.'
 And the kyng wyth vndurtakyth
 And therof hym seker makýth, 10420
 That hys cowncell telle nyll he
 To none, that now on lyue bee,
 Nodur be day nodur be nyght,
 And therto hys trowthe he plyght. 10424
 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'sekurlye,
 My ryght name ys Gye
 Of Warwyk, thyn owne knyght:
- asked his name.
 Guy answered
 that he woul
 discover it
 if the King would
 go with him a
 mile or two quite
 by himself.
 Soon after they
 had left the town,
 the King, having
 promised not to
 tell any one for a
 year what he was
 about to learn,
 [leaf 228 b, col. 1]
 heard that the
 pilgrim was Guy
 of Warwick.

¹ part of a *b* blotted out before *were*. ² MS. *Byt*.³ *ye* seems to be omitted somewhere in this or the next line.
 Ou. *That ye?*

- Well thou louedyst me aryght.' 10428
 ¶ When the kynge 'harde that
 And of hys name vndurȝate,
 That hyt was the gode Gye,
 Athelstan was not a little surprised. Neuyr ȝar he had so grete farlye. 10432
 Of hys hors he alyght
 And on kneys he felle tho ryght.
 The kynge seyde tho : 'syr, mercye !
 How came thou hedur, syr Gye ? 10436
 Hyt ys gone well farre two yere,
 That y harde sey, thou dedde were.
 Blessyd be Iesu, Maryes sonē,
 That þou art hedur to vs ycome. 10440
 God the hath hedur sente :
 Ellys we had be fowle yschente.
 And þou schalt haue for þy seruyse,
 As myselfe¹ schall deuyse, 10444
 He offered Guy half his kingdom,
 The halfen dele of Ynglande
 I take the into thy hande.'
 but Guy declined it. ¶ 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'be yowre leeue, styлле :
 Thou spekyst all agenste my wyll. 10448
 Y wyll none of thy rychesse,
 Of þy londe nor of thy nobulnes ;
 But oon thynge, syr, y prey the
 For hym, that sytteth in trynyte : 10452
 Yf that Harrowde ageyne come
 And brynge wyth hym home my sone,
 Honowre hym, y prey the,
 And on hym well may þou tryste² þe. 10456
 And be thy leue, syr, y wyll goo :
 I betече þe god for euyrmoo.'
 They parted. ¶ The kynge for þat was vnblythe :
 He kyste hym well mony sythe. 10460
 Homewarde he wendyþ all wepande

Athelstan
 returned to
 Winchester

¹ *þyselpe* ?

² *f*, as it seems, blotted out before *tryste* in MS.

- And sorry was and all morenande.
Hys folke agenste hym be gone [leaf 228 b, col. 2]
And askyd of hym euerychone : 10464
‘ Who was then the pylgryme, though questioned
That goyth allone *and* noman *wyth* hym by his men,
And that wolde for yow fyght ?
A gode man he ys *and* of moche myght.’ 10468
And þe kynge hym helde styлле
And seyde : ‘ hyt ys agenste hys wylle, he kept the
That y yow þe sothe schulde telle. secret.
For me hyt schall be holde cowncell. 10472
Or thys yere be all gone,
The sothe ye schall knowe euerychon.’
Now wendyþ Gye hys wey ryght : 10476
Ofte he þankyþ god almyght
Of hys worschyp *and* of hys sonde,
That he hym sente in mony a londe.
So longe wente he hys jurne,
That he came to that cyte, 10480
Whereof he lorde clepyd ys, Guy came to his
And of no man ys perceyued ywys. own town,
To the castell gate he came : but no one knew
That hym knewe, was þere no man. him. 10484
Amonge þe pore men he hym dudde : He joined
Grete sorowe toke he in the stedde.
The curtes¹ Felyce was there thoo :
xii pore men sche fedde and moo 10488
Euery day by and bye, the 12 men that
That god schulde saue hur lorde Gye, Felice used to
Wyth soche drynke *and* soche mete, feed every day.
As sche hurselſe was wonte to ete. 10492
¶ Hyt was at the none tyde :
The lady wolde no lenger abyde,
Sche set hur downe to hur mete,
And wyth hur sett knyghtys grete. 10496

¹ *courtas* ?

were fetched.	And the pore men forthe were fett : Before the lady they were sett.	
Guy was among them.	Gye was oon of the twelue : Ouermaste he sate be hymselfe.	10500
He was taken notice of by all.	The cowntas behelde hym, sekurlye, For he was so sekelye,	
[leaf 229 a, col. 1]	And deuysed hym well also : So dud odur, wythowten noo.	10504
Felice, thinking of her husband, charged a squire to take care of him.	On Guy sche poght þen, hur gode lorde, And to a squyere þere sche spake þys worde : 'Go bere þys,' sche seyde, 'to þat pylgryme, That ʒondur syttyth in a slaūyn. Of bredde <i>and</i> wyne <i>and</i> mete plente, Of þe beste þat he haue, y charge þe.' To performe hur wylle he not forsoke And the pylgryme fayre he toke.	10508
He was invited to return every day,	The cowntas hym bad, sopely to say, Thedur for to come euery day : Inogh he schulde haue of wyne <i>and</i> brede.	10512
and to speak to the Countess after dinner.	Sythen all gates sche hym bede And, that he schulde aftur mete Speke <i>wyth</i> hur <i>and</i> not forgete. And he seyde : 'lady,' full lowlye, 'Syþen ye comawnde ¹ me, full blyþely.'	10516
But he instantly left the town	¶ When þat þey had eton all And þe bordys let downe falle, The pylgryme þen, þedur he came, Owt of that towne hys wey he name.	10524
for a neighbouring hermitage,	Besydes Warwykk go he can To an ermyte, þat he knewe or þan. On a ryuere syde hys hows he hadde (A full holy lyfe he there ladde)	10528
which was called Gybbeclyf. The hermit,	Besydes Warwyke, þat was hys, That Gybbeclyf clepyd ys. But þe hermyte þen dedde wes : ²	

¹ Another *me* before *comawnde* in MS.² MS. *was*.

- No man leuyng þere nas, dredeles ;
 And Gye hym beþoght anon,
 That fro þens wolde he neuer gone :
 Thens on lyue neuyr he go nolde,
 But serue god þere he wolde.
- ¶ The cowntas seyde then aftur mete :
 ‘Where ys þe pylgryme? ys he forgete?’
 Then seyde a knyght, þat was full hende :
 ‘Owte of þe towne y sawe hym wende.’
 Then soght he was in a lytull stownde,
 But nowhere he myght be fownde.
 In the hermytage Gye ys leuyng
 And þere he leuyth at hys lykyng
 A preest he knewe þere nygh þat stude,
 That goddys seruyse to hym þere dudde.
 All hys lyfe he tolde hym thoo,
 And he assoyled hym also.
- A full holy lyfe he ledde there :
 Goddys seruyse forgate he nere.
- ¶ On Gye a sykenes now ys befall,
 So wyll, for soþe, vpon vs all.
- Vpon a nyght a slepe hym namd :
 Now herkenyþ, what on hym bycame.
 Goddys aungell þere to hym can go.
 Apertely to hym he spake tho :
- ‘Guyown, Guyown, slepest þou now?’
 ‘Nay,’ he seyde, ‘why, who art thou?’
 ‘Y am Crystys own messangere,
 Seynt Myghell, þat þou seyst here.
 Fro my lorde Iesu y am comen to þe,
 And he þe greteth wele be me.
 Schryve þe elene : ryght, as y þe seye,
 Thys day viii dayes þou schalt dye.’
 And Gye awaketh anon ryght :
 He sawe þe angell feyre and bryght.
 Sythen he seyde : ‘speke wyth me,
- 10532 who had lived
there, being dead,
Guy determined
to stay there to
the end of his life,
- 10536
In vain was the
pilgrim searched
after,
at Felice’s
[leaf 229 a, col. 2]
command.
- 10540
He led a holy
life in the
hermitage.
- 10544
Having once
fallen ill,
he was one night
- 10552
told by St
Michael
- 10556
- 10560
- 10564 that he should
die a week thence,

- Goddys frende, now prey y the. 10568
 Where schall my sone be *and* my wyfe bo?'
 'In paradyse þey schull be,' he seyde þo.
 Hastyly aftur hur þou sende
 And bydde hur, þat sche to þe wende. 10572
 [leaf 229 b, col. 1] The xl. day hereaftur, *syr* Gye,
 and his wife 40 Sche schall be wyth owre lady.'
 days after And Gye seyde then *wyth* herte fre :
 himself. 'As god wold, so mote hyt bee.' 10576
 On the day named, **W**hen þat hys deþe day was ycome,
 He clepyd anon to hys grome :
 'Lefe felowe,' then seyde he,
 Guy sent his 'To Warwykk þou wende, y prey þe. 10580
 page to Felice To the cowntas þou schalt goon
 On my message ryght anon.
 with the ring Thys ryng,¹ þou hyt not forȝete
 that she had And on my behalfe þou hur grete 10584
 given him at parting. And sey to hur, þat þe same pylgryme,
 That sche sende bothe bredde and wyne,
 And sey to hur, for that presente
 Thys ryng y haue to hur sente. 10588
 Y wot well, sche wyll hyt knowe
 Also soon, as þou doyst hyt to hur schowe.²
 Then anon sche wyll aske the,
 And a ryche gyfte þou schalt haue,' seyde he. 10592
 'Aftur me hur askyng schall be mest,³
 And þou schalt sey, that in þe foreste
 An ermyte y am *and* in poynt to dye
 And þeryn þat thou me sye ; 10596
 And þat þere þou longe ne dwelle,
 But ȝyt þou schalt hur telle,
 That sche hastely to me come ;
 For dethe me hath nygh ouercome. 10600
 Go now þy⁴ wey, for seynt Charyte :

¹ MS. *Thys halfe ryng*.² MS. *schewe*.³ MS. *moest*.⁴ MS. *þey*.

To Iesu Cryste now y betake the.'

¶ Now ys the page forthe goon:

To Warwyck he came anoon.

The page
delivered his
message.

10604

The cowntas he fonde in hur halle:

On knees to hur soone can he falle.

'Lysten to me, lady, now, y prey the:

A message ys sente to yow by me

10608 [leaf 229 b, col. 2]

Fro my lorde, that pylgryme,

That was in yowre halle in hys slauyn

And þat ye sende to plente of mete.

To grete yow well he wyll not forgete.

10612

Now he ys dwellyng in þe foreste:

By ȝerbes *and* rootys he leuyth mest.¹

Lyfe he ledyth, as man well wyse:

Of goddys grace fulfyllyd he ys.

10616

Thys same rynge to yow he sente,

That y to yow take now in presente.'

¶ The rynge to hur sche can brayde:

'Gode felowe,' to hym sche sayde—

10620

'Allas, lefe lorde, now mercy!

Thys was my lordys rynge, *syr* Gye.'

Felice instantly
knew Guy's ring.

In swownyng she fell *and* hur hert agroos,

And, when þat sche of swownyng aroos:

10624

'Thys tokyn y knowe, þat to me ys broȝt.

For my loue, ne heyle hyt noght

And tresowre þou schalt haue, y telle þe,

The soþe yf þou wylt sey to me.'

10628

'In þe foreste,' he seyde wyth wordys mylde,

'Wyth þe bestys wode and wylde

There he lyueth,² be god aboue;

And he besekeþ yow for loue,

10632

That he be beryed þorow yowre redde;

For there he lyeth almost dedde;

And þat ye bewrye hym to no wyght:

So he me badde, *syr* Gye, þe knyght.

10636

¹ MS. *moest*.

² MS. *lyeth*.

- And ye schall dye not longe to :
 He sende me to yow to sey so.
 Of myrthys ye schull haue þe meest
 [leaf 230 a, col. 1] In the yoye, þat euyr schall laste.' 10640
- ¶ Furste for sorow sche was nye madde
 And syþen sche became full gladde,
 That sche schulde hur lorde see,
 And a dolefuller loker may none be : 10644
- That sche schulde see hym dedd,
 Hur harte was heuyer, þen þe ledde.
 Vpon a palfrey sche lepte anoon
 And hastyly forthe can sche goon. 10648
- She rode to the hermitage,
 Forþe she rode wyth knyzt, squyere and page,
 Tyll sche came to that ermytage.
 There þat lady dud feyre alyght,
 And so dud many a gentyll knyght, 10652
- followed by many
 Lords.
 Erlys, barons, and abbottys tho,
 Archebyschopes and byschoppes also.
- When she
 arrived,
 ¶ The cowntas lyzt downe in grete hye
 And, hur lordys body when sche sye, 10656
- Wondurly hygh¹ sche caste vp a crye.
 Wyth þat hys eyen openyd syr Gye :
 Vp he loked anon ryzt² 10660
- and raised his
 hands
 And clepyd Felyce, as he myght,
 And helde vp boþe hys handys
 Before þat lady, as sche standys,
- as if begging her
 pardon;
 In tokenyng hur mercy for to crye
 Of þe sorowe, sche dud for him drye. 10664
- Hedde to hedde þere lay they thoo :
 Swetely eyther kyssed other also.
 But oon worde Gye þere ne speke,
 And þe³ goost þen fro hym breke. 10668
- but speak he
 could not.
 ¶ When þat hys sowle fro hym wente,
- His soul departed,

¹ *hygh* written originally, but the last letter blotted out.² The abbreviation for *and* blotted out after *ryzt*.³ *þen* originally, but the *n* blotted out in MS.

- Seynt Myghell anon hyt hente :
 As a whyte dowve,¹ he toke hyt þere.
 To god in heuen he dud hyt bere 10672
Wyth grete yoye and mery songe :
 'Gloria in excelsys' þey seyde amonge.
 ¶ That louely lady, Felys la Belle,²
Wyth dolefull harte dwellyþ in þat chapelle. 10676
 On hym sche swowned in þat place
 And often sche kyssyd hym mowþe *and* face.
 'Thes be þe hondys,' sche seyde thoo,
 'That the rynges breke atwoo.' 10680
 Of hur fyngers þe blode owt ranne :
 Sorowe and woo sche had than.
 ¶ Grete worschyp þere god hym dudde,
 Syr Gye, þat ys in þat blessed stude. 10684
 Of Gye a sauour spronge at þe laste
 And hath so grete swetnes caste,
 As and all þe spycys, þat man may see,
 And all swete þyngys, þat here may bee, 10688
 In oon stude togedur were,
 Swete and swote bothe in fere.
 So swete a þyng in erthe was noon),
 As of hys body then can goon). 10692
 They þat were in grete sykenes,
 Heele þey had þorow þat swetnesse.
 The swetnesse lasted, *wythowten* lees,
 Tyll þat the body beryed wes.³ 10696
 ¶ To Warwyk þen þey wolde hym haue dyzt,
 But remeve hym þere no man myght ;
 For thretty knyghtys þere were bróght
 And hym remeve myght þey noght. 10700
 All þat was þorow goddys wylle,
 And þey hym þere beleuyd styлле.
 Felyce, that was feyre and free,

[leaf 230 a, col. 2]

and was taken
to heaven by St.
Michael.Felice was full of
woo.God honoured
Guyby making a
sweet smell pro-
ceed from his
body,by which sick
persons were
cured.As thirty knights
were not able to
remove him,
he was buried in
the hermitage.

[leaf 230 b, col. 1]

¹ *v* in *dowve* altered from *n* in MS.² MS. *ffelysabelle*.³ MS. *was*.

- To þem sche seyde : 'now letteth bee. 10704
 He sente me a sonde be a messengere,
 That y^l hym schulde berye here.'
 A through þey ordeyned gode *and* fyne
 Hys body and bones to berye þeryn. 10708
 Thretty masses þere were songe,
 And almes dudde to oolde *and* zonge,
 That euыр lasteth vnto þys day :
 Ther ys none soche geуyn for man nor may. 10712
 ¶ When þe body was leyde in grownde,
 Thens þey wente in a lytull stownde.
 But þe cowntas, sche leuyd there :
 Fro þens on lyue go wolde sche nere. 10716
 Fro þat place neuыр sche go nolde,
 But þere to serue god sche wolde.
 till she died forty Forty dayes there leuyd þat lady
 days after, And beryed sche was be gode *syr* Gye. 10720
 and was buried by his side.
 In oon pytte þey lye togedur boo :
 Iesu kepe þer sowlys from woo.
 And all, þat here oght of thys,
 God of hys grace grawnt þem blys. 10724
 ¶ Now, lordyngys, ye haue harde of Gye
 Of Warwyk, þat was wondur hardy,
 And also of feyre Felyce, hys wyfe,
 That he moste louyd of women on lyue, 10728
 And in what maner þey partyd in twoo
 And how þey leued² then alsoo
 And how þey dredde god almyght :
 Euery synfull schulde so *wyth* ryght. 10732
 Every one should be like them.
 [leaf 230 b, col. 2] As ye haue herde mē rede or þys,
 Ther lyfes þus þere endyd ys.
 May Jesus Christ Iesu Cryste all weldyngе,
 save us, That art god and crowned kyngе 10736
 (In trynyte þou art þe fadur fre
 And all knytt in oon persones thre),

¹ s blotted out after y in MS.² MS. *loued*.

- We the beseche lowde *and* style,
 That þou vs grawnt þorow þy wyllle 10740
 To be also safe, as¹ ys Gyown
 Of Warwykk, þat bolde baroun.
 To Mary mylde prey we for þanð, and St. Mary
intercede for us.
 That sche wyll helpe euery synfull man, 10744
 That god forgeue vs owre synnes all,
 That we all day beyth yn yfalle,
 And that owre sowles we mote hym sende,
 When we owte of þys worlde schull wende. 10748
- N**ow, lordyngys, lystenþ of þe noyse
 Of gode syr Tyrrye of Gormoyse :
 For Gye was dedde, *wythowten* lees,
 In herte a sorowfull man he wes.² 10752 When Tyrry
heard of Guy's
death,
he was very sorry.
 He myght noþur drynke nor ete
 Nor no comfort he myȝt hym gete.
 To þe see he wente, y vndurstonde,
 And at London he came to londe 10756
 And þere *wythynne* a lytull stownde
 Kynge Athelston he had yfownde.
 He tolde hym all of syr Gyown,
 How they were felows, by gode resown, 10760 He came over to
King Athelstan,

and, having told
him of his friend-
ship for Guy,
 And how þat they were þerebeforne
 Trewe brethern togedur sworne,
 That neythur schulde fayle othur,
 'And y þorow trowthe am hys brodur.' 10764
 Hys boones he desyryd *wyth* mylde boone
 And kynge Athelston hym grauntyd soone :
 That body warne hym he nolde
 To carye hyt, whodur he wolde. 10768 [leaf 231 a, col. 1]
 Tyrrye the body then vp drogh
 And worschyped hyt feyre ynogh.
 To Loren then he ledyth syr Guye :
 Grete worschyp þere hym dud Tyrrye. 10772
 An abbey he made, y vndurstonde where he built an
abbey

¹ part of an *y* blotted out before *as* in MS.² MS. *was*.

for the sake of
Guy and his wife's
souls.

(Ther ys none so ryche in all þat londe),
For Gyes sowle and for¹ hys wyfe,
That he loued, as hys lyfe. 10776

Hys loue so he quytt hym all.
The abbey standeth *and* euer schall
For to prey for gode *syr* Gye,
That god on hys sowle haue mercy 10780
And that god schylde from woo
Hys sowle ; and owres alsoo !

¶ Of Gye an endyng e y muste make :
To Cryste, crowned kynge, y hym betake 10784
And to hys modur also now ryght,
That they vs brynge to þat blys bryght.²

[leaf 231 b, col. 1]
Listen now to
the story of
Harrawde,

Lystenyth now, y schalle yow telle,³
As y fynde in parchement spelle, 10788
Of syr Harrowde, þe gode baron,

who was in Africa
imprisoned.

That lyeth in Awfryke in prysoun.
Porely he ys besemydde,
That lyfe hym vnneþe ys beleuedde ; 10792
For lytull he etyth *and* lasse drynketh :
There ys none,⁴ þat hym forthynketh ;

He bemoaned his
misery

And bemoonyth sore hys lordys sone,
For whome he ys there in prysone. 10796
There he wenep anon ryght to dye
And not to skape be no weye
And bemoonyth hys gret sorowe
Bothe on eyn and on morowe, 10800

after his former
happiness and
glory.

Hys ryches and his feyrehedde,
Hys grete byrthe *and* hys stalworþhedde.
¶ The geyler harde hym, þere he stode,
And hys moonyng vndurþode 10804

The jailer, who
overheard him,

¹ The second *for* added over the line in MS.

² The rest of this page blank in MS.

³ The letters of this line are as large in MS. as they use to be at the beginning of a poem.

⁴ *none* seems to be a mistake for *moche* or *ynone* or the like.

Of hys strenkyth and of hys myght.

To þe admerall he came tho ryght.

‘Syr, wot ye not,’ seyde he,

‘What prysoner in yowre pryson haue ye? 10808

Of soche oon haue y not harde, aplyght,

Of soche pryce nor of soche myght.’

Then seyde the admyrall :¹

‘That y anon wyt schall. 10812

Brynge hym,’ he seyde, ‘before me,

And y schall wytt, what ys hee.

Of soche a man y haue grete nede,

Yf y myght tryste hym *and* hys dede.’ 10816

¶ The geyler forþe went anon :

To the gayle he ys gone.

Harrowde vp he drewe anon),

That was full megur *and* a febull mon) : 10820

Hys berde was whyte ouergrown *wyth* here ;

For grete mysese he suffurde there.

Ther ys no man, þat hym knowe myght

Nodur be semblant nor be syght : 10824

Noght hys modur, þat hym bere,

Kowde not haue knowyn hym þere.

Gret he was, mekyll *and* longe :

Well he semydde myghty *and* stronge. 10828

Before þe admerall he hym ledyth :

Then of hys lyfe well sore he dredyþ.

¶ Then seyde the admerall

(Of ryches he hath no pere egall) 10832

And spake to Harrowde, þe gode baron),

And askyd of hym mony a reson),

Who he was *and* of what londe

And yf he batell durste take on hande, 10836

As he was hymselfe knowe,

When he was in pryson lowe,

told the Amiral
that the prisoner
was a noble
knight.

The Amiral
ordered him to be
brought into his
presence.

Harrawde in the
mean time had
got to look very
unlike himself.

[leaf 231 b, col. 2]

The Amiral

asked him who
he was, and if he
would assist him
in his war.

¹ *that y anon wytt* struck out after *admyrall* in the same line.

Harrowde told
his name, and
declared himself
willing to fight if
his strength
should return.

[leaf 232 a, col. 1]

He was also asked
about Guy.

- þat odor folke¹ hym here myght,
Bothe be day and be nyght ; 10840
And yf he myght of hym be sekure
Odur in batell or in bekur
And to serue hym trewlye.
And he wolde wythholde hym blypelye 10844
And armes hym geue gode, aplyght,
To mayntene hys warres in all ryȝt.
¶ Then seyde Harrowde, þat nobull man :
'Syr, y schall telle the, as y can. 10848
Harrowde y hyȝt, þe Englysche knyȝt.
In me ys nodur mayn nor myght :
Yf my strenkyþ were ageyne comen,
That me in pryson was benomen, 10852
And þou me fowndest gode armewre,²
That were boþe gode, mete and sewre,
In me myghtyst þou wele affye,
Be hym, þat borne was of Marye.' 10856
The admerall answeyrd Harrowde,³
A gentyll knyght and no rybawde :
'Thou schalt haue harnes sekur ynogh
And all, that þou haste nede too. 10860
Syth þou were in Ynglonde bore,
Sey me the sothe, wyth⁴ othe yswore,
Yf þou knewe oght of Gye,
That y haue harde so moche preysye.' 10864
¶ 'Be god,' quod Harrowde, 'y knewe hym well :
Hys knyght y was and ȝyt y wyll.'
'For soþe, y wolde,' quod the admerall,
'That y hym had geuyn þe halfen dell 10868
Of all my londys brode and wyde,
Wyth þat he stode the besyde :
Mekull he myght helpe me
To maynten my warres, y telle þe.' 10872

¹ *k* in *folke* altered from *d* in MS. ² MS. *armowre*.

³ MS. *harde*.

⁴ *wythowte* ?

- He forþe clepyþ hys chaumberleyne,
 That was a gode knyght *and* no sweyne :
 In feyre cloþys he bad¹ hym schredde *and* dyzt
 And harnes grayþe feyre *and* bryght. 10876
 ¶ The admerall to Harrowde spekyth.
 ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘my herte in two brekyth :
 The kynge Argus full of boste
 Ageyne me werryþ, well þou woste, 10880
 That of all my grete realme²
 He haþ me lefte but þys cyte, þat y in am.
 And that ys thorowe a yonglynge,
 A knyght vncowthe of newe dubbyng, 10884
 That hath my londe ferre³ brent *and* stroyede
 And me well swythe sore anoyede
 For my folke, þat he hath slawe
 And þorow hym brozt fro lyfe dawe. 10888
 And yf thou myght *wyth* anythyng
 Hym confownde or to dethe brynge,
 Be Mahownde and Termagawnte,
 Y schall the to honowre awawnte.’ 10892
 Harrowde answeyrd, þat nobull man :
 ‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y schall, yf y can).
 Jesu, seynt Maryes sone,
 Me to helpe⁴ vnto strenkyþ come.’ 10896
 ¶ Ther come a messengere swyþe bolde :
 To þe admerall grete heuynes he tolde,
 That þe kyngys constabull Argus
 Prowde and sterne *and* cureus, 10900
 Oon of hys castels hath besett
 And hys men slayne *wythowten* lett :
 ‘Ther ys not oon on lyue scapyd.’
 Then þe admerall gret dole makyd. 10904
 Anon he comawndyd hys constabull,

The Chamberlain
was ordered to
clothe and arm
him.

The Amiral told
Harrawde that
King Argus had
conquered all his
realm except the
city in which he
lived,

and especially by
dint of the valour
of a new-dubbed
knight.

He should like to
have him slain.

Harrawde prom-
ised to try, with
the help of Jesus.

Jews came

that King Argus's
Constable had
[leaf 232 a, col. 2]
conquered another
castle of the
Amiral's.

With the Amiral's
host

¹ *bad* omitted in MS. ² Perhaps we ought to read *reawme*.

³ First *e* in *ferre* uncertain in MS.

⁴ The abbreviation for *and* blotted out after *helpe* in MS.

- A stalworth knyght, *wythowten* fabull,
 That he were armyd swythe anon
 And all hys men euerychone. 10908
 And he so dud well hastelye
 Swythe well and ryghtlye.
- Harrawde
marched against
him. Harrowde hys gode hors bestryte¹ 10911
Wyth a spere in hys hande, þat sharply wolde byte,
 And wendyd owte of that cyte
 And ouyrgoyth all that cuntre,
 And comen in a lytull stownde,
 There þey haue þe castell fownde, 10916
 Well straunge assayled *and* besett :
 Many oon þere was well euelly grett.
 Helmes² men sye boþe bryzt *and* schene,
 And stedys nye togedur ȝedyn. 10920
 Yn yron was mony a knyght
 On hors back redy for to fyght.
 Eydur odur can assaylye
- There was a hard
battle. And eydur smote odur *wyth* envye 10924
 Harrowde a sarsyn smote,
 That dedde he felle anon fole hote :
 A nodur and the thrydde also
 All dedde he fellyd to grounde tho. 10928
- Those whom
Harrawde's hand
reached, all fell
down dead. Dedde felle all, þat hys handys raght :
 Well to smyte ne spared he noght.
 Dede þey lay in the feldys wyde.
 Harrowde was preysed on euery syde : 10932
 All they sayde, hyt³ was a fende,
 That þe deuell had thedur sende.
 ¶ The kyngys own stewarde,
 A stalworthe knyght *and* no cowarde 10936
 (Ther was neuer an hardyar sarsyn
 [leaf 232 b, col. 1] Nor more seruyd Mahownde *and* Apolyn),

¹ MS. *hors dud bestryte*. See the note.² MS. *He lynes*.³ *hyt* altered from *hys* in MS.

- Harrowde he gretyd *and* hys folkes euerychon),
 And to Harrowde he come anon 10940
 And *wyth* hys swyrde so bytturly smote,
 That þorowowt Harrowdes shelde hyt bote.
 Sythen þey drewe þer swyrdys kene
 And smote togedur *wyth* grete tene. 10944 The Constable,
 The constabull ys ouyr ygoo : valiantly as he
 Of Harrowdes folkes he wrekyd hym þo. defended himself,
 Harrowde mony of hys men dud lese,
 But he cownfortyd þem neuer þe lese : 10948
 Than þe constabull þey ouyrcomen was vanquished
 And almoste hym there had nomen),
 But awaywarde he flewe well hastelye, and fled.
 And Harrowde hym folowed stronglye. 10952
 The constabull goyth away fleyngē
 And be hys flanke þe blode downe rennyngē.
 Harrowde hym folowed vpon a rabyte,
 And he eyr fleyng and dyscownmyte, 10956 Harrowde, pur-
 And Harrowde hym ouyrtakyth suing him,
 And hys helme on hys hedde he crakyth.
 Grete strokys togedur þey dud smyte
 Wyth ther swyrdys, þat well cowde byte. 10960
 Harrowde hym nome in that fyght, took him prisoner.
 And agayn he ledde hym anon ryght.
 ¶ Toward hys felows he can dryue
 And prysoners he ladde moo, þen fyve, 10964
 And so all, þat þey wolde haue, þey had þo
 And to the cyte be they goo ;
 And a knyght hardy and bolde
 To the admerall hath tolde, 10968 A knight carried
 That Harrowde was so gode a knyght : the news to the
 'So gode was neuer sene in fyght. Amiral.
 And þe constabull he hath ynome
 And hys men yslawe *and* ouercome.' 10972
 ¶ Harrowde come forthe anon ryght, Soon came
 Before þe admerall dud he lyght. Harrowde

- [leaf 232 b, col. 2] The constabull he¹ ȝalde hym hastelye,
with his prisoner, And he toke hym well gladlye. 10976
- The Amiral,
much rejoiced, 'Harrowde,' seyde þe admyrall anon,
'Thou haste dyscomfett my foon.
My lefe frende, y grawnt the
The maystry to haue of þys cuntre. 10980
- made Harrowde
his Constable. I make þe my constabull :
Thou þe ne holde hyt for no fabull.'
¶ Of Harrowde men haue moche dowte
Boþe wythynne þe cyte *and* wythowte. 10984
Harrowde not longe þere abydyþ,
But fro þem soon he rydyth
Thorow þe londe *and* þat² cuntre :
Castels *and* cytees conquered hee, 10988
That þe admerall had forgone :
He conqueryd them euerychone.
The kynge he doyþ grete harme, aplyzt :
Hys men he slewe downe ryght. 10992
- The King was
very angry at the
news. ¶ When þe kynge harde thys,
That þe constabull takyn ys
And hys men slayne in þe felde also
And hys barons dyscownfyt boþe too, 10996
He ys wrope þerfore *and* well sorye
And wyth angur wele can aske in hye,
Why hyt ys *and* wherefore,
That hys men be thus forlore. 11000
Then answeyrd to hym a knyght :
'Syr, y shall telle þe anon ryght.
To the admyrall ys ycome
A swyþe moche myȝty grome, 11004
An olde hore knyzt *and* a belde :
Soche a nodur come neuer in felde.
In all þys londe þer ys not soche a knyzt,
Were he neuer so well ydyzt, 11008
That hys stroke myzt adrye,

¹ *he* omitted in MS. ² *cyte* blotted out after *þat* in MS.

But he schulde hyt sore abyē.'

¶ þe kynge þerof had moche wondur

(He þoȝt, hys herte wolde breke in sondur), 11012

And comawndyd þere anon ryghtys

To assemble an c thousand knyȝtys

Wyth strenkyþ to take þe admyrall,

'And hys fowle hed of smyte y schall. 11016

Fro þens depart wyll y noght,

Or y hym haue to dethe broght

And that olde churle hye honge :

Hys rewle lastyȝh a lytull to longe.' 11020

¶ Hys oost he can togedur bede

And vpon þe admyrall strongly he yede

And dystroyed hys castels *and* hys cytees :

That Harrowde wanne, ageyne he les.¹ 11024

¶ The admyrall hys folke can bede,

Lytull *and* mykell in all hys lede,

And Harowde to hym came þo ryghtys,

That was þe beste of all þe knyghtys. 11028

There archers anon he dyght

And graythed them all redy to fyght.

Sythen þey smetyn to² þer foon

And woundys made þorow flesche *and* boon. 11032

Harde þey smetyn on odor syde

And redyn *and* prekyd be þe feldys wyde.

Grete harme þey dud þe kynge there

And slewe hys men, þat stalworthe were. 11036

Stronglye hym wrathed þo þe kynge

And to hys folke he made chalynge.³

Hyt was feyre day *and* ferre fro nyght :

Many oon was dradde in that fyght. 11040

Wyth sorow many dyed there

Of the knyghtys, þat well cowde were.

¶ The admyrall in that stownde

[leaf 233 a, col. 1]
He ordered 100,000
knights to be
gathered,

and marched
against the
Amiral.
Harrawde's
conquests were
lost again.
But, after the
Amiral had
assembled all
his men,

there was an
obstinate battle.

The Amiral was

¹ MS. *lesys*.

² *gedur sone* blotted out after *to* in MS.

³ *callynge*?

thrown off his horse.	Fellyd ys downe to the grownde And many of hys men hath he lore : Well swyþe wo he ys therfore. Hys knyghtys all tohewen bee	11044
His men fled at first, but soon rallied and assailed the king.	And þorow þe felde faste can flee, But they turned soone ageyne And assayled þe kynge vpon a grene,	11048
[leaf 233 a, col. 2]	And he hym defendyd, as a man : All, þat he smote, felle downe þan.	11052
Harrawde, fighting between the king and the king's men,	¶ Harrowde that can aspye And to hym soone drewe nye. Betwene hym <i>and</i> hys men he wendyp And harde strokys to hym he sendyp.	11056
took his Steward prisoner. This done, he brought a horse to the Amiral.	But þe steward soone come can For to helpe hys lorde than, And þorow strenkyp <i>and</i> þorow myzt Harrowde wanne þe steward ryght, And aftur þat he gate an hors And to þe admyrall swyþe goys And horsyd hym full myghtylve	11060
	In mavgre of þose, þat stode hym by. , Of many he made þe hedde of to fleynd Of þem, þat stode hym agayne. The kynge he assayled <i>and</i> hys men And ouyrþrewe þem in þe fenne.	11064
	The kynge was well wroþe wythall, When he sye hys men to grounde falle. Thorow them that ylke day He demyd to fayle of hys pray.	11068
The king, despairing of victory,	He þoght, þe warse went on hys syde. There he wolde no lenger abyde :	11072
fled,	Homewarde fleyng faste he goyth ¹ And wenyth, that no man hyt ne seyth. ¹ ¶ And, when Harrowde þat aspyed, That the kynge ageynwarde fleyde,	11076

¹ *geth : seth?*

- Harrowde hym folowed faste,
 Whyll þat þe stede wolde laste. 11080 but Harrowde
pursued him,
- He had hym take or ellys ynome
 Or in batell haue be¹ ouercome, and would have
taken him,
- But þat þer come a yonglynge :
 Of all þe todur he myght be kyng. 11084 but for a young
man,
- When² he sawe þe kyng fleande
 And Harrowde³ aftur hym dryuande,
 Then he⁴ þe kyng soone to socowre ȝode
 And seyde to Harrowde, as he rode : 11088
- ‘Thou olde *and* forhoryd man,⁵ [leaf 233 b, col. 1]
 Well lytull wytt ys the an,
 That þou folowest owre kyng,
 That y loue ouyr all thyng. 11092
 Thou schalt abyde, or thou goo,
 For þou haste wroȝt vs mōche woo.
 That gode stede, þat ys thyne,
 Y hope to god, he schall be myne.’ 11096
- He smote at Harrowde soone anon
 And sende hym strokys gode won), who vigorously
assailed
Harrowde,
 And to the todur hym well smote meeting an equal
resistance,
- Wyth a swyrde, þat well bote, 11100
 That bothe þey felle of þer stedys.
 And syþen þer swerdys þey drewe, wythowte dredys : so that the two
opponents fell on
the ground.
- Grete strokys þey smyten there
 Vpon the helmys, that trysty were. 11104
 They hewe þe helme wyth golde enclosed
 And the brymme small ymaylydde.
 Togedur þey smete wyth swyrdys bryght :
 Eydur odor to sloo they dud þer myght. 11108
- ¶ Harrowde hym drewe soone besyde ; Harrowde asked
the youth
 For he wolde no lenger abyde.
 ‘Knyght,’ he seyde, ‘gode *and* hende,

¹ *haue be* I suppose must be omitted.² MS. *Then*.³ *Harrowde* written over *the kyng* struck out.⁴ *he* omitted in MS.⁵ Before this a whole line seems to be erased in MS.

- Telle me, or þou henswende, 11112
 So almyghty god saue the,
 where he was born, and exhorted him to surrender. Where were þou borne *and* in what cuntre,
 And do wyselye *and* zelde the rathe,
 That y do the no more scathe. 11116
 Swyþe yonge þou art, so þynketh me :
 Grete harme hyt were, *and* y slewe þe.¹
 But the answer was : ¶ And he answeyrd anon ryght :
 ' So helpe me god *and* hys myght, 11120
 Thou schalt not wytt, who y am,
 For me nor for no nodur man.
 ' I shall kill *you* Arste y schall þy hedde of smyte,
 Allþogh þou holde of me so lyte, 11124
 unless you discover yourself, [leaf 233 b, col. 2] But yf thou before telle mee,
 Of whens þou art *and* of what cuntre ;
 For soche a cuntre þou name myzt,
 þat þou schalt go quyte fro þys fyzt. 11128
 Thou art olde *and* whyte yblowe :
 Thy myght ys slakyd syn, y trowe.
 though there be no great glory to be won by killing so old a man.' Me þynkyþ, hyt were a lytull maystry
 For¹ to cawse the to dye.' 11132
 ¶ Harrowde answeyrd : ' y telle þe,
 Soche be þe men of my cuntre :
 When þey be well strekyn in elde,
 Then þey waxe stronge *and* belde. 11136
 Or y depart now fro the,
 Yonge ynogh þou schalt fynde me.'
 After the fight had been renewed for a short time, ¶ Anon togedur þey smetyn faste :
 Nodur of odur was agaste. 11140
 Smarte strokys togedur þey geuyn,²
 That the vales all todynnon.²
 Men myght kenne on euery syde
 The blode owt of þer bodyes glyde. 11144

¹ *F* in *For* altered from *T* in MS.² No rhyme. Perhaps two lines are wanting. See the note.

- ¶ Tho Harrowde seyde : '*syr* knyght,
 Abyde now a lytull wyght
 And stynte in pees a lytull þrowe,
 Yf y þe myght bettur knowe. 11148
 For soþe y telle þe now ryght,
 That y haue be in mony a fyght
 And mony an harde stowre ouercomen
 And many a knyzt in batell nomen. 11152
 Yf þou were of me ware,
 How y am preysed wyde whare,
 Thou woldyst nopyng schame þe
 Thy name for to telle me. 11156
 I beseke the, *syr* knyght,
 For hys loue, þat þys worlde haþ dyzt,
 That þou thy name telle me,
 Where þou were borne *and* in what cuntre, 11160
 And here y my trowthe plyght,
 Y schall the telle anon ryght,
 Of whens y am *and* what me clepe me
 And where y was borne *and* in what cuntre.' 11164
 ¶ Wyth that he wythdrewe hym there
 Wyth sterne semblant *and* harde chere :
 'Knyght,' he seyde, 'þou art well wyse,
 Wyght, hardy *and* of mekyll pryce. 11168
 Thorow strenkyth y wolde not þe telle :
 Arste y wolde myselfe let qwelle ;
 But, for þou in loue besechyst me
 Thyn askynge y schall telle the. 11172
 I was borne yn Ynglonde
 Yn Warwyk, as y vndurstonde.
 Syr Gye my fadur was :
 A bettur knyght neuyr nas. 11176
 When he owte of þat londe wente,
 A knyght he louyd veramente :
 Hys name was Harrowde of Arderne.
 Wyth hym y was þe werre to lerne : 11180

Harrawde
 repeated
 his question,
 which

he said his
 opponent would
 think it no shame
 to answer if he
 knew how much
 his valour was
 praised every-
 where.

'I beseech you for
 God's sake,

and I shall tell
 you the same
 about myself.'

[leaf 234 a, col. 1]

The youth then
 said

he was Guy's son.

- He me forþe bredde and louyd me myche¹
 And kepyd me well worschypfullyche.
 And marchandys² me away ladde
 (Therfore Harrowde moche sorowe made) 11184
 And broght me into thys londe
 And gafe me to þe kyng in honde.
 Hys doghtur swyþe me forþe bredde
 In hur bowre and well me fedde. 11188
 The kyng dubbyd me a knyght :
 So bad hys doghtur, þat swete wyght,
 And holpe me to thys stownde,
 That y mett wyth þe on þys grownde.' 11192
 ¶ Whan Harrowde ouerharde thys
 Of Reynbowrne, how hyt ys
 Hys owne kynde lordes sone,
 For whome mekyll sorow he haþ ouercome : 11196
 He forsoke hys swyrde *and* hys schylde
 And toward heuyn hys handys vp helde
 And seyde : 'lorde, þat all thyng wrought
 And mannys sowle fro helle boght, 11200
 Looued thou be of thys day,
 That y my lordys sone see may.'
 ¶ For yoye he wepyd *and* wrothe hys hande,
 On fote he myght no lenger stande : 11204
 [leaf 234 a, col. 2] In swownyng he felle þere to grownde.
 having first
 fainted away
 with joy,
 That sawe Reynbowrne þat ylke stownde.
 Betwene hys armes areryd hym hee :
 Of hym he toke grete pyte. 11208
 Harrowde vpon hys fete hym dyght :
 Reynbowrne had wondur of þat syght.
 'Syr knyght, mercye,' quod he ;
 'Who thou art, telle hyt me.' 11212
 Soone answeyrd Harrowde þe knyght,

¹ MS. *moche*.² *y* in *marchandys* all but gone in consequence of a worm-hole.

- That *wyth* Reynbowrn had holdyn þe fyght :
 'Some tyme well þou knewe me
 In Wallyngforde, my chefe cyte.' 11216
 ¶ When Reynbowrn þus hym harde speke,
 For dole hyt wolde hys herte breke.
 At hys fete he felle to grounde
 And seyde : 'Harrowde, allas þys stownde ! 11220
 Haue mercy on me, yf thou wylt :
 All to mekyll ys my gylte.'
 What for pyte *and* what for yoye,
 Bothe in swowne felle they, 11224
 And aftur lyght vpon þer stedys¹
 And toward the cyte boþe þey yede.¹
 Then þe admyrall þey tolde þare
 Of ther acorde and of ther fare, 11228
 And he hym worschyped well swyþe ;
 For hym he was bothe glad *and* blyþe,
 That the kynge ys ouercome
 And hys men slayne *and* ynome. 11232
 ¶ They askyd lycence for to goo
 Into þe cuntre, þey came fro.
 The admerall preyed þem to dwelle styлле,
 But þat was noþynge of þer wylle. 11236
 But, when he sawe, þat þey wolde wende,
 He offurde þem, as man full hende,
 Golde *and* syluyr grete plente
 To lede *wyth* þem into þer cuntre. 11240
 Schyp þey fownde þere redy dyght :
 They went thereyn that ylke nyght.
 So longe þey wente saylande,
 That comyn þey were vpon þe lande. 11244
 All that day þey haue gone,
 But castell nor cyte fonde þey non,
 Tyll hyt was at the euyñ tyde.
 They sye a castell nye besyde : 11248

discovered him-
self in his turn.

Reynbrowñ
begged
Harrowde's
pardon,

and they both
repaired to the
Amiral.

Though entreated
by the Amiral to
stay with him,
they were bent
upon returning
home.

After having been
at sea for some
[leaf 234 b, col. 1]
time, they landed
in a lonely
country,

where they
travelled till night
before they saw a
castle.

¹ *steden : yeden ?*

- Hyt was all wastyd *wyth* warre *and* fyzt.
 To þe ȝate þey came full ryght.
 ¶ Then quod Harrowde to þe portere :
 Upon inquiry 'Speke *wyth* me, for seynt Rythere. 11252
 Who ys lorde of thys cuntre ?
 We aske harbowre for charyte.
 To morne ȝerly, when hyt ys day,
 We wyll wende forthe owre way.' 11256
 The porter seyde : 'be thys day,
 Of my lorde can y not say,
 But in þe halle ys my lady
 Full sorowfull and full drery : 11260
 For hur lorde, that ys forlorne,
 Sche mornyth boþe euyn *and* morne.
 But to my lady wyll y goo
 And telle hur of yow twoo.' 11264
 ¶ The porter went into þe halle :
 The porter went to tell her of the two strangers,
 Before þe lady he can down falle.
 'Madame,' he seyde, 'here *wythowt*
 Stonde ii knyghtys bolde *and* stowte. 11268
 That oon ys yonge, þat othur ys olde :
 They seme bothe curtes *and* bolde.
 They be men of farre cuntre,
 By ther array as semyth me, 11272
 And boþe þey be of vncowthe lande
 And þey beseche þe, y vndurstande,
 Of harbowre for thys nyght
 For the loue of god almyght, 11276
 And ȝerly at morowe ryse þey wyll
 And no lenger abyde they nylle.'
 ¶ And þe lady comawndyd þem in to come
 and was directed by her to admit them.
 And preyde to Cryste of heuyn, godys sone, 11280
 [leaf 234 b, col. 2] That sche þat day byde myght
 Of hur lorde to haue a syght.
 The porter ȝede ageyne anon
 And swyþe he let þem in goon. 11284

- At þe halle dore þey dud lyght,
 The two gode knyghtys of grete myȝt.
 Serjawntys lepy¹n anon ryght,
 Wyth grete wylle þer harnes dud dyȝt 11288
 And toke þer lawncys *and* þer sheldys²
 And leyde þem vpon þe teldes.
 The lady grett them feyre anon
 And vnarmyd þem swythe soon): 11292
- The lady wel-
 comed and un-
 armed them.
- ¶ To mete she ladde þem fayre ydyght
 And to soper set þem anon ryght.
 Of seruysse they had grete plente ;
 And, when þey had ete *and* dronke in hye, 11296
- After supper
 Harrawde asked
 who her husband
 was.
- Harrowde askyd of þe lady thys,
 What hur lordys name ys.
 And sche answeyrd : ‘y schall þe telle,
 Not oon worde lye y nylle : 11300
- He heard
- De la Mowntayn) *syr* Amys.
 Now ther ys none of more pryce.
 A steward ther was in Almayn),
 That made mony a wyckyd bargeyn). 11304
- he was Amys de
 la Mountaine,
 who had been
 exiled by the
 Steward of
 Germany
- Stewarde he was wyth the emperowre :
 God geue hym mysauentowre.
 Hys lordys traytour prouyd he was,
 For whom we be in sorowfull case ; 11308
- on account of his
 friendship for
 Guy.
- For Gye of Warwyk we louyd well,
 And my lorde hym recetted in hys castelle
 For the dewkys dethe Oton),
 A thefe, a traytowre, a false felon) ; 11312
- Their temporary
 abode was in an
 elvish land,
- And syþen we flewe owte of þat lande
 And in þys cuntre we were of stande.
 Thys cuntre ys full of eluys :³
 The mekyll Ardern) yclepyd hyt ys. 11316
- An eluysch knyȝt longyȝt þertoo :

¹ MS. *Syr James Epyen*).² *sperys* before *sheldys* first altered to *shelys*, but afterwards struck out.³ MS. *eluysche*.

- [leaf 235 a, col. 1] Moche sorow he hath vs doo.
Wyth hym oones faght my lorde
 And many a dynte gafe hym *wyth* hys sworde.¹ 11320
 To many men he dud owtrage,
 To yoman, grome, squyer and page.
 He hente my lorde át a tyde¹
 And gafe hym strokys full vnryde. 11324
 Nopþyng myȝt depart hys hawberk wele,¹
 Swyrde nor spere ne knyfe of stele.¹
 He chasyd my lorde halfe a day :
 Thorowowt þe wode he flewe away. 11328
 There he hath made a queynt gynne :
 A man, þat comyth onys therynne,
 But yf hyt were þorow godys grace,
 Comyth he neuer owt of that place. 11332
 Thorow trechery of þat knyght
 My lorde had full mekyll vnryght.
 Sethyn harde y neuer of hym tyþande
 Nor neuyr schall, y vndurstande.' 11336
 ¶ 'Lorde,' seyde Harrowde, 'hyght he Amys,
 Of þe Mowntayn þe gode marchys?
 He was my frende and my felawe :
 To hym wolde y full ferre drawe. 11340
 A, my dere soone Reynbowrne,
 How he louyd thy fadur Gyown),
 And so *syr* Gye louyd hym dere ;
 For he had ofte to hym mystere. 11344
 We schall hym helpe, yf me may spede :
 To owre socowre he hath grete nede.'
 Reynbowrn) answeyrd : 'þorow godys grace
 Yn þat forest now wyll y chace. 11348
 I schall neuer stynte nor blynne,
 Madame, or y thy lorde wyne.'
 The lady seyde : 'for seynt Mary,
 Ne be þou not to folehardy. 11352

and Amys had
 been taken by an
 artifice of an
 elvish knight.

Harrawde in-
 formed Reyn-
 brown how
 tenderly Guy had
 loved Amys,

and Reynbrown
 determined upon
 rescuing him.

¹ MS. *swyrde*.

- 3yf þou passe wythynne that gynne,
 Ther schall neuer man ageyn þe wyne.
 ¶ Full feyre were ther beddys dyght : [leaf 235 a, col. 2]
 They lay *and* slepyd all þat nyght. 11356
 They arose soon in the mornynge
 And dyȝt þem wythowte dwellynge.
 When Reynbown was all redy dyght
 And armyd well to hys ryght, 11360
 Hys gode stede he bystrode
 And owt of þe castell he þen rode. left the castle
 ‘Harrowde,’ he seyde, ‘þou schalt dwelle here
 And make the lady full gode chere. 11364
 I schall here holde, þat y hur behyght,
 And brynge hur lorde þorow godys myght.’
 Syr Harrowde wolde wyth hym haue goon, by himself.
 But he wolde haue neuyr oon. 11368
 Syr Harrowde was in drede of hym sore :
 To Jesu Cryste he betoke hym thore.
 ¶ Reynbown went forthe *and* Harrowde he lefte þare :
 To the foreste he can fare. 11372
 Euyr he speryd the ryght way,
 And men hym taght, how hyt lay :
 He knewe þe markys of that place.
 Then he was in a parels case. 11376
 Well longe he rode forthe, y say,
 Tyll hyt was none of that day :
 Wyth that he sawe hym besyde
 An hylle wyth ȝatys feyre and wyde. 11380
 Tho he blessyd hym wyth hys ryȝt honde
 And into the hylle he wonde.
 The ȝatys closyd, when he in wente :
 Full sore he drade hym to be schente. 11384
 Hyt was darke : syght had he none,
 Well halfe a myle tyll he had gone.
 Then he sawe a lyght full clere
 And he beganne to make gode chere. 11388

Having ridden
till noon,

he came to a hill
with a wide gate,

which, after he
passed through it,
closed.

At first all was
dark,

but soon there
was a bright
light.

He came to a
broad and deep
water,

upon the other
side of which,
[leaf 235 b, col. 1]
upon a beautiful
green,

stood a splendid
palace,

¶ He sawe a watur depe and brode :
Thedurwarde full faste he rode,

Bezonde þe watur he sawe a grene :

A feyrer had neuer kynge nor quene.

11392

All maner flowrys grewe there,

That of any vertews were.

Ther was in þat herber grene

All spyeys, that myght bene.

11396

Wythynne þer stode a palays bryght :

A feyrer had neuer kynge nor knyzt.

The postys were of fyne corall

And þe sparrys of cydre medylde wythall.

11400

Of fyne corall were the stonys

Medulde wyth metall for þe nonys.

Some were of safewrs *and* some of saradyn

And some were emrodys fyne.

11404

Hyt was closyd, that ylke palays,

Wythynne þe wallys wyth saradyns.¹

Hyt was batayld longe *and* wyde

Wyth flowrys coruyn on euery syde.

11408

All were þe wallys of marbull fre.

Before þe zatys there stode a tree :

Theryn were fowlys nyght and day,

That songyn mony a mery lay.

11412

The nobull array of þat ylke halle

Y haue no tyme to telle yow all ;

For, yf y schulde hyt yow telle,

All to longe y schulde here dwelle.

11416

¶ Raynbrown all awondurd was

Ouyr that watur for to passe.

He prouyd þe watur wyth hys spere,

Yf þat hys hors myzt hym ouer bere.

11420

But he nyghed no maner grownde :

He was full drery in that stownde.

But tyll hymselfe he can say,

Reynbrown

¹ Corrupt. See note.

- That he schulde neuer wende away, 11424 resolved to cross
 Tyll he wyste, yf that he myght, the water.
 What was þat yoye *and* that lyght.
 ¶ He blessyd hym *wyth* hys ryght honde His horse swam
 And syþen into þe watur he wonde. 11428 over with him.
 That watur hym closyd all *wythynne* [leaf 235 b, col. 2]
 Fro the fote vp to the chynne.
 He felle depe, or he myght ryse,
 Thretty fote of longe assyse. 11432
 God he cryed mercy thare.
 The stede was gode, þat hym bare,
 And also connyng *and* well lyght
 And lawncyd vp *wyth* full grete myzt 11436
 And fastenyd hys fete vpon þe londe þan),
 And Raynbowrn) was a yoyfull man)
 And þankyd god heuyn kynge,
 That he wolde hym owt of parell brynge. 11440
 ¶ To þe paleys he hym dyght : In the palace,
 Before þe halle downe he lyght.
 Syþen he went into þe halle
 And fownde no man, þat wolde hym calle. 11444 after a long
 Fro chaumbur to chaumbur he can fare : search,
 Mony a mervell he fonde thare.
 He come into a chaumbur of stone :
 Therynne he fonde a knyzt allone. 11448 he at last found
 He hym gret on feyre manere : a knight.
 Awondurd he was, what he dud þere.
 ‘Syr knyght,’ he seyde, ‘for seynt Martyn),
 Ys all þys feyre paleys thyn)? 11452
 Or what man ys lorde here?
 Whethur ys he farre or nere?
Wyth hym wolde y aqweyntud bee.
 And also, *syr* knyght, for charyte, 11456
 Telle me þy name, my frende so dere,
 And why þou lyest on þys manere.’
 ¶ And he answeyrd : ‘y hyght Amys. This was Amys,

- I was some tyme a knyzt of pryse. 11460
 Hedur y come thorow trechery :
 Therfore y þus in preson lye.
 Of all þys ys myn nothyng,
 Y the telle, wythowte lesynge ; 11464
- [leaf 236 a, col. 1] But he, that ys lorde here,
 who told
 Reynbrowne about
 the elvish knight,
 He ys full felle on all manere.
 He come owte of elves londe.
 All thys ys hys in thys londe : 11468
 The palays and thys foreste wyde
 All ys hys on euery syde.
- and his
 marvellous
 palace.
 Soche vertue hath þys palays,
 Men myzt leve þeryn allways, 11472
 Nor he schulde neuyr older bee,
 Then when he comyþ to þys cuntre.’
- Reynbrowne said
 ¶ Tho seyde Raynbrown : ‘art þou Amys,
 The gode knyzt of so mekyll pryce ? 11476
- that he came in
 quest of Amys,
 Thorowowte þe forest y haue þe sozt
 And hedur y am in parell broght.
 But, now y haue þe fownde here,
 Thou schalt go wyth me, be seynt Rychere. 11480
- and would lead
 him away,
 I schall þe lede to thy wyfe :
 Sche ys full trewe¹ in hur lyfe.’
- which the
 prisoner declared
 to be impossible,
 Amys answeyrd : ‘for my loue, let bee.
 Moche wondur y haue of the, 11484
 How and on what manere
 Thou were so hardy to come here.
 Ther come neuer man in þys hylle
 Thorow qweyntys nor þorow grylle, 11488
 But yf the lorde hym hedur broght :
 But þorow hys leue come þou noght.
 How myghtyst þou me fro parell brynge
 And mayste not þyselfe for nopynge ? 11492
 Yf thou ledde me now away,
 For oght, þat euyr þou do may,

¹ *t in trewe* all but gone in consequence of a worm-hole.

- Or we were paste a furlonge,
 We schulde be slayne *wyth* peynys stronge; 11496
 For he, that ys lorde here,
 He ys full felle, be seynt Rychere.
 Yf he were fro hens a thousande myle,
 He wolde wete *wythynne* a whyle 11500
 All, that euyr we¹ wolde haue done,
 And be here at vs full soone.' [leaf 236 a, col. 2]
- ¶ Reynbown seyde: 'drede þat noght.
 We schall do well, as y haue þoght. 11504
 Ryse vp, for the trynnye,
 And come forthe boldely *wyth* me.
 Be god of heuen and seynt Mary,
 Yf any man be so hardy 11508
 To holde vs here ageyn owre wylle,
 I schall *wyth* hym play full ylle:
 Wyth my swyrde, þat well can byte,
 I schall hym full sore smyte.' 11512
- ¶ Then quod Amys: 'let be þy fare.
 Hyt ys not worþe to speke no mare.
 Wyth no strenkyþ of þyn arme
 Wyth þy wepyn þou schalt hym not harme. 11516
 But take þys swerde, þat hangyth here
 Besyde me on thys pyllere:
 Wyth that swyrde þou schalt hym tane,
 Yf euyr thou schalt hym slane.' 11520
- ¶ Then he drewe owte þat swyrde bryght:
 Thereþorow þen was all þat chaumbur lyȝt.
 In he put hyt agayne:
 Of that swyrde he was full fayne. 11524
 To Amys he wente forthe than
 And toke hym vp, as a man.
 Bothe vpon þat stede þey strode
 And full faste forþe þey rode. 11528
- ¶ As he can faste forwarde ryde,

Reynbown,
 however,
 was confident
 of success.

He was advised
 at least to take
 a sword hanging
 there against
 a pillar,
 which alone
 could wound
 the elvish knight.

He was glad to
 have that sword.

He and Amys
 now both
 bestrode
 Reynbown's
 horse.

¹ MS. *he*.

They soon saw
an armed knight
approaching
them.

They sye a knyght þem besyde,
A feyre knyght faste prekande
Well armyd wyth a spere in hys hande. 11532
'Syr knyzt,' he seyde, 'abyde a throwe.
Me þynkyþ, þou doyst ageyn þe lawe.
How were þou now so folehardye
To passe the watur so boldelye 11536
And come into my palays here
My preson to breke on þys manere?

[leaf 236 b, col. 1]

Thus dud neuer man ere
Wythowt my leue, or y here where. 11540
Bothe schulle ye dwelle wyth me:
Ye schall neuyr delyuyrd bee.

He threatened
them with death,

Here schall ye leue yowre hedys baþe,
Y yow plyght here, full rathe.' 11544
¶ Amys starte forthe full lyght.

and attacked
Reynbrown,

Syr Raynbowrn can to hym dyzt:
The elvysch knyzt smote hym full sare
Wyth that swyrde, that he bare, 11548

who defended
himself with all
his might.

And he to hym wyth all hys myght.
There beganne a grete fyght.

Reynbrown's
hauberk, shield,
and helmet,
were damaged,
but thinking of
his father Guy,

Hawberke and schylde he smote in twoo,
Hys helme of stele he dud alsoo. 11552

he struck his
adversary so
vehemently

Raynbowrn began to þynke than
On hys fadur Gye, the nobull man.
He smote as faste, as he myght drye,
The elvysch knyzt on þe helme so hye. 11556
He bowyd yn a fote the panne:

as to throw him
on the ground.
Having taken his
sword from him,
he was about to
cut off his head,

The elvysch knyzt to þe grownde yede þan.
The swyrde owt of hys hande he reuydde
And schulde haue smetyn of hys heuydde,¹ 11560
But then he began to crye:
'Syr Reynbowrn, for godys mercy!
Well y wote, thou art full ryght
Gyes sone, the nobull knyght. 11564

¹ MS. *hedde*.

- Sle me not, *and* on that couenande
 Y schall the 3elde all my lande
 And all, þat be in my prysown,
 And all þe gode in my bandown; 11568
 And feyre *and* well y schall þe brynge
 Owte of the hylle *wythowte* lettynge.
 Tho seyde Reynbown: 'be seynt Myghelle,
 Of thy tresowre kepe y no delle, 11572
 But delyuer þe prysoners echoon,
 For god,' he seyde, 'ryght anoon.'
 Into þe palays he went thare
 And delyuyrde lesse *and* mare: 11576
Wythowte peny or farthyng
 He dud them forthe brynge.
 Owt of þe wode into a playne
 He brozt þem all *and* went agayne. 11580
Raynbown was a yoyfull man,
 þat he had wonne Amys þan.
 Then belyve *wythowten* mare
 To þe castell can þey fare. 11584
 When þey were comyn to þe halle,
 Glade *and* blyþe were they all.
 The lady was glad *and* blythe
 And thankyd god oftesythe, 11588
 That sche sawe hur lorde so dere
 Comyn home boþe hoole and fere;¹
 For sche wende sekurlye
 Neuyr to haue seyn hym *wyth* eye. 11592
 Also Harrowde, þe gode knyght,
 Full faste he thankyd god almyȝt,
 That Raynbown þorow godys grace
 Passyd so well þat ylke place, 11596
 And also for Amys sake:
 Full grete yoye can þey make.
 ¶ Then he tolde Amys, how longe

when the knight
 offered to
 surrender all
 his property,
 and release his
 prisoners.

Reynbown
 declined the
 former,
 but accepted the
 latter.

[leaf 236 b, col. 2]

Reynbown and
 Amys

returned to the
 castle,

where all were
 glad of their
 arrival,
 especially the
 Lady.

Harrowde spoke

- to Amys of his
own sufferings,
He had bene in preson stronge
And suffurde peyne *and* vylene
For hys lordys sone so free,
11600
- and told him that
his deliverer was
Reynbrowne.
And how he was *syr* Reynbowrn),
That delyuyrde hym of pryson ;
11604
And seþyn he tolde hym all hys lyfe,
How he had be in grete stryfe,
And how þat Gye sethyn longe whyle
Was wente in exsyle.
11608
Betwene þem was yoye *and* gamyn)
That tyme, þat þey were all samyn).
- A knight brought
news
¶ Wyth that þer come a knyght prekande
And broȝt þem full gode tythande,
11612
That Barrarde was broȝt to grownde :
A pylgryme hym slewe in þat stownde
And defendyd erle Tyrry,
11616
But no man wyste, sekurly,
Fro whens he come ne fro what cuntre,
Nor wyste no man, what he myght be.
And at mony a man there
The emperowre dud enquire :
11620
' Yf Amys myȝt foundyn bee,
All hys londe he schall haue free.'
When Amys herde, þe dewke was slayne,
11624
He was neuer afore halfe so fayne.
He thankyd god in trynyte,
That he myght so venged bee.
All, that euer were there dwellyng,
11628
Had yoye of that tythyng.
¶ Harrowde *and* Reynbowrn) dwellyd þare
Thre dayes and no mare.
Erly on the fowrthe day
11632
They toke þer leue *and* wolde away ;
And the erle dud also :
Home to hys londys wolde he goo
And preyed them for charyte
- that Steward
Barrarde had
been killed by
an unknown
[leaf 237 a, col. 1]
pilgrim in defence
of Tyrry,
and that Amys
was again
welcome to his
former estate.
The fourth day
after, Harrowde
and Reynbrowne
took their leave
of Amys,

- To come *wyth* hym to hys cuntre 11636 who in vain
 And he wolde geue þem all bedene wanted them to
 All hys londys fre and clene. accompany him.
- But þey wolde of hym noþynge :
 They betoke hym to heuyn kyng. 11640
- A**fturward Amys *wyth* grete honowre Amys went to
 Into Almayn ȝede to þe emperowre, the Emperor's
 And he delyuyrd to hym all hys londe court.
 Frely into hys own honde, 11644
- And he hyt toke *wyth* gode chere
 And seruyd hym, as hys lorde dere.
 Harrawde and Reynbown come in hye Harrawde and
 Into Ynglonde warde¹ full hastylle. 11648 Reynbown on
 So longe þey had þat londe owt wente their way home
 And trauaylyd *wyth* gode entente : [leaf 237 a, col. 2]
- To Burgoyne comyn they were,
 There as Harrawde was knowyn ere. 11652
- That londe was all feryd than,
 And Harrowde askyd an vncowþe man,
 Why þat londe was so euyll dyght,
 And he hym tolde anon ryght, 11656
 That hyt was þorow þe prowde dewke Mylon, came into
 'That ys so stowte and so felon. Burgundy,
²He hath not lefte a fote of londe, which they found
 But a castell here nyehonde, 11660 quite devastated.
 That stondyth hye vpon þe rochere : They were told
 There he dwellyth *wyth* hys powere ; that Duke Mylon
 And all ys þorow a sowdyere, 11664 was at war with
 Of vncowthe londe a knyght full fere. an Earl,
 Soche oon sawe þou neuyr in no lande,
 That was so wyght a man of hande.
 Ȝonge he ys and mekyll of myght :
 Berde hath he noon, þat nobull knyght. 11668

¹ *warde* added over the line by the same hand in MS.

² The confusion in the following lines I think is owing to the translator, not to any scribe. See the note.

- Wyth* the erle he hath byn a yere
 And spedd full well on all manere.
 He hath vencowsyd the dewke thryes
 And slayne hys men on all wyse. 11672
- had recovered all
 his former losses. The castels, *pat* the erle hath lorne
 Many a day herebeforne,
 He hath *pem* wonne *porow* strenkyp of honde :
 In hys power ys all that londe. 11676
 Thorow hym hath the erle bote
 And put the dewke vndur fote.
- This youth used
 to keep a pass on
 a hill, where he
 had killed many
 passengers. 3ondur he dwellyth vpon *pe* hylle,
 There many a man hath spedde full ylle. 11680
 An hundurde men haue loste *pe* lyfe,
 That haue be there *wyth* hym in stryfe.
 A streyte passage ys holdyn thare :
 Yf any man schall forthe fare, 11684
 Hawberke or schelde he schall *pere* geue,
 Yf he wyll afturwarde leue.
- [leaf 237 b, col. 1] Yf any *marchande* passe or burges,
 He schall lese hys beste harnes. 11688
 And, yf he gruch anythyng,
 He schall be slayne *wythowte* dwellyng.
 Therfore hastely y yow say,
 That ye wynde a nodur way.' 11692
 ¶ Syr Reynbowrn answeryd than
 And speke, as an hardy man :
- Reynbrown was
 rejoiced at the
 thought of having
 now met with his
 match. 'Thankyd be Cryste Iesu of heuyn,
 That y haue fownde my make euyn. 11696
 Yf he aske of vs anythyng,
 I schall hym telle *wythowte* lettyng,
 That we haue of hys ryght noght,
 Nodur of vs he getyth ryght noght. 11700
 We wyll for owre lyuys fyght,
 Whedur we do *wyth* wronge or ryght.'
- Proceeding, they
 soon saw him. ¶ They *pen* wente forthe ther way
 But a whyle, as y yow say. 11704

- Vpon an hylle þey sawe þere stande
 A knyzt well armed full nerehande.
 Then seyde Reynbown: 'be my honde,
 3ondur y see my felowe stonde.' 11708
 He made hym redy for to fyght:
 To hym he wolde anon ryght.
 'Wyth hym to juste ys my longyng.'
- ¶ Quod Harrowde: 'wende on my blessyng.' 11712
 ¶ Raynbown rode þen wyth gode wyllē:
 The todur came towarde¹ the hylle.
 For pryde þer hertys wolde nere breke:
 They wolde nodur to odor oon worde speke. 11716
 They justed togedur a grete stownde,
 Tyll þey were boþe broght to grownde.
 They starte on fote *and* drewe þer brondys
 And leyde on wyth bothe ther hondys. 11720
 They hewe faste on helmys² *and* scheldys:
 The pecys flewe into the feldys.
 That ylke batell was full felle:
 [leaf 237 b, col. 2]
 The blode ranne down, as watur on welle. 11724
 Harrowde behelde þe knyghtys fyght:
 For Raynbown he preyed to god almyzt
 To kepe hym fro skape of hys lyfe;
 For he was in a grete stryfe. 11728
 Harrowde seyde, wythowte fayle,
 He sawe neuer a grettur batayle.
 ¶ 'Syr knyght,' quod þen Raynbown,
 'Abyde and here my resown. 11732
 Thou art full bolde *and* wyzt of hande:
 Telle me now, in what lande
 Thou were borne *and* in what cuntre
 And what name men calle þe. 11736
 Neuyr 3yt, but now thys throwe,
 Ne myght y fynde my felowe,

Reynbown made
 himself ready for
 the combat,

and the young
 knight came
 towards him down
 the hill.

Their battle was
 very violent.

Harrawde said he
 had never wit-
 nessed a greater.

Reynbown
 inquired

his opponent's
 name and
 country:

he confessed that
 he had now for
 the first time
 found his equal.

¹ *frowarde*? See the note.

² MS. *helme*.

If his opponent
would surrender,
they would be
friends for ever.

But the young
knight had no
mind to this :

he was sure of
killing not only
his adversary,

but what he
thought to be his
[leaf 238 a, col. 1]
adversary's
father, too.

The battle was
renewed.

That myzt me stande, but þou now here :
 Therefore y rede on feyre manere, 11740
 That þou the 3ylde here to me
 (My trowthe y schall plyght the,
 That we schall euer frendys be)
 And come wyth me to my cuntre : , 11744
 I schall þe geue castels *and* feys,
 Townes, borowghs *and* gode cyteys.¹
 ¶ 'Syr knyght,' he seyde, 'let be þy fare.
 So god me helpe owt of my care, 11748
 Of me schall þou wete nothyng
 For heste nor for no sermonyng :
 Thy hed schall of, be my crowne.
 Whereof makyst þou so longe sermowne? 11752
 Vpon thys hylle haue y reuydde
 Mony a man fro hys heuydde.¹
 Fownde y 3yt neuyr no knyght,
 That so well plesyd me in fyght, 11756
 But well y wote, or we haue done,
 I schall þe geue full euyll dome
 And þat olde churle also
 (He ys thy fadur), so mote y goo. 11760
 For sothe, lytyll he louyd the,
 When he þe sende to fyght wyth me.
 I schall hym make a gode present
 Of thy hedde wyth gode entent : 11764
 Then schall y hys berde so schake,
 That hys neck schall all tocrake.'
When Raynbowrn vndurstode ryzt þore,
 þat he wolde reuerens hym no more, 11768
 As faste as he myght drye,
 Vp he toke hys swyrde in hye.
 On hys helme he smote so faste,
 That a quarter all tobraste. 11772
 He was so stonyed, he myzt not stonde :

¹ MS. *hedde*.

- Adown he felle on boþe hys honde.
 Vp he start full of tene
 And smote Raynbowrn wyth wrap, y wene. 11776
 They faght wyth so grete yre,
 That owt of þe helme flewe þe fyre.
 Soche strokys gaf þe knyghtys stowte,
 That þe hylle donyed all abowte. 11780
 A felle fyght then there was :
 Vndur hevyn neuer gretter nas.
 Longe myȝt they not fyght soo,
 But þat oon schulde þat other sloo. 11784
 ¶ Harrowde sawe, wythowte fayle,
 Ayther can other so faste assayle.
 He cowde not chese the bettur þan :
 For them he was a sory man. 11788
 He seyde : ‘hyt were grete dele *and* care,
 Yf oþer schulde other mysfare.’
 He went betwene them in hye
 And seyde : ‘*syr* knyght, for seynt Mary,
 Wythdrawe þe now, as a goode felowe,
 And speke wyth me a lytyll throwe. 11792
 I rede, thou leue now þys fyght
 And acorde þe wyth thys knyght. 11796
 He ys ryche *and* of grete powere.
 Of landys and ledys on all manere
 He schall þe geue grete plente :
 All at thy wylle schall hyt bee. 11800
 I rede, yf þou wyll me trowe,
 Thou do þe in hys mercy now.’
 ¶ And he answeyrd : ‘þou olde hore,
 Say þou me wythowt more, 11804
 So helpe þe god *and* seynt Mary,
 What ys þy name ? telle me in hye.
 Syth the tyme, y spake wyth þe,
 All y qwake, as leef on tre : 11808
 For drede of þe thys ylke day

Harrawde
thought it a pity
that either of
them should be
slain.

He advised the
stranger

[leaf 238 a, col. 2]
to surrender.

The youth in-
quired Har-
rawde's name,

for he had such
awe of him as to
quake like a leaf
on a tree.

All my strenkyth now ys away.
 Syth y myght armes bere,
 Ferde of oon was y neuer ere. 11812
 But for hys name y comawnde þe,
 That suffurde depe vpon a tre :
 Telle me, in what maner of wyse
 I haue thys drede *and* þys fayntyse. 11816
 Other art þou þe deuyll of helle,
 That art comyn me to qwelle ?
 Or what þou wylt, for charyte,
 Euyll or gode, now telle hyt me.' 11820
 ¶ 'Nay,' seyde Harowde, 'do wey þy fare ;
 For of¹ me schalt þou wyte no mare,
 But thou telle me beforne,
 What ys þy name *and* where þou were borne. 11824
 Afturward may thou here,
 What y am, that stondyth here.
 Sethyn may þou wytt of þys knyzt,
 What he ys, anon ryght. 11828
 We² schall þe telle all þys þynge,
 Wyth þat þou make to vs no lesynge.'
 [leaf 238 b, col. 1] ¶ And he answeyrd : 'ye schall not here
 He then said For drede of hym in no manere, 11832
 But for to wyt, for what þynge
 I haue þys drede *and* þys qwakyng.
 Y was borne in Ynglonde
 In Wallyngforde, y vndurstonde. 11836
 My fadur was a doghty knyght :
 Harrowde of Ardern, for soþe, he hyzt.
 When he went owt of þat cuntre
 To seeke hys lordys soon so fre, 11840
 That marchandys stale on wykkyd manere,
 Sethyn more, then vii yere,
 The erle of Leycestur kepyd me

But Harrawde
 would learn his
 first.

[leaf 238 b, col. 1]
 He then said

he was
 Harrawde's son,

¹ *of* over the line in the same hand.

² *Wh* blotted out before *We*.

- And louyd me wyth herte fre. 11844
 When y was a yonge squyer,
 Wyth hym y was in grete power.
 Yf y dud any skathe
 Or ony man wyth me were wraþe, 11848
 I schulde þen haue vpbrayde
 And for my fadur be myssayde,
 For y wolde not forthe fare
 To seke my fadur, where he ware, 11852
 Yn any londe yf he were slane¹
 Or he were in þreson tane.
 Therof was y repreuyd ay,
 But y bethoght me on a day, 11856
 To seke my fadur y wolde fonde :
 For noþynge wolde y wonde.
 ¶ To Wallyngforde y wente prekande :
 My fadur armes there y fonde, 11860
 Hys hawberke and hys gode stede,
 Hys schylde, hys swyrde *and* hys oþer wede.
 Y made myselfe a knyght than :
 Ne tolde y arste neuer man. 11864
 Forthe y went on þys manere :
 Y haue hym soght bothe ferre *and* nere.
 Sethyn y haue redyn *and* gone
 Yn straunge londys many oon, 11868
 In Lumbardy and in Spayne,
 In Sesoyne² and in Almayne :
 3yt herde y neuer speke of³ no where,
 But y haue soght my fadur þere. 11872
 ¶ Sethyn y come to thys londe,
 I fonde an erle faste werrande :
 He was stroyed þorow þe dewke Mylon,
 All hys londe, castell *and* towne, 11876
 But thys castell besyde þe see,

who had gone in
quest of his
father.

[leaf 238 b, col. 2]

Having been in
vain in many
countries,

he entered the
Earl's service.

¹ MS. *slayne*. ² MS. *Sesyon*.

³ of omitted in MS.

- There de dwellyth *and* hys meyne.
 I come to hym in hys mystere :
 I haue hym holpe *wyth* my powere. 11880
 Then had he, that knyght free,
 Thretty knyghtys in hys meyne :
 Now hath he iii hundurde wyght
 And other men well dyght. 11884
 Hys londe ys well wonne agayn
 And hys enmyes take *and* many slayn).
- Keeping the pass, Here on þe hylle well ofte y stande
 Agayne þe men, þat passe þe londe. 11888
- he used to ask
 every passenger
 news of his
 father :
 never hearing
 anything,
 I aske euery man, that y fynde,
 Of my fadur some tythyng,
 But herde y neuer man speke *wyth* mowþe,
 That oght of hym telle cowthe. 11892
- he often became
 so angry as to
 kill them.
 Therfore ofte was y wrathe
 And many a man y haue done skape.’
 ¶ Harrowde herkenyd hym ryzt þore
 And *wyth* hys eyen he wepyd sore. 11896
 Quod Harrowde : ‘leue *syr* knyght,
 Telle me þy name, for god almyzt.’
 ‘Asslake,’ he seyde, ‘ys my name.
 Here y haue had full grete schame.’ 11900
- Upon further
 inquiry he said
 his name was
 Asslake.
 On this, ¶ Harrowdes herte wolde nere breke :
 Vnneþe a worde myght he speke.
- [leaf 239 a, col. 1] ‘Asslake, what haste thou done ?
 I am þy fadur, þou art my sone. 11904
 I am Harrowde, þat þou haste soght :
 Iesu hath me hedur broght.
 Y haue suffurde paynes stronge
 To seke my lordys sone full longe. 11908
 Loo, he ys here, *syr* Raynbowrne,
 The nobull knyztys sone, *syr* Gyown).
- and told his son
 that he had
 fought with
 Reynbrown.
Wyth hym þou haste foghtyn longe :
 Ye be bope wyght and stronge. 11912
 Falle down to hys fote in hye

- And on thy¹ kne þou crye hym mercy.
 3ylde hym þy swyrde in þys place
 And do the all in hys grace.' 11916
- ¶ When he wyste, syr Asslake,
 That hys fadur to hym spake
 And Gyes sone was redy there,
 That he faght so faste wyth ere : 11920
 He had grete yoye in þat stownde
 And on hys kneys he felle to grownde.
 He 3yldyd to hym hys swyrde bryght
 And bad hym do, as hyt was ryght : 11924
 'Smyte of my hedde at thy wylle.
 Thys trespas ys boþe grete and grylle.
 Or ellys take homage here
 To serue the, as my lorde dere.' 11928
- ¶ When Raynbowrn harde, þere he stode,
 That hyt was Harrowdys sone þe gode,
 He toke hym vp be hys hande
 And kyssyd hym sore wepande. 11932
 Seþyn he kyste hys fadur dere :²
 Ther yoye was gret on all manere.
 ¶ Sythyn Asslake ladde þem well þare :
 Before þe erle þey came full 3are. 11936
 He tolde þe erle euery dele,
 How he had fownde hys fadur well
 And Gyes sone of Warwyke : [leaf 239 a, col. 2]
 'In all þe worlde ys none hym lyke.' 11940
 The erle of hym was glad and blythe
 And honowryd hym oftesythe
 And profurde hym grete honowre,
 Boþe feyre castels and ryche towre. 11944
 But þerof wolde he ryght noght :
 Into Ynglonde was all hys thoght.
 They ne stynte ne þey ne blanne,

Asslake, falling
 down at Reyn-
 brown's feet,
 implored his
 mercy.

Reynbrown

took him up,
 and kissed him
 with tears in
 his eyes.

Asslake conducted
 them to the Earl,

who in vain,
 by liberal offers,
 tried to induce
 them to stay
 with him.

¹ *thyn* originally, but *n* blotted out in MS.

² *ther* (*r* not quite complete) blotted out before *dere* in MS.

	Tyll they to the see came.	11948
	A schyp they fownde all in hye :	
	Ouyr they passyd full hastelye.	
They came to London,	¶ Ryght to London can þey fare :	
	The kyng þey fownde redy þare,	11952
	And all þe beste of þat cyte	
	Welcomyd them to þat cuntre.	
	They honowred þem on all manere	
	And made þem ryche <i>and</i> of grete power	11956
	And gaf þem all ther own lande	
	And well more into ther hande ;	
	And þey hyt toke <i>wyth</i> game <i>and</i> glee	
where they remained for three days. On the fourth they set off for Warwick,	And soyorned there dayes thre	11960
	And toke leue on þe fowrþe day :	
	To Warwyk þey toke the way.	
	Of þer men þey toke homage.	
where they were joyfully received.	Glad was all the baronage,	11964
	That þey were comyn hole <i>and</i> fere :	
	They þankyd god on all manere.	
Harrawde and his son repaired then to Wallingford.	¶ Harrowde to Wallyngforde wende	
	And Asslake, hys sone hende :	11968
	There wolde they dwelle and be	
	Wyth hys lady feyre and fre ;	
	For he had be in trauell ferre	
	Loos and pryce to wyne in werre.	11972
May God grant us the bliss of heaven.	¶ God for hys names seuyñ	
	Graunt vs all þe blysse of heuyñ	
[leaf 239 b, col. 1]	And gyf vs grace, þat hyt so bee :	
Amen.	Amen, amen, for charyte !	11976

NOTES.

Line 10. The subject of the sentence *they* is omitted. Cf. ll. 65—67 :

Sche had *maysturs* at hur honde,
The wysest men of that londe,
And (*viz.* THEY) taght hur astronomye.

783-4 : Ordyr of knyght þou dud *me* take,
And (*viz.* Y) passyd the see for thy sake.

4749-50 : Tyrrye seruyd *dewke Loyere*,
And (*viz.* HE, dewke Loyere) hym louyd.

10073-5 : *An aungell* he sende to hym full euyñ
Hym to cōmfort wyth mery steuyñ,
And (*viz.* HE, the angel) seyde.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1250 :

Wonder *him* þouȝt, and (*viz.* HE) seyð þo.

Ib. 4523-4 : Treuþe bitven *hem* is plizt,
And after (*viz.* þAI) kist anon riȝt.

Ib. 9367-9 : þemperour sent after him þo
Wiþ þe *fischer* and *oper mo*,
And (*viz.* þAI) brouȝt him, saunfayle.

Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 1038-9 :

Boute ȝif þe lord *him* hider ladde,
Oþer (*viz.* HE) of him sum leue hadde.

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 106 :

. . . he sawe *his lorde Guy*
Vpon his stede swithe comyng
And in his honde his swerde keruyng,
And (*viz.* HE, Guy) was assailed with wolues.

Copland's Guy, M iiiii :

. . . i se *hym* stand in awe,
And (*viz.* HE) putteth forth no prowde sawe.

Triamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1082 :

There he sawe *the beste* abyde,
And (*viz.* IT) had slayn hys howndys two.

Generydes, ed. Aldis Wright, 2395-6 :

And whan this stede to *Auferius* was brought,
And (*viz.* HE) wist, fro whense he came.

I thought it expedient to quote these examples, as some editors, in such cases, have unnecessarily inserted pronouns. But, e. g., there is no need to add anything in Havelok, 14-15:

Fil me a cuppe of ful god ale,
And wile drinken, her y spelle,

where Skeat reads *And y wile*; or in King Horn, ed. Lumby, 1267-8

Pu me to kniȝt houe,
And kniȝthod haue proued,

where Mätzner (*Sprachproben*, I. 227) reads *haue y proued*.

39. *Well he louyd feyre stedys*. The French original:

Bons cheualers mult ama.

Cf. the Caius MS., p. 2:

Good knyghtis he loued, ywys.

The author of our version evidently mistook *cheualers* for *chevaus*.

58-59. A slight anacoluthon, the translator going on as if he had begun *Sche had a vysage*, &c. Cf. ll. 4290 and 7409.

60. *3ere* = ere, O.E. *ær*. Cf. *3er*, 4570; *3ar*, 10432; *3ore*, 7914; *3erre* = O.E. *æror*, 8422; *3erly* = early, O.E. *ærlíce*, 9274, 9293, 9438, 10089, 11255, 11277; *3erlye*, 2401, 4957, 5849, 9276, 9525; *3arly*, 240; *3orthe* = earth, O.E. *eorðe*, 2825, 5066, 7250, 7255, 8163, 9643, 10349; *3erthe*, 8702, 9641; *3erthely* = earthly, O.E. *eorðlic*, 9370, 9414; *3erthelye*, 9371. *3erbes* = herbs, O.F. *erbes*, *herbes*, Lat. *herbas*, 10614. *3orke* = York, O.E. *Eoforwic*, 6961, 6965. In those words the parasitical sound is, through the whole poem, uniformly represented by *3*, never by *y*. But we find *yow*, *yowre*, *yowres*. It is now generally asserted that *3* in M.E. *zede*, *zode* is also parasitical, i. e. that it is derived from O.E. *eode*, not from *geeode*. But I do not see any reason why we should not derive it from *geeode*. That *ge-* did not become *i-*, but *3*, is owing to its being immediately followed by a vowel; cf. (Stratmann, s. v. *3eeten*) the participles past *izeten*, *izete*, *iyete*, *iyette* = N.H.G. *ge-gessen*. Nor is there any difficulty in the meaning. Mr Price's note in Warton's History of E. Poetry (1840), II. 73, is not quite correct; for *geeode* often means the same as *eode*. Cf. *Beðwulf* (ed. Grein), 2675-7:

ac se maga geonga under his mæges scyld
elne *geeode*, þā his āgen wæs
glêdum forgrunden.

Ib. 1966-7:

hi sið ðrugon,
elne *geodon* tō þæs þe, &c.

and in a glossary of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, cessit *geeode*.

67. *And taght*. See note to l. 10.

68. I need hardly mention that *arsmetryck* does not mean *ars metrica*, but *arithmetica*. Cf. Tyrwhitt's note to C. T., 1900. Of the 13 instances quoted in Mätzner's *Wörterbuch*, s. v. *arsmetike*, only five want the second *r*. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 3:

And they hir lerned of astronomye,
Of *arsmeotrik* and of geometrye.

Mätzner refers only to the Provençal *arismetica* and the Spanish *arismetica*, *aritmética*, but the word occurs in O.F. as well; for in the corresponding passage of the French original we find:

Qi la aprenoient de astronomie,
De *arismetik*, de geometrie;

and it is curious to observe that the Harl. MS. has:

De *arismetrike* e de jeometrie.

70. *warre and wyse*. Cf. l. 740, *so ware a man and wys*; l. 1586, *of batell bothe war and wyse*; l. 7171, *warre and wyse*; l. 7648, *ware and wyse*; Chaucer's C. T. 309:

A sergeant of the lawe *war and wys*.

Generydes, ed. Wright, 1084:

For he was *ware and wise*, i yow ensure.

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 248:

Had i bene *so ware and so wyse*.

The two adjectives sometimes change places; cf. l. 253, *wyse and war*; Loneliche's Holy Grail, p. 104, l. 98:

Be hise clerkis, that weren bothe *wis and war*;

and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I. 245, l. 2129.

73-74. The punctuation of our poem is often no easy task. I understood the passage to imply that Felice thought herself too good for any one of her wooers. But perhaps l. 73 is intended as a parenthesis. There is the same ambiguity in the French (Herbing, 64-67):

Contes et ducs la requeroient,
De maintes teres pour lui venoient,
Mes nul de eus aver ne vouleit,
Pour ceo que tant bele esteit.

76. The same corruption, l. 10675. Cf. the French (Cambridge MS.):

Felice fu la Bele apellee;

and the Caius MS., p. 4:

Felice la Bele hir name is.

77. *Of all maydenys sche bare þe flowre*. Cf. l. 814:

Of all the worlde to bere the flowre.

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7702:

In warld þai bere þe flour.

Copland's Guy, Fi: And that thou bere the maystry
And floure of all cheualry.

Ib. G iiiii: And of knightes he bare the floure.

Cf. below, l. 4845, and Copland's Guy, F iii:

He had the flower of chyualrye.

100. *They*, the plural, though *hym* precedes. Such slight inconsistencies in the use of the numbers occur pretty often through all the periods of the English language; cf. *Anzeiger für deutsches Alterthum*, I. 119. Similar cases are, ll. 3939-40, there was *none* so lytull . . ., but *they*; cf. 7103-4, 7867-70, 9856-8; ll. 4919-20, *many a knyght*, that *were*;

ll. 6632-3 and 6935-6, *no man*, but *they*; 6979-82, *every knyght . . . þem*. The reverse occurs l. 3490, where *hys* refers to *all men* in l. 3488.

108. I think there can be no doubt but *wythowten fame* is one of the many M.E. expletives denoting 'certainly.' I am, however, at a loss how to explain it. Perhaps *fame* stands for *defame* (cf. note to l. 8229), and we may compare *wythowte blame* (cf. note to l. 3069).

119. I question the correctness of *on a day*. The French work does not help.

De sa coupe le fist seruir,
En sa chaumbre le fist girir.

Is on a day miswritten for *every day*?

122. *for no newe*, viz. cup-bearer, *κατὰ σύνεισιν*. The whole line is the translator's own.

132. *ane* is *any*, as l. 3, *mane* is *many*; cf. *harde*, 573; *maistree*, 656; *boldele*, 1972; *compane*, 2367; *begle*, 2872; *manleye*, 3276; *vydene*, 4176, 7390; *fyfte*, 4213; *Tyrre*, 4528; *cheualre*, 4845; *Payue*, 5571; *vgle*, 6834; *sore*, 7656; *wytterle*, 7736; *Rosse*, 8422; *hongre*, 9412; *gylte*, 9694; *hastelye*, *hardely*, *passim*.

133. *yoyfull*. *y* for French *j* (or *g*) occurs in *yoye*, 366, 742, 776, 1274, 1350, 1355, 1358, &c.; *yoyfull*, 1294, 2183, 2848; *yolye*, 552, 1676, 8098; *yolytee*, 3801, 4834, 5376; *yelowse*, 801; *yoyne*, 10234; *yugement*, 672; *harbenyowre*, 750; *conyure*, 4465; *soyorned*, 9827, 11960.

163. *god the see*; cf. ll. 5697, 5795, 6035.

164. *lorde* = father; cf. ll. 170, 309, 8492.

169. *hyght* is called, but e. g. 140 *hyzt* was called; cf. Tyrwhitt's note to C. T. 1016. The history of this word is very curious. In O.E. we find *hātan*, to bid, to call, to promise, with the preterit *heht* and *hêt*, and the participle past *hâten*. Hence, *ic eom hâten*, I am called; *ic wes hâten*, I was called. There is a single instance of *hâtan* meaning to be called, in Cædmon's Genesis (ed. Grein), 344:

cwæð, þæt se hēhsta hātan sceolde Satan siððan,

but that part of the poem is very likely translated from the Old Saxon. Cf. 'Der Heliand und die angel-sächsische Genesis,' von Eduard Sievers. Halle a/S., 1875. But *hātan* has also preserved an organic passive form, *hâtte* or *hätte* = Gothic *haitada*, I am called and he is called; but also, being erroneously considered as a weak preterit, I was called (plural *hâtton*). In M.E. all these forms continue to be used, and *haten* or *hoten* very often means 'to be called'; cf. An Old English Miscellany, ed. Morris, 89, 1-2:

Hwile wes seynte Peter icleped Symon :
þo queþ vre louerd him to : ' þu schalt *hoten* ston.'

Gûy, ed. Turnbull, 93:

'Mi fader,' he seyd, '*hat* Suward';

but also Layamon, 13852:

þe Anglis is *ihaten*.

An Old E. Misc., 49, 436:

þat *hatte* Kaluarie.

Cheuelere Assigne, ed. Gibbs, 232 :

And þe ȝonȝur is my qwene, Betryce she *hette*.

The preterit of *hoten* is both *het* and *heȝt*, *hiȝt*. Genesis and Exodus, ed. Morris, 2590 :

And his moder *het* Iacabeȝ.

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8655 :

Ich hadde a felawe, þat *hiȝt* Gij.

But besides these organic forms others are employed in M.E. (1.) Besides *heȝt*, *hiȝt*, we find *heȝte*, *hiȝte*, owing, it appears, to the analogy with *het*, *hette*; cf. Misc., 48, 377 :

Pilates nom þo Jhesu Crist and hyne *heyhte* bete.

Chaucer's C. T., Prol., 616 :

That was a pomely gray and *highte* Scot.

(2.) *hette* and *hiȝte*, being mistaken for organic weak preterits, gave rise not only to the participles past *het*, *hiȝt*, but also to the infinitives *heten*, *hiȝten* (cf. *meten*, *mette*, *met*; *liȝten*, *liȝte*, *liȝt*, &c.). But this confusion does not appear to have taken place till the 14th century. Cf. l. 2941 of our poem :

Y haue *behet* hyt to my lemman.

Ib. 3103 :

Y haue hym *behet* my doghtur dere.

Cheuelere Assigne, 18 :

And þat honged in his herte, i *heete* þe for sothe.

Cf. *behetynge*, l. 3138 of our poem. As to *hiȝten* cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8355 :

þe soudan treweli haþ me *hiȝt*,
His lond ȝif me he schold.

In the present tense it occurs very often in our poem; cf. 809, 5478, 5830, 5973, 6053, 8216, 8617, 8801, 10849, 11337, 11459. Other examples are collected by Mätzner in his note to *Sprachproben*, I. 377, l. 197; but he is wrong in identifying this *hiȝten* with O.E. *hyhtan*, sperare.

175. *wythowten lett*, without delay; the same expletive, 1664, 4394, 6350, 10132, 10902 = *wythowte lettynge*, 1009, 2907, 5898, 6742, 8015, 11570, 11698.

181-2. *That . . . there* = whose, *there* being N.E. *their*. Cf. Mätzner's Grammar, III², 549; Morris's Chaucer (Clarendon Press, Third Edition), p. xxxv, xxxvi. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5800 :

To a kniȝt, þat neuer *his* better nas.

Copland's Guy, Aa i :

And all is, certes, for Guy,

That his fellow sometyme was i.

227. *drawe* (cf. 2639, 2665, 3123) = *drawe wyth horsys*, 2545, 8212.

237. *newe* is a verb; *begynne* may be followed by an infinitive without *to*. Cf. l. 6176 :

Then beganne hur sorowe to *newe*.

Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV. 237, ll. 253-6 :

O tong, allas, so often herebiforne
 Hastow made
 many a maydes sorwes for to *newe*.

Ib. V. 182, 905 :

And every day hir beaute *newed*.

In all these examples *newe* means 'to become new.'

243-6. These four lines render two French, which I will quote from the Harleian MS. :

En vne chambre sen est ale,
 La dedeins sen est ferme.

wyste may be a mistake for *was*, but I do not know what the translator meant by *hys grete prisoune*.

253. *The leche was wyse and war*. From ll. 249-52 we learn that the Earl sent Guy *lechys fele*, many physicians, none of whom knew the nature of Guy's illness. In l. 265 we are told that *the lecheys* could not help him. Such being the case, I think it impossible that in l. 253 the singular *leche* should have been used by the translator, especially as he had before him (according to the Harleian MS.) :

Puis li *ent* demande,
 Ou le mal li ad tant greue.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 361 :

Hij asked him, where his iuel stode ;

the Caius MS., p. 16 :

Than *they* asked, how it with him stode.

So we must alter *leche* to *lechys*, but we need not alter *was* to *were* ; for *was* occurs as a plural, 1024, 3380, 4355, 6026, 6342, 6549, 6934.

298. *Ther was wyth hur maydyns but oon*. Although *was* may be the plural (cf. the preceding note), *maydyns* is hardly correct. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, V. 156, ll. 39, 40 :

For there is *phisicien but one*,
 That may me heale.

Ib. V. 162, l. 237 :

For i ne *knewe* never *god but oon*.

So I think we must read *maydyn*.

313. *rede*, tell ; cf. l. 10733 :

As ye haue herde me *rede* or *pys*

rede has this meaning, especially when connected with *singe*. Cf. Altenglische Legenden, ed. Horstmann, p. 3, ll. 3-4 :

Ane partie ichulle eou *rede*
 Of is liif and of is childhede.

Ib. p. 19, ll. 531-2 :

And ovre eldore also hadde
 Of him *isoungue* and *iradde*.

Genesis and Exodus, 34 :

Queðir so hic *rede* or *singe*.

Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV. 68, l. 516 :

Of which he neyther *rede* kan nor *synge*.

Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 8 :

þat herkneþ, what y schal *rede*.

Copland's Guy, X ii :

Now of duke Otton i shall you *read*.

But there can be no doubt about *rede*, to tell, and *rede*, to read, being the same word. M.H.G. *lesen* is also used in both senses. I am also quite sure that the meaning 'to read' is the older in English as well as in German ; it is really the only one that occurs in O.E. *rædan*. It is now generally asserted that *rædan* is a bad spelling for **rédan* = Gothic *rôdjan*, Icel. *ræða*. But Ettmüller, who in his *Lexicon Anglosaxonicum*, pp. 250-1, originated this opinion, could not but confess : "Vox *rédan* saepissime quidem, sed male, *rædan* scribitur." But the general spelling *rædan* is quite correct. This follows from the preterit of the verb in M.E. *radde*; for O.E. *ê*, when the *umlaut* of *ô*, never becomes *a* in M.E. preterits ; cf. *bleden*, *bledde*; *feden*, *fedde*; *speden*, *spedde*. Thus O.E. *rædan* is not connected with Gothic *rôdjan*, but with *rédan*, Germ. *raten*. In O.E. we find (1) a strong verb *rædan*, *reord* (*réd*) *consulere*, *suadere*, *iubere*, *regere*, *possidere*; (2) a weak one *rædan*, *rædde*, which adds to the meanings of the strong one those of 'divinare, explicare, legere.' The strong Icelandic verb *ráða* has all the meanings of the weak O.E. *rædan*. Cf. *Hávamál*, 144 :

Veiztú, hvé rista skal? veiztú, hvé *ráða* skal?

i. e. "doest thou know how to write (runic characters)? doest thou know how to read?"

346. *wythowtyn stryfe*, without dispute; cf. 8660, 9545; Copland's Guy, I iii :

To Heraude they smote, without stryfe.

I take this opportunity to point out a very common mistake. M.E. *strif*, N.E. *strife* is not O.E. *strið*. Although the change of *th* to *f* is known from the Russian language, and is pretty common in the pronunciation of English children, and even occurs in such spellings as *afurst* (for *afurst*, *affurst*; see Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I. 132, 2), or *swyfe* (for *swyfe*, Caius MS. of Guy, p. 255), yet M.E. *strif* cannot but be O.F. *estriſt*. The preterit *strof* does not exclude the possibility of *striven* being of French origin : see note to l. 4244.

349. *kepe*, care for; cf. ll. 5950, 6727, 8334.

356. *yowre*, but l. 361 *pou*. The rules observed by the author of William of Palerne and some others (see Skeat's W. of P., xlii.), are often neglected in our poem, e. g. Guy, addressing the Earl, uses *thou*, l. 379; Guy to his father, l. 461, *yow*; but l. 463, *thy*; Guy to Duke Segwin, l. 1699, *thou*; but l. 1701, *yow*; Segwin to Guy, *ye*, l. 1785; but *thee*, l. 1790; Guy to the Emperor, l. 2451, *the*; l. 2452, *pyn*; l. 2453-4, *the*; l. 2455, *yow*; l. 2457, *py*; l. 2459, *ye* and *yowre*; l. 2461, *the*; &c.

365. *Gyeowne*. Originally in French the nominative of the name was *Gui* (or *Guis*), the accusative *Guion*; but in the French Romance *Gui* is used also as an accusative, and, on the other hand, *Guion* also as a nominative. The English translators follow the French author's example.

367. *spake wyth mowthe*; the same rather pleonastic phrase, 7379, 7665, 11891; cf. *see wyth eye*, 540, 7388, 11592; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7178; Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 647; *loke wyth eye*, 7736, 7742; *see wyth syght*, 8666; *wepe (grete) wyth eyen*, 1349, 3794, 4211, 6058, 6792, 6794, 11896; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1542, 1570, 4055, 5970, 7293, 8554, 9593, 10412.

385. *yede hym*; *hym* is what is called the 'ethic' dative; cf. Mätzner's Gramm., II², pp. 69-70, 227. Cf. l. 398, *hym yede*; 1749, *than hym spake the emperowre*; 5245, *tho hym spake the dewke Loyere*; *hym thought*, 4765, 6223; *Thou þe ne holde hyt for no fabull*, 10982; *he hym wonde*, 3872; *we wyll hye* vs, 762; cf. 1122, 1606, 2716, 3078, 3125, &c., &c.; *haste me*, 4180, 4435; *play hym*, 3025, 6412, 7048; *downtyd hym*, 7539; &c.

389. *oon* = *on*; the same spelling, 3734.

387—422. Neither the French original nor the Auchinleck and Caius MSS. have anything corresponding to this whole passage. The only copy of Copland's Guy that I could examine, wants the first twenty leaves.

419. *weyzt*; a better spelling occurs l. 5430:

To reste þer horsys a lytull *wyght*;

and l. 11146: Abyde now a lytull *wyght*.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8261 (cf. 8346):

Ac lete me drink a litel *wizt*.

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 3:

Of hir beaute yet a litell *wighte*.

Ib. p. 182: And abyde a lytill *wight*.

wyght is N.E. *whit*.

436. *3yt haste þou not wonnen þy schone*. Cf. Sir Percevall of Galles, ed. Halliwell (Thornton Romances), 1589-96:

The(n) said Percevall the wighte:

"3if i be noghte 3itt knyghte,
Thou salle halde, that thou highte,
For to make me ane."

Than saide the kyng full sone:
"Ther salle other dedis be done,
And thou salle *wynne thi schone*
Appone the sowdane."

Triamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1237-9:

To day was y maked knyght.
Othyr schalle he sle me sone
Or on hym y schalle *wynne my schone*.

Ipomydon, ed. Weber (2, 316), 977-8:

That day he taught hym so to done,
That worthely he *wanne his shone*.

Le Bone Florence of Rome, ed. Ritson (3, 28), 655:

At the furste *wynnyng of ther schone*.

The Squire of Lowe Degré, 171-74:

For, and ye my love should wynde,
With chyvalry ye must begynne,
And other dedes of armes done,
Through whiche ye may *wynne your shone*.

MS. Lincoln, A i. 17, f. 149 (quoted in Halliwell's Dictionary, s. v. *shone*): And how that thir knyghtis has *wone thair schone*.

"A young or new-made knight was say'd to *win his spurs*, when he first achiev'd some gallant action. To *win his shoes* is a phrase of similar import, but of less dignity;" Ritson, Metric. Rom., 3, 341. Cf. the Squire of L. D., 258-61:

And, whan that ye, syr, thus have done,
Than are ye worthy to *were your shone*;
Than may ye say, syr, by good ryght,
That you ar proved a venturous knyght.

Cf. also the German phrase, *sich die sporen verdienen*, which now is used in a general sense.

465. *sauns fayle*; cf. 1421, 1671, 1708, 1829, 2097, 3240, 5200, 7631, 10327 = *wythowten fayle*, 593, 1190, 1630, 1720, 1783, 1802, 2221, 2313, 2485, 3360, 3558, 4736, 4930, 5206, &c.

465-6. *preue of turnement*; cf. 468 and Mätzner's Gramm., II², 264.

471. *pur charyte*; cf. 1225, 2519, 2565, 4304, 4551, 4903, 5117, 5124, 5367, 6291, 7204, 7263, 9579, 9677, 10084, 10099, 10105 = *for charyte*, 5700, 6538, 6612, 6684, 9166, 11254, 11456, 11635, 11819, 11976. Cf. notes to l. 7154 and l. 11976.

491. *wythowten ore*, without using an oar.

503. *At a burges hows of the town* = at the house of a burges of the town; *burges* is flexionless in the genitive singular, because ending in *s*. Cf. *hys hors fete*, 4868; *hys hors neck*, 8013; *for the holy crosse loue*, 6606; *hyt was Arcules swyrde*, 7977; *the kyng Harkes lande*, 8706. But the termination of the genitive singular is omitted also in some other cases: *hys stede halse*, 3894; *for Mary sone*, 2797; but (MS. *be*) *Mary sone*, 7853. The genitives of these words in O.E. are *stēdan*, *Marian*, in early M.E. *steden*, *Marien*, hence at last *stede*, *Mary[e]*. We find, however, besides *the emperowre sone*, 574; *the sowdon sone*, 7501; *to Faber chaumber*, 7507; *of hys swyrde dynt*, 8863. But the frequent genitives *fader*, *brother*, &c., are, of course, different.—The construction is the same as e.g. in Chaucer's C. T., prol. 15, 16, *from every schires ende of Engelond*. Cf. l. 574, *the emperowre sone of Almayn*; 8448 and 11939, *Gyes sone of Warwyke*; 9285, *for godys loue of myght*. Compare also note to l. 687.

525. *proves* = *proues*, prowess ; cf. l. 1312.

550. *wythowt lesynge*, without falsehood. Cf. 558, 738, 2582, 2908, 3316, 4320, 5282, 6971, 10352, 11464. In all these passages the author, or a person whom he introduces, asserts that he is telling the truth. In ll. 3186 and 7792, *telle me wythowt lesynge*, somebody is desired to tell nothing but truth. *Wythowte[n] lese (lees)* = O.E. *bûtan leāse*, has the same import, but does not occur so often ; cf. ll. 3807, 10695, 10751.

559. *Guy . . . and hys odor men*, i. e. Guy and his men too. Cf. ll. 6637-8.

He dud delyuer to hym hys stede
And also all hys *odur* wede.

10367-8 : The kyng Anlafe was well woo
And hys *odur* folke echoon alsoo.

11861-2 : Hys hawberke and hys gode stede,
Hys schylde, hys swyrde, and hys *oper* wede.

Myrc, Instructions for Parish Priests, ed. Peacock, ll. 752-3, *seynt Myrhele and all oper apostles*. But it is possible that there is a defect in this passage, *angeles and seynt Peter and all oper* having been omitted by the scribe.—It is known that the Romance languages use the Latin *alter* in a similar way after *nos* and *vos* (Diez, Gramm., III², 46-47). Some Teutonic languages admit a pleonastic *other* in comparative sentences. Cf. *þrymskviða*, 15 :

þá kvað þat Heimdallr, hvítastr ása,
vissi hann vel fram, sem vanir *aðrir*,

i. e. he knew future things as the *vanir* did ; for Heimdallr was not one of the *vanir*. Cf. also Hartmann von Aue's Iwein, 4815 :

der lewe bî im lac
und anders sites niene pflac,
niuwan als ein *ander* schâf.

See Reinhart Fuchs, ed. Grimm, cclvii, note ; Grimm's *Deutsche Grammatik*, IV. 456 ; Benecke's note to Iwein, 687.

573. *harde* = *hardy*. See note to l. 132.

574. *the emperoure sone of Almayn* = the Emperor of Germany's son. See note to l. 503.

576. *say* = *assay*. Compounds of Romance origin, the first part of which is a preposition, or words derived from such, often mutilate or even entirely drop the preposition. We find *say* also 2655, but *assay* 1803, 2263 (O.F. *assaier* = *essaiier* from Latin *exagium*). Cf. *chesowne*, 4314 = *achesoun*, *anchesoun*, *enchesoun* (O.F. *acheson*, Lat. *occasionem*), *corde*, 2224, 3217 = *acorde*, 5269, 5303, 5399, 8273 ; *cordement*, 6304, 6312 = *acordement*, 2490, 5340 ; *force*, 872 = *aforce*, O.F. *esforceer* (cf. N.E. *effort*) ; *noye*, 7420 = *anoye*, 2766, 10886 (O.F. *anoier* from *anoi*, *enoi* = Lat. *in odio*) ; *ryue* = *aryue* (see note to 4244) ; *sayle*, 1436, 4421, 7988, 9405 = *assayle* ; *sawte*, 2316 = *asawte*, 642, 1012, 3782, *assawt*, 1828, 5014 ; *sege*, 8679, 8717 = *assege* ; *store*, 9792 = *astore* (O.F. *estorer*, *instaurare* ; cf. N.E. *store*) ; *swage*, 5266 = *assuage* ; *tame*, 10290 (see

the note) = *attame*. In some cases it is doubtful whether the preposition *a* or the indefinite article is intended: e.g. 2210, *a sawte* or *asawte*? 8574, *asaye* or *a saye*?—*E* is dropped in *scape*, 1132, 2234, 5956, 10798, 10903.—Even two letters may disappear, especially *de-* or *di-*: *fame* = *defame*, *diffame* (see note to 8229); *scowmfyte*, 1663, 1988, 2960, 5150 = *discowmfyte*; *serve*, 2582 = *deserve*; *stroye*, 2737, 2794, 3096, 4772, 5764, 6252, 6270, 8196, 8718, 9938, 9943, 10012, 10885, 11875. *En-* (*em-*, *in-*) is omitted in *counturd*, 4511; *gynne*, 5212, 8940, 11329, 11353 = *ingyne*, 2305 (O.F. *engin*, Lat. *ingenium*); *peyre*, 7993, 10164 = O.F. *empeirer*, **impeiorare*, N.E. *impair*; *re-* in *store*, 3842; *couyre*, 4038.

598. *to hys fote* = to his feet. In M.E. *fote* is used as a plural (1) after such prepositions as *at*, *on*, *to*; (2) when denoting a measure. In the first case *fote* stands for *foten*, O.E. *fōtum*, dat. of *fēt*; in the second for O.E. *fōta*, the genitive of *fēt*, which was governed by such adjectives as *heāh*, *brād*, *wid* (Koch's Gramm., II. p. 185-6, § 285). Cf. *at hys fote*, 2080; *on fote*, 2257, 6149, 7469, 9355, 10223, 11719; *on hys fote*, 415, 8007; *to hys fote*, 11913; *fro the fote*, 11430; *sixty fote was he longe*, 6955; *he ys two fote and more hyer*, 7585; *he felle depe . . . thretty fote*, 11432.

600. *To Gye had grete envye*; cf. 2971; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 724, *to Gij he hadde envie*; 4778, *to Gij he bar gret envie*; Guy in the Caius MS., p. 181, *to hym he had gret envye*; Copland's Guy, II iii, *to duke Segwyne he had enuy*; ib. Aa iiiii, *thou haste to him enuy*. See also Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I. 173, 69. But sometimes other prepositions are employed: OF, cf. 1437, *of hym Saddok had gret envye*; 8517, *and odur lordys therof had envye*; Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 175, *oper hadde þerof envie*; AT, cf. Guy in the Caius MS., p. 28, *at Guy he had grete envye*; WIP, cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1641, *wip þe douke he hadde gret envie*.

612. *my neme*; 614, *my neeme*; 7805, *my neme* = O.E. *mīn eām*, my uncle. Cf. *my nye* = O.E. *mīn eāge*, 3252, 5930; *my nowne* = mine own, 1142; *þy narmes* = thine arms, 803; *þy nye* = thine [e]ye, 5616; *þy nore* = *þyn ore*, thy mercy, 8042; *þy nowne* = thine own, 1807; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9506, *is he þi nem*. The indefinite article transfers likewise its *n* to the following word: we find often *a nother* (*nodur*); cf. 838, 1945, 4157, 4617, 4869, &c.; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3421, *icham now a neld man* (= *an eld*, i.e. an old); ib. 9701, *wip a nost store and stark* (= *an ost*, i.e. a host). We find even *an nodur*, 2556; and *an noke* (= an oak), 3004. Note also *no nodur* = *non odur*, 657, 690, 889, 956, 1200, 2258, 3124, 3541, 3689, 4610, &c.; and *for þe nones* (= *for þen ones*), 2306, 2750, 3396, 3624, 8993, 9368, 10174, 11402. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 4948, *atte nende* = *atten* (*at þen*) *ende*; 9360, *to þe nende*; Reinbrun, ed. Turnb., 807, *toward þe neuen*. A few such *n*'s have been retained in N.E.; cf. *newt* (but also *cft* = O.E. *efete*), *nickname* (M.E. *ekename*), *Ned* (*my Ned* for *mine Ed*), *Nol*, *Nan*, *Nell*, &c. Cf. note to 658.

615. *so mote y the*. This expletive is of very frequent occurrence; cf. 754, 983, 4904, 5032, 5085, 5137, 5576, 5726, 5904, 6055, 6541, 6774, 7043, 7325, 9558, 9564, 9804. It does not mean 'so may I thrive,' although this is the general explanation, but 'as I may thrive;' so, in such cases, being used in a relative (not in a demonstrative) sense. Cf. 7839 and 8809, *so mote þou the*; 5094, *also muste y thryue or the*; 1089, *so mote y thryue*; 1412, *so muste y thryue*; 5017, *so muste þou pryue*. I will collect here the principal protestations and obsecrations of this sort that occur in our poem: *so haue y chawnce*, 4190; *so haue y blys*, 9878; *as haue y hele*, 2250, 7753; *also haue y hele*, 8562; *so haue y hele*, 2390, 2484, 2698, 2768, 3031, 3135, 3173, 3461, 5188, 9440, 9570; *so mote y goo*, cf. note to l. 2572; *so god me helpe*, 1459, 1869; *so helpe me god*, 11120; *also helpe me god*, 8605; *so helpe þe god and seynt Mary*, 11805; *so god me helpe out of my care*, 11748; *so helpe me Muhownde*, 10334; *so euyr me helpe goddys myne*, *Termagawnt and Apolyne*, 3339-40; *so almyghty god saue the*, 11113; *also so god geue yow reste*, 6687; *so god me mende*, 6864, 8681; *so god me rede*, 7187, 8936; *so he (god) me spede*, 9502; *as god schylde me fro schame*, 4714; *so god þe schylde fro synne and schame*, 1340; *so god schylde hys body fro schame*, 3244; *so god the slake of thy sorowe*, 8766; *so god geue þe honowre*, 9584; *as he (god) may forgeue þe þy synne*, 8108; *as y am a trewe knyght*, 2806; *as y am a knyght hende*, 5536; *as þou derelye loueste me*, 7239.

633. *the dewke Louayne*. MS. *loyane*. I did not think it necessary to insert *of*; cf. *wyth þe dewke Lorayne* (MS. *lowan*), 4341; *and vnto the dewke Loreyne* (MS. *loyeren*), 6387. These instances, it is true, may seem uncertain, but compare also Guy, ed. Turnbull, 767:

þe douk Lowayn cam wip þis.

Ib. 1859: 'Sir,' *þe douke Pauī* sede.

Copland's Guy, H ii:

Hath besieged the *duke Lauayne*.

Ib. H iii: Sadock sayde to the *duke Lauayne* (read *-ne*).

650. *euer amonge*, every now and then, continually; cf. 8738, *and slew hys men euyr amonge*; Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, I. 348:

But *ever among* they it assaile
Fro day to night;

and Shakspeare, 2 *Henry IV.*, V. iii. 23:

And lusty lads roam here and there
So merrily,
And *ever among* so merrily.

In the Bible Word-book, by I. Eastwood and W. Aldis Wright (s. v. *Anon*), *among* is said to be but another form of *anon*, and Dr A. Schmidt (Shakspeare Lexicon, p. 36) thinks that *ever among* is perhaps corrupted from *ever and anon*. But I fail to see why *among* cannot be the preposition *among*, used adverbially (cf. note to 2301).

653-4. There seems to be some corruption in these lines.

658. *That duy and ylke the todur*. *Ylke* cannot possibly be correct;

for neither *ylke* = O.E. *ylca*, same, nor = O.E. *æghwylc*, each, is suitable, evidently an adverb being required here. Cf. the French original (Herbing, ll. 300-2):

Que Gy avoit cel iour le pris
Et lendemain *tot ensement*;

and Guy, ed. Turnbull, 795:

And þat oþer day *ysame*.

I think *ylke* is miswritten rather for *glyke*, alike, than for *eke*.

658. *the todur* = *thet* (i. e. *that*) *odur*; cf. 10358, 11714; *the tother*, 3055; *the ton* . . . *þe todur*, 1066. We find even in the plural *the todur knyghtys*, 5579; *all þe todur*, 11084. Cf. note to 612.

662. I think now that *stere* is not to be altered. Cf. King Horn (ed. Lumby), 1344:

He lueþ him so dere,
And is him so *stere*;

and Copland's Guy, Y i:

There found they the duke Loyer
With his baronage (*-ake* Copland) hardy and *stere*.

The adverb *sterliche* cited by Stratmann from Chaucer's Troilus, 3526, is doubtful; Morris's edition (IV., p. 252, l. 628) reading *sternelich*. The word has not yet been found in O.E. (*stêre*, *stýre*?), but Stratmann is certainly right in connecting it with O.H.G. *stiuri* fortis, ferox, &c. He might have as well added Gothic **stiur-s*, which, though it is not preserved, yet is to be inferred from the adverb *us-stiuri-ba*, immoderate, and from the substantive *us-stiur-ei*, intemperance. The exact meaning of the M.E. word is doubtful, but we may translate it by 'strong, stout,' in our passage, as Halliwell did (Dict. s. v.), till we come to know better.

669-70. *He, that seyth . . . I wyll hyt preue. . .* A pretty frequent construction. Cf. Copland's Guy, G iii:

'Full well,' he sayde, 'he myght liue,
Who so wyll him medecine giue.'

The relative sentence stands for a conditional one. Cf. such Greek sentences as *συμφορὰ, ὅς ἂν ῥύχῃ κακῆς γυναικός*. See Mätzner's Gramm., II. 29.

687. *On þe maydenys halfe Blanchflowe*. An apposition belonging to a possessive genitive is generally placed after the noun governing the genitive, and takes no inflexion (cf. note to 7921): *the dewkys men Segwyne*, 2427; *my lordes sone þe emperowre*, 2827; *the erlys doghtur Rohaute*, 4005; *the erlys sone Awbrye*, 4339, 5352, 6054; *the dewkys cosyn Loyere*, 4910; *the dewkes steward Oton*, 5001; *on þe dewkys halfe Loyere*, 5438; *þe kyngys lorde Triamore*, 7489; *Arcules swyrde þe wyght*, 7977; *my lordes sone, syr Gyowne*, 8604; *my lordes ryng, syr Gye*, 10622; *þe kyngys constabull Argus*, 10899; *the dewkys dethe Oton*, 11311; *Gyes sone, the nobull knyght*, 11564; *the nobull knyztys sone, syr Gyowen*, 11910; *Harrowdys sone þe gode*, 11930. Cf. Skeat's Piers the

Plowman, in the Clarendon Press Series, xxi, note, and Skeat's Chaucer, p. 204, note to l. 209. But there are a few exceptions to the rule; cf. 1956, *the dewke Segwyns cosyn*; and 8706, *the kyng Harkes lande*.

688. *Kyngys doghtur and emperowre* = a king and emperor's daughter. Cf. 6993, and *dewkys doghtur and emperowre*, 7041; *for Gyes soule and for hys wyfe*, 10775 = for Guy's soul and for that of his wife; *for goddys loue and seynt Mary*, 5889 = for the love of God and of St Mary. But we find also *thorow goddys helpe and syr Gyes*, 5192; and *for syr Gye and Harrowdes sake*, 7715.

719. *wythowtyn more*. Halliwell's Diction., p. 561, s. v. *More* has this item:

'(4) Delay. (*Lat.*)

That gan to hem clerly certifie,

Withoute *more*, the childis dwellynge place.

Lydgate, &c.

He, no doubt, took this *more* to be Latin *mora*. But that is certainly wrong, as often *mare* and *moo* are used instead of *more*. Cf. 11583:

Then belyve wythowten *mare*

To þe castell can þey fare.

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 192:

And so he dyd: withoute *mare*

To London faste gan they all fare.

Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 2682:

'It is your loue,' quod she withoute *moo*;

where I think it necessary to alter the Editor's punctuation. Perhaps also in our poem, 8869-70:

He wolde breke hys neck in two

Wyth oon dynte wythowten *moo*,

moo is to be taken in the general sense, and does not mean 'more dints.' *Wythowten more* = without more ado, occurs besides, 4067, 5439, 6859, 8174, 9239, 9420, 11804.

778. *On whome all hys loue was lent*. Cf. Triamour, ed. Halliwell, 795:

Hur love *was* on hym *lente*.

Ib. 1581:

My love *ys* on yow *lente*.

Douglas's Prolog of the xii buk of Eneados (Skeat's Specimens of English Literature, p. 133), l. 200:

Mine hart *is lent* apon sa gudly wight.

Skeat explains *lent* by 'inclined (lit. leant).' But we find in a fragment of the Guy Romance (MS. Sloane, 1044, in the British Museum), edited by me in *Sitzungsberichte der philos.-histor. Classe der kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften*, vol. LXXIV. pp. 623-7 (Vienna, 1873), l. 19, 20:

'My love,' he seyde, 'wol nowhere *lende*,

But on þe, Felice, þat art so hende.'

Lende = land, arrive, reside, stay, &c. Cf. 2958 of our poem:

To the cyte they *be lent*.

1402 : Goode hyt ys, þat thou here *lende*.

Destruction of Troy, edd. Panton and Donaldson, 13856-7 :

He fraynit at the fre, who his fader was,
In what lond he *was lent* and if he lyue hade.

Alliter. Poems, ed. Morris, B. 1083-4 :

And alle hende, þat honestly mozt an hert glade,
Aboutte my lady *watz lent*, quen ho delyuer were.

Cheuelere Assigne, ed. Gibbs, 5 :

For this i saye by a lorde, *was lente* in an yle.

779. *on hys manere* ; cf. 1222, 1318, 1712, 2073, 2499, 2613, 7012.

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II., p. 296, l. 131 :

Somwhat this lord hath rewthe *in his manere*.

Ib. p. 302, l. 172 :

Arrayed eek ful freissh *in his manere*.

Ib. V. p. 168, l. 434 :

And *in hir maner* made festys.

Ib. VI., p. 261, l. 41 :

And thus she brydeleth him *in her manere*.

Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 559 :

With that the quene was wroth *in hir maner*.

Ib. 1379 : And Malichias was wroth *in his maner*.

Ib. 1471 : Than Anasare was wrothe *in his maner*.

Altenglische Legenden, ed. Horstmann, p. 26, l. 736 :

Swyþe wroth he was *in is manere*.

Ib. p. 36, l. 1044-5 :

þe Gyv for broþur heold iwis
Euerech swyn *in heore manere*.

Ib. p. 38, prose before 1122, *huy þonkeden Iesus swiþe mucche in heore manere* ; ib. p. 43, l. 1287 :

And *in heore manere* hereden him þo.

781. 'For thy sake I have changed my mind,' i. e. have not killed myself. The French poem has (Herbing, l. 441-2) :

Venuz sui cea a vous mamie,
Car par vous ai certes ma vie.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 928 :

Mi liif ichaue for loue of þe ;

and Copland's Guy, Fi :

For certayne sothe, my lyfe i haue.

784. *And passyd*, i. e. *and y passed*. See note to l. 10.

792. *lowde or styлле* ; cf. 3214, 8570 ; *lowde and styлле*, 2524, 2605, 2615, 3466, 5384, 5758, 5862, 8440, 8492, 10739 ; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3388, *to acord lowde oþer stille* ; 4630, *his hest to don . . . lowde and stille* ; Guy in the Caius MS., p. 36 :

For to doo with me thi wille
Eerly and late, *lowde and stille*.

Copland's Guy, M ii, *he hath him yeelded lowde and still*; M iii:
 And euer more (*supply* be?) at your wyll
 And his lande *lowde and still*.

Ib. Z i, *cherish him both lowde and still*; Cc iiiii:
 'And now,' she sayd, '*lowde and still*
 I wil be at your will.'

Ib. Ee iii, *serued a lord lowde and still*; Triamoure, ed. Halliwell, 197-8:

Ye were evyr in my thoght
 Bothe *lowde and styll*.

Altengl. Leg., ed. Horstmann, p. 12, ll. 295-6:
panne it is guod bope loude and stille
 For to don al his wille.

Ib. p. 30, ll. 867-8:
 Michte don al is wille
 Bope *loude and eke stille*.

Ib. p. 32, ll. 937-8:
 And paraftur ziue bope *loude and stille*
 To ech man al, þat he wille (*MS. and Ed. wilnez*).

See also Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, I. p. 68, l. 490. The synonymous, and almost identical M.H.G. phrase, *stille und über lût*, is as common.

803. *þy narmes* = *þyn armes*; see note to l. 612.

807. *schewe* is, without doubt, owing to the scribe only, who in the same way has spoiled the rhyme in l. 10590.

820. *wyue* is badly spelled for *wyff*, to improve the rhyme with *on lyue* (= alive) for the eye. But the author perhaps pronounced *on lyff*. We find the same rhyme, but with correct spelling, ll. 10727-8, *wyfe: on lyue*; cf. 5869-70, *caytyfe: on lyfe*.

833. *He ys went to hys councell* does not make sense. I have, therefore, altered *councell* to *oostell*. Cf. the French (Herbing, l. 497):

Pus a son *hostel* droit ala;

which in Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 983, is rendered:

Unto his *in* he goþ snelle;

but in Copland's version Fi:

Home he wente to his *hostele*.

Cf. besides in Copland's Guy, H ii, *came into Guyes hostell*; R iii, *to their hostell gan spede*; T iiiii, *Heraude to his ostle came*.

843. *And ye haue men of gret valowre*. MS. *me*; but cf. the French (Herbing, 511-12):

Si granz *gent* eyez de valor,
 Iceo vous ert mult grant honur.

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 999, 1000:

And, *þif þou hast folk of grete miȝt*,
 It is te gret worþschip, *ypliȝt*.

And Copland's Guy, F ii :

And well the more is your honour,
That ye haue *men* in great valour.

The same clerical error occurs in l. 8950. Cf. also *maytene* instead of *mayntene* in l. 7036.

855-6 : *Wyth howndys we wyll chace dere*
 And wyth hawkes to the ryuere.

To the ryuere depends on a verb denoting movement that is omitted as it is often in the infinitive and participle past. See Abbott's Shakspeare Grammar, § 405, and Mätzner's Gram. II², 50. Cf. 3024, *he wolde to the ryuere*; 5692, *no forther he ne myght*; 6732, *into Ynglonde y wyll*; 6832, *at hys mowthe a stede myght ynne*; 6918, *he myght not on no syde owte*; 8864, *the hed schulde of*; 10260, *þorow . . . hyt schoulde*; 11632, *wolde away*; 11710, *to hym he wolde*; 11751, *thy hed schall of*. In all these instances the infinitive is omitted after auxiliary verbs, but we find even 7401, *thedurward thought hee*; 7672, *in holy wezes was hys entente*; 11946, *into Ynglonde was all hys thought*. The participle past is omitted in 5785, *now ys Gye to Payuyse towne*, viz. *gone* or *come*. Quite an analogous passage occurs in Chaucer's C. T. Prologue, 30 :

And schortly, whan the sonne was to reste,

where Morris's note (Clarendon Press Series) '*to reste* = *at rest*. Spenser has *to friend* = *for friend*,' does not hit the point. There is nothing particular in the use of the preposition, nor does the passage get any light from Spenser's *to friend*. There can be no doubt that the participle past *goon* is to be supplied. Cf. Layamon (III., 132), 28328, *to reste eode þa sunne*; St Gregory, ed. Horstmann (in Herrig's *Archiv für das studium der neueren sprachen*, LV.), l. 273, *to reste rīzt as eode þe mone* = ed. Schulz, l. 273, *to rist rīzt as zede þe mone*; and Iwaine, ed. Ritson (Metric. Romanc. I. 151), l. 3612, *until the sun was gon to rest*. The last passage is quoted by J. Grimm in his *Mythology*, p. 702, while treating of the M.H.G. phrase, *ze reste gān*, which was used in the same sense, and which in N.H.G. was corrupted to *zur rüste gehen*.

857. *cownsell* in this passage is, no doubt, owing to the scribe, not to the author. It is true, the author employed not only the older form in *-ayle*, but the younger in *-all*, too. We find the rhymes *telle : cowncell*, 2359-60 and 10471-2; *well : cownsell*, 5259-60; and *cowncell : vyle*, 5637-8. But we find the older form much oftener used by the poet and retained by the scribe: *cownsayle : avayle*, 1545-6; *cownceyle : assayle*, 2203-4; *faile : cownceyle*, 2485-6; *avayle : cownsayle*, 2789-90; *vayle : cownseyle*, 3577-8; *faile : cownsayle*, 8559-60 and 9017-8; *cownceyle : avayle*, 9189-90. Such being the case, I felt fully entitled to alter *cowncell* to *cownceyle*, whenever it rhymed with a word ending in *-ayle* or *-eyle*. That has been done here, 1751, 3479 (: *avayle*), and 1707, 1719, 3557, 5205 (: *faile*). I have besides restored *traueyle : faile*, 5541-2, where the MS. has *trauell*. This is the only instance of the scribe altering *traueyle* to *trauell* in the rhyme. He retained it,

4735, 7173, 7184, 9731, 9762. There is no proof that the author admitted *trawell*. He always rhymes *batayle* (466, 594, 1027, 1672, &c.), and *ventayle* (8052, 8130, &c.).

872. *hym force* = *hym aforce* (see note to l. 576), to make every effort, to endeavour to the utmost.

889-90. *We haue no nodur heyre, but THOU* instead of *THEE*. Cf. St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, 156 (= ed. Schulz, 39, 40). *Lete neuere* (*Ne lete* þou Schulz) *no boren lyf herof* (þerof Schulz) *witen, bote we þreo*. Mätzner's Gramm., II², 9, has only O.E. and N.E. examples.

920. *Bonement* instead of *Boneuent*. Cf. the French in the Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS.:

Ke ert deuers *Boneuent*.

But Herbing's text (l. 582) has *Beneuent*. The Auchinleck and the Caius MSS. have *Boneuent*; Copland's version mentions no name.

924. *He sye hym woundyd at þat justynge* is not very clear. Guy himself wounded Otoun at that tournament, described in ll. 565—658; cf. especially l. 603. The French (Herbing, l. 588) has:

Pour ceo quen Bretaine li nafra.

954. *For hym schall go no rawnsome*; cf. 1746, *for hym þer schall goo no rawnsome*; 8944, *for me schulde go no goldre redde*; Havelok, 44, *for hem ne yede gold ne fe*; ib. 1430, *hauede go for him gold ne fe*; Isumbras in the Ashm. MS. 61, p. 15:

And þei, þat wolde not do so,
There schall nothings fore þem (þ^e MS.) go,
Neþer gold ne fee.

Perhaps in Copland's Guy, F iii:

For no raunsome ne shall he go

is corrupted from:

For him ne shall no raunsome go.

Cf. Icelandic *ganga* used of money (= to be current), of laws (= to be valid), etc.

960. *Bothe in yron and in steele*. The same or all but the same l. 1548, 1644, 2398, 2816, 3388, 4976, 6648, 8860, 9282.

968. *hole and sownde*, cf. 1368, 4674, 5177.

974. *be my crowne*, cf. 1136, 1624, 3646, 4313, 4561, 4896, 5109, 11751. Cf. also 3009:

The sowdan sware *be hys crowne*.

Even here the crown of the head seems to be intended. Cf. *be my hedde*, 1000; *be my nolle*, 5544; *be my browe*, 2937.

983. *yf y may* and the like = 'as far as lies in my power'; cf. 2208, 4032, 7078, 9669; *yf þat y may*, 1809, 1870, 6326; and *y maye*, 9042; *yf þat y myght*, 3529, 4547; *yf he myght*, 7721; *yf that he myght*, 11425; *yf they maye*, 2426.

984. *He schall forþynk*. *Forþynk* would be O.E. *forþyncan, but we find only ofþyncan preserved: *mé ofþynceð sumes þinges*, I am dis-

pleased with something. In M.E., in consequence of the impersonal verb *þyncan* = German *dünken*, and the personal *þencan* = German *denken*, being mixed together, we find :

1. *forthenke* as a personal verb ; cf. l. 3107, *of hys wordys he can forthenke*. Cf. O.E. *forþencan*, to mistrust.

2. *forþenke* as an impersonal verb ; cf. l. 5939, *me forthoght that full sore*.

3. *forþinke* as an impersonal verb ; cf. ll. 3977-8, *me forþynkyth sore, that hyt schulde be delayed more* ; 5870, *me forthynkyth, y am on lyfe* ; 8822, *me forthynkyth, þat y haue lyfe* ; 10794, *þat hym forthynketh*.

4. *forþinke* as a personal verb here, and l. 987, *he schall forþynk, þat comyth to vs*.

992. *Than* = *than that* ; cf. 5895-6 :

Hyt ys bettur to dye myselve allone,
Then we togedur schulde be slone ;

ll. 5954-6 : I had leuyr be hongyd for þe trespas . . . ,
Then he schulde scape so ;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1158-9 :
Leuer ous were heron be ded,
þan thou wer ded in our ferred ;

Meditations on the Supper (ed. Cowper), ll. 393-4 :
parfore to dey rapyr y chese,
þen we þe soules yn helle schulde lese ;

Shakspeare's Winter's Tale, II, i, 149-50 :
And I had rather glib myself *than* they
Should not produce fair issue.

Cf. Mätzner's Gram. III², p. 533 ; Abbott's Shaksp. Gramm., 390. Sometimes *then* (*than*) stands for *then if* ; cf. ll. 6621-2 :

Hyt were to the more honowre,
Then y were slayne in thy towre ;

ll. 8947-8 : I sawe neuer there no lyght
No more, þen hyt had be nyght ;

Syr Gawayne and the Green Knight, ll. 336-38 :
No mare mate ne dismayd for hys mayn dintez,
þen any burne vpon bench hade broȝt hym to drynk
Of wyne.

For O.E. examples see Grein's *Sprachschatz*, II, 563 ; e. g. Beowulf, 1384-5 :

sêlre bið æghwām,
þæt hê his frêond wrece, þonne hê fela murne.

We find similar ellipses in the other Teutonic languages. Cf. M.H.G. *der dich an den ruouetagen deheiner arbeit muotet, danne du im sîn vihe âz und in tribest*, i. e. he who, on a holiday, expects more work from thee than that thou drivest his cattle out and in (*Berthold's Predigten*, quoted in M.H.G. *Wörterbuch*) ; Edda, *Hýmiskviða*, 19 :

Verc þicca þín verri myclo,
kiola valdi, enn þú kyrr sitir ;

i. e. thy works appear much worse, lord of the keels, than when thou sittest still.

992. *ye . . . schulde mysfalle*. If this passage be correct, *mysfalle* is used as a personal verb = to meet with an accident. But *ye* may be a mistake for *þe*. Cf. Ayenbite of Inw., ed. Morris, 193, *hit is wel riȝt, þet hit misualle to him and to hare, þet deþ harm uader oper moder*.

1008. *wytturly (wytterly, —ye)* is a very common expletive, cf. 1064, 1100, 1261, 1463, 1556, 1658, 1821, 1921, 2094, 2332, 2345, 2402, 2436, 2522, 2708, 2804, 2862, 2936, etc. It is derived from the adjective *wytter*, *witer* = Icel. *vitr* (gen. *vitrs*), wise, and means 'certainly.'

1021. *hedde* I have altered to *heuydde*. It is true, the author pronounced also *hedde*, or rather *heede*, as he rhymes it with *yede*, l. 6117, and with *ledde*, or rather *leede*, l. 7807 (see the note). But his usual pronunciation appears to have been *hevyd* or *heved*, since he rhymes it 15 times with words in *-evyd*, *-eved*. The scribe, however, has not once preserved the original spelling. It rhymes with *leuydde*, as here in l. 4567, with *reevyd*, *reeuyd*, *reuyd*, *reuedde*, *revydde*, *reuydde*, ll. 1885, 2658, 2926, 3715, 5039, 6156, 6929, 7519, 8642, 9260, 11560, 11754, with *berevydde*, l. 3323. The younger form has often been introduced by scribes (or even printers) where the authors employed the older *heved* (O.E. *heāfod*). Cf. Eglamour, written by the same scribe as our poem (Thornton Romances, ed. Halliwell, p. 152):

And with the stompe, that hym was *levyd*,
He stroke the knyght in the *hedd*,

but the Lincoln MS. reads *hevede*. The same occurs in l. 985 of the same poem. Cf. also Guy in the Caius MS., p. 182:

When i haue smytten of thine *heede*
And kyng Triamour his honour *berevyde*;

ib. p. 187: Hys aventayle tho from hym he *revyde*
And then he smote of hys *heede*;

Copland's Guy, U i:

But Terry had her him *bereaued*
And therefore he smote of many an *hed*;

ib. Bb iii: Guyes stede he would haue him *bereaued*
And with a staffe smote Guy on the *head*.

1049. *Hym to venge he poght vele late*. *Late* cannot possibly be right, as then l. 1049 would mean just the reverse of 1048, where *in a stownde* is = in a short time, rapidly; cf. 1057, 1945, 1966, 3401, 4448, 5062, 6423, 6913, etc. = *in a lytull stownde*, 1250, 1264, 3317, 3363, 3884, 4413, 4762, etc. I have, therefore, altered *late* to *hate* = *hote*, quickly, rapidly; cf. 5063, *he vengyd hym sone full hote*; 5475, *Guy hym turned sone hote*; 6498, *that he felyd hyt full hote*; 6656, *came full hote*; 8304, *felyd hyt full hote*; 10266, *a darte, that came hote*. Cf. *fote hote*, 10926, that corresponds to O.F. *chaute pas*, and the Swiss *fusswarms*. Italian *tosto* and French *tôt* are very likely derived from Latin *tostus* (from *torreo*), heated.

1051. *hyt* refers to the substantive *smite*, blow, which is to be supplied from the verb *smate*, l. 1050. Cf. 1103-4:

When Gye hym felyd *smeten* sore,
To ȝylde *hyt* hym he was yore;

ll. 2001-2: He *smote* a knyght in that tyde:
Into the body *hyt* can glyde;

ll. 9901-2: Thre dayes myȝt he nodur *ete* nor *drynke*:
Hyte wolde not in hys body synke.

Similar cases occur in ll. 5625, 6114, 6498.

1104. *yore*. O.E. *gearo* = N.H.G. *gar* cannot possibly have become *yore* in M.E. Though it occurs again in l. 5944, it is owing only to the scribe who, after having written *sore* instead of *sare* in ll. 1103 and 5943, wanted to improve the rhyme. The author uses *yare* or ȝare very often in the rhyme, but never with such a word as *dore*. Cf. *yare*: -*are* (O.E. *ǣ*), 865, 1405, 1561, 1753, 2300, 3612, 4721, 4726, 4864, 6181, 6383, 6732, 6790, 6802, 7567, 7898, 8547, 8749; *yure*: -*are* (O.E. *ā*), 2006, 2687, 4594, 5999, 6018, 6216, 6307, 6527, 7374, 7482, 8576, 8589, 8685, 10043, 11936.

1110. *derey* = O.F. *derci*, *desrei*, *desroi*, the reverse of *arrei*, array. It is originally 'disorder,' hence 'precipitation,' 'hurry'; cf. 1607; but besides 'disorder of the body, injury, hurt,' cf. l. 4336; 'disorder of the mind, discontent, grumbling,' 4198; 'excessive grief,' 4529.

1126. *slayne* rhyming with *tane*. Though there are a few rhymes -*a*:-*ay*- (2357, 2993, 8071; very likely also, 6529, 6571; perhaps 4995), and though the author often uses *slayne* as the participle past (cf. 1045, 1112, 1206, 1420, 1499, 1856, etc.), yet I am convinced that *slayne* here must be altered to *slane*. We find this spelling pretty often; cf. *tane*: *slane*, 1962, 3454, 3662, 5210, 7472; *slane*: *tane*, 4089, 4993, 5663, 7135, 7163, 8889; *slane*: *bane*, 4101. Cf. also *slone*: *gone*, 1035, 2439, 6669, etc. I thought myself, therefore, entitled to read *slane* for *slayne* whenever this alteration made the rhyme perfect. Cf. ll. 1724, 2169, 2186, 2234, 3765, 5077, 6950, 7306, 7552, 9575, 11853.

1144-5. *there as* = (thither, or there) where; cf. 5362, 6874, 7967, 8131, 9092, 9458, 11652.

1149. *colde* = dead; cf. 3330, 4952, 6235; Ludus Coventriæ, ed. Halliwell, p. 168, *this daye the kyngges xal be kold*; and the German 'einen kalt machen' = to kill.

1155. *sory wordys were me lent*: *wordys* not 'words,' but 'fates'; cf. l. 7416, *harde wordys ys me beforne*. It ought to be *wyrdys*, from O.E. *wyrd*, M.E. *wyrde*, *wirde*, Southern *wurde*. In *Piers the Plowman* (ed. Skeat), Text C, xiii, 209, we find:

And out of wo into wele ȝoure *wyrdes* shul chaunge,
but four MSS. read *wordes*.

1187-9. *He, pat . . . , hym* an anacoluthon; cf. Mätzner's Gramm., II², 28.

1196. *smete*, lit. *smote*, means 'fell.' *Smite* is very often employed in an intransitive sense = to rush; cf. Morris and Skeat's Specimens of Early English, II, p. 6, l. 133:

A suein, þat het Taylefer, *smot* forþ biuore þer;

ib. p. 21, l. 74: Treoflinge heo *smot* her and þer.

Cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 173, l. 74. But it is doubtful whether *smite* has the same sense in such passages as *þey smote þen togedur*, l. 1467; or *smyten faste samen*, l. 1893. Cf. 1811, 2891, 4987, and Mätzner's note to *Sprachpr.* I, 163, l. 29.

1199, 1200. *Of hys felows . . . cowde he no . . . redde*, he did not know what to do with his fellows. In N.H.G. there is a very similar phrase, *mit seinen gefährten wuste er sich keinen rat*. Cf. 1727-8, *what ys yowre redde of owre knyghtys*; 2361-3, *what ys yowre redde . . . of owre lorde*; 6626, *what he myzt do, he cowde no redde*; 9030, *and therfore y can no redde*; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6526, *of him no worþ non oþer red*; Havelok, ed. Skeat, 148, *ne non, of his iuel þat coude red*. Cf. note to l. 700.

1216. *a febull grace*, ill-luck, misfortune. Cf. Guy in the Caius MS., p. 257:

Now ys comyn hym *feble grace*.

Grace often means good or bad luck; cf. 3671, 4773, 4979, 8142; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8312:

And when Gij seye þat fair *grace*.

1223-4. *God . . . saue the*; cf. 2451.

1228. *on all manere*, 'by all means, at any rate,' but generally of no great force. Cf. 2554, 3528, 4206, 4690, 4711, 5894, 6360, 6476, 7052, 7101, 7248, 7651, 7942, 8551, 8842, 9119, 9188, 9312, 9828, 9832, 11466, 11670, 11798, 11934, 11954, 11966; cf. *in all manere*, 9168.

1239. The verb is wanting in the MS. Though it is possible that *come* was simply omitted by the scribe either before or after *to me*, yet I thought it safer to alter *to me to come*; cf. ll. 4451-2:

Then came theuys fyftene
Bolde men and eke kene.

1247. *To an ermytage* cannot possibly be correct, as the next line means 'that had formerly been his friend.' Cf. the French (Herbing, ll. 911-12):

A un *hermite* sen est ale,
Ou il ert ainzceis aqointe,

which is rendered in Turnbull's Guy, ll. 1451-2:

To an *ermite* he is ygo,
þat he was ere aqueynted to;

and in Copland's Guy, G iiiii:

To an *hermite* then rode Guy,
That he knew before, truly.

1251. *The dewke Oton* is nominative. 'I am woe' is a very common construction in M.E., and occurs even in Shakspeare (e.g. *Tempest*, V, i, 139, I am woe for't, sir; cf. Abbott's Sh. Gramm., § 230). Cf.

2027, 8050, 10367-8, 11046. The origin of this construction is well shown by such a passage as King Horn, 115-16 :

Ofte hadde *Horn* beo wo,
Ac neure wurs, þan *him* was þo.

Horn is the dative, as *him* proves ; but where there was no such pronoun, the dative could not but be mistaken for a nominative. However, ' *wo is me* ' did not get quite out of use. Cf. Mätzner's Gramm., II, 229. E. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 239, l. 226 :

So wo was him : his wyf loked so foule.

Cf. note to l. 3474.

1282. *Sesyone* MS. The name rhyming with *Burgoyne*, 1291, 4354, 7378, 7660, with *Coloyne*, 1919, 2139, there can be no doubt of its correct form being *Sesoyne*. But it is always misspelled, generally *Sesyone* or *Cesyone*, once (l. 4354) *sysayne*. Cf. note to l. 1291.

1285. *bordys* ; cf. ll. 1297-8, þe prys of justyngne and of *bordyse* ; and l. 5723, to justes and to *bordys* (MS. *bordes*, but the word rhymes with *pryce*) ; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 42-3 :

Al him preysed þer yfere
Of *bordis* and turnament ywis ;

and ib., 883-4 : þer nas noþer turnament no *burdis*,
 þat Giþ þerof no wan þe priis ;

William of Palerne (ed. Skeat), 1477 :

For he was atte a *bourdes*, þer bachilers pleide.

Cf. O.F. *bohordeis*, *behordeis*, jousting, tournament. Stratmann cites the word only from William of P., and it is entirely omitted by Mätzner. Halliwell in his Dictionary, p. 197, quotes ll. 1285-6 of our poem, explaining ' *bordys* ' by ' tournaments ' ; but *bordys* is, without doubt, a singular.

1291. *Now ys he went to Sesyone*. Even if we had not the French original, ll. 1282 and 1290 would prove that *fro Sesoyne* is the reading wanted. But cf. :

Puis est ale *de Sessouingne*,
Si est venuz en *Borgoine*.

1293. *To dewke Myllon, that was þan* = to the then duke Myllon. Cf. St Dunstan (ed. Furnivall), 31-2 :

þo he was of manes wit, to his vnclē he gan go,
þe archebischop of Canterbury, seint Aldelm, þat was þo,

and the passages quoted by Mätzner in the note to *Sprachproben*, I, 172, l. 32 ; Thomas à Becket (ed. Black, p. 101), ll. 1985-6 :

And he makede Robert of Broke, his clerk, *that was tho*,
Wardeyn therof ;

ib. (p. 124), l. 2449 :

The pope Honori, *that was tho* ;

Robert Mannyng de Brunne, ed. Hearne, p. 213 :

Our quene, þat was þen, dame Helianore ;

Barbour's Bruce, ed. Skeat, xiii, 3 :

The steward Valter, *that than wes*.

Mr Skeat's comma before *Valter* I think to be wrong. It is at bottom the same construction as in N.E., *my wife that is to be*; or Latin, *vestra, quae dicitur, vita mors est*.

1301-3. 'There was neither lord nor knight nor squire to whom he did *not* give arms,' but in M.E. a principal sentence is used instead of a relative one, and the negative is omitted. Cf. ll. 5812-13:

Ther ys no man, þat comeþ hym nere,
He wyll hym slee day or nyght,

i. e. 'that he will *not* slay.' But sometimes even in secondary clauses the negative is wanting. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1264:

Nas þer non, þat him agros;

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 12:

Under heuen noo thinge is,
Were it good or yuel, ywis,
That y for the doo it wolde,

but Turnbull's text (l. 217) reads *noide* instead of *wolde*. Cf. besides St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, l. 492:

Nis þer non so derne dede, þat sum tyme hit may be seiȝen;
= Schulz, ll. 709-10: þer nis non so dern dede,
þat sum tyme it schal be sene;

Green Knight (ed. Morris), l. 726:

For werre wrathed hym not so much, that wynter was wors;
Chaucer's *Troilus* (Morris, IV, 126), I, 456-7:

Ek of the day ther passed nought an houre,
That to himself a thowsand tyme he seyde.

In all such cases we may say that *bute* is omitted, but really the omission of the negative seems to be owing to a confusion of two constructions.

1343. *also smerte*, as quickly as possible, very quickly; cf. 9623, *also skete*; 9661, *also tyte*; 4310, *as rathe*; 4312, *so moche*; 11457, 11589, *so dere*; 11786, 11920, *so faste*.

1363. I thought it necessary to read *late* in order to make the rhyme perfect. *Late* is very often used by Midland or Northern authors.

1372. *fonde* can be: (1) O.E. *fandian*, *fondian* = to try, as in ll. 452, 788, 828, 1429, etc.; (2) O.E. *fundian* = to tend, to go, to hasten, as in ll. 3564, 4486, 5115; (3) a form of O.E. *findan* = to find. But the first two verbs make no sense here. *Fonde*, derived from *finde*, is generally the preterit, but this, too, is out of question here. On comparing, however, ll. 9712-13:

But in wo trauelde aye
To seke Guy, *yf he myȝt be fownde*,

we may conclude that *be* is to be inserted and *fonde* to be taken as the participle past, which, however, is generally spelled *fownde*.

1378. Read *verre* here as well as ll. 2748 and 8425. I was uncertain

whether the MS. had *verre* or *veire*. The letter following the first *e* looked more like *r* than *i*. Thinking, however, of the etymology of the word (from Latin *varius*, O.F. *vair*), I thought myself entitled to read *veire*. But now I think that *verre* is also a correct form, O.F. *ver* occurring beside *vair* (cf. Burguy, and Halliwell s. v. *verre*).

1421. *hym defendawnt* = in self-defence ; cf. 2572 and *me defendawnt*, ll. 2554, 6586 ; Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 6482 :

It was *me defendant* anouz ;

Myre, Instructions for Parish Priests, ed. Peacock, p. 23, ll. 737-8, *also all, that luyen hond on prest or clerk in violence or harme, but hit* (supply *be*?) *him* (MS. *hī*, Peacock, *hin*) *self defendant*. The French participle has retained its full force.

1426. I have taken the form required by the rhyme from l. 1511.

1427. *Burgayne*, i. e. *Burgoyne*, Burgundy, cannot be correct ; cf. ll. 1292-3 and the French (but the corresponding passage is wanting in Mr Herbing's text after l. 1078) :

E de Sessoine le duc Reigner
E de *Loeregne* le duc Loher.

1451. The MS. has :

I loue the *in my dere herte*,

the French (Herbing, l. 1100) :

Tant vous tienc *en mon coer cher*.

But I do not think that the translator was so bad a French scholar as to refer *cher* to *coer* instead of to *vous tienc*. Nor do I remember to have met in M.E. with a phrase corresponding to the Greek *φίλον ἡτορ*. On the other hand, *loue dere* = to love dearly, is common enough in our poem and elsewhere. Cf. ll. 118, 2568, 2643, 11343.

1462. *wrath*, originally 'to make angry,' often means 'to trouble, to annoy, to injure' ; cf. ll. 3252 and 5763 ; Green Knight, 726, *for werre wrathed hym not so much*. Perhaps *wrathe* in l. 1123 similarly means 'annoyed, injured.'

1468. Neither *toschyder* nor the simple verb *schyder* is known from any other passage. Halliwell quotes a substantive *schider* from Arthour and Merlin, p. 224 :

And hewen on with gret powers,
On *schider* so doth this carpenters,

but I cannot help conjecturing that *schider*, which Halliwell thinks to mean 'a shiver,' is a mistake for *schides* (cf. Halliwell s. v. *schide*). In our passage Halliwell explains *to schyder* by 'to shiver,' and Stratmann refers to N.H.G. *scheitern*, which, by the bye, does not yet occur in M.H.G. If other instances of this word do not turn up, one might be inclined to think *toschyder* to be miswritten for *toschyver*. The rhyme would not be much worse than *swythe* : *of lyue*, 2239, or *swythe* : *wyfe*, l. 4377.

1474. *hyt* omitted ; cf. l. 7305, *therefore folye sche thoght than*.

1477. *þere hyt laye*; cf. 4663 and l. 6958, *þere he lay*; Havelok, 568-9:

þat hise croune he þer crakede
Ageyn a gret stone, *þer it lay*;

St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, 229:

To sen hire broþur, *þer he lay*;

cf. id. ed. Schulz, 192:

Biforn hir broþer, *þer he lay*;

Shakspere's 1 Henry IV, i, 1, 96-8:

O that it could be proved
That some night-tripping fairy had exchanged
In cradle-clothes our children *where they lay*.

M.E. poetry abounds with expletives of this sort; cf. note to l. 1535.

1493. Perhaps *stronge* is a clerical error for *straunge*, i. e. strange, foreign. Cf. note to l. 8935.

1496. *wyth þe beste*, 'as well as possible,' but originally 'among the best'; cf. Mätzner's Gramin., II², 434; l. 3055; King Horn, 1326, *knizt wiþ þe beste*; Chaucer, C. T. Prol., 387, *blankmanger he made with the beste*; Grail, ed. Furn., 122, 120, *armed with the best*. Cf. *wyth the meste* in l. 6824 of our poem and Guy, ed. Turnbull, 140, *sorwe he makeþ wiþ þe mest*; King Horn, 1119, *þu 3ef us wiþ þe furste*.

1497-8. *telle All þat case, how hyt fell*, a pretty frequent prolepsis (cf. ὁράς, Ὀδυσσεύ, τὴν θεῶν ἰσχὺν, ὅση); cf. ll. 1964 (see the note), 3331, 3764, 4185, 5736, 7323, 7719, 8165, 8271 (see note), 8782, 11852.

1535. *there he stode*; the same expletive, 6189, 6589, 10803, 11929; cf. l. 10662, *as sche standlys*; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8330:

Ichaue swiche þrist, *þer y stond*;

ib. 8434: And smot Gij, *þer he stode*;

ib. 8995: Bifor þemperour, *þer y stode*;

ib. 9020: þe douk Berard, *þer he stode*;

ib. 9066: Among þe barouns, *þer þai stode*;

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 176:

And smote the geaunte, *ther he stode*;

ib. p. 255: Guy smote then with herte good

To Colbrond, *ther he stode*;

Hav., 1818, 1897; Generydes, ed. Wright, 545, 1574; Grail, ed. Furn., 148, 38, etc. Cf. *þere he sat*, Guy, ed. Turnb., 3575; Beowulf, 286:

weard maðelode, *þær on wiege sæt*,

and note to l. 1476. Compare also Grimm's Andreas und Elene, xxxv.

1538. *yf* = *3yf*, give. Cf. 2098, *yf hym batayle*; 2758, *yf me thy councell*; 9144, *of no tresure yf y noght*; and the common *yf* = N.E. *if* = O.E. *gif*; N.E. *itch* = M.E. *icchen*, *3icchen* (cf. O.E. *giceniss*); N.E. (ic-)icle = M.E. *ikel* = O.E. *gicel*. Especially M.E. *3iue* loses often its first consonant; cf. An Old English Miscellany, ed. Morris, 60, 70, *þat yueþ him lasse*; ib. 141-4, *and yue vs his blessinge*; Ayenb. of

inwyt, p. 45, *þet uor a lite wynnyngre hy yueþ ham to zenne*; ib. 46, *as ssel hit yue uor godes loue*; p. 265, *yhyreþ my red and yueþ youre*. Cf. also *icinge* (= O.E. *gitsung*, see Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, II, p. 72, l. 1), ib. p. 16. In all these cases *ȝ* (*y*) was dropped before *i* (*y*), but cf. *the whych was emer of Tundale*, Tund., ed. Turnbull, p. 224 (= *yemer*; cf. ib. 239, *y was thi yemer evon and moron*).

1549. *v hundurd men on ende*, full 500 men. Cf. the provincial *on-end* or *an-end*, which generally means 'without intermission,' but cf. Charles Kingsley's *Alton Locke*, ch. xii: All so flat as a barn's floor, for vorty mile *on-end*.

1561-64. Perhaps a few lines are wanting. Cf. the French:

Gui se est mult tort apreste,
Dreit a Louein sen est ale,
Od li cinquante chualers,
Ke mult sunt uailanz e fiers,
De tote France les plus prises.

1581. *be thys day*; cf. 2937, 3555, 3982, 4031, 5255, 5365, 5829, 7039, 7764, 9121, 9418, 9582, 11257.

1591. The pronoun *he* is omitted, perhaps only by a mistake of the scribe.

1607. *deraye*, see note to l. 1110.

1617. *strekyn*, moved; cf. 11135 and note. This is the original signification of *strike*, O.E. *strican*, ire, meare.

1627. The second *hys* must be wrong; cf. 4301, 5047, 7253, 7973, 9609, 10181, and the French:

Tret ad puis le brand de ascer.

A similar mistake occurs in l. 8094.

1647. *strokys ryde*, MS. The French:

La ueissez tant coups doner,
Tant chualers as autres juster.

I know, it is true, two passages in which an adjective *ryde* seems to be used in a sense required here. I mean Barbour's *Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xii, 557:

And mony a riall rymmyll *ryde*

and Gawan and Gol., II, 15, *with routis full ride*. Mätzner, *Sprachproben*, I, 376, note to l. 151, is inclined to refer this *ryde* to Icel. *reiðr*. But as Icel. *reisa* is M.E. *rayse*, Icel. *grēiða* M.E. *graythe*, so Icel. *reiðr* would have become M.E. *reith*, or rather, the older form being *vreiðr*, *wreith* (cf. Icel. *rā* = M.E. *wro*, nook, corner). I think l. 1647 of our poem discloses its origin. If I am not mistaken, it is owing to a mutilation, standing for *vryde*. The original simple M.E. word *ryde* = O.E. *geryde*, opportunus, levis, aequus, I know only from The Wright's *Chaste Wife*, ed. Furnivall, ll. 524-5:

He herd noyse, that was nott *ryde*,
Of persons two or thre.

The compound *vryde*, on the other hand, is very common. It occurs

in our poem as an attribute of *stroke* or *strokys*, ll. 3774, 5171, 9640, 11324; besides 1904, 2266 (*sperys*), 2913 (no substantive); 3225 (*oost*); 3862, 6828 (*body*); 4536 (*horsys*); 5653 (*watur*); 5688 (*land*); 6919 (*tayle*); 9620 (*mayle*). It means 'severe,' 'enormous,' 'huge,' 'very numerous.' The simple word not being in general use, and the compound with *un-* having no negative sense, it is not to be wondered at the original compound sometimes losing its prefix *un-*. But, nevertheless, I do not think it probable that *ryde* here is owing to the author himself, as he never uses it again. I take this opportunity to point out two passages in Copland's Guy in which *vnryde* must be restored. The one is Ee iiii:

Ameraunt drue out a swearde *vnsyde*,
That bote but on the one syde;

the other Ii ii: Through all his armour share Guyon
Into the body a wounde *vntyde*,
That the red blood gan out glyde.

1655. *in a throwe* = *in a stownde*; see note to l. 1049. Cf. 7059; *a throwe* (*a thrawe*), 1673, 4262, 5885, 10407 = *a lytull throwe*, 5136, 11147, 11794. But l. 11737, *thys throwe* = this time. O.E. *þrâg*.

1667. Does *redde* mean 'rode' (O.E. *ridon*)? Perhaps *felows redde* is a clerical error for *felowredde*, company, companions?

1684. *sekyrlye*, surely, a very common expletive; cf. 2346, 3498, 3838, 3866, 4121, 4233, 4340, 4532, 4744, 4774, 5242, 5294, 5368, 5746, 5956, etc., etc.

1704. *that he hath far and nere* seems to stand ἀπὸ κοινού.

1722. *wyth þe dewke farde*, had come to the Duke. The French (Herbing, l. 1274):

Que G. od le duc esteit;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1848:

þat Gij to þe douke ycomen is.

Wyth = 'to,' 'towards,' 'against,' occurs governed by verbs denoting movement, l. 2525, *We schall anon wyth hym wende*; 2585-6, *I schall wende to my cuntre An oost to gedur and wende wyth the*; Copland's Guy, L i:

When they came the cittie neare,
With him rode syr Gay(e)re
Wyth fyue thousande knightes bolde;

Havelok, 2535, *ferde* with *him strong and stark*.

1723-4. The French (Herbing, ll. 1275-6):

Et ses hommes ad occis,
Et son seneschal esteit pris.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnb., ll. 1849-50:

And þat he hath his men ouercome,
Yslawe and his steward nome.

As the text stands, l. 1723 must depend on *had harde*, l. 1721, which would be rather an awkward construction.

1747. *Broke* may I rejoice in. It is the subjunctive of *broke*, O.E. *brúcan*, to enjoy, possess. N.E. *brook* has a modified sense. *Broke* governs

noður my chylldyr nor my wyfe : my lyfe means 'through all my life.'

1753. The Emperor, having first answered to Otoun, then addresses Duke Raynere. Cf. the French :

Li emperere li respondi :
'Mult ad bon conseil ici.
Sire dux Reiner, uus en irrez,
Sire conestable, e uus si frez ;
Od uus li duc de Paue
Od sa bone cheualerie.'

Cf. the notes to ll. 2355 and 5591.

1759-60. *ye* seems to refer to all the three knights, *the* only to Duke Raynere.

1770. *scheldys*, men with shields, warriors ; cf. 3260, and such M.H.G. passages as Rabenschlacht, 562 :

Nâch Rüedegêr dem milden
zogt her Blödelin
mit abzehn tûsent *schilden*.

tolde in number ; cf. 1887, *an hundurde knyghtys tolde* ; 8432, *a myle tolde fro Oronforde* ; O.E. *geteald* or *geteled*, to which *rime* or *rimes* is often added (Grein's *Sprachschatz*, II, 463) : e. g. Andreas, 883-5, *wê gesêgon . . . êowic standan twelfe getealde tîrêddige hæleð*.

1785. *And ye*, viz. *schall haue*, l. 1781. M.E. writers often pass abruptly from indirect to direct speech ; cf. 2329, 2721, 3170, 3841, 4546, 4637, 4740, 4845, 5704, 5747, 6267, 6380, 6995, 7416, 7563, 7629, 7882, 8522, 10764, 10903, 10970, 11016, 11621, 11658, 11925, 11940.

1791-4. Cf. the French (Herbing, ll. 1331-4) :

'Onesques (*read* Ouecques) eus combateroms,
Si dieus plest, bien les veinceroms.'
Issi le font, cum lout dit :
Assailliz les ont sanz respit.

Though the translator makes rather free with the French, yet the latter confirms, at least, the alteration of *ye* to *we* made in the text.

1799. *to the churche*. Does that mean that Harrawde mounted the steeple of the church in order to reconnoitre ? Cf. 4963-4. There is nothing like this passage in the French.

1800-10. *Payuaye*, l. 1804, seems incorrect instead of *Payuye*, which would rhyme better with *velonye*, l. 1805, than *me* does. *me* again can rhyme with *contre*, l. 1807, which form is oftener employed in our poem than *contray*. L. 1810 is, I think, spurious, and was added after the confusion had taken place (cf. notes to l. 7837 and ll. 9203-7). Nor is l. 1802 genuine either, l. 1801 rhyming with 1803, if *assay* be replaced by *assayle*. Thus we get :

1800 Oton was the furste man,
That he sawe in batayle
[Forsothe wythowten fayle].
Harrowde, he þoght furste to assayle
The felle dewke Oton of Payuye.

- 1805 'Thynkyst thou not of thy velonye,
That þou duddyst my lorde and me
In Lumbardye, thy powne contre ?
We schall be venged wele to day
Wyth goddys grace, yf þat y may
1810 [Wyth my handys y schall assay].'
Now they, *etc.*

1811-12. Cf. ll. 1893-4.

1816. *Now he hap of hys felows lorne.* I am not quite certain how to understand this line. *Of hys felows* might mean 'some of his fellows'; see the note to l. 1961, and cf. Layamon (ed. Madden, III, 81), 27136-7, *for alche dei he losede of his leodfolke*. But from ll. 1856-8 we learn that Harrawde had been separated from his fellows. Can *lese of* mean that? Or is *of* to be omitted? I do not know the corresponding line of the French work (Mr Herbing's text being very incomplete here), but the Caius MS. (the Auchinleck MS. wants a leaf here) has, p. 64:

There is Heraude myssebèfalle,
Loste he hath his men alle.

1849. Though in some M.E. works *þe* occurs often instead of *þey*, it does not occur again in our poem (cf. notes to ll. 3803 and 10021). I therefore attribute it here to a mistake of the scribe (cf. *they: wey*, 10093-4; *joye: they*, 11223-4).

1862. *shewyd hys reson* = spoke, said; cf. 3652, 5794, 6730; compare also 2784.

1876. *They faght togedur gode spede.* The preposition *a* (for such it is = *on*) is sometimes omitted. Cf. Athelston (*Reliquiæ antiquæ*, edd. Thos. Wright and J. O. Halliwell), II, 93:

He took hym a lettreful good speed;

ib. p. 102: • To Grauysende he come good spede;

Alis., 3441 (quoted by Mätzner, *Gramm.*, II², 182):

He is coming god speid.

But as a rule the preposition is kept; cf. *a gode spede*, ll. 3873, 4542, 4905, 6505, 6674; *a grete pase*, 1998; *a gode pase*, 4439, 6341, 6529, 8048, 8329.

1882. The French original has no corresponding line, but the insertion of *he þou* I think justifies itself.

1902. *wythowte delay*, cf. 5830, 5990, 9122.

1918. *y* would be very queer. Cf. the French:

'Seignurs,' fait il, 'ore me escoutez :
Ces grant compaines uenir *ueez*,

and the Caius MS., p. 66:

Thise knyghtes bee comyng, as *yee* may see.

Cf. notes to ll. 8386 and 8422.

1925-6. I do not know any exactly parallel passage, but cf. such O.E. sentences as *þe ôðrum rihtes wyrnde âðor oððe on bôclande oððe*

on *folclande* (Koch, Gramm., II, 457; Mätzner, Gramm., III, 373); and Chaucer's *Troilus*, I, 492-5 (ed. Morris, IV, 128):

But how it was, certain, kan i not seye,
If that his lady understode not this,
Or feyned hir, she nyste, on of the tweye.

—*To* after *must* does not occur again in our poem, but we find a great many instances of *to* being governed by some other auxiliary verbs which are generally used without it. It is found after *will*, ll. 2546, 6272 (see note), 6294, 7076 (*for to*), 9381, perhaps 10021; before *will*, 10718; after *shall*, 2612, 10205; after *may and dar*, 9963; after *wyll and may*, *dar and can*, 9938. Generally the infinitive with *to* is preceded by another without it. In this case we find the same use of *to* in Shakspeare; see Abbott, 350. But cf. ll. 6272 and 10205. See also the notes to ll. 2353 and 3530-1.

1935. *Helpe* is the subjunctive = 'may god help'; cf. ll. 3257-8. The sentence would be clearer if the translator had kept the negative of the original:

Ne li ait deus omnipotent,
Ke a nul jour nus faudra,
Tant com defendre se pora.

1944. *bere*, strike; cf. 2228, 3882, 4066, 4928, 5518.

1948. *welc y wote*; cf. 4493, 8074, 9491; *y wot[e]* as an expletive, 998, 1952, 2494, 2825, 2842, 4138, 4464, 5319, etc., etc.

1961. *Of þe Almayns* = some of the Germans. This partitive use of *of* is pretty common in M.E. Cf. Mätzner's Gramm., II, 274. Even the subject may be expressed in this way. Cf. *Kindheit Jesu*, ed. Horstmann, 187-8:

Of þe braunches, þat þou berst, iwis
Schallen beon set in paradys.

1963-8. The passage apparently implies that Guy, when he saw so many of Raynere and Waldynere's men killed within a short time, called upon these to surrender. But instead of the genitive which should depend on *men* in l. 1965, we find by prolepsis (see note to ll. 1497-8) an accusative in the principal sentence.

1992. *forys* = furrows. I have restored the same rhyme *sporys*: *forys* in ll. 3177-8 and 5125-6. The MS. has *sporys*: *forows*; *spurrys*: *forows*; *spurres*: *forows*. Stratmann quotes *fores* from R. Manning's Hist. of Engl., 13024.

1995. *þey* cannot possibly mean the enemy, but must refer to *owre men*, l. 194, i. e., Guy and his men. The sense required by the context is got by inserting *be*. Cf. the Caius MS., 68:

For, and Guy bee dede or nome,
All we bee thanne ouercome;

and Copland's Guy, K ii:

And if syr Guy be taken or slayne,
I tell you forsooth certayne,
For euer is your pryce go.

1997 'The scribe's mistake is easily accounted for.' After *wendyd* his eyes got into the next line, and so he began to write *a grete pase*. But having got as far as *grete*, he saw his mistake, and got back into the right line, but forgot to expunge *a grete*.

2002. *hyt*; cf. note to l. 1051.

2022. *of that tythyng* = of that thing, of it. *Tythyng* often means, not the account of an event, but the event itself. Cf. ll. 2155, 7412, 10318; and perhaps 3810, 7333. Compare also M.H.G. *mære, rede*; Greek *ἔπος, λόγος*, etc.

2025-6: *That was to Gye a trewe frende*
Owtetakyn Harrande þe hende.

We should expect *the trewest frende*. But it is very likely an inaccuracy of the author himself.

2043. *be tale* generally means 'in number' = *tolde* (see the note to l. 1770); cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7549:

Of thritti kinges *bi tale*;

Copland's Guy, K ii:

Ye see comming in a dale
Many a thousande Lumbarde *by tale*;

Havelok, 2026: Hi were *bi tale* sixti and ten;

Gen. and Ex., 1673: Forð geden seuen ger *bi tale*.

But in our passage *be tale* seems to mean 'the whole number,' 'all.'

2091. Put a comma after *sawe*, for *he* means Duke Segwin. The object *hyt* is omitted; cf. 4092 and note to l. 1474.

2098. *yf* = give. See note to l. 1538.

2144. *mossel*, a common corruption of *morsel*. See Stratmann and *mosselmele* = piecemeal in St Kath., ed. Furnivall, 251.

2187. *the comyn belle* must be a bell that summons the whole host. In the French we find trumpets used to the same purpose:

Ses greilles ad fet puis soner.

2210. *a sawte* or *asawte*? See note to l. 576.

2220. *wete of tolde*, esteemed.

2224. *corde*, accord. See note to l. 576.

2234. *And some scaped* is parenthetical, *were*, 2233, belonging also to *slane*; cf. notes to ll. 4738 and 5106.

2243-4: 'Great loss was there, but the Duke had the greater.'

2268. The same fault occurs in l. 10631. Although I think my correction self-evident, yet I may as well confirm it by citing the corresponding French line and its translation in the Caius MS., p. 75:

Bien quident, kil seit *afole* (killed);
That allmoste he weneth *dede* bee.

2297. Though *yow* undoubtedly occurs several times as a nominative in our poem (see the note to l. 4192), yet here and in l. 2432 it is certainly used as *hym* in l. 429 (cf. note to l. 385).

2301. *amonge*, from time to time, in the mean time, at the same time; cf. ll. 3154, 3354, 3790, 9906, 10674. O.E. *on gemang* is similarly used in (Cædmon's) Genesis, 809:

cymeð hægles scûr heofone getenge,
færeð forst *on gemang*, se byð fyrnum ceald,
hwilum of heofnum hâte scîneð,
blicð þeôs beorhte sunne,

where *on gemang* is synonymous with *hwilum*; cf. Owl and N. 6, *sum while* softe and lud *among*. See also note to l. 650.

2302. *abblasters*. Mätzner's *Wörterbuch*, p. 102, does not mention this form of the word which now is spelled *arblast* or *arbalist*. Halliwell's Dictionary, p. 5, has *abblastre*, but with the meaning 'arbalister.' But the name of the weapon sometimes occurs with *r* at the end; cf. *abblastres* = arbalists in Mätzner and in Copland's *Guy*, L iii:

They shoten with noble *albasters*;

and hence also *albastrere* = 'arbalister.'

2303. *harowes* for *arowes*, arrows. Frequently as *h* is prefixed to vowels at the beginning of words in many M.E. works, this is the only instance in our poem.

2311. *syght* (instead of *syghed* that the MS. has) is required by the rhyme. We find this form in the MS. in l. 293 (rhyming with *dyght*).

2316. *sawte*; see note to l. 576.

2324-7. *chace þe dere . . .*, both at *hartys* and at *hyndys*. Note the change of construction.

2329. I think that the present tense is best explained by supposing a transition from indirect to direct speech. See note to l. 1785.

2353. An anacoluthon. *To dubbe* does not run parallel with *To chere*, but with *haue*. *To* is used as in the passages mentioned in the note to l. 1925, and *to dubbe* follows as if preceded by *y wyll gyue the* instead of by *thou shalt haue*.

2355. Segwin suddenly turns to another audience; cf. note to l. 1753.

2377-9. *Y wyll hym prey . . . to come and dyne . . .*, HE and all his company. Quite the same anacoluthon occurs in ll. 2457-9.

2391-2. Or *fere*: be *mystere*?

2408. *bedene*. This, although pretty common, yet mysterious word occurs besides in ll. 8720, 8748, and 11637. Neither Professor Marsh's derivation from the Dutch *bij dien*, nor Stratmann's = *bi ene* is very plausible. There is no telling how such a Dutch phrase could get into M.E. with so modified a meaning; nor is there any analogous instance of an inserted *d*. Such being the case, I venture to offer a new etymology, though I am far from thinking it certain. *Bedene*, *bidene* may be *mîd ene*, literally 'with once'; cf. *for ene*, for once; *at ene*, at once, in Stratmann. Cf. also M.H.G. *mitein* and *mit eine* together. This etymology would account for the two principal meanings of the word: (1) at the same time, together, altogether; (2) without delay, immediately (cf.

N.E. *at once*). In those few passages, cited by Mätzner in his *Wörterbuch*, p. 229, without an explanation, it seems to mean ‘altogether,’ ‘entirely.’ Now, it is true, the change of *m* to *b* is not usual in English. But it is no more so in other languages, and yet it must be acknowledged in a few instances. So we find in M.H.G. *betalle*, *bitalle* for *metalle*, *mitalle*, i. e. *mit alle*, totally, entirely; in Icel. *marbendill* for *marmendill*; in Italian *novero* for **nobero*, Lat. *numerus*. Cf. even Dickens’s *nom de plume*, the origin of which was thus told by the author himself: ‘*Boz* was the nickname of a pet child, a younger brother, whom I had dubbed *Moses*, in honour of the “Vicar of Wakefield,” which being facetiously pronounced through the nose became *Boses*, and being shortened became *Boz*’; and Barney’s pronunciation in *Oliver Twist*, especially: *Dobody but Biss Dadsy* = nobody but Miss Nancy. The way in which *Moses* became *Boses* is far from correctly stated, though Dickens gave the same explanation in *Oliver Twist*: “‘*Dot a shoul*,’ replied Barney; whose words, whether they came from the heart or not, made their way through the nose.” Quite the reverse is the case: *n* and *m*, when prevented from making their way through the nose, become *d* and *b*; and, on the other hand, *b* becomes *m* by making its way through the nose, as in *somersault* or *somerset* = O.F. *soubresault*.

2419-20. Here the Emperor alone is supposed to be speaking.

2421. *He* must refer to Tyrry. But this interruption of the Emperor’s words is very odd. The French has:

Terri, ca vien, beaus amis.
Dunc ne veit (*sic*!) tu par en sum cel mont
Tant cheualers? etc.

Neither this nor the other English versions suggest any plausible emendation.

2457-9. See the note to ll. 2377-9.

2496. *sotelte*. See ‘A Bill of Dinner Fare. For a Feast at Oxford’ in *Reliquiæ antiquæ*, I, 88. There we find: ‘*Primus Cursus: a suttelte*’; cf. also the Index to *The Babees Book*, ed. Furnivall, s. v. *sotelte*.

2497-8. We get a perfect rhyme by restoring *herouns: braouns* (or *herons: brauns*). *Bra-oun* was originally bisyllable; Morris in Chaucer, Clar. Press., Gloss, s. v. *braun*, cites even *brahun*; cf. O.F. *braon*, *braion*, Prov. *brazon*, *bradon*, derived from O.H.G. *prâto*, or rather its older form *brâdo*; cf. N.H.G. *braten*.

2507. The rhyme compels us to read *prysons* (or *prysouns*) here as well as in l. 2536. Cf. also the Caius MS. of Guy, p. 71:

With them they lede theire *prisouners*,
Dukes, erles and also barounes;

whereas the Auchinleck MS. has kept the correct rhyme (ed. Turnbull, 2031-2):

Wip hem þai habben her *prisouns*,
Doukes, erls and barouns.

Prisoun = prisoner occurs very often in M.E.; cf. O.F. *prisoun*, It. *prigione*, Span. *prision*.

2525. *wyth hym* = towards him, to him. See note to l. 1722.

2534. *grete* I have restored for *wepe* in the MS. It began early to get out of use in the South of England, but is retained to this day in the North and in Scotland. I thought myself entitled to restore it for *wepe* whenever by my doing so the rhyme became perfect. In Robert Mannyng's *Handlyng Synne*, l. 5721:

Whan he hadde ful long *grete*,

the last word has in the MS. *wepete* written above as a gloss (cf. Morris, Spec., II, p. 301). The scribe of our MS. (or a predecessor of his) was not so accurate. He simply substituted *wepe* for *grete*. Hence we find in l. 3794 *wepete* (for *grette*) rhyming with *nette*, ll. 6058 and 7258, *wepe* (for *grete*) rhyming with *swete*. But in l. 9852 *grete* (rhyming with *fete*) escaped the scribe's alteration.

2546. *to longe* depends on *y wyll*, l. 2543; see the note to ll. 1925-6.

2554. *me defendawnt*; see note to l. 1421.

2572. *so mote y goo*, cf. 7819, 11760; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5627:

Ich auyt þe loue, *so moti gon*;

ib. 6384: þat hors no tit þe, *so mot y go*;

Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, 1033:

Of þe me wondreþ, *so mot y go*;

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 255:

Was neuer non better, *so must i go*;

corrupt in Copland's Guy, S i:

He shall it wit, *so might i go*.

Cf. also Flor. & Bl., ed. Lumby, 729:

Quap þe admiral: '*so ike mote go*,

3e schulie deie togadere bo.'

Cf. *so mot þou go*, Guy, ed. Turnb., 232 and 3556.

2582. *seruyd*, deserved; see note to l. 576.

2586. *wyth the*, against thee; cf. note to l. 1722.

2601. *wyth couenande*. On comparing l. 4308, *wyth that couenande y schall þe plyght*; l. 5389, *wyth that couenande kysse me here*; and l. 11565, *on that couenande y schall the 3elde*, I find it very probable that *that* is to be inserted here.

2612. *to serue* depends on *schall he*; see note to ll. 1925-6.

2613. *he* refers to Tyrry, but in l. 2614 to the Emperor.

2641. *Bothe Gye and Seywyue* separated from *them*, l. 2639, by a principal sentence.

2645. This line does not depend on l. 2646, but the principal sentence (*he sayde*) is omitted; cf. ll. 10624-5.

2647-9. There seems to be some mistake. I do not know the corresponding French passage, but in the Auchinleck MS., ll. 2363-5, we read:

'Otus,' quap Gij, 'þou schalt daye,
When þou of tresoun clepes ous baye,
Boþe Segyn and eke me.'

I think the lines of our poem ran perhaps originally thus :

'þou lyeſt, dewke Otoun of Payuye,
When þou ſpekyst of ſoche felonye
Ageyne, etc.

2655. *ſaye* is not N.E. *ſay*, but *eſſay*, *aſſay* ; ſee note to l. 576.

2661. *They were departyd*, etc. This ſeems to be unneceſſary according to the account of the quarrel given in our poem. But in the French original Guy did not challenge Otoun, but ſtruck or offered to ſtrike him ; cf. Guy, ed. Turnb., 2367 :

Him he ſmot wiþ his feſt
Amide þe teþ riȝt al in ernest,
Ac þe baruns bitvene hem goþ, etc. ;

cf. Copland's Guy, N i :

And riȝt wiȝ that ſyr Guy there
Would haue ſmitten him under the care,
But knyghtes, etc.

2671. No daughter of Segwin's has been mentioned (only a ſiſter in l. 2115) ; on the contrary, he is a bachelor, and marries the Emperor's daughter. Cf. the French :

Atant es uus li duc Reiner :
Al duc Seguin ua demander
Ernenburgh, sa sorur.

2674. *bryght in bowre*. *Bûr* is the Old Teutonic name for γυναικωνῆτις. *In bowre* is often uſed as an expletive in M.E. ; cf. 2674, 3836, 4069, 4753, 5372, 5627, 7834 ; Guy, ed. Turn., 7024, *of leuedis briȝt in bour* ; ib. 7075, *and leuedis briȝt in bour* ; ib. 7116, *fair Feliis ſo briȝt in bour*. Even this uſe is Old Teutonic ; cf. (Cædmon's) Genesis, 2385-7 :

þá þæt gehýrde heofona waldend,
þæt on bûre áhóf brýd Abrahames
hihtleáſne hleahtor ;

Hildebrandslied, 20-1 :

er forlêt in lante lutila ſitten
prût in þûre ;

Guðrúnarkviða, II, i :

mær var ek meyja (móðir mik fæddi)
biört i bûri (= M.E. *bryght in bowre*).

2682. *for hys nameys ſeuyn* ; cf. 11973, and Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2465-6 :

God for his name ſeuene
He bring þou to gode heuene

= Caius MS., p. 84 : God for his names ſeuē
Bringē you ſone to good hauen.

I do not know what ſeven names are meant. Cf. 4462, *for his holy name*.

2691. *hardylȝe*, 'certainly,' but originally 'one may do (or say) so hardily.' Cf. 9155, 9566, 9701; often in Chaucer: e. g., C. T. Prol. 156:

For, hardily, sche was not undergrowe.

2703. *bad*, offered. It would be O.E. *beād*, from *beōdan*, German *bieten*. But this word gets confounded in M.E. with *biddan*, German *bitten*. Cf. N.E. *forbid* = Germ. *verbieten* = O.E. *forbeōdan*. Compare also Inf. *bede*, ll. 9919, 11021 (= O.E. *beōdan*), Preterit *baddle*, 4214, 4485 (= O.E. *bead*, from *biddan*), pl. *bydde*, 4481 (the vowel is owing to the influence of the present *bidde*, *biddan*), Past P. *bedȝn*, 6992 (= O.E. *beden*, from *biddan*).

2726. *Constantyne*, the nobull londe. *Constantinople* was first corrupted to *Constantyne the nobel*; cf. ll. 8396, 9184. Then the nobel could be omitted; hence we find simply *Constantyne* or *Costantyne*, 2739, 2761, 5361, 8695, 8748.

2727. *Sysane*. The Corpus Christi C. MS. of the French poem has *ioine*, but the Harleian *coine*, and the latter is also the reading of the Auchinleck MS. (Turnb., l. 2439) and the Caius MS., p. 83. The rhyme *coyne*: *payne* is not to be objected to; cf. *yoye*: *they*, 11223-4. *Coyne* is *Icoine* = *Iconium*.

2731. MS. *Sarasyns*, which does not rhyme. The *Sarasyns*, i.e. Mahometans, were considered as pagans through the Middle Ages, their principal deities being called: *Muhownde*, *Termagant*, and *Apollyne* (cf. ll. 2938, 3339, 3436, 3658). *Hepynnes* is used of a Mahometan country in l. 7867.

2737. *stroyed* = destroyed. See note to l. 576.

2753-5. *þe marchandys . . . hym . . . hym*. This change can be explained. The merchants spoke through one among them, and to this man *hym* refers. But the translator should have either followed entirely the original:

Quant *li mariners unt* tut conte,
Gui *les* ad a deu comande,

or introduced the singular in l. 2753, too, as is done in Copland's *Guy*, N ii:

When Guy had heard *the maryner*,
He thanked *him* with louely chere.

2758. *yf* = *ȝyf*, give. See note to l. 1538.

2772. *rynge* seems to be used here in a collective sense.

2782-3. *seude aftur him wyth an erle*; cf. *Guy*, ed. Turnbull, 9367-8:

Pemperour sent after him þo
Wiþ þe fischer and oþer mo.

2810. *But the mowntance of a myle* = the time in which a mile can be passed over. Cf. ll. 2412 and 6514; *Triamoure*, 1324-6:

He had not redyn, but a whyle,
Not *the mowntans of a myle*,
Two knyghtes sawe he hove and abyde;

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 177 :

He was slayne *within a myle* ;

Flor. and Blanch., ed. Lumby, 513-14 :

Here kessinge ileste *a mile*,
And þat hem þuȝte litel while ;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 112, 68 :

They seten stille wel *a forlong way* ;

ib. II, 294, 68 : Soon after this *a forlong way or two* ;

cf. ib. II, 131, 279 :

This Johan lith stille *a forlong whyle* or two,
where other MSS. have *way* for *whyte* ;

ib. III, 115, 275-6 :

I schal not faile, seurly, of my day,
Nought for a thousand frankes, *a myle way* ;

ib. V, 285, 307-8 :

Ne nat a word was spoken in the place
The mountaunce of a furlonge wey of space ;

ib. V, 207, 331 : And yf i slepe *a furlonge wey or tweye*.

Cf. also the passage quoted from the Caius MS. in the note to ll. 9651-2. The very reverse of this use is that of the German *stunde*, hour, which often means the space one is able to pass through in one hour.

2824. Read *þe* instead of *he*, which is a misprint.

2827. 'my lord the Emperor's son.' See note to l. 687.

2828. *Thys endurs day*, 'the other day' ; generally *this ender day*. See Stratmann. But I do not think that Stratmann's derivation of *ender* from Icel. *endr*, 'in times of yore,' is right. I am rather of Prof. Mätzner's opinion, who, *Sprachproben*, I, 112, note to l. 366 (cf. his *Gramm.*, III, 179), connects it with Icel. *annarr*, other. Cf. *andys day* in Halliwell's Dict., s. v. *andys*, where also an instance of *endres* is given.

2833. *Turrye*, corruption of *Turkye* ; cf. 2849, 2990.

2850. *of all þe crye*, of all the host. *Crye* often means proclamation, command ; cf. ll. 6071, 7494 ; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 194 :

Kyng Athelstone made *a crye* ;

Triamoure, 936 : Ye wot wele, yowre *crye* was so.

Hence it may be used as N.E. *command*, and N.II.G. *commando*, to denote the whole body of those who are under some person's command ; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6593 :

Wip alle þat *crie* of þat cuntre.

2862. I thought it necessary to read *But a* instead of *And no* ; cf. ll. 2972, 3030, 3220, 3468, and especially 4064 :

He was a traytowre, verelye.

The French has :

Cheualer ert pruz e hardiz,
Mes fel e traître ert tut dis ;

cf. Guy, ed. Turnb., 2585-6 :

Knigt he was gode and hardi,
Ac traitour he was ful of envie.

2864. MS. *hyt* for *hym*. But *tyne*, 'lose,' 'destroy' (cf. note to l. 6666), is a transitive verb. The same fault occurs in l. 8032. The emendation is confirmed by l. 2256 :

Hys hors he made hym for to tyne.

2872. *begle* = bigly ; as to the second *e* cf. note to l. 132 ; as to the first, Generydes, ed. A. Wright, l. 2075 :

Full *begely* shapen bothe in lengeth and brede.

2884. *be my hode*, by my hood ; cf. ll. 5198, 6183, 9053 ; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 248 :

He ys not wyse, *be myn hood*.

Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 48, 1151 :

I comende hire wysdom, *by myn hode* ;

ib. V, 291, 507 : That is a trewe tale, *by myn hood* ;

Octavyan, ed. Halliwell, 580 :

Y swere yow, lordynges, *be my hode* ;

Of a mayden off Antioche, in the Vernon MS., xci :

And þen heo seide, *beo my hode* :

'Nou ben þese ensaumþles goode.'

Cf. also Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV, 71, 589 :

'Wel bourded,' quod the duk, '*by my hatte*.'

2893-4. The subject occurs twice as *þey* and *they*. In MSS. several instances of double pronouns appear, and it is often difficult to decide whose fault it is, whether the scribe's or the author's ; cf. note to l. 9191, and ll. 9189-91, 10117-18, but in l. 10520 the first *me* is, no doubt, owing only to a mistake of the scribe ; cf. besides Guy, ed. Turnb., 5503-5 :

Tuel þou dost, mi gode len.
 When þou for swiche a man
 Swiche sorwe schaltow make ;

Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 1446 :

That *he* in prison depe *he* shuld be cast ;

ib. l. 1318 : And *them* avised *them* in euery thing ;

Havelok, 1863-4 :

Fro fer he stoden : *him* with flintes
 And gleyues schoten *him* fro ferne.

2906. *of of oon* = off of one ; cf. 2919, 10353. The first *of* is the adverb, the second the preposition. The two words belonging to the same verb, but separated by other words, occur also in ll. 3715-16, 11065. As to *in . . . in* (or *inne*) see the note to l. 10383 ; cf. besides Reul roun, ed. Turnbull, 742 :

On þat place was a paleis *on* ;

St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, l. 695 :

On his tables his þouht was *on*,

where the editor's explanation '*on am ende adv. = one allein*' is certainly wrong.

2913. *vnryde*, very many; cf. note to l. 1647.

2933. *trowthe*, religion; cf. *bi mi lay*, Guy, ed. Turnb., 8264; *by the laye*, Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 178.

2937. *by my browe*; cf. note to l. 974.

2941. *behet*, an inorganic participle past; see note to l. 169.

2954. *per ma fay*; cf. *be my fay*, 2988, 3216, 8818; *par ma faye*, 8774; *par faye*, 10300.

2958. *lente*, arrived, come. See note to l. 778.

2966. The subject *y* omitted; cf. 2650.

2971. *To Gye*; cf. note to l. 600.

2990. *etyþ neuer bredde*; cf. Havelok, 671-2:

He is, witerlike, ded :

Eteth he neure more bred ;

Alisander, ed. Weber, 2157-8 :

Areches he hutte ; now he is dud :

Nul he no more ete bred.

2994. *wythowten layne*, without concealment, i. e. do not conceal anything, or, in other passages, I do not conceal anything, and the like. But it is often used with little force. Cf. Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 2302 :

His stede is gray, *withoute layen ;*

Myrc's Instructions, ed. Peacock, 810 :

And hye þerto, *wythowte layn.*

ib. l. 1510 :

þer 3eue hym penaunce, *withowte layn.*

Mr Peacock is wrong in explaining *layn* by 'reward.' For other instances consult Halliwell's Dict., s. v. *laine*. The verb *layne*, *leyne*, conceal, occurs 7054, 8218, 8350, 8353. There seems to be little doubt that it is not O.E. *lygnian* as Stratmann supposes, but Icel. *leyna*. The substantive seems to be derived from the verb, if it be not a corruption of Icel. *leynd*. It, certainly, cannot be Icel. *laun*.

3004. *an noke = a noke = an oke*. See note to l. 612.

3006. *therynne*, among them.

3019. *Yare* (cf. note to 1104) as an adjective means 'ready,' 'quick,' 'active,' etc., and, therefore, makes no sense here. The French runs as follows :

Kant il le sauera por veirs,

Le cor en auera tristes e neirs.

Therefore I suppose we must read *sare*, which means also 'sorry': e. g. Layamon (ed. Madden, I, 28, 2), 638, *þe king wes on mode SAR* (later copy, *was sor in mode*).

3024. *he wolde to the ryuere*. See note to l. 855-6.

3054. *wythowten nay*, 'there is no denying it'; cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 252 :

- at the daye,
Which ys set, *withowt naye* ;
- ib. p. 261 : That he shuld hym the soth seye,
What was hys name, *withowte naye* ;
- Copland's Guy, M i :
And shall pray nim, *withouten nay* ;
- Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 401-2 :
And þat name, *wyþoute nay*,
Hyt bereþ ȝut into þis day ;
- Myrc's Instructions, 231, 323, 510, 594, 821. Cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 360, l. 2. We find in the same sense *wythowten noo*.
Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2377-8 :
And, ȝif þer doþ, *wiþouten no*,
Hond oþer fot he schal forgo ;
- Orfeo, ed. Laing, ll. 11, 12 :
For Winchester was cleped þo
Traciens, *wiþouten no* ;
- Copland's Guy, K k ii :
With him x thousand knightes and mo
Well armed, *withouten no*.
- Cf. also Chaucer's *it is no nay*.
3055. *wyth the beste*. See the note to l. 1496.
3069. *wythowte blame* = *i ne seie hit for no blame*, King Horn, 1265, or *i telle hyt for no blame*, Myrc's Instructions, 566. Guy, ed. Turnb., 1540 is different : A kniȝt he was *wiþouten blame* ;
but cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 190 :
They crystyned hym, *withoute blame* ;
- ib. 261 : Tell me now, *withowt blame*.
3070. *heyle* (also 10626) = *hele*, O.E. *helan*, Germ. *hehlen*, celare ;
cf. *fayre*, l. 10512 = *fare*. But *whayle* = O.E. *hāl*, l. 5199, owes its diphthong to the influence of Icel. *heill*.
- 3083-4-6. I read *hym* for *them* (þem). The scribe seems to have wanted to make the Steward propose a punishment not *only* for Guy, but for the Princess too. But cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2859-61 :
ȝif þou *him* finde in þat stede,
Into þi prisoun þou *him* lede
And in þi court þou deme *him* do ;
- and Copland's Guy, O iii :
I reede thee, take *that theefe Guyon*
And cast *him* deepe in thy pryson
And doe *him* hang vpon a tree.
3097. *Do way* = *let be*, l. 4023 = *let that alone, don't!* Cf. 5780, 5917, 5993. It is also used with an object : *do wey þy fare*, 11821 = *let be þy fare* (4671, 6157, 6217, 7219, 11513, 11747) = *don't behave so*.
Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9844 :
'*Do way*, leue sir,' seyð Gij ;

ib. 10072 : 'Do way,' seyd Gij, 'þerof speke nouȝt,'
where *No way* is a misprint; Kyng Alisaunder (ed. Weber, I, 312),
7646 :

'Do way,' quath the qwene Candace ;

Wright, Spec. of Lyric Poetry, p. 80 :

Moder, *do wey* thy wepinge ;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 43, 487 :

'Do way thy lewedness,' sayd Almachius tho.

Originally it means 'put away,' 'take away' ; cf. ib. 101 :

Do wey your handes, for your curtesye.

Way stands for *away*, as N.H.G. *weg* does for M.H.G. *enweg* ; cf. Vox
and Wolf (Reliquiæ ant., II, p. 273), l. 53 :

'Go *wei*,' quod the kok, 'wo the bigo' ;

and, on the other hand, Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9640 :

Do *oway*, sir Tirri ; þerof speke nouȝt.

3107. *he can forthenke*. See note to l. 984.

3108. We must choose between *forthenche* in the preceding line and
wrenke in this. As the dialect of the author was evidently more
Northern than that of the scribe (cf. the notes to ll. 1104, 1126, 2534,
4555, 11181) we cannot but decide in favour of *wrenke*.

3121. *be hys ryght hande* ; cf. 11707, *by my honde*.

3170. Note the sudden transition from indirect to direct speech.
See the note to l. 1785.

3187. *some* (of Scandinavian origin = Danish *som*, not Icel. *sem*)
occurs besides in ll. 3190 (*how some eyyr*), 4093, 6740, 7892 (*what some*
eyyr). It has quite the force of the vernacular *so*. Cf. 8452, *in what*
londe so that they were.

3194. *ys*, 'am,' only here in our poem ; but we find *ys* = are
(third person pl.), l. 3488 :

All men, that in hys lande *ys*,

l. 7416 : Harde wordys *ys* me beforne,

and l. 10734 : Ther lyfes þus þere endyd *ys* ;

cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5095 :

Hou hij fram þe ost aschaped *is*.

Compare also Peacock, Leading Characteristics of Northumbrian Dia-
lects, pp. 8, 9.

3204. *fantasyes* does not make sense. Cf. the French :

E ke ieo uus serueie od *feintise*.

The form *fantyse*, that I have chosen in order to alter as little as
possible, occurs also in l. 3992 :

Of hys *fantyse* and hys thoght.

But cf. also l. 4345 :

Y louȝd hur wythowte *fayntyse*.

The word is derived from O.F. *feindre*, N.E. *feign*, Lat. *fingere*, = Lat.

**finctitia*, as it were. It generally means dissimulation, deceit. But as *se feindre de quelque chose* is 'to hesitate,' the participle *feint* = M.E. and N.E. *faint*, is 'hesitating,' 'cowardly,' 'weak,' 'negligent'; hence *faintise* is also hesitation, cowardice, weakness, etc. Cf. l. 11816 and N.E. *faintness*.

3220. I think it impossible that the author should have failed to find a perfect rhyme here. I have spelled the word restored as we find it in l. 8925, but cf. *desseyuyd*, l. 1326.

3232. The rhyme *hedur*: *togedur* occurs in ll. 3245, 7843; *thedur*: *togedur* in ll. 5297, 6339.

3238. *auentere*. The same form in the rhyme Richard (Weber, Rom. 2, 86), l. 2188:

The bowmen and eke the arblasters
Armed them all at *auenters*.

We find *-ere* in this word especially when *auent-* is contracted to *aunt-*.

3252. *be my nye*. See note to l. 612.

3254. *wythout fabull* = *pou þe ne holde hyt for no fable*, l. 10982. Cf. also 4880, 10906; Guy, ed. Turnb., 4686:

Of his stede he feld him, *wipoute fable*;

Copland's Guy, M iiiii:

Syr emperour, i say *withouten fable*;

ib. P ii: And syr Guy sayd, *without fable*;

ib. P iiiii: New made knight, *without fable*;

ib. U iii; Arthur, ed. Furn., 43; Myrc, 578, etc.

3256. The predicate of the sentence is incomplete. Cf. the French:

Faites dunc crier par la cite,
Ke tuz seient *par matin arme*,
Chescun, ke arme porter porra,
En nun de coward ki remaindra.

3260. *scheldlys*. See the note to l. 1770.

3273. *wythowte feyne*, perhaps, 'I do not feign it'? Is *feyne* = *feyntyse* (see note to l. 3204)? Is it a corruption of O.F. *feinte*, or formed in analogy to *blame* (*vituperare* and *vituperatio*), and the like (cf. note to l. 6579). I do not think that *feyne* here can be the same as occurs in Copland's Guy, R iii:

And for *fayne* playd before Guyon,

and ib. C c i: He went and met Guy for *fayne*

(O.E. *fægen*, N.E. *fain*, used as a substantive). Or is *feyne* a clerical error for *leyne*? See note to l. 2994.

3276. *manlelye*, i. e. *manlylye*, manlily. Such adverbs do not seem to have been much in use in M.E., but cf. *comlyly*, *jolile*, *luflyly*, *sellyly*, *semlyly*, in the Green Knight.

3288. *The beste . . . tolde*, thought (considered as) the best.

3322. *carpe*, to speak in M.E.; cf. 1091. The word is hardly the Latin *carpere* as has been suggested, but cf. Icel. *karpa*, to brag; *karp*,

bragging. Here it is used humorously in the sense of 'to fight'; cf. *speke*, l. 6048.

3329. *paynmys thyckfolde*, numerous pagans. *Thickfold* is wanting in Stratmann. Halliwell's Dictionary has '*Thickfold*, very frequent,' but without any quotation. It is = *thicke*. M.E. *thicke* originally means 'thick,' 'crowded'; cf. ll. 5447-8:

The Lumbardes starte vp full bolde
As *thycke*, as schepe do in folde;

hence 'numerous,' 'many'; cf. *Havelok*, 1172:

Pere weren penies *picke* told;

Destruction of Troy, edd. Panton and Donaldson, 11829-31:

þan the Grekes hom graithet to a gret sacrifice . . .
In honour of Appolyne angardly *thicke*

(cf. ib. 4683, the folk were . . . angarly *mony*). Very often *thicke* in this sense governs a genitive partitive; cf. l. 3395 of our poem:

Many and *thyck* of grete stōnes;

ll. 4419-20:

Then sye y come many and *thycke*
Of Lorens and of Lumbardes wycke,

but here the first *of* is wanting in the MS.; cf. also Becket (ed. Black), 2458:

And of simple men ek of the land so *thicke* thider drowe,
where Mätzner's punctuation in *Sprachproben*, I, 192, is wrong, so *thicke* corresponding with *meni on* and *ynowe* in the preceding lines.

3332. We get a perfect rhyme by changing the preterit into the present tense. The latter is impossible, though the preterit *see* precedes; cf. especially l. 192:

That he ne *wyste*, what he do *may*.

3339. MS. *god*. As O.E. *god* in the sense of 'idol' is used as a neuter with the plural *godu*, one might be inclined to take *god* = *gode*; cf. *scipe* = O.E. *scipu*, Layamon, 6182 (*þa fonde he i sæflod þritti scipe gode*, where the later copy has *sipes*), *ȝeate* = O.E. *geatu*, Old Engl. Hom., ed. Morris, I, 127; cf. *hole* = O.E. *holu*, *lime* = O.E. *limu*, *wapne* = O.E. *wæpnu*, ib. I, p. xxxi, and II, p. xiv. But I do not think that such plurals were in use so late as our poem—as plurals that is; for a great many M.E. and N.E. singulars are really such O.E. plurals as I have pointed out in '*Anzeiger für deutsches alterthum und deutsche litteratur*,' II, pp. 11, 12. In our poem in all other passages we find *goddys* as plural; cf. ll. 3417, 3428, 3429, 3436. Perhaps the scribe thought of the Christian God before getting to l. 3340, and forgot to correct his fault afterwards.

3344. *be my corse*, by my body; cf. 1094, 1106.

3351. The spelling *geserne* (battle-axe) is not objectionable in itself; cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 255, *geserns*, *Green Knight*, l. 326, *þy geserne*; cf. ib. 375, 2265, *giserne*. But *gisarme* is the original form; cf. Stratmann, O.F. *guisarme*, and Guy, ed. Turnb., 3174 (*wip gisarmes*

þai zif depes wounde), 3193 (*a gisarme he bar kerueinde*), 9979 (*ars and gisarimes scharp yggrounde*); Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 97 (*a gesharne in his honde he did bere*), and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, II, 249, l. 2287, where *gysarme* rhymes with *harme*. I thought therefore myself entitled to restore a perfect rhyme by using the original form. In l. 10248 of our poem we find *gysarnys*.

3380. I think nobody will have a mind to defend *wyth hym, Gyoun*. There seems to be little doubt that the scribe was going to write *wyth hym*, but seeing that in this case the rhyme was lost, added *Gyoun*, forgetting, however, to strike out *hym*. Cf. l. 2866:

And so dud all, that were wyth Gye.

3395. *Many and þyck of*; see the note to l. 3329.

3416. The passage is not clear. Cf. the French:

Sire soldain, alez uus ent.

Dunt ne ueez occire voz gent?

Does *redde* mean 'red with blood'? Or is there any corruption here?

3422. *Whome* = home; cf. 6674, 7352, 8383, 9882, 9900, 10206; cf. also Skeat's Specimens of Engl. Lit., xvi, 305, *bringe whome no thinge, but that, which is holsome*, and Skeat's note. Cf. besides *whuyle* (O.E. *hâl*), l. 5199, *wonne* (O.E. *ân*), l. 7927 (see the note), and N.E. *whole, whore*.

3430. *The dewyll yow honge be the hals*; cf. l. 4507, *þe dewyll yow honge*; l. 8099, *now þe deuell . . . þe honge*; l. 8624, *the deuell þe honge, þat ys in helle*; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5315, *now þe deuell hong 3ou ichon*.

3433-4 seem to mean 'you promised to serve me again, as you did before, if you should be able to do so.' The French has nothing that corresponds with these two lines:

'Serui uus ai mult e fait honur :

Mal le me auez meri hui cest iur.

Le gueredon ia uus rendrai :

De un gros pel uus seruirai.'

Puis prent un pel, etc.

3443. We get again a perfect rhyme by restoring the older form *rabyte* which the scribe kept in l. 10955. Cf. O.F. (*a*)*rabit*, i. e. *Arabian horse* (M.H.G. *râvît*).

3474. I think it is not necessary to conjecture *saluage* or the like for *rage*. It is true, there is no O.F. adjective *rage*, but we may have here the same construction as in *y am wo* (see note to l. 1251). Cf. *I am sorrow for thee*, Shaks., *Cymb.*, V, v, 297.

3490. *hys*, as if *euery man* preceded in l. 3488 (instead of *all men*). See the note to l. 100.

3496. MS. *Harrowde of marchyse*. The French has:

E Heraud de Arderne le marchis.

So one might be inclined to suppose that *Arderne þe* must be inserted after *of*. But the line would be too long then. I have, therefore,

corrected the passage after l. 5252. Cf. two similar mistakes in Copland's Guy, U iii:

Guy and Heraude *of* the marches,
and Z iii: Where is Heraud *of* the marches,
where *of* in both cases must be omitted.

3500. *bad* cannot but be a mistake for *byd*; cf. l. 3503. Perhaps it arose from the scribe taking *sende* in l. 3499 as a preterit.

3512. *trewage*, tribute; cf. 3669, 10017; Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 270:

Y aske þow my *trywage*;
ib. 288: And take *trywage* of all Rome.

Cf. Stratmann, s. v. *truage*. O.F. *truage*, no doubt, stands for *treüage*; cf. *treü*, *treüt*, *treüd* = tributum.

3513. *þe emperowre* in *Ermys*. Cf. the French:

Respont li emperere *Hernis*.

The same odd *in* occurs in l. 3833. In l. 3949 the name is corrupted to *Armyse*.

3531-2. *And y to fynde*, and I shall find; a zeugma. Instead of the auxiliary verb of the first clause (*let*) another is to be supplied in the second. As to *to* cf. note to ll. 1925-6.

3577. *vayle* = *avayle*. See note to l. 576.

3596. In the French original the Emperor answers in eight lines; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3439-42:

Seyd þemperour: 'þat schaltow nouȝt;
Þider to go haue þou no þouȝt.
Ich it dede mine men to fond,
To whom ich miȝt trust in mi lond';

and Copland's Version, Q iii:

The emperour thanked fayre Guy
And seyð: 'gentle knight, gramercy.
For certes,' he seyð, 'i will not now
To the soudan sende you
For halfe my lande, by this day,
For i sayd it but for to assay
To weete, for me who would moste do,
And whome i might best trust to,
And now i wote well Guy by thee,
That would it do for loue of mee.'

3598. *be my swyre*; cf. 6489, *be thy swyre*; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 183:

Certes, yf thow aryght so clepyde were,
Hit were more knowen, *be my swere*.

3604. The *i* is indicated by a dot over *o*; cf. 8826, 10376. But it is doubtful whether the last character is *un* or *n*.

3621. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 3471-2:

þe sercle of gold, þeron was wrouȝt,
For half a cite no worþ it bouȝt;

Copland's Version, Q iii:

A syrcle of gold thereon stode,
The emperour had none so good.

As our text is, there is nothing that *a serkyll* depends on. One might be inclined to think that the original reading was *Wyth a serkyll* (depending on *helme*, l. 3619, l. 3620 being parenthetical). Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9874-5 :

An helme he hadde of michel miȝt
Wiȝ a cercele (*MS.* cecle) of gold, þat schon briȝt.

Cf. the corresponding lines of our poem, 10171-2.

3628. *alse*, also; cf. 3893, 6810.

3644. The other versions have nothing like this line; but the emendation *sonne* for *somer* seems to me to be self-evident.

3678. *whyȝ* is a misprint for *what*.

3695-6 : *I schall neuȝr ete bredde*
To day, or þat þou be dedde.

Cf. 5121, 9687; Tryamoure, 103-4 :

Y trowe, y schall never ete bred,
Tyll thou be brought to the dedd.

3727. *them ageyne*, 'against them'; cf. l. 6320.

3734. *oon* = *on*; cf. note to l. 389.

3739. *wythowten drede*, 'without doubt,' 'certainly'; cf. l. 11102, *wythowte dredys*; l. 10532, *dredeles*; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 121 :

With faire wordes, *withoute drede*;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 33, 155; IV, 54, 81, *out(e) of drede*; IV, 53, 52; V, 163, 280; 187, 1072, *withoute drede*; III, 39, 329, *withouten eny drede*; V, 178, 763; 193, 1271, *dred(e)les*.

3766. *wyth þem*, 'by them'; cf. 8889, *wyth hym . . . slane*, and Mätzner's Gramm., II, 444.

3786. *Therof thoght he no synne*; cf. Morris and Skeat, Specimens, II, viiia, 222 :

His felau thoht therof ferly.

Thoght he in such cases stands for *thoght hym*; cf. the note to l. 984.

3794. *grette*, but MS. *wepte*. See the note to l. 2534.

3803. I think *þe* is the article (not = *þey*: see note to l. 1849), and *rynge* used as an intransitive verb, cf. l. 6547, and Copland's Guy, R ii :

And all the belles of the cittie
Rong with great solemnitie.

3833. The French has :

Fait il emperere Hernis ;

cf. note to l. 3513.

3842. *store* = restore; cf. Destruction of Troy, 727, *storet thee to strenght*, and note to l. 576.

3869. *store*, stir; cf. 6100, *þou store no mare*. See Stratmann, s. v. *storien*, and Halliwell, s. v. *stoor*. But I very much doubt whether

this really is a verb different from O.E. *styrian*, M.E. *sturien*, *stirien*, N.E. *stir*. O.E. *y* appears in M.E. as *o* not only after *w* (e. g. *worse*, *worche*, *wordys*: see note to l. 1155), but also in *donyed* = O.E. *dynede*, l. 11780; cf. even *moche* = O.E. *micel*

3872. *he hym wonde*, he went, *hym* being the ethical dative; cf. 4743, 6334, 9565, 11382, 11692; O.E. and O.L.G. *windan*, to go, to move. See also note to 385.

3880. *aspyed*, espied; cf. ll. 11053, 11077. Stratmann, s. v. *spien*, is inclined to compare *aspien* with O.H.G. *arspehon*. But *a* cannot possibly be anything but a corruption of *e*; cf. *aspye*, spy, as a substantive (Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 416); *assaye*, to essay; *ascape*, to escape; *aspecyall*, especial (see Halliwell), etc.

3894. *hys stede halse*. See note to l. 503.

3925-7 seem very strange. But this is owing only to the author's deviating from the original in l. 3849. Guy's adventure of rescuing the lion happened while he was accompanying the Emperor on a progress through his realm. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3715-16:

þemperour aros amorwe þo,
To sen þe cuntre þai ben ygo;

and Copland's version, K ii:

The emperor sayd, that he would wende
With Guy to see his landes so hende.

3940. *they* after a singular *none*; cf. note to 100.

3959. *byschoppe* is strange after *byschoppes* in l. 3947. I think we must read *archebyschoppe*. Cf. the French:

Li arceueskes sunt auant uenu
Al espouser tut reuestu.

The plural may be a mistake of the scribe. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3793:
þe erchebischop come forth.

Revyscht in our text is = O.F. *reuestu*, clothed. See Halliwell, s. v. *reveschyd*.

3961. *rynge* (after *ryngys* in the preceding line = *anel*s in the French) cannot be defended by a reference to l. 2772.

3974. *wyte*, blame; cf. 5626, 8102, 8188; O.E. *witan*, Germ. (*ver*) *weisen* with *s* instead of *ss* (M.H.G. *verwizen*).

3988. By using *hedde* for *huddle* we get a perfect rhyme here as well as in l. 4288.

3992. *fantyse*, deceit; see note to l. 3204.

3996. *wythowte dowte* = 'there's no doubt about it'; cf. 7878, 9252, 9551.

4006. *wythoute defawte* = 'there is no default (error) in what I say,' and the like; cf. 5662, 7630, 8536.

4019-21. There is a confusion of two constructions: (1) you will have twenty such earldoms as Roholde's; (2) you will be much richer than Roholde.

4025. *seyst*, 'seest,' of course; cf. l. 6109.

4037. The form *ware* (MS. *were*) occurs, e. g., in ll. 3549, 4223, 4593, 5675, 8113.

4038. *cowyrdē*, recovered. See note to l. 576.

4059. *seler* would be a cellar, a place very ill-chosen for the Steward's purpose. The French has:

Li senescal en une *chambre* entra.

Soler is N.E. *sollar*, O.F. *solier*, Lat. *solarium*, N.H.G. *söller*, upper room, garret; cf. Bevis in Ellis, Spec. of E. E. Metr. Rom., ed. Halliwell, 274:

On a soleer as Bevis looked out

At a window all about.

4062. *As that*, 'where.' *As* often has the force of *there as*; cf. l. 10662:

Before þat lady, *as* sche standys,

cf. also Koch's Gramm., II, p. 422-3, § 499. But *as* in any relative sense may be followed by *that*. So we find in l. 6652 *and fawde*, as þat *he wolde wode*, 'as if'; ll. 8003-4, *schelde me fro schame thys day*, as þat *pou of all beste may*, 'as.'

4092. I think we need not suspect that two lines are lost here telling what Guy did not wish, as what is meant, may easily be supplied from the context. Cf. note to l. 2091.

4117. As *he* and *hys* precede in ll. 4113-5-6, and *he* follows in l. 4120, I think *þer* is owing only to a mistake of the scribe. The instances mentioned in the note to l. 100 are different.

4128. The maiden whom Guy meets saw the Steward piercing the lion with a spear (ll. 4069—4074), and it is she that tells Guy who the culprit was (ll. 4135-6). In her mouth, therefore, the question as to who had slain the lion is absurd. The French has:

'Sire,' fait ele, 'bealz duz amis,
Est uostre leon ou mort ou uifs?'

The last line is rendered in the Auchinleck MS., l. 3960:

Is þi lyoun ded or liues ȝete?

in Copland's Version, S ii:

Where is now your fayre lyon?

Are we to impute the absurdity to the author, or to a scribe? I think to a scribe, though I am unable to correct the passage with any certainty.

4147. *be drawe* is certainly not to be compared with Shakspeare's *Why are you drawn*, Temp., II, i, 308, but it is synonymous with *be hanged*. See note to l. 227.

4148. Though Guy, forgetful of Felice, declares in l. 4098 that he loves nothing more than his lion, yet he cannot possibly call that beast his *lemman*. Cf. the French:

'Fel,' fait Guy, 'tu me trahis:
Purquei me as mon *leon* occis?'

4175. *nor a straunge man* seems to depend on *warande*.

4192. *yow* as nominative appears also in ll. 6352, 7053, 7217, 7218, 9847.

4193. *y thynke, noght* = N.E. I think not = F. *je crois que non*, N.H.G. *ich denke, nein*. The negative does not belong to *thynke*, but to a verb to be supplied from the context. Hence my punctuation.

4198. *make deraye*, 'make disorder,' 'be indignant.' See note to l. 1100. The whole line is parenthetical, the sentences headed by *that* depending on *saye* in l. 4197.

4205. *Empere* owes its origin, no doubt, only to the scribe's forgetting to draw the stroke through the tail of *p* in order to make it *per*. The same fault appears in l. 9660 and elsewhere, e. g. *Ludus Coventriae*, ed. Halliwell, p. 282 :

Bothe kynge and caysere and grett *empere*.

But the feminine has really lost one *r* ; cf. N.E. *empress*, M.E. *emperice* (e. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 281, 185 ; Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, a 441 ; William of Pal., ed. Skeat, 5343, 5400), O.F. *empereis* and *empereris*, Lat. *imperatricem*.

4214. *badde*, offered. See note to l. 2703.

4216. *slowe*, an inorganic participle, the vowel being borrowed from the preterit.

4225. *wyueys, maydenys*. This and similar passages show that in Havelok, l. 33, we must read :

Wyues, maydnes, prestes and clerkes.

The MS. has *ryducs*. Cf. ib. 2, *wines, maydnes, and alle men* ; Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 289, 439, *of mayden or of wyf* ; ib. 291, 484, *of goode wymmen, maydenes and wyves* ; ib. l. 499, *wher this be wyf or mayde*.

4244. *reugn* = *aryuen*, l. 8478 ; cf. *reugn*, ll. 8427, 8459 ; *yryuen*, 8476. The participle past is formed after the strong conjugation, but we find a weak preterit in l. 9914, *ryued*. There occur, besides in our poem the infinitive *ryue*, l. 8698, and the participle present, *ryuande*, l. 8705. Cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 192 :

They went to haue *ryven* ther at her wyll ;

Destruction of Troy, ed. Panton and Donaldson, l. 1947 :

Aroue þere full radly, rest in a hauyn ;

ib. l. 3247 : There *arofe* all the rowte and restid a while.

There can be no doubt but *ryue*, *aryue*, is O.F. *ariver*, Mediæval Lat. *adripare*, but, although of Romance origin, it sometimes follows the strong conjugation. Therefore, the strong preterit of *strive*, *strof* (N.E. *strove*), does not prove that *strive* does not come from the French (Oliphant, Standard English, p. 225). Cf. also *fon*, *fan*, from *fine*, O.F. *finir*, Lat. *finir*, in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, a 1030 :

Twelue forlonge space, er euer hit *fon* ;

ib. 6, 269 : *Fon* neuer in forty dayez ;

Cott. MS. Vesp., A iii, fol. 20a (quoted by Morris in Gloss. to Allit. P., s. v. *fon*) :

Bot ai þe quils he ne *fan*
To behald þe leve maidan.

All these verbs follow the same class of the strong conjugation, and it may be worth while to add that the only two foreign verbs that are strong in German, *pfefen*, M.H.G. *pfifen* and *preisen*, M.H.G. (still weak) *prisen*, belong to the exactly corresponding class.

4264. The French has only :

Oir les oisels chanter.

But the emendation *flowres* for *fowles* is self-evident. Cf. King Orfeo, ed. Laing, ll. 25—30 :

Þis ich quen, dame Heurodis,
Lok to maidens of priis
And went in an vndrentide
To play bi an orchard side,
To se þe *flowres* sprede and *spring*
And to here þe foules sing ;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 277, ll. 37-8 :

that i here the foules syng
And that the *flowres* gynnen for to *sprynge*.

4288. See note to l. 3988. We could not by any means read *bladde* ; cf. note to l. 313.

4290. See note to ll. 58-9.

4314. *chesowne* = enchesowne (see note to l. 576), O.F. *acheson*, Lat. *occasionem*. Here it means 'state,' 'condition.'

4318. 'For you will learn nothing from me to-day.'

4330. *trouþeþlyght* ; cf. 4822, 8831 ; Shakspeare, Wint., V, iii, 151, *who . . . is troth-plight to your daughter* ; Henry V, II, i, 21, *you were troth-plight to her*. Shakspeare employs it = 'betrothed,' 'affianced,' but originally it means 'bound by one's word' in a general sense.

4336. *deraye*. See note to l. 1110.

4341. MS. *dewke lowan*. Cf. the French :

Od le duc de *Loheregne* esteie,

See the note to l. 633.

4346. *on all kyns wyse*, lit. 'on all kind's wise.' Such pleonastical phrases are very common in M.E. ; cf. l. 11815, *in what maner of wyse* ; Mätzner's Sprachproben, I, 122, 74, *allir kin maner beste*, ib. I, 105, 15, *in ani cunnes wise*, where Mätzner quotes *on aniz kinne wise* from Orm, 2380, 3975, 4441, etc. ; Generydes, ed. Wright, 259, *in no maner a wyse*, ib. 465, 1330, 1463, 3239, *in eny maner wise* ; ib. 2165, *of on maner kynd* ; Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 45, 496 and 114, 245, *in euery maner wise* ; ib. III, 117, 346, *in alle manere wise* ; ib. IV, 128, 495, *by no maner weye* ; Myrc, 210, *on what skynnes manner*. Cf. also N.E. *in another guess* (for *guise*) *manner*, even still more corrupt in O. Goldsmith's *Vicar of Wakefield* (ch. xix), *and then we should have things done IN ANOTHER GUESSED*

MANNER (but cf. Good-natured Man, II, *another-guess lover*). M.H.G. instances of *maneger hande leie*, *maneger hande wise*, and the like, are collected by M. Haupt in his note to Engelhard, by K. of Würzburg, and by K. Müllenhoff to *Denkmäler*, XLVIII, 1, 4.

4350. *y me dyght*, 'I went,' literally 'I prepared myself.' The reflexive pronoun may be omitted; cf. ll. 5571, *to Payue now let us dyght*; l. 11209, *Harrowde vpon hys fete hym dyght*; l. 11441, *to the paleys he hym dyght*; l. 11546, *syr Raynbourn can to hym dyzt*. Cf. also note to l. 10697.

4369. MS. *There he slewe*. The emendation is indispensable; cf. also Copland's Guy, S iiiii:

Sarasyns i slue there many one.

4376. *Ozelde*. I did not care to correct the spelling of the name. But it ought to be Ozell[e]. Cf. l. 5683.

4403. *kepte*, received, encountered.

4410. *Full of sorowe was my redde*. *Redde*, *red*, O.E. *rêd*, is originally 'counsel,' 'advice,' but sometimes it means 'lot,' 'condition,' 'state'; cf. l. 5750, *sory ys my redde*; l. 8614 and 8986, *sorrowfull ys my redde*; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 265:

But yet full sorrowfull was her *rede*;

Destruction of Troy, 2925-6:

Yong men and yepe, yeuerus in hert

Rauisshe how radly and paire *rede* turnys.

Cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 118, l. 131. In ll. 4709 and 5651 of our poem it means 'intention,' 'purpose.'

4420. As *Lumbardes* is preceded by *of*, *Lorens* cannot well be without it. Cf. the French:

Puis vi venir de totes partz

Les Loherengs e les Lumbardz.

As to *many and thycke* see note to l. 3329.

4448. *And*. MS. *A*. In some MSS. this is a very common form, but it would be the only instance in our work. I, therefore, think it is owing only to a mistake. The reverse of this mistake occurs in l. 6352.

4449. The mention of Tyrry's tying his horse to a tree is very odd here. Cf. the French:

En ceste place me dormeie.

Ma amie deuant mei seeit,

Mun chiual a un raim lie esteit.

The author might easily have avoided the *ὑστερον πρότερον* by translating (= ll. 4449-50):

My lemman sate before me,

My hors was tyed tyll a tre.

4459. *Of the dethe geue y noght*, 'I make no account of death'; cf. l. 7691, *of my lyfe geue y noght*; l. 9144, *of no tresure yf y noght*; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 109, *þerof no ȝaf he riȝt noȝt*; cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 198, l. 180. Cf. also Guy, ed. Turnb., 9325:

Perof ȝiue y nouȝt a chirston,

i. e. 'cherry-stone'; and Piers the Pl., ed. Skeat, B. IV, 36 :

ȝei ne gyueth nouȝt of god one gose wynges.

Cf. note to l. 8143. Compare also the German 'darauf' (or 'dafür') 'gebe ich nichts.'

4468. *bcre* is 'bear,' not 'bury,' as is shown by *to*; but cf. l. 4550.

4480. *scarsyns* is a misprint for *sarsyns*.

4481. *bydde*, offered, but l. 4485 *badde* in the same sense; cf. N.E. *bade* and *bid*. See note to l. 2703.

4486. *He* refers to *stede*, of course; *was*, as long as I owned it. *Tryste* may be either = *trystly*, trusty (l. 11104; cf. note to l. 132), or, with a silent *e*, = *tryst*; cf. Reinbroun, ed. Turnb., 985 :

His hors was wel swiȝe *trist*,

and Stratmann, s. v. *trúst*.—*In all foundinge*, 'in all going,' 'hastening' (see note to l. 1372).

4501. *Before that dore* short for *before þe dore of þat logge*.

4511. *cownturd* = *encownturd*. See note to l. 576.

4529. *deraye*, 'grief.' See note to l. 1110.

4555. *owre* = *o'er*. I thought myself entitled to spell the word thus in order to get a perfect rhyme, as this seems to be one of the many cases of the scribe removing a northern form. Cf. note to l. 3108.

4570. *ȝer* = *er*, 'sooner.' See note to l. 60.

4602. *os* = *as*, i. e. 'as if.' The same spelling appears in ll. 8220, 8590, 9089, 9622, 10299. Cf. also Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell (written by the same scribe), ll. 1008, 1064, 1159, 1323, 1367.

4625. *they*, Guy's men. I am inclined to think two lines omitted between ll. 4624 and 5, in which the concern of Guy's men on account of his not returning was mentioned. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 4435-8 :

Ycomen he is to þe cite,
His men al sori findeþ he ;
And, when hij her lord seye come,
Bliþe þai were alle and some.

4626. *all in fere*, i. e. 'all together,' is rather superfluous, whereas *hole and fere* makes good sense, and is, moreover, a favourite phrase of our author's. Cf. ll. 24, 1265, 4650, 11965, but especially 6715-16 :

All they made gode chere,
When þey sawe Gye *hole and fere*.

I have restored the same phrase in l. 6219 (MS. *clere* for *fere*), and l. 11590 (MS. *sere* for *fere*).

4631. I am unable to make out what this line means. Cf. the French :

Atant oi Gui demener,
Plurer, plaindre e guaimentir.

Nor do I know how to correct this passage neither.

4640. *Sende aftur hur yn* must be a short expression for 'send for her and let her come in,' unless there be a mistake, the scribe originally going to write *yn hye*; cf. l. 4629.

4647. *plyght*, drew, took. This verb does not occur in the present tense; for it cannot be the preterit of *plucke* as often is asserted. It must rather be referred to an infinitive **plycche* = O.E. **plyccan* = Germ. *pflücken*. *plyghte* means also 'pulled,' 'tore'; cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 170, 15, and *sodeynly he FLIGHT his hors aboute*; ib. 230, 790, *al sodeynly thre leves have i FLIGHT out of this booke*; ib. IV, 198, 1120, *he seyde hir thus and out the letre PLYGHT*; Alis. (Weber, I, 241), 5831, and *FLIGHTTEN hym in with ynnen hoke*. I do not find this verb in Stratmann, but two passages in which it occurs are cited by Stratmann, s. v. *plihthen* = *plaiten*.

4657. *trowest* = *trowedest*. Such contractions are not uncommon. Cf. l. 7709, *wenyst* = *wenydest*, l. 7825, *seruest* = *seruedest*, l. 7826, *partyst* = *partydeste*; perhaps also l. 6612, *harbarowste* = *harbarowedeste* (see the note). Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 344, *woundest* = *woundedest*; Meditations, ed. Cowper, 664, *suffrest* = *suffredest*. But this contraction especially takes place in the preterits of the auxiliary verbs 'I do,' 'I will,' and 'I shall,' though no instance appears in our poem. But cf. *dest* = *dedest*, *didst*, in Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 4874, 4972, 5256, 5830, 6012, 6015, 6016, 6404; *wost* = *woldest*, *wouldst*, ib. 230, 948, 2987, 6990, 7812, 8521; Reinbroun, 717, 1275; *schust* = *schuldest*, *shouldst*, Guy, ed. Turnb., 6510, 6583, 7591, 8570, 10378; Reinbroun, 419, 463.

4673. Perhaps we must read *lechys*; cf. ll. 4629 and 4681, and Copland's Guy, T iiiii :

The leches haue vndertake
Whole and sound him to make.

4703. *specyalte*, friendship; cf. 5304. *Special* or *-el*, particular friend : e. g. Richard (Weber, 2, 92), 2351-2 :

Let him yelde my tresor every dele,
If he will be my *speciele* ;

Alis. (Weber, I, 136), 3287-8 :

And, withoute more tale,
Makith heom al be his *speciale* ;

read *tales* : *speciales*? St Dunstan, ed. Furn., 194 :

He let ofsende his freond, þat specials to him were.

Cf. also *that y loue so speryallye* and the like, 5978, 6212, 7046, 7348.

4708. One of those quaint figurative superlatives of M.E. poetry. Cf. 6524, *a better man dranke neuer wyne*; 7576, *a fouler dranke neuyr wyne*; Guy, ed. Turnb., 6422, *better man drank neuer win*.

4709—4712. Cf. the French :

Guarri me auez, sire, de mort :
Mult par aueroie, certes, grant tort,
Si ne uus amasse, com seingnur.

Had in l. 4709 has the force of 'would have had.' 'You would have

had a bad purpose (cf. note to l. 4410) to save me,' etc.—Instead of *serue* in l. 4712 we must read the same tense as in *louyd*, l. 4711, since these two words stand for the one French *amasse*.

4716. *other* = *otheres*. It may be a dialectical peculiarity, not a mistake. But I do not remember any other instance.

4738. *What he hyght* is parenthetical, *was* in l. 4737 belonging also to *of what lande*. Cf. note to l. 2234.

4750. *And hym louyd*, viz. Duke Loyere. See the note to l. 10. l. 4751 shows that l. 4750 has not the same subject as l. 4749.

4758. *had hur away*, carried her away. Cf. Chaucer's C. T. Prol., 548, where the correct reading seems to be :

At wrastlynge he wolde *haue away* the ram.

Some MSS. *haue alwey*, the Harleian 7334, *bere away*, which is a gloss of *haue away*.

4765. *hym thoght*; cf. note to l. 385.

4775. *whytehare*, white-haired; cf. 8565, 8671, and the passage quoted in note to l. 7409. The word is wanting in Stratmann as well as in Halliwell.

4776. *lassyth*, lessens, gets less, decreases; cf. *lessud*, l. 8302.

4791. Strike out the foot-note; for *grete*, as Prof. J. E. B. Mayor, of St John's, Cambridge, was good enough to remind me, is a substantive here = 'weeping,' 'sorrow.' See Halliwell and Stratmann. Stratmann refers to Goth. *grêts* and Icel. *grátr*, but *grete* is Icel. *græti*, and only *grot* Icel. *grátr*.

4802. *emperere* (from the O.F. nominative *emperere*, Prov. *empeaire*, Lat. *imperátor*, whereas *emperoure* is derived from the O.F. accusative *emperëor*, Prov. *emperador*, Lat. *imperatorem*) occurs in the rhyme, ll. 8848, 9578, and must be restored for *empere* in ll. 4205 and 9960. Cf. also the note to l. 8908.

4809. *Gorgomoyse* here and l. 5412, but *Gormoyse*, ll. 4340, 4744, 4771, 4780, 4958, 5352, etc.

4845. *the flowre*. See note to l. 77.

4860. *afayle*. Mätzner's *Wörterbuch* has no other instance of this word.

4866. *w^t* and *p^t* could be easily mistaken for each other. Cf. also l. 5164.

4868. *hys hors fete*. See note to l. 503.

4921-4. We have here a construction similar to such Latin ones as : *Ne quis a nobis hoc ita dici forte miretur : ne nos quidem huic uni studio penitus unquam dediti fuimus*. As in this and similar instances *scito* must be supplied, so before, l. 4923, '*had sene*,' or the like, is omitted. Quite the same case occurs in ll. 10119-21.

4928. *bare*, struck. See note to l. 1944.

4963. *churche zarde*. See note to l. 1799.

4979. *þe* before *grace* I think must be omitted. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 49, 734 :

But out of prisoun am ystert *by grace* ;

Morris and Skeat, Specimens, II, x, 547-8 :

Ay til he *thurgh grace* may com

Til baptem and til cristendom.

Cf. also note to l. 1216.

5015. *nye wende*, near Duke Loyere's army, it seems.

5035. MS. *schylde*. In the French :

Del healme un des quarters trenchaz :

Sur le espaulle le coup chai,

the weapon is not mentioned, but there can be no doubt that the sword is meant.

5054. *helmes* cannot be right, as only Harrawde's helmet is meant.

5056. *ranne on blode*, ran with blood, was bloody; cf. Harrowing of Hell, ed. Mall, 55 :

He beten me, *þat i ran on blode* ;

St Margaret, ed. Cockayne, p. 28, l. 137 :

Olibrius sat and bihuld, hou hure lymes yrne ablode ;

Havelok, 431-2 : And of *þe leue holi rode*,

þat [read *þar?*] god himselue *ran on blode*.

Sir Tristrem, p. 176 (quoted by Madden in gl., s. v. *renne*) :

His heued *ran on blod*.

5066. *þorthē*, earth. See note to l. 60.

5067. *glasedde*, 'glided; glanced wrongly,' Halliwell. Cf. Allit. Poems, a 171 :

Suche gladande glory con to me *glace*.

It is O.F. *glacier* (from Lat. *glacies*), originally 'to be like ice,' then 'to slide,' 'to glide.'

5077. *Me had leuer* = *y had leuer*, 4566, 4898, 5954, 7037, 8897 (cf. 7067).

5106. *some fledde* is parenthetical as *and some scaped* in l. 2234.

5115-16. *fonde* is O.E. *fundian*, to go (see note to l. 1372), as shown by *forthe*, not *fandian*, to try. l. 5116 depends on *to loke* (or the like; cf. ll. 5128, 6909), that is to be supplied from the context. Cf. ll. 5120, 11148, 11420, and such Greek constructions as ἡλυθον, εἴ τινα μοι κληιδόνα πατρός ἐνίσποις.

5199. *whayle* (O.E. *hāl*), healed. As to *wh* for *h*, see note to l. 3422, as to *ay* for *ā*, *ō*, see note to l. 3070.

5205. *þe better* = *eo melius*, *þe* being O.E. *þȝ*, M.H.G. *diu*; cf. l. 6922.

5214. *we gete the worre*; cf. l. 4992, *the warse had the Lumbardes*. Cf. Gower, Prol. 83-4 :

It is to wonder of thilke werre,

Of which none wote, who *hath the werre*,

and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 350, l. 84. Cf. also *þe warse went on hys syde*, l. 11073.

5229-30. *mountenans* is a corruption of *mountance* (cf. ll. 2412, 2810, 6310, 6514). But cf. *mountenance* in the passage quoted from the Caius MS. in the note to ll. 9651-2.—*Rone* cannot well be *ron*, *ran song*. I know very well that passage in Snorri's Edda where King Fróði does not allow his maids Fenja and Menja to rest or to sleep longer than the cuckoo was silent or one could recite a song: *þá gaf hann þeim eigi lengri hvíld eða svefn, en gaukrinn þagði eða hljóð mátti greða* (*Norran Fornkvæði*, ed. Bugge, 325). But on consulting the French original we find:

E, com il serrunt a une jornee
Esloingne de lur contree,
Tuz les traitres dunc prendrez ;

which is rendered in the Auchinleck MS. (ed. Turnb.), 5139-40:

And, when þai ben farn her jurne
And far fram her cuntre, *etc.*,

and in Copland's Guy, X iii:

And, when they be a dayes journey
Out of your (*sic!*) cittie, *etc.*

I have, therefore, little doubt that *rone* stands for *iorne* (i. e. *jorné*), which the scribe replaced by *rone*, as if it were the participle past (*i-orne*) of *yrne*, run, and that *gone* in l. 5229 originally preceded *fro þe cyte*. So I propose to read:

When they be gone fro þe cyte
But þe mowntans of a jorne,

jorne in the original sense of 'a day's journey'; cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 84, 1880:

Out of his toun a *journee* largely

(cf. Tyrwhitt's note to C. T., 2740); Genes. and Exodus, 3995-6:

Forð nam ðis folc siðen fro ðan
Fele *jurnes* into Pharan ;

ib. 1291-2:

Fro Bersabe *jurnes* two
Was ðat land, ðat he bed him to.

5241. I have thought it indispensable to read *Tyrrye* for *syr Gye* in MS. Tyrry, not Guy, is the obstacle to Otoun's views to Ozelle. Cf. l. 5248, and the French:

Le conte Terri, le facez juger,
Li e sun piere a mort liurer.

5263-4. I cannot conceive how the singular pronouns could be accounted for.

5278. Perhaps *messengere* is a mistake for *message*.

5304. *specyaltee*, friendship. See note to l. 4703.

5308. *attone*. Cf. *made at oon*, 5459, 6389; *be at oon*, 6292, 6360; *be at one*, 6358. Hence N.E. to atone, atonement. See Bible Word-Book, edd. J. Eastwood and W. A. Wright, s. v. *at one*. Cf. also *knytt in oon*, l. 10738, and the common *anon* (O.E. *on an*). *To be at two* is 'to quar-

rel'; cf. Parish, Sussex Dialect, s. v. *two*. Even *to be at sixes and sevens* may be compared in some way.

5325. In order to get a rhyme I have restored the name as it is spelled in ll. 5449; cf. 5443, 6252, 6710, 7346. I have done the same in l. 6387; cf. also ll. 4341 and 5343.

5327. *tolde* (fixed, determined on) belongs to *the tyme*. The predicate often separates an adjective from its substantive. Cf. l. 1239, *theuys come syxtene*; 2583, *we felows ben togedur plyght*; 3641, *an egull of golde þeron was bryght*.

5334. MS. *of* evidently for *on*. Just the reverse occurs in l. 6453.

5343. Cf. the French:

De *Loheregne* le dux Loher.

A similar corruption of *Lorayne* appears in l. 6387. Cf. note to l. 5325.

5361. To *Costantyne*, i. e. Constantinople. See note to l. 2726. There was, however, no such thing related before, nor is it consistent with what was told. But this error is very likely to be owing to the author himself. The French has:

Kant sa fille forconseilla
E hors de sa chambre le amena;
Puis ad mene estrange gent,
Ke le duc het mortelement.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnb., 4237-8:

Now he bringeþ vncoupe folk miche
Opon his lond so dedliche,

and Copland's version, Y i:

Ouer that he hath brought on our lord
Straunge men to make discorde,
That bene his deadly enimies.

It seems clear that our author did not understand the third line of the French text, or had a corrupt reading before him. He translated as if there were *à* before *estrange gent*, at the same time using *Constantyne* instead of *straunge folke*. But if we insert *ys* in l. 5362 we get as good a rendering of the last French line as it was possible after the mistake in the preceding one.

5367. I now think *besecheyd* may be right, after all. Though I do not remember any other M.E. instance of the preterit of *beseche* being regularly formed (cf. *besoʒt* in the rhyme 4030), yet it really may have been used. And the preterit is not objectionable in itself as referring to the time before Loyere sent the Bishop to Gormoyse. The other M.E. versions have the perfect tense here: Auchin., l. 3239, *ichaue þe douke bisouʒt*; Copland, Y i, *i and other frindes mo haue preyed*.

5412. *Gorgomoyse*. See note to l. 4809.

5416. *whyght* for *wyght*; cf. *where* = *were*, l. 11540; *where* = *were*, war, l. 11871; *whende*, Guy, ed. Turnb., 4049; *we* = *we*, ib. 9832. Cf. N.E. *whit* (note to l. 449), *whelm*, *whelk*, *wharf*, perhaps also N.E. *whoop* (*Anzeiger für deutsches Alterthum und deutsche Litteratur*, II, p. 19).

5424. *synge*: 'wele away.' It is very common in mediæval English poetry to denote lamenting as singing. Cf. *Beowulf*, 783-7:

Norðdenum stôð
 atelic egesa ânra gehwylcum,
 þâra þe of wealle wôp gehýrdon,
 gryreleôð galan godes andsacan,
 sigeleásne sang;

l. 5969 of our poem *all in mornynge was hyr songe*; 7176, *y may in sorowe synge*; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 178, *ever his song is*: 'wo and wi'; 7149 and 7301, 'allas, allas,' *it was his song*; 7165, 8605, and 10410, 'allas,' *it was his song*; 7486, *y sing*: 'allus'; Isenbras (Caius MS., p. 105), *hys song was*: 'weylaway'; Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 105, 212, *Absolon may wayle and synge*: 'allas'; ib. 212, 216, *many a night they songen*: 'weylaway'; ib. 246, 13, *they schulde synge, if that they were hent*; ib. l. 18, *he made the poeple pitously to synge*; ib. III, 110, 118, *i may synge*: 'allas and waylaway,' etc., etc. Cf. R. Heinzel, *Stil der altgerm. poesie*, p. 23.

5430. *wyght*. See note to l. 419.

5437-8. Delete the comma at the end of l. 5438, and put one after l. 5437.

5462. *that* = 'to whom' as a dative. Cf. *Havelok*, 727:

His, þat Hauelok was þe name;

ib. 2028-29:

And on, þe mayster of hem alle,

þat was þe name Giffin Galle.

5478. *as y the behyght*, as I promise (assure) you. Cf. note to l. 169 and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 377, l. 197. M.E. authors generally address a plurality of readers (or rather, hearers; cf. ll. 10725 and 10749): see Mätzner's *Gramm.* II², 10, and in our poem, ll. 19, *y wyll yow telle*; 4519, *as y yow say*; 6084, *as y yow telle*; 10787, *y schalle yow telle*. But sometimes, as here, *thou* is used; cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV, 108, l. 6:

The double sorowe of Troylus to tellen . . .

My purpos is, er that i parte fro *the*;

Holy Grail, ed. Furnivall, 102, 28, *i telle the*; 112, 352, *i telle it the*; 127, 318, *i the plyght*; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 28, *y the plichte* (but *the* is wanting in the Auchinleck MS., l. 715).

5512. *schake*, move quickly. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, 1212-13:

He somond than the schippemene scharpely theraftyre

To *schake* forthe with the schyre mene to schifte the gudez;

ib. 1992, *to schake in a sheltrone*; *Destruction of Troy*, 2921, *to schake over lande*; ib. 3178, *shake in our way*; see also Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 299, 84. This is the usual meaning of O.E. *secutan* moveri cum impetu, ruere, volare, effugere; see Grein's *Sprachschatz*, where only one instance with the meaning *movere* is quoted. In O.L.G. the verb occurs only once: *Heliand*, ed. Schmeller, 83, 4 (= Heyne, 2708), *hē ellior skôk*, he went to another place. But Icel. *skaka* is a transitive verb.

5521. *in manere*, 'in some sort'; cf. Shaksp., II Rich. III, i, 11-12, You have *in manner* with your sinful hours Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him. Compare also *in a manner*, e. g. Shaksp., John, V, vii, 89, it is *in a manner* done already, and 1 Sam. xxi 5 (see Bible Word-Book, p. 309).—*carue* (O.E. *cearf*, strong preterit of O.E. *ceorfan*, M.E. *kerue*, *carue*) is quite clear in the MS., but in Halliwell's Dictionary, p. 852, it is by a mistake quoted as *tarne*.

5527. The following lines show that *spere* cannot be the weapon intended by the author. Cf. the French :

Mes un autre le ad encontre,
Qui un *brand* tint mult trenchant.

—*welc growne* is 'well ground.' It is the only omission of the kind in our poem. But *d* is often omitted after *l* and *n*, e. g. in Havelok; see Skeat's preface, p. xxxvii.

5541. *trauell* MS. instead of *traueyle*; cf. note to l. 857.

5544. *be my nolle*. Cf. note to l. 974. *Noll* is now obsolete. In Shakspeare's time it seems to have been used only contemptuously, much as *noddle* at present. Cf. Midsummer Night's Dream, III, ii, 17, *an ass's noll I fixed on his head*. But originally it was a good word for 'vertex,' 'occiput.' So we read in Ælfric's Glossary: 'Caput *heáfod*. Capita *mâ* (*heáfila* some MSS. add). Vertex *hnoll*. Cerebrum *brægen*,' etc. In M.E. it also means head; cf. Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 211 :

þu art wood on þe *nolle*.

In Webster—Mahn, s. v. *noll*, though O.E. *hnoll* is mentioned, yet it is suggested that *noll* probably is contracted from *noddle*. But if these two words be identical, it would be much safer to suppose that *noddle* was corrupted from *noll* by popular etymology connecting it with *to nod*; cf. *causeway* = *cawsaye*, l. 9990, *sparrow-grass*, *craw-fish*, *beef-eaters*, etc. Koch., III, 1, 161-2 (cf. also note to l. 8411). In O.H.G. *hnoll* is culmen, cacumen, vertex, sinciput, in M.H.G. *no*l cacumen.

5571. *Payue* = *Payuy*, *Payuye*; cf. l. 5630 and note to l. 132. —*dyght*. See note to l. 4350.

5579. *The todur*; see note to l. 658.

5591. Having first addressed Otoun, Loyere turns to Harrawde, l. 5589, but returns to Otoun, l. 5591. Cf. note to l. 1753.

5625. *hyt*, the marriage; cf. note to l. 1051.

5651. *redde*, intention, purpose; cf. note to l. 4410.

5662. *wythowte defawte*; cf. note to l. 4006.

5664. *wythowte othe*. See note to l. 10862.

5671. *Lorde*, in an exclamation, cf. 5878, 6345, 6556, 9097, 11337. *Lefe lorde*, 10621. *God of heuyn*, 9129. *Lady heuyn quene*, 6551.

5672. *þem* after *emperowre* = the Emperor and his men; cf. notes to ll. 6094, 6267, 8697, 10915.

5692. *ne myght*, viz. *go*. See note to ll. 855-6.

5717. Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 5621-6 :

When þe lord herd þat,
 Þat it was Gij, þat to him spac,
 'Sir,' he seyð, 'welcome 3e be :
 In 3our owen herberwe 3e.
 Ful welcome artow to me,
 And ful wel y knowe þe' ;

and Copland's Guy contains six similar lines. But our author may have intentionally shortened the narrative. The abrupt transition from Guy's words to those of Amys is not without a parallel. Cf. 5957, 6053, 6381, 6493, 7021, 10559.

5722. MS. *to my lande*. But cf. the French :
 Puis me enueastes en *plusurs* terres,
 and Copland's Guy, Z iii :

And me led in *dyuers* lande.

5723. *bordys*, MS. *bordes* ; cf. note to l. 1285.

5742. *tane*, appointed. Cf. Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1017-18 :

The emperowre, wythowte fayle,
 Toke the day of batayle ;

ib. 1024 : When pese was cryed and day *tane* ,

ib. 1156, *y have taken a day* ; 1366, *sche hath taken a day* ; 1585, *but takyn they have another day*. Cf. note to l. 10166.

5750. *redde*. See note to l. 4410.

5780. *Do wey*. See note to l. 3097.

5782. *bad*, prayed.

5785. *Now ys Guy to Pauye towne*, viz. *gone or come*. See note to ll. 855-6.

5796. *of poste* depends on *ryche*.

5805. *dromande*, man-of-war, is owing either to a corrupt reading in the French MS. from which our author translated, or, what I think more probable, to a mistake of his, arising perhaps from his defective knowledge of natural history. The French (according to the MS. of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge) has :

Sus ciel ni ad un plus ignel,
 Ne est lepard, ne est cheuerel,
 Ne *dromedarie* ia tant alast,
 Ke cest destrier tost nel passast.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5719-22 :

In alle þe world is so swift a best,
 Libard no ro, in no forest ;
 No *dromedarie* no is þer non
 So swiþe goand, so is he on.

5813. *He wyll hym slee*, 'but he will slay him.' See note to ll. 1301-3.

5841. *in londe*, used here as often with no great force. Cf. l. 8885 and *Kindheit Jesu* (Altengl. Legenden, ed. Horstmann), 482-3 :

þou dest folie,
 þat þou nelt lere þine sone *in londe* ;

ib. 1828: Hov Iesus liuede child *in londe*;

Beôwulf, 2309-10: wæs se fruma egeslîc
leôdum *on londe*;

ib. 2836: hûru, þæt *on lande* lyt manna þâh;

etc. Similarly in O.L.G. Heliand, 25, 24 (= Heyne, 855-56):

wissun that thôh managa
liudi *aftar them landa*.

Chaucer in his parodical Sir Topaz uses *in toun*e in the same way; ed. Morris, III, 133, 80-2:

For in this world no womman is
Worthy to be my make
*In toun*e.

Cf. also *in þe toun*e in l. 8489 of our poem.

5854. Cf. the French:

Li dux demande: 'quei as nun?'
'Sire,' fait il, 'hom me apelle Jun.'

But cf. also ll. 7789-90 of our poem, and the corresponding French lines:

'Amis,' fait il, 'com as nun?'
'Sire,' fait il, 'lem me apelle Jun.'

But in the latter passage the pseudonym *John* was, without doubt, suppressed by a scribe, not by the author (see the note). Hence we may suppose that the same took place in l. 5854, in which case my conjecture in the foot-note would not restore the author's words, but an alteration of them by a scribe. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5773-4:

þe douk oxeþ, what his name be.
'Yon men clepet me in mi cuntre.'

5859-60. The narrative is interrupted by the narrator asking for something to drink also in ll. 6687-8 and 7117-18. Perhaps the same is meant when in l. 7550 it says *Let vs be mery, y yow pray*. Such requests of the narrator to his audience, though in all the passages of our poem not occurring in the French original, were not unusual in M.E. romances. Cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 61:

Betwene them two they told the tale.
Now giue vs drinke wyne or ale;

but these two lines are wanting in the Auchinleck MS. (l. 1832); Havelok, 13-16:

At the beginning of vre tale
Fil me a cup of ful god ale,
And wile drinken, her y spelle,
þat Crist vs shilde alle fro helle;

Sir Bevis in Ellis, Spec. of Early E. Metr. R., ed. Halliwell, p. 246:

For the time, that god made,
Fill the cup and make us glad;

Eglamour (in Thorton Romances, ed. Halliwell), 343-5:

Make we mery, so haue we blys.
Thys ys the furste fytt of thys,
That we haue undurtane,

and similarly the second and third *fyttes* are concluded (ll. 634-6 and 904-6). But all these lines are wanting in the Lincoln MS. In M.H.G. poems we find similar interruptions of the narrative; e. g. in Laurin, 1216-18:

Wie kâmen sî von dannen?
Daz enmac niemer ergân,
Der leser muoz ein trinken hân.

Cf. Wackernagel, *Geschichte der deutschen Litt.*, pp. 98, 27 and 157, 7.

5870. *me forthynkyth*. See note to l. 984.

5889. *For goddys loue and seynt Mary*, i. e. Mary's. See note to l. 688.

5896. *Then = then that*. Cf. note to l. 992.

5916. *Halfen dele*; cf. 7173, *halfen dele my trauayle*; 10040, *of my lond the halfen dele*; 10868-9, *þe halfen dell of all my londys*. O.E. *healfne dæl* or *þone healfan dæl*.

5928. *longe or none*. Cf. l. 3342, *abyde tyll none*, though the expletive use of *noon* is not so clear there; Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 180:

To morrow shall we wete, *er it be none*;

Athelston (*Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, II, 90):

To morwen, *or it be none*;

ib.:

Longe, *or it were none*;

ib. 95:

He swoor op̃is be sunne and mone,

Þey scholen be drawn and hongyd *or none*,

where the MS. has *be op̃is* (not *be op̃ys* as printed).

5939. *me forthoght*. See note to l. 984.

5950. *to kepe*, to pay regard to, not to slight. The reverse is *my preson to breke*, l. 11538.

5956. *Then = then that*. Cf. note to l. 992.

5969. *hur songe*. See note to l. 5424.

5985. *anyþynge* used adverbially; cf. 6309, 8898. Cf. the adverbial use of *oght* (note to l. 7799) and *nothing* (still N.E.).

5988. MS. *Of me to haue*. I prefer the emendation given in the text to another that might be suggested, viz.:

Than beganne þat maye to crye
Of *hur* to haue some mercye,

so that the direct speech would begin in l. 5989. But we should then miss the person who is entreated to have mercy on Ozelle. The French has:

'Sire *Gui*,' fait ele, 'pur deu merci l
De iceo iour al tiers, *etc.*

5992. *me*, but MS. *hym*. Cf., however, ll. 5632-34 and the French:

Mas vne rien purpense ai,
Ke ieo cel iour *me* occierai.

5995. *errande* often means 'purpose,' 'wish,' 'object.' Cf. Destruction of Troy, 481:

Shentyng for shame to shew þere *ernd*;

ib. 522 : And vnder shadow of shame shewid forth hir *ernd*;
Cobsam's Chaste Wife, 329 :

For o *erand* we come bothe.

6038. *Nor man bye*, i. e. 'nor any man being present.'

6048. *fonde* is here 'to try,' O.E. *fandian*, *fondian*. See note to l. 1372.—*Speke* is used similarly to *carpe* in l. 3320; cf. the passage quoted from the Caius MS. in the note to ll. 9043-4.

6058. *grete*, MS. *wepe*. See the note to l. 2534.

6094. 'They had the maiden in their power.' *þey* refers to Otoun and his men, though only Otoun is mentioned before; cf. note to l. 5672. I do not see any reason to suppose a clerical error here. But then the author evidently misunderstood the French before him. Guy armed himself :

Kar armes out a son talent,
Que la pucele li out baillees :
Al duc esteient presentees.
Puis monta le bon destrer,

which lines are accurately rendered in the Auch. MS., 6003-7 :

Gij armed him wel richeliche
Al to his wille stalworþliche
Wiþ armes, þe maiden him had bitouzt,
þat were þe douke to present brouzt.
His gode stede he bistrod, *etc.*

The mistake of our author perhaps arose from the verb *bailler* meaning both 'to bring,' 'to procure' and 'to possess,' 'to have in one's power.'

6100. *store*; see note to l. 3869.

6114. *hyt*; see note to l. 1051.

6137. *He* is Barrarde, as shown by *Guy hyt felde* in the next line.

6138. *hyt*, the thrust; cf. l. 6498 and note to l. 1051. *felde*, required here by the rhyme, though not occurring again in the poem, is yet confirmed by the frequent preterits *sende*, *wende*.

6176. *newe*. See the note to l. 237.

6184. A zeugma, *eyle* belonging to *gode* only in the sense of 'to befall.' Quite a parallel passage occurs in Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 909 :

Me eylyth nothyng, but gode.

6212. *specyallye*. See note to l. 4703.

6219. *clere* makes no sense here. Guy, ed Turnbull, 6130 :

Hole and sounde icham hider brouzt.

Our author, no doubt, used the synonymous phrase *hole and fere*. See note to l. 4626.

6223. *hym þoght*. Cf. l. 4765 and note to l. 385.

6235. *colde*, dead. Cf. note to l. 1149.

6267. *þem all*, Otoun's men. Cf. note to l. 5672.

6271. The corresponding French passage is not put in Tyrry's mouth, but related by the author :

Gui de ceo ne se obliad mie,
 Asemblez ad chiualerie.
 Al duc ad fait damage grant :
 De sei uenger fait bien semblant.

After *not* we must insert *but*; cf. ll. 5273-4 :

He *wolde not* for all Lumbardye,
But þey were dedde full hastelye ;

ll. 8195-6 :

Y *wolde not* for þys cyte wyth þe gylte towre,
But y myght stroye kynge Tryamowre.

Only in our passage the infinitive with *to* (cf. note to ll. 1924-5) is used instead of a subordinate clause.

6295. *all, þat euer þat*. Cf. even Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 2246 :
 And, *who that euer that* was wele payde or wroth.

6309. *onyþynge*. See note to l. 5985.

6334. *wyndyst, goest*. See note to l. 3872.

6338. *hove, dwell, remain*. Cf. 6343. The word, obsolete now, is pretty common in M.E., but no **hofian* has as yet been found in O.E. It is, no doubt, a derivation from O.E. *hof, aula, domus*.

6352. *A, MS. And*. Cf. the reverse case in l. 4448. The French is :

'Sire coens Terri,' dit Herald,
 'Vn bon conseil tant valt :
 Ceo uus mande li dux Loher, etc.

—*lere*, O.E. *lêran*, is originally 'to teach,' but is in M.E. often confounded with *lerne*. Cf. the confusion between N.E. *teach* and *learn* with uneducated people, and even N.E. *learned* = N.H.G. *gelehrt*. M.H.G. *lêren* and *lernen* are employed for each other in the same way.

6364. *presente* as an adverb = 'at this moment,' 'now'; cf. Chaucer, *ed. Morris*, II, 54, l. 880 :

That i wol dye present in hire sight ;

but also = 'at that moment,' 'then'; cf. *Grail*, ed. Furnivall, 145, 946 :

To him, that the viiithe bataille kepte *presente* ;

and 'presently,' 'immediately'; *ib.* 131, 455-6 :

That Iekonyas tho forth him wente
 His lordis comaundement to don *present*.

6381 is spoken by Aubry. See the note to l. 5717.

6387. *dewke Loreyne*, MS. *dewke loyeren*. Cf. the French :

Quant sunt a *Lohereng* uenuz,
 A grant ioie i sunt receuz,

and the notes to ll. 633 and 5325.

6447. *Be then* = *be that* (ll. 581, 5627, 6647) ; cf. Mätzner's *Gramm.*, II, 514. It is used also in a relative sense, cf. Generydes, ed. Wright, 635 :

Theder they came, *be thanne* it was nyght ;

Bythen you've com back 'twill be coager-time (luncheon-time), *Parish, Sussex Dialect*, p. 23.

6453. *of*, MS. *on*. Cf. l. 6528 and note to l. 5334. The French has:
A terre se mist *del* destrier.

6485. I have changed *ffadur* (i. e. *Fadur*) to *fader* to rhyme with *here*. Cf. *doghtere*: *manere*, ll. 7011-12.

6489. *be thy swyre*. Cf. *be my swyre*, l. 3598.

6498. *hote*. See note to l. 1049.

6524. Cf. note to l. 4708.

6579. *mynte*, to aim a blow, to strike. Cf. l. 6882. It is still dialectical in the sense of 'to aim,' 'to hint,' etc. O.E. *myntan*, to intend, to purpose. Cf. N.H.G. *es auf etwas münzen* = 'to mint at something.' Schmeller, *Bayer. Wörterbuch*, I², 1633 (II¹, 605), seems to be right in distinguishing it from '*münzen*' = 'to mint' (from Latin *moneta*), and referring it to O.E. *munan*. The M.E. substantive *mynt*, *mynte*, 'blow,' seems to be a late derivation from the verb. It is not found in Stratmann or Halliwell, but cf. l. 6839, Destruction of Troy, 8268:

Euyll masit of the *mynt* and the mayn stroke;

Green Knight, 2345, *with a mynt one*; ib. 2350, *þat oþer munt*; ib. 2352, *two bare myntes*.

6612. *harbarowste* must be the preterit (cf. note to l. 4657). Cf. l. 6616 and the French:

Ke en uostre meison par charite
De bon quer *eussez herberger*.

6622. *Then* = *then if*. See note to l. 992.

6625. *þem*, if correct, must refer to the Earl's son and the three knights mentioned in l. 6603. But cf. l. 6628 and the French:

El cor ad doloꝛ mult grant,
Kant ueit gisir *sun fiz* mort.

6626. *he cowde no redde*. See note to ll. 1199, 1200.

6633. *they* after *no man*. See note to l. 100.

6638. *all hys odur wede*. See note to l. 559.

6652. *as þat* = *as if*. See note to l. 4062.

6656. *hote*. See note to l. 1049.

6666. *tynte* seems to mean 'threw,' 'smote'; cf. l. 6884. But I do not know any parallel passage. Cf. note to l. 2864.

6674. *whome*. See note to l. 3422.

6682. MS. *þurste*. By reading *þryste* we get a perfect rhyme. *prist* is cited in Stratmann from Orm, Prick of Conscience, Lydgate, and the Coventry Plays; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8252:

For *prist* mi hert wil tospring;

ib. 8330: *Ichauē swiche prist, þer y stond.*

6687-8. See note to ll. 5859-60.

6697. Perhaps I was wrong in inserting *hys*. *Turned them vysage* may be as correct as N.E. *to turn head*; cf. Shaksp., a IV Henry, III, ii, 102; V Henry, II, iv, 69.

6699, 6700. Do these lines really mean 'they carried home many wounds and many dead men'? I rather think there is an anacoluthon. l. 6700 goes on as if preceded by *Many were wounded*.

6727. *Of the tresure kepte*, cared about; cf. ll. 5950, 8334.

6732. *Into Ynglonde y wyll*. See note to l. 856.

6737. MS. *them*. But we get a perfect rhyme by reading *thame*, which form occurs in l. 7623 rhyming with *schame*.

6740. *some*. See note to l. 3187.

6760. *not* = *ne wot*, do not know, O.E. *nât*; cf. M.H.G. *neiz* = *ne weiz*.

6761. We expect a subordinate sentence; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 6669.

Also sone so it wite our fon.

Then for *when* occurs also l. 11085. Cf. *when* for *then*, Generydes, ed. Wright, 1093; *thanne* for *whanne*, ib. 652; *that* for *what*, ib. 666, 869.

6770. *Me þar not drede*, I need not dread. *þar* = O.E. *þearf*, German *darf*, is in M.E. used both as a personal and impersonal verb. Cf. Mätzner, Gramm., I², 417-18; II², 206-7; Koch, II, 29, § 29. Cf. also l. 6830;

Of no wepon *he þar* not dowte;

St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, l. 29:

‘A, sone,’ he seide, ‘*ðar þe* nouht wepe,’

where MS. and Horstmann read *darþe*.

6783. I doubt whether the line is correct.

6812. *passyd so*, escaped all dangers in this way.

6824. *wyþ þe meste*, very big; cf. note to l. 1496.

6830. *þar*. See note to l. 6770.

6831. *Hys breste* (ys) *brode*, and (he hath) *black skynne*. See note to ll. 58-9.

6832. *myght ynne*, viz. go, get. See note to ll. 855-6.

6834. *vgle* = *ugly*. See note to l. 132.

6839. *mynte*. See note to l. 6579.

6840. *But* repeated from l. 6838. Cf. note to ll. 10211-12.

6864. *so god me mende*. Cf. l. 8681 and note to l. 615.

6882. *mynte*. See note to l. 6579.

6922. *þe* = Lat. *eo*. See note to l. 5205.

6936. *they* after *no man*. See note to l. 100.

6947. *myght no more*, had no more strength. Cf. Koch's Gramm., II, 25, § 25; Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 837:

Then *myght* Iames *no more*.

6954. *mett* = O.E. *mæt*, meted, measured.

6969-72 refer to the King only owing to a mistake of the translator. The French has:

A Walingforde sen est ale,
 Ses homes del honur i ad troue,
 Qui pur li grant ioie firent :
 Maint iur de li noueles nen oirent.

6974. *Odur bote was ther none*, 'there was no other help' (cf. *bote*, e. g. l. 2258), makes but poor sense. But it is easy to remove the fault. Cf. the French :

Kar son pierre mort esteit,
 Autre *eir* de li ne auoit ;

cf. ll. 889-90, 7013-14, and 7062. *

6992. *bedyn*, offered. See note to l. 2703.

6993. *Kyngys doghtur and emperowre*. See note to l. 688.

6994-5. *them all* after *hur* is not strange, the preceding singular referring to an individual case ; cf. note to l. 8886.

7020. *maydyn gone*, 'continue single.' The same phrase in M.H.G. (see Grimm's *Grammatik*, IV, 593). Cf. the beginning of one of those stanzas wrongly attributed to '*Der von Kurenberc*' (Minnesangs Frühling, edd. Lachmann and Haupt, p. 10) :

Aller wibe wünne diu *gêt* noch *megetin*

König Rother, 2231-2 :

Ich wil ouch immer *magit gân*,
 Mer newerde der helit lossam.

7036. MS. *maytene* for *mayntene*. Cf. note to l. 843.

7041. *Dewkys doghtur and emperowre*. See note to l. 688.

7046. *so specyallye*. See note to l. 4703.

7053. *yow* nominative here. See note to l. 4192.

7057-8. *hur* after the relative *that*, an anacoluthon that may be met with in all languages. E. g. *omnes tunc fere, qui nec extra urbem hanc vixerant, nec eos barbaries domestica infuscaverat, recte loquebantur*. Cf. ll. 7089-90.

7068. *wythowten mare*, without anything else.

7076. *for to forsake*. See note to ll. 1925-6.

7081. *thy* is an erratum for *thys*.

7089-90. *hur* after *that* ; see note to ll. 7057-8.

7100. *stode*, 'lasted.' Cf. Sal. and Sat. (Grein, *Bibliothek*, II, 368), l. 474 :

and æghwyle him þissa earfoða æce *standeð*.

Cf. N.E. of long (old) standing, Icel. *standa*, and such M.H.G. phrases as *lange stân*, *ez stuont driu jâr*, etc. *Sitten* is used in much the same sense ; cf. Havelok, 2344 :

þe feste fourti dawes *sat*.

7112. I cannot conceive why only Felice's happiness should be mentioned. Cf. the French :

Ensemble furent cinquante iours :
 Plus ne durerent *lurs* amurs.

7117-18. See note to ll. 5859-60.

7140. MS. *That y trauelde fore*. Despite the note to l. 1785, I think it impossible that l. 7140 alone should contain direct speech. Cf. the French :

Pur vne femme, que *il* tant *amat*,
Pur qui tant mals endurez *ad*.

7151. *soght*, came. Cf. Satan (Cædmon, ed. Thorpe, p. 281 ; Grein, *Bibliothek*, I, 136), 266-7 :

Ne môt ic þâm sâwlum, þe þâr *sécað* up
eáðige of eorðan, æfre gehrnan ;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 81 (A B C) k :

thou art the same,
To whom i *seche* for my medicine ;

Isumbras, in the Caius MS., fol. 102 b :

When he to þe erþe *souȝte*

Tryamoure, 1182 : Then the emperowre thedur *soght* ;

Cheuelere Assigne, 52 :

Sythen *seche* to þe courte ;

ib. 60-1 :

At a chambre dore, as she forthe *souȝte*,
Seuene whelpes she sawe ;

Destruction of Troy, 963-4 :

Jason with joy and his joly felowes
Soghten euen to the sete of Chetes þe kyng ;
Thai *soght* into the cite vpon sere haluys ;

cf. even Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8617 :

Swiche sorwe ich *am* in *souȝt*.

Originally *sécan*, *sechen* with an accusative was 'to visit' ; cf. notes to ll. 7676 and 8394.

7154. *for seynt Charite* ; cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 51 :

I the beseche *for sainte Charite* ;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 9805 :

Bid him *for seynt Charite* ;

ib. 9841-3 :

Take þe batayle now on hond
And saue ous þe riȝt of Ingland,
For seynt Charite ;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 53, 863 :

And sle me first, *for seynte Charite* ,

ib. 272, 419 :

Now, Thomas, help, *for seynte Charite* ;

Shaksp., Hamlet, IV, v, 58 :

By Gis and by *St. Charity*.

Cf. also the notes to l. 471 and 11976.

7173. *Halfen dele my trauayle* (cf. note to l. 5916). *Of* is here omitted as very often in similar cases, e. g. *tresure plente* ; cf. ll. 479, 1772, 2748, 5960, etc. Cf. also *mete and drynke my fylle*, l. 7889, and *of water my fylle*, 8110 (cf. 9142). See also the notes to ll. 7483 and 10329.

7174. There is no other instance of such a rhyme in our poem as *trauayle*: *fayled* would be.—*we* refers to Guy and Felice. In the French Guy thinks only of himself:

La glorie del ciel, pur veirs, auerei,
Ensemble od deu saint serreie.

7176. *in sorowe synge*. See note to l. 5424.

7187. *so god me redde*; cf. 8936. *redde* = *rede*, O.E. *rædan*, advise, take care of. Cf. also note to l. 615.

7217. *may yow*. See note to l. 4192. *Parelle* is, no doubt, owing only to the scribe. Our author rhymes *exsyle*: *paryle* in ll. 7321-2; 9717-18, and as here *paryle*: *exsyle*, ll. 9483-4.

7223. *That* by no means refers to *vow*, but to Guy's sin mentioned especially in ll. 7163-4. It is strange that Guy in the Auchinleck MS. contains two lines (7244-5) from which ll. 7223-4 of our poem differ only by *And* in l. 7224:

pat ich haue wiþ mi bodi wrouȝt,
Wiþ mi bodi it schal be bouȝt.

7225. *for lefe nor lothe*. Cf. Havelok, 2379:

Ne leten he nouth *for lef ne loth*,

ib. 2775-6:

pat he ne sholden *for lef ne loth*
Neuere more ageyn him go.

See Skeat's glossary to Hav., s. v. *lef*, and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 299, l. 62.

7258. *grete*, MS. *wepe*. See note to l. 2534.

7261. For ll. 7261—8024 we have another copy of the same version in the Caius MS., p. 149-175. As this MS. will be printed at length in another volume, I have used it here and in the foot-notes only in correcting or, at least, pointing out obvious faults of our text.

7291. *seche*. The same fault, if fault it be, occurs in Cursor Mundi, 11804, where the Göttingen MS. has,

Hu had he hert to *seke* þair blode,

but the other MSS. printed have *sced* or *schede*.

7299. *anodur* seems to be 'on other.'

7305. *hyt* as accusative omitted. See note to l. 1474.

7323-4. *þe*, *how* . . . *thy*. Cf. note to ll. 1497-8.

7348. *specyallye*. See note to l. 4703.

7352. *whome*. See note to l. 3422.

7400. *Theðurwarde thoght hee*. See note to ll. 855-6.

7402. This passage is corrupt, or the translator did not understand his original. Cf. the French:

Ke en Antioche sen irra.
A vne iornee par de ca
A une fontaine suz un pin
La vit seer un pelerin.

The Caius MS., p. 154, has :

To Antyoche, the riche cytee.
As he wente in that contrey,
Halfe the day in that jorney,
Vndyr a bussh ther he fonde
A pore pylgryme syttande.

7403-4. The double *there* is odd. The instance in l. 7794 is a little different, nor itself free from suspicion. Cf. also ll. 4275, 4527.

7406. Cf. the Caius MS., 154 :

He had gret sorrow and pyne.

7409. An anacoluthon ; cf. note to ll. 58-9. l. 7409 runs as if preceded by *Hys eyen were grete and hys vysage stronge*.—I do not know the corresponding passage of the French poem, but the reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7436 :

Wip whithore heued and berd yblowe.

7412. *tythyng* 'thing.' Cf. note to l. 2022.

7416. See note to l. 1155.

7420. *noyed*. See note to l. 576.

7432. *hyght* may be the preterit here ; cf. the Caius MS., p. 155 :

Erle Ionas some tyme i hyght,

and *had* in l. 7433.

7447. *A grete batayle was there oon*. Cf. Mätzner's *Wörterbuch*, p. 78, Gramm. III, 197 ; and besides Stations of Rome, ed. Furnivall, 480 :

An holy doctor he was on ;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2702 :

A fair gift is þis now on ;

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 178 :

A glad man shuld i be one.

7464. *belapped*, surrounded. See Mätzner's *Wörterbuch*.

7483. *Mete and drynke we had smalle*, but l. 8724 :

Of mete and drynke they had small.

Cf. note to l. 7173.

7494. *crye*. See note to l. 2850.

7501. *The sowdon sone*. See note to l. 503, but cf. also l. 7538.

7502. Cf. the French :

Sadoingne de Perse est apelle ;

the Caius MS., p. 157 :

Syr Sadoyne of Percy he hyght.

The Auchinleck MS. has *Sudok*, Copland's version, Dd iiiii, the same corruption as our MS.

7507. *To Faber chaumber*. See note to l. 503.

7511. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by the French :

A un eschek, ke Fabur li dist.

7512. The Caius MS. has everywhere *Sadoyne* or *Sadony* and never

the article before it; cf. ll. 7518, 7589, 7597; cf. also ll. 7523, 7531, 7546, 7562, 7946.

7549-50. See note to ll. 5859-60. But these two lines are wanting in the Caius MS., p. 159.

7576. See note to l. 4708.

7580. Halliwell in his Dictionary, p. 838, s. v. *swick* suggests 'den' as the meaning of *swyck* in this passage. A similar signification ('den or cave?') he is inclined to attribute to *swyke* in Ywaine and Gawain, l. 677 (ib., s. v. *swike*). This passage runs as follows (Ritson, Metr. Rom., I, 29):

Under that than was a *swyke*,
That made syr Ywain to myslike.

Ritson, III, 421, s. v. explains *swyke* as 'sike, hole, ditch.' But Strattmann, no doubt, is right in interpreting it as '*decipula*,' 'trap.' Strattmann quotes the word from two more passages (Wright's Vol. of Vocab., I, 221, and Richard, 4081). The signification 'trap' suits here very well. The giant is said to be as fierce as a lion when caught in a trap. The trap is called *his swyck*, because it was laid for the lion. The French has nothing that corresponds with this line:

Plus ert neir, ke un tison;
De reguardure sembla dragun.
Espes out les espauls, etc.

The Caius MS., p. 160, reads:

He was blak, as any piche;
Men saw neuer none suche,

which looks like a corruption.

7593. *Syr Tryamour had drede stronge* in the Caius MS. This line escaped the corrector's notice; cf. foot-note in p. 213.

7596. *becalle*, call out, challenge.

7597. The whole line runs in the Caius MS., p. 161, thus:

And seyde, *that* Sadony was neuer dede.

7599-600 are wanting both in the French and in the Caius MS. Perhaps they are spurious. Cf. ll. 7591-2.

7601-4. The French:

Vn an li est done de respit
E quarante iurs, sanz contredit;
Kar ceo ert custume el rengne
E en la curt ert aguarde;

cf. the Caius MS., p. 161:

And an hole yere *of* trewes tane
And *fourty* dayes, till *it* be gane.
Suche *is the law of that* cuntre,
Euer was and *euer* shall bee.

In the first line of the Caius MS. *was* is to be added, but the words in Italics give more correct readings than our text: most of them are confirmed by the French.

7609-10. The French :

E par tote Saragoce fist sercher,
Si cheualer puist trouer ;

cf. the Caius MS., p. 161 :

And dud crye thorough that londe,
Yf *he* eny man *fonde*.

Funde in our text cannot possibly be a correct participle, and *he* is shown by the French to be the right pronoun.

7639-40. *Yf* = Lat. *si* in such clauses as :

O, mihi præteritos referat *si* Iupiter annos ;

cf. l. 9237, and Mätzner's Gramm., III², 432, where, however, no M.E. instance is to be found. And it must be owned that the elliptical sentence in l. 7639 is owing to a scribe, not to the author. For when we compare the French :

Si ieo Gui auer pusse,
De ueintre la bataille asseur fusse,
V Heraud de Ardenne li hardi :
Sur tuz les autres desir Gui,

with the Caius MS., p. 162 :

Yf i myght haue sir Gye,
I were seker of the mastrye,
Other sir Herra wd, the knyzt herdye :
Before all other i desyre syr Gye,

there can be no doubt that in our text four lines have been reduced to two.

7656. *sore* = *sorg*. See note to l. 132.

7658. Cf. the Caius MS., 163 :

And forth to Fraunce and to Spayne.

7672. *In holy weyes was hys entente*, viz. to go. See note to l. 855-6.

7676. *soght*, visited. O.E. *sēcan*, Icel. *sækja* very often have this meaning ; cf. German 'aufsuchen,' 'besuchen,' M.H.G. *suochen* especially in a hostile sense. Cf. l. 8430, and notes to ll. 8394 and 7151.

7681-2. Cf. the French :

Hui cest iour i ad un an,
Ke suffert ai cest haan ;

and the Caius MS., p. 163 :

Hit is twelmonythis and more,
Sythen that i fro the kynge gan fare.

This is correct in itself, but seems to be altered from about the same reading that I have restored in the text.

7691. *yeue y noght*. See note to l. 4459.

7695-6. Cf. the French :

Bien sai, si il viure poeient,
La crestiente enhauciereient.

7709. *wenyst* = *wenydest*. See note to l. 4657.

7715. *for syr Gye and Harrowdes sake*. See note to l. 688.

7719-20. *saw Gye, that he.* See note to ll. 1497-8.

7729. Cf. the Caius MS. :

Hys berd was long *and* thihe of here.

7730. *steype* = *stepe* (cf. note to l. 3070) seems to mean 'with fixed eyes.' It cannot mean here 'with bright eyes,' though *stepe eyen* seem to be often, if not always, 'bright eyes.' Cf. Cockayne, St. Marharete, p. 108, St. Juliana, p. vi; Morris's Selections from Chaucer (Clarendon Press), note to Prol., 201; Skeat's Specimens of E. Literature, note to xiv^b, 1014, etc.

7736. *wytterle.* See note to l. 132.

7738. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by the French :

Ja ne serriez mes si hardi,
Ke *bataille* prissez uers li.

7742. *wrathe* is confirmed by the French :

E souent *par mal* reguarde.

7753. Cf. the French :

'Amis,' fait *Gui*, 'ore en aloms.'

7790. This line runs in the Caius MS., p. 167, as follows :

Then he sayd : 'Johan,' withowten blame.

But in our text the pseudonym is suppressed here as it seems to have been suppressed in l. 5854. See the note.

7795-6. Cf. the French :

'Sire,' fait *Gui*, 'ia le oirez.
Vn Engleis sui, sachez de fi.
En Engleterre fu ia nurri,
E puis ke fu primes adubbe, etc.

7798. *Me oghte to hate* = Caius MS., p. 167, *I owte to hate.* Cf. l. 7803, and Mätzner's Gramm., II, 204; III, 6. See also note to l. 6770.

7799. *oght* used as an adverb (cf. note to l. 5985) also 9503. Cf. O.E. *awiht* in such passages as (Cædmon's) Genesis, 496, *langað þe áwuh̄t . . . up tō gode?*

7805. *my neme.* See note to l. 612.

7808. The Caius MS., p. 168, reads :

And with myȝt and strengh away hit *leede*.

Here *leede* is the infinitive depending on *saw*. But in our text *ledde* is the preterit, and the subject *he* must be supplied from the preceding *hym*. See note to l. 10. The French seems to confirm the reading of the Caius MS. :

La teste vi ke il li *trencha*,
E ensemble od li *lenporta*,

trencha and *enporta* being parallel as *smyte* and *leede*.

7825-6. *seruest* and *partyste* are preterits as shown by the French *avez serui*, *estes departi*, and by *hast seruyde*, *departidyst* in the Caius MS., p. 168. See note to l. 4657.

7831. Cf. also the French :

Verreiemment serui un seingnur,
Ke mult me fist ia grant honur.

7837. The French runs as follows :

' De la terre men alai e del pais.
Ensemble od se uois, com penant,
Sa merci tuz iurs attendant.
Quant serrai a li acorde,
Si men repairerai el rengle.'
' Amis Jun,' dist li rei.
' Vouz tu combatre pur moi ? '

Cf. the Caius MS., p. 169 :

' Tho went i fro my *contree*,
Tyll it myght after better be.
Thus will i walke in this estate,
Tyll his wrath be abate.
When he and i accordyd be,
Then will i wende to my *contree*.'
Now quod the kyng so free :
' Will thow this bateyle take for me ? '

A similar omission takes place in the Caius MS. in the passage quoted in the note to l. 8930. As to the adding of l. 7839, cf. the notes to ll. 1800-10 and 9203-7.

7853. *but*, MS. *be*. Was this perhaps a dialectical corruption? Cf. Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 1396, 1419, 3040.—*Mary sonc*; see note to l. 503.

7892. *some*. See note to l. 3187.

7904. *in present* = *for a present* in the Caius MS., p. 171, i. e. 'as a present.' Cf. 10618.

7905. Why is Jerusalem mentioned here? The Caius MS., p. 171, has essentially the same text :

In fer lond was hit wrought
And to the kyng for a present brought.
When hit com to Jerusalem,
Hit shone, as the sonn beame.

But cf. the French :

Vn hauberk out, ke ert faie,
Ke al rei Charles fu presente,
Kant en Ierusalem esteit.
En sun tresor, ou mis laueit,
Vn larun dilek le embla, *etc.*

Now it is very easy to propose :

And to kyng *Charles* in present broght,
When *he* came to Jerusalem.

It would then follow that this fault occurred already in that MS. of which the Caius and University MSS. are direct or indirect copies. Or had our author a corrupt French text before him?

7911. *tresorye*, treasury, but does it perhaps mean 'value' here? Or is the line corrupt? Cf. the Caius MS., p. 171 :

Hit was take for tresorye
At that ned to sir Gye.

Is *for* to be altered to *fro*? The French runs as follows:

Li ancestres Triamor le achaterent
E en grant cherte le garderent:
En cest bosoing lunt a Gui baillé.

7914. *3ore* = *ore*, Caius MS. See note to l. 60.

7921. *Alysaundurs þe kyng*, the apposition being without inflexion. Cf. l. 8714, *admyrals Presane*, and note to l. 687.

7923. The Caius MS., p. 172, is even more corrupt here than our text:

He slow the kyng Priamoure therfore
And wanne there much more.

The French has: Ke ert al rei Alisandre le pruz,
Kant il occist le rei *Porruz*.

Besides *Porus* we find *Pore* in M.E. Cf. Alisaunder (ed. Weber, Rom. i, p. 232), ll. 2516-17:

That noither of thee ne of *Pore*
Ne helden tale lesse ne more.

7927. *wonne* = Caius MS. *one*. Halliwell (Dict.) cites *won* from a Chaucer MS.:

To make too joys insted of *won* grevance;

Guy, in the Caius MS., 212 (= l. 9036 of our text):

Trewer fellow and (*read þen*) he was *won*;

Tryamoure, ll. 1112-13:

Y trowe, god hath me sent *wone*,
That shalle Moradas bryng to noght.

I will repeat here a few other instances which I have collected in the *Zeitschrift für die oesterreichischen Gymnasien*, 1875, p. 136: Visions of Tundale, ed. Turnbull, l. 248, *the angell . . . chasyd won*; l. 2329, *won of hoom*; ib. p. 106, *in won entent*. Hence the pronunciation of N.E. *one*. Another word that often takes a parasitic *w* is *ord* in the phrase *ord and ende*. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 224, 730:

That al the story writen *word* and ende;

ib. V, 69, 1683:

And of this broche he told hym *word* and ende.

Skeat in his *Selections from Chaucer* (Clarendon Press), p. 55, l. 3911, has accepted for the former passage Hickes's emendation *ord*. But I am rather of Tyrwhitt's opinion, who in his note to C. T., l. 14639, says: 'But all the MSS. that I have examined, read *word*, and therefore I have left it in the text, as possible the old Saxon phrase, in Chaucer's time, might have been corrupted.' *Word* = *ord* occurs too often to be taken for a mere clerical error. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 484:

I schall him telle *word* and ende;

ib. 3365-6:

To him þou þi sond sende,
Alle þi wille *word* and ende;

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 32 (= Turnbull, 850, *ord and ende*) :

And telle hir *worde* and ende ;

Richard (ed. Weber, Rom. 2, 277), 7107-8 :

The messangers gunne to wende

And tolde the sawdon *wurde* and ende.

Cf. also *wother* = other : e. g. *hur wodur chylde*, quoted by Halliwell, s. v. *wodur* ; *wother* occurs as a rule in William Roye's Dialogue between a Christian Father and his Stubborn Son (ed. Adolf Wolf, Vienna, 1874, in *Sitzungsberichte der hist.-phil. Classe, etc.* for March), e. g. p. 423, 424, 425. Compare also in Halliwell, *wolde* (M.E. = *olde*) and *wocks* (= oaks), *worther* (= other), *woth* (oath), *wots* (= oats), in modern dialects.

7927-8 seem corrupt. Cf. the French :

Dunt il maint Gregeis occist,

Ainz ke il le espee *perdist*,

and the Caius MS., p. 172 :

Therwith the Grekis many one,

Or he *lese*, had he slone.

By adding *hyt* before or after *lese* from our text, we get an almost literal rendering of the French.

7951-2. Very probably the transition from direct to indirect speech here is owing only to a scribe altering *bad* to *seyde*. Cf. the French :

Le sarazin fait uenir auant,

Celui de Ethiopie, Amorant ;

and the Caius MS., p. 173 :

He *bad* bryng forth that geaunte,

Of Ynde a paynym, Ameraunte.

7993. *peyred* = *empeyred*, impaired ; cf. O.F. *empeirer*, Lat. *impeiorare*. See l. 10164 and note to l. 576.

7993-4. Confusion of two constructions : (1) his shield was never damaged till on that occasion ; (2) his shield was nowhere damaged but there. But this confusion is owing to a scribe, as we learn by a comparison of the French :

Ke unkes ne fu mes atame

En bataille, ou eust ete,

with the Caius MS., p. 174 :

That was neuer blemysshed ere

In no bateyle, where it were.

8004. *As pat*. See note to l. 4062.

8013. *hys hors neck*. See note to l. 503.

8025. From this line to l. 8540 the Caius MS. contains again another version of the romance (cf. note to l. 7261).

8028. *stadde* = *bestadde* (l. 8930), *bestead*. It is used especially by Northern and Scotch writers. See Mätzner's notes to *Sprachproben*, I, 364, 200 and 382, 528.

8032. The French has no corresponding line, but cf. l. 8018. The same fault occurs in l. 2864.

8042. *thy nore* = *thyn ore*, thy mercy; cf. l. 8280, *by goddys ore*, and note to l. 612.

8054. *lyke no man* = like no man's. It is the same shortness as in the well-known Greek *κόμαι χαρίεσσιν ὁμοῖαι*. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 19, 540:

His top was dockud lyke a preest biforn.

8055. *golde belokyn* = *golde begone*, l. 8057, edged with gold, gilt. I do not remember *belokyn* in this sense mentioned anywhere.

8062. I do not understand the meaning of this line. The corresponding line of the French poem is:

Al sus saillir ne sembla uileins.

8078. *fresch* is 'vigorous,' 'quick' very often. It renders here the French *fiers*. Cf. Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, 1105-6:

Ase *fresch* a was to fyt,
Ase grehonde to hare.

In Generydes, ed. Wright, l. 3455, therefore,

Wherefore on hym right *fressly* he sett,
fressly (= *freshly*) need not be altered to *fersly*.

8087. In the French, as well as in the other English versions, Guy first replies that he is a Christian and an Englishman; upon which the Giant wishes his opponent may be Guy of Warwick. It is impossible to decide whether the alteration in our text was made by the translator or a scribe.

8094. The French has no corresponding line. A similar fault occurs in l. 1627.

8127-8. A very frequent shortness. The complete sentence would, of course, be: 'When he had got the permission he was so glad as never before.' Cf. ll. 11623-4; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6189-91:

When Herhaud yherd þis,
þat Gij and Tirri comen is,
Neuer nas he so bliþe;

ib. 7053-4:

Now þou wilt spouse mi dohter hende,
Was y neuer are so bliþe;

Orfeo, ed. Laing, 59-60:

When Orfeo herd þat tidings,
Neuer him nas wers for noþing.

N.E. *never so, never such*, which some grammarians think to be incorrect, owe their origin to a similar shortness of expression (cf. Mätzner, III, 139-40).

8132. *he thrate*. The French:

De la riuere beut a plente,

does not explain *thrate*. Halliwell (Dictionary, p. 867) understands it to mean 'urged; pressed.' I think it is O.E. *þreátian*, to chide, to

urge, to compel. M.E. *þrete* generally means to threaten. But in Morris's Specimens, II, IV, D, 7 :

Þe þrestelcoc him þreteþ oo

perhaps *him þreteþ* is 'urges himself,' 'exerts himself.' At least I cannot think either Morris's or Wülcker's (*Altenglisches Lesebuch*, I, p. 170) explanation of this passage satisfactory. In our line the reflexive pronoun is omitted.

8138. *wythowten care* = without doubt.

8142. *wyth ony gras* = by any happy chance. Cf. note to l. 1216.

8143. *geue y no tale* = I make no account, do not mind. Cf. Metrical Homilies, ed. Small, p. 123 (= Mätzner's *Sprachproben*, I, 281, 115; cf. note) :

*Bot, ef scho gif of him no tale,
Than wantes wine at hire bridale;*

Robert Mannyng, ed. Hearne, p. 220 (= Mätzner, *Sprachpr.*, I, 302, 193; cf. note) :

Suile ribaudie þei led, þei gaf no tale of wham;
Richard (Weber, Rom. 1, 173), 4344 :

The toun folk ne gaff no tale.

Cf. note to l. 4459 and *helden tale* in a passage quoted in the note to l. 7923.

8145-6. I cannot see what *That þynge* refers to if l. 8146 precedes l. 8145 as it does in the MS. If we let the two lines change places, l. 8146 means: 'Thou wilt not get me intimidated.'

8149. *a strawe brede* = the breadth of a straw. The word is, of course, a compound.

8212-13. *Arste . . . Then*. Though *arste* is a superlative (O.E. *ær*, *æror*, *ærest*), yet it is often used in a comparative sense (= sooner, rather, before), and may, therefore, be followed by *then*, *than*; cf. 11123, 11170, 11864; Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 49, 708 :

That schapen was my deth erst, than my scherte ; -

Tryamour, 228 :

Arste y schalle not blynne ;

ib. 681 : *Arste wolde he not blynne*

8214. *soche a quede* = such a devil. Cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 93, 82, and Mall's to Harrowing of Hell, 36; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8788-9 :

*Y schall bring sir Gij to niȝt
To fiȝt azain þat qued.*

8220. *os* = *as*. See note to l. 4602.

8222. *wyde where*, widely, far; cf. 8686, 11154; *marchandys of wyde where*, 8421; cf. Stratmann, s. v. *wid*, and Mätzner's note to *Sprachpr.*, I, 119, 176, where this *where* is referred to O.E. *hwær*, *alicubi*, not to the interrogative *hwær*; Altengl. Legenden, ed. Horstmann, p. 26, l. 740 :

And wide ȝware hine hadde isouȝt.

8229. *fame* = *defame*, *diffame* (cf. note to l. 576), which occurs, e. g., in Skeat's Specimens of Engl. Lit., xxii, 4512 :

To Fredrike empriour did *diffame*.

Cf. l. 8654 and note to l. 108. *Fame*, as a verb, 'to defame,' occurs, e. g., in Tryamour, 20-21 :

False and fekyll was that wyghte
That lady for to *fame* ;

Squyer of Lowe Degre (Ritson, III, 161), 392 :

That thou them *fame* for enmyte ;

cf. also Alliterative Poems, ed. Morris, b. 188 :

And for fals *famacions*.

8231. *vnduryode* = understood, learnt. Cf. l. 10804 :

And hys moonyng *vndurzode*.

The word is wanting in Stratmann, but Halliwell (Diction., 901) quotes from our MS. :

The hors sone *vnduryede*,
That Befyse was not on hys rygge.

Cf. besides Alliterative Poems, ed. Morris, b. 796 :

And þat þe ȝep *vnderȝede*, þat in þe ȝate syttez.

Morris, in the note to this passage and in the glossary, takes *vnderȝede* = *underȝete*, but this is certainly wrong. The word in question is not O.E. *vnderȝeat* (= *vndurȝate*, l. 10430), but **vnderȝeode* = *under-eode*. As to the signification, cf. *understand*.

8239. *or y go*, a pretty common expletive ; cf. 11093, *or thou goo* ; Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 39, 337 :

'That schall i telle,' quod sche, '*er that i go*' ;

ib. 44, 488 : 'And sacrifice to oure goddes, *er thou go*.'

! 8271-2. The regular construction would have been : *Eyther hath be-thoght, how (the) other myght to grownde be broght*. But the subject of the subordinate clause is placed as an object in the principal one (cf. note to ll. 1497-8).

8283-4. The French runs as follows :

Del matin treske la nuit,
Ke la clere esteille lur apparuit.

In our text *to* = till seems to belong to *myght* as a preposition, but to l. 8284 as a conjunction (cf. Mätzner's Gramm., III², 467). But I do not remember any parallel passage.

8302. *lessud*, lessened. See note to l. 4776.

8334. *kepe y noght*, I do not care, have no mind. Cf. notes to ll. 5950 and 6727.

8336. No corresponding French line. *Not greue* on account of Guy's refusing to stay with him ?

8363-4. Perhaps we ought to read :

'Syr,' seyde þe erle, 'say me, whye
That thou goyst thus, for goddys mercye.'

Cf. ll. 7425-6 : Sone y schall telle þe, why
 That y am so sorye.

8383. *whome*. See note to l. 3422.

8386. *y vnderstande* is a little odd here; perhaps originally *ye vnderstande* (cf. note to l. 1918), or *ye schall vnderstande* (cf. l. 9181)?

8391. *thankende*, MS. *thankande*. As ‘-end is a Midland form’ (Morris, *Ayenbite*, p. lxiv), and our poem is certainly a Midland one, I thought myself entitled to this alteration in order to get a perfect rhyme.

8394. *soght*, visited. The word is especially used to denote pilgrimages; cf. l. 8401 and Chaucer, C. T. Prol., 17:

The holy blisful martir for to *seeke*.

Cf. M.H.G. *einen heiligen suochen*, and notes to ll. 7151, 7676.

8411. *fant stone* = *font stone*, font. The *a* is curious. But it occurs as early as O.E. Cf. O.E. *fant* and *fantfiet*. Does it perhaps owe its origin to popular etymology connecting it with *infans*, *enfant*, *infant*? Cf. note to l. 5544.

8412. Cf. the French:

Rainbrun par noun le appellerent.

In our poem the name rhymes besides with *Gyowne*, ll. 8603, 11341, 11909; with *towne*, l. 8490; with *resown*, l. 11731; with *pryson*, l. 11603.

8418. *do no more*, do nothing else. Cf. the French:

A dous cheualers le fait garder
 Ke unc ne eurent autre mester.

8421. *of wyde where*, from afar. See note to l. 8222.

8422. *Rosse* = *Rossy* = *Russye*, 8457, 8506, etc. Cf. note to l. 132—as *ye harde 3erre*: nothing of the kind has as yet been related. Perhaps *ye* is a mistake for *y* (cf. the note to l. 1918). See the French:

Avint, ke marchanz de autre terre,
 De Ruissie, com *loi* retraire, etc.

—*3erre* = O.E. *æror*, *erre*; cf. note to l. 60.

8425. *Veire*. See note to l. 1378—*pylches armyne* = O.F. *pelicans hermins*. *Armyne* is here used as an adjective, originally ‘Armenian.’ Cf. *Ermine* in Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 212, 348. But generally *armyne* (cf. l. 9085), *ermyne* is a substantive = *ermine*.

8427. Cf. the French:

A la cite de *Lundres* sunt ariue;
 the Caius MS., p. 191:

At *London* they aryvede than;

Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, l. 61:

þai riuede at *Londen* þat cite;

Copland’s *Guy*, Ff iii:

Marchandes came into Englonde
 Into *London* out of Russye.

Cf. also l. 8455: To *London* þey wente soone *agane*.

But there is no explaining how *London* got corrupted to *deuer*.—*reuzn*. See note to l. 4244.

8430. *soght*. See note to l. 7676.

8432. *tolde*. See note to l. 1770.

8445. *knyght* cannot be right. Cf. l. 8447 and the French :

Puis ont as *cheualers* demande.

8449. *In* = on account of. Cf. the French :

La beaute del enfant mult loerent,

8462. *marke* = *merke*, *mirke*, dark. Cf. Stratmann, s. v. *mirke*, and Visions of Tundale, p. 13 :

Tyll thei come to another valay,
That was bothe dyppe and *marke*.

8466. *whodur* = *whider*, N.E. whither. The same form in ll. 8936 and 10768.

8469. *Hyt* refers to *wynde* in l. 8463. Cf. l. 8473.

8474. *borowe*, save. Cf. e. g. Tryamouré, 602 :

Ther may no blys fro bale hym *borowe*.

The verb is formally O.E. *borgian*, N.E. *borrow*, but the signification was certainly influenced by a confusion with *berzen*, O.E. *berȝen*, *berwen* (cf. German *bergen*), the participle past of which was *borgen*, *borwen*.

8481. *freschly*. Cf. note to l. 8078.

8485. The spelling *marchaunce* occurs in Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 9728, *marchauns*, Reinbroun, 73, 91, 127, 133, etc.; *merchauns* must be restored in Guy in the Caius MS., p. 191 :

Hyt befell so, that rygh *merchauntys*
Commyn from fer beyonde Fraunce.

8486. Cf. the French :

Puis unt pris treis marchanz,
Qui corteis furent e bien parlant.

Wle ydyght of Romance = well versed in Romance, i. e. the Romanic language.

8489. *in þe towne*. Cf. note to l. 5841.

8492. *And* must be omitted. Cf. the French :

Requis le ad par le conseil sa miere
Al fier Argus, sun piere,
Ke ele le peust en sa chambre norir.

hur lorde = *sun piere*. See note to l. 164.

8527. The French has *Anelaf*.

8529. *heer*, army, O.E. *here*, German *heer*. See Stratmann, s. v. *here*.

8541. From this line to 9874 the same version also in the Caius MS., pp. 195—242. *adyght*, i. e. *a plyght*, *on plyght* = on (my, etc.) word. Cf. l. 10809, 10845, 10991, and Halliwell, s. v.

8563. *Merof*, *Moddred* (and *Modred*) in the French, *Medyok* in the Auchinleck MS., *Moderyse* in the Caius MS.

8564. *cruell* is owing to some mistake of a scribe. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 195:

Of Cornweyle he was lorde and sire,

and the French: *Qui de Cornmaille* ert auoe.

Cf. also ll. 8727, 8743.

8565. *whythore*. See note to l. 4775.

8574. Perhaps rather *asaye*. See note to l. 576.

8582. *for nede*, i. e. distress, misery, denotes what Reynbrown is to expect after having been sold.

8584. *tolde*, received, pocketed; lit. 'counted.' Cf. Havelok, 775-6:

Til he hauede wol (al?) wel sold

And þerfore þe penies *told*;

ib. 1172: *þer* weren penies þicke *tolde*,

8614. *redde*. See note to l. 4410.

8617. *hyght*. See note to l. 169.

8624. *The deuell þe honge*. See note to l. 3430.

8638. *The whych*, if I am not mistaken, the only instance in this work, although it frequently appears in others: e. g. Generydes, ed. Wright, 469, 622, 970, 1064, 1080, 1273, 1687, 1750, etc.

8639. *for to fyght*, by fighting. Similar instances in Shakspeare; see Abbott's Sh. Grammar, 356.

8654. *fame*. See note to l. 8229.

8667. *seuyn yere* often used to denote a long time. Cf. l. 9213; Schmidt's Shakspr.-Lexicon, s. v. *seven*; Halliwell, s. v. *seven-year*; King Horn, ed. Lumby, 524:

And þat hire þuȝte *seue ȝer*;

ib. 731-2: I schal wune þere

Fulle *seue ȝere*;

ib. 911-12: *þi* sorwe schal ende

Or *seue ȝeres* ende;

ib. 918, 1140; Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 6639:

Seuen ȝer and more agon it is;

ib. 8979-80: This *seuen winter* no schaltow se

Noȝer fet no hond;

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 248:

For are the *vii. yere* wyne he may

All hys costage in on daye;

Copland's Guy, Hh iii:

And win in hope (?) more on a day,

Then they should spend in *seuen yere* pay;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 45, 594:

This *seuen yeer* hath seten Palomon.

8682. Cf. ll. 8680, 8729, 8736, etc.

8686. *wyde whare*. See note to l. 8222.

8689. *Sossyrrye*, corrupted from *Russye*, which the Caius MS., p. 200, has. Cf. *Ruissie* in the French work.

8690. The Caius MS. *Sisoyne*, the French *Sessoine*.

8697. *þem* = *Harrawde and hys companye* (l. 8721). Cf. note to l. 5672.

8701. The same clerical error, it seems, in Chaucer's A B C (Morris, V, 81) k :

Kalendres enlumyned ben *bothe* they.

8706. Cf. the French :

En la terre al fier rei *Argus*.

The same name occurs in the Caius MS. and the French in l. 8717. In our poem the right form was kept in ll. 10879 and 10899.

8712. *to fleme Jordan*. Halliwell (Dictionary, p. 362) cites from the same MS. (= Tryamoure, 142) :

To *fleme* Jordon and to Bedlem.

The corresponding line in the Caius MS. (p. 201) runs as follows :

There is no man so felle in *flamiordan*,

where *in* shows that *flamiordan* was mistaken for some country. We find generally *flum Jordan* ; cf. Mätzner's Grammm., III, 169 ; Mall's note to Harrowing of Hell, 206 ; Genesis and Exodus, 2486, *to flum Jurdon*, or with the article, ib. 806, *Ȝe flum Jurdan* ; Miscellany, ed. Morris, 38, 24, and 92, 75, *in þe flum Jurdan*. But cf. also Ayenbite of Inwyt, p. 202, *ine þe flom Jordan*. Without a name following we find in Alliterative Poems, c. 309 :

Ðe grete *flem* of þy flod folded me vmbe ;

cf. the dialectical *fleme*, 'a river, or stream ; a large trench cut for draining. *West.*' (Halliwell), 'a millstream' (Morris, glossary to All. P., s. v. *flem*). I think Stratmann is wrong in taking *flem* in the Allit. P. = O.E. *flēām*. Cf. Genes. and Exod., l. 490, *flum Noe* = Noah's flood. Nor can *flum* be connected with O.N. *flaumr* (Morris), or derived directly from the Lat. *flumen* (Stratmann), but is O.F. *flum*. Cf. the French here :

Ni ad tan felun al *flum* Jordan.

That *flumm* occurs several times in the Ormulum, cannot disprove my opinion (see note to l. 9529). But the form *flem* (*fleme*) may have been in some measure influenced by O.E. *flēām*, M.E. *flem*, flight. Cf. also *fleme*, to flow, in Destruction of Troy, 10004 :

Blode *flemyt* o fer in flattes aboute.

8714. *admyrals Presane*. See note to l. 7921.

8720. *bedene*. See note to l. 2408.

8722. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by the French :

Deuaunt le *admirail* les amenent erraument.

8724. *Of mete . . . small*. See note to l. 7483.

8733. MS. *tresure*. But the form required by the rhyme appears in the Caius MS., p. 202 :

And yave hem gold and rich *tresoure*.

8738. *euyr amonge*. See note to l. 650.

8761. Though *allas* may be used with the vocative (Mätzner's Gramm., II², 235), yet, as *my lyfe* in the following line is the accusative, the reading of the Caius MS. seems to be preferable.

8766. 'As God free thee from sorrow'; *slake*, 'to untie; to loosen' (Halliwell). But I know no quite parallel passage. The Caius MS. reads:

So god the shyld fro sorrow.

But the reading of our MS. is more suitable here and nearer the French:

Si deu te *alegge* de ta dolor.

8822. *Me forthynkyth*. See note to l. 984.

8831. *trewtheþlyght*. See note to l. 4330.

8863. *of hys swyrde dynte*, 'of the dint of his sword'; cf. note to l. 503.

8864. *schulde of*, viz. go. Cf. note to ll. 855-6.

8885. *in lande*. See note to l. 5841.

8886. *they* in a general sense, but *hym* in l. 8888 refers to an individual case. Cf. note to ll. 6994-5.

8889. *wyth hym*, by him. See note to l. 3766.

8898. *þey* seems impossible as preceded by *he* in ll. 8896-7 and followed by *hym* in ll. 8899, 9000-1. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 207:

Yf hym had wrothyd prince or kyng

Were *he* neuer so hye a lordynge.

8908. *askyd* is hardly correct. Cf. the French:

De la mort sun uncle me *apella*.

In the Caius MS., p. 208, this and the preceding lines run thus:

When i cam before the emperoure,

Berrard *acouped* me thore.

Acoupe = to accuse, O.F. *encouper*, Lat. *inculpare*. I do not think it improbable that *askyd* is a corruption of *acoupyd*. By the bye, the rhyme in the Caius MS. becomes perfect when we read *emperere* (cf. note to l. 4802): *there*.

8916. MS. *þan*, but the Caius MS., p. 208, *then*. Cf. 1132, 2246, 3167, 4260, 4889.

8930. Cf. l. 8257, *bestadde sore*. In the Caius MS. we find only two lines instead of ll. 8921—8930:

For dred of the duke Berrarde.

Tho hit fell with me so harde.

This omission confirms the transposition we have made. For it is most easily accounted for by supposing that the scribe's eyes erred from one *harde* to another. Cf. the foot-note to l. 7837.

8935. *But sche hyed away on hur stede* cannot be right. *On hur stede*, if taken = on her stead (place), does not make sense; on the other hand *stede* cannot be 'steed,' for ladies did not ride steeds. The Caius MS., p. 208, reads:

But she ys hyd in stronge stede.

On comparing the French :

Mes ele sen fuist en *estrange* terre,

we see that *stronge* is corrupted from *straunge*, as very likely in l. 1493 (see the note). But whether *sche hyed away* or *she ys hyd* is the original reading I dare not decide. The former seems to be nearer the French, but who has a mind to defend the latter, may refer to l. 9777.

8936. *whodur*. See note to l. 8466.—*so god me rede* ; cf. l. 7187.—
In the Caius MS., p. 208, the line runs as follows :

But i not, *where*, so god me *spede*.

8944. *go*. See the note to l. 954.

8948. *þen* = then if. See note to l. 992.

8950. The same clerical error as in l. 843. Cf. the French :

A parent ne ad ami onc ne parlai.

8969. *in fere* must mean 'in fear' ; but on comparing the French :

Mon compaignon quere alai

E en Engleterre trouer le quidai,

with the Caius MS., p. 210 :

Fer haue i sowght Gye, *my trew fere*,

In-Englond fer and nere,

we cannot doubt that the rhyme-word in l. 8969 originally was *fere* or *yfere*, companion. Perhaps the whole line was :

I haue soght Guy, myn yfere.

8986. *redde*. See note to l. 4410.

8992. *soberlye*, gravely, seriously, but *vtterlye* in the Caius MS., p. 210, seems to be nearer the French *mult*.

8995. *beseyn*, looked to, provided.

8996. *in scarlet in greyne*. The French has :

Sun cors que il uit ia si bien uestu.

Our MS. has a better reading here than the Caius MS., p. 210 :

That were wonde to were *scarlet and grene*.

As to *scarlet in greyne*, i. e. scarlet dyed in grain, cf. Marsh's Lectures on the English Language, ed. Smith, pp. 54-62 and p. 64, and Skeat's Selections from Chaucer, note to B, 1917 :

Hys rode is lyk *scarlet in grayn*.

9005. The scribe made here the same mistake as in ll. 8448 and 10933, but did not correct it here as he did there. This line and the next are wanting in the Caius MS., p. 212, but cf. the French :

Ce est la gute, dunt homme chet,

Le mal, ke homme del mund plus heet.

9018. Cf. the French :

Par la terre ai oi parler,

Ke nostre emperere Reiner

A *Espire* un conceil tendra.

The same name is corrupted in l. 9114.

9023. *ȝyt* does not seem suitable here. The Caius MS., p. 212, reads :

Ryght thanne ys my terme daye.

Cf. the French : *La est mun iur atermine.*

9030. *redde*. See note to ll. 1199, 1200.

9031-2. The rhyme might be made perfect by reading *agen* (cf. l. 11049), but the obscurity of *take þe wey fro þen* excites a suspicion that the two lines are not preserved in their original form. Cf. the French :

*Pur ceo ne sai ieo, quei faire,
De auant aler ou de moi retraire,*

and the Caius MS., p. 213 :

*Whether i wend to take my payne
Or i now turne ageyne.*

9039. *A trewar felowe, þen he was oon*. Cf. Copland's Guy, li iiii :

*A richer burying, then she made one,
King ne duke had neuer none ;*

Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 3983-4 :

*Morgadour answerd anon,
Stalworþ kniȝt, as he was on ;*

ib. 5719-22 :

*In alle þe world is so swift a best,
Libard no ro, in no forest,
No dromedarie no is þer non
So swiþe goand, so is he on.*

9043-4. Cf. the French :

*Ja ne me doint deus manger,
Si nel noise hastiement uenger.
Si le fel duc pusse trouer
E en eise of lui parler,
Si un coup ne li doins, etc. ;*

and the Caius MS., p. 212 :

*Hangid be i this ilke daye,
But i avenge hym, yf that i maye.
Myght i speke with the duke at my will,
That of his dedys ys so yll,
But i reuyd hym hys lyfe, etc.*

9054. The French runs as follows :

*Le doiller mes ore rien ne uus ualt,
Lessez ester, si deu uus salt.
Si deu uus ad nul bien purueu,
Ja ne uus ert pur homme tolu,
Ke uus nel aiez, asseur seiez.
Ceo duel per quei demenez ?
Enuers la court ore en alums, etc.*

The Caius MS., p. 212, omits ll. 9053-4 :

*'Leve sir, be not sorye.
Hyt wyll the helpe nothyng
To make sorrow or mornynge.
Go we now the corte nerehande, etc.*

I do not know how to correct our text.

9055. *the co(u)rte* is evidently omitted before *nerehande*. Cf. the French and the reading of the Caius MS. quoted in the preceding note.

9085. *armyne* (cf. note to l. 8425). The French has :

Kant uit par mi sa bouche issir
Vne hermine tote blanche.

Cf. the Caius MS., p. 213 :

As hit were a white ermyne.

The Auchinleck MS. (ed. Turnbull), l. 8834 :

þan seiþe he an ermine com of his mouþe.

But cf. Copland's Guy, Gg i :

Out of his mouth a whyte *nesell* ran.

Cf. Grimm's Mythology, p. 789 : '*Aus entzückten, schlafenden menschen entlauft die seele in gestalt einer schlange, wiesel, maus.*'

9086. *wel* and *fyne*. The Caius MS., p. 213, has *be seynt Martyn* instead of it. *Fyne* as an adverb is 'perfectly,' 'quite,' 'very.' The adjective *fyn*, O.F. *fin*, is abbreviated from *finitus*, 'brought to an end, perfect.' Stratmann should not have mentioned M.H.G. *fin* and Icel. *finn* before O.F. *fin*, as the word is of Romance origin in all the Teutonic languages. The adverb *fyne* is not found either in Stratmann or in Halliwell, but it occurs, e. g., in Destruction of Troy, 7168 :

Iche freike was *fyn* hole of þere fell hurttes,

Orfeo, ed. Laing, 56 :

And held hir þere *fine* fast ;

Meditations, ed. Cowper, 656 :

And nayled þe touþer hand þer *fyne* faste.

The same phrase in Copland's Guy, H iiii :

I rede, we arme vs *well* and *fyne*,

This phrase is sometimes corrupted to *well afyne*. See Halliwell, s. v. *afyn*.

9089. *os* = *as*. See note to l. 4602. The Caius MS. *as*.

9114. 'Let us set off to ask the way'; cf. *spere*, ll. 7362, 11373 ; *gate*, 376. But the French is to the following effect :

Ambdúi puis leuez se sunt,
Enuers Espire ore sen uunt.
'Sire pelerin,' ceo ad dit Gui, *etc.*,

Cf. the Caius MS., 214 :

Toward Spire they tokyn the waye,
'Pylgryme,' quod Gye, 'i red, we abyde,' *etc.*,

which, being so near the French, has every claim to having been the very reading from which our text was corrupted.

9144. *of no tresure yf y noght*, 'I do not care for any treasure.' Cf. notes to ll. 1538 and 4459. The Caius MS., p. 215, has the synonymous verb *rech* = to reckon :

That of treasure *rech* i nowȝt.

9155. *hardelye*. See note to l. 2691.

9162. *as a man, that*. Often the article is omitted; cf. ll. 7558, 8390, 8590, 9552.—*coude of*, understood, knew. Cf. Mätzner's *Gramm.*, II, 262.

9178. *pur amowre* = *for charyte*. See note to l. 471.

9188. *Scham and skathe* depends of course on *men sey þære of yowr*, which is to be supplied from l. 9186. Cf. the French:

'Sire,' fait il, 'ia le sauerez,
Kant uus sauer le uolez.
Mult dient de uus grant mal,
Ke par le conseil dun senescal
Le counte Terri desherite auez.'

9191. Cf. the French *desherite auez*. If we had not another MS. here, the double subject *ye* might be defended. See the note to ll. 2893-4.

9194. *lorde* is, of course, an erratum for *londe*.

9198. *to geue a brayde* = to start up. Cf. note to l. 10303, and Skogin's Jests cited in Halliwell's Dict., p. 204, s. v. *braid*: *The woman . . . gave a braid with her head*. The Caius MS., p. 217, has:

He began vp to brayde.

9203-7. The corresponding lines in the Caius MS., p. 217, run thus:

He seyð: 'thow lvest, false treytour:
I was neuer losyngoure.
Yf hyt ne were for dyshonoure
Of my lord, the emperoure,
I shuld shake thy berd so sore, *etc.*

Cf. the French:

'Pelerin,' fait il, 'uus i mentez,
Qui tant de moi mesdit auez.
Pur losengier ne fu unc tenu.
Mes, si me ait deus e sa uertu,
Si ne fust deuant le empeureur,
Ia te fuisse tel deshonor, *etc.*

We clearly see that in our text a line is omitted after l. 9203, and another interpolated after l. 9205. Cf. the notes to ll. 1800-10 and 7837.

9206. *schowre*, fight, attack. Cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 69:

Sone there beganne a straunge *shoure*;

Destruction of Troy, 5804:

Sharpe was the *shoure*;

ib. 11048:

Thies hurlet on a hepe with a hard *shoure*;

William of Palerne, l. 4514:

And many a scharp *schour* for þi sake þoled;

Holy Grail, ed. Furnivall, 133, 519; 141, 779; 144, 907; 150, 130, etc. This use of 'shower' is Old Teutonic. Of course, a shower of missiles (and sometimes of blows) is meant. Cf. O.E. *flāna scāras*, showers of arrows, Judith, 221; Elene, 117; *isernscûr*, shower of swords, Beowulf, 3116. But the simple *scûr* appears in Judith, 79, *scearpne mēce, scûrum heardne*, a sharp sword, hard in fights. Cf. the adjective *scûrheard*. Icel. *þessi skûr leið skjótt yfir* cited by Vígfússon, s. v. *skûr*; Heliland,

156, 21, *uuápnes eggjun, scarpun scûrun*; Hildebrandslied, 63-4, *askin scrítan, scarpên scûrim*, and Müllenhoff's note.

9213. *Thys vii yere*. See note to l. 8667.

9217. Cf. the French :

'Sire,' fait Gui, 'estes ceo uus ?

The Caius MS., p. 218, reads :

'Sir,' quod Gye, 'yt ys yee ?

This is certainly nearer the original reading than our text.

9226. *Y take recorde of the kyng*. Cf. Lydgate's Story of Thebes (in Skeat's Specimens of Engl. Lit., III B), 1202 :

Record i take of worthy Tydeus.

9237. *ȝyf* = *if*, O.E. *gif*. See note to l. 7639. In the Caius MS., p. 218, l. 9233 is immediately followed by l. 9237 :

Ofte i have herd, trewlye
That thow were that ilke knyzt, etc.

But cf. the French : Ke cupes nen out, tres bien le sai.

La uerite souent oi ai.'

Li dux respont, qui plein est de ire :

'Kar plust a deu, nostre sire,

Ke tu uassal itel fussez,

Ke le counte Terri defendissez !'

9243. Cf. the French :

Ke il de sa mort cupes *ne* auait.

9244. We expect *a* instead of *pe*. But on comparing the Caius MS., p. 219 :

The false duke, that wyked glotoun

with the French :

de la mort le duc Otun,

Le fel, li traître, li gloton ;

we see that *That was* in our text is spurious, and after *fell* something is omitted. Perhaps the original reading was :

pe felle traytowre and false gloton.

9285. *for godys loue of myght*. See note to l. 503.

9341. *pedur* = *pedur*, *pere* or *pedur*, *as* or *pere as* (cf. 1143-4).

9351. *paytrelle*, 'The breastplate ; the strap that crosses the breast of a horse,' Halliwell, s. v. *peitrell*. Cf. The Flower and the Leaf, in Chaucer, ed Morris, IV, 95, 246-8 :

And every bosse of bridle and *paytrell*,
That had they, was worth, as i would wene,
A thousand pound.

Cf. N.F. *poitrail*, Lat. *pectorale*.

9384. *to helpe*. See note to ll. 1925-6.

9412. *hongre* = *hungry*. See note to l. 132.

9427. *sight* cannot be defended by a reference to l. 11385. On the other hand, *l* and *f* are easily mistaken for each other. We find, e. g., in Pierce the Ploughman's Crede, l. 100, *willen* in MS. A for *wiffen* ; in Orfeo, ed. Laing, l. 473, we find printed :

And *sonde* he sett on him a crie,
where the editor mistook *loude* in the MS. for *foude*. Cf. the note to l. 9459.

9433. *in pat stowre*. *Stowre* seems to mean 'time' here as in a passage quoted from Greene's Works (II, 231) by Halliwell, s. v. *stoure*:

Whilom while Venus' son did seek a bower
To sport with Psyche, his desired dear,
He chose her chin, and from that happy *stowre*
He never stints in glory to appear.

But cf. the Caius MS., p. 225:

Anon he dyd klepe with honoure
Fowre barouns of gret valoure.
'Lordes,' quod the emperoure,
'Here hath bene an herd *stoure*.

and the French: Li emperere puis appella
Quatre dux, ou il se afia.

9459. *a lofte bedde*. The same expression occurs in l. 9591. The French word is *chaelit* or *chailit*:

En un grant *chaelit* de or fin.
Al *chailit* mistrent tuz lur mains (= l. 9462).
Le *chailit* en la mier lesserent (= l. 9464).
Ore unt le *chailit* en la mier mis (= l. 9467).

Chailit is N.F. *châlit*, 'bedstead,' but originally 'bed of state.' Cf. It. *cataletto*. In a glossary in the Bodleian Library (Cod. Bodl., 730, fol. 144) occurs '*hoc torreuina .i. chaelid .i. hefbed et grabatum idem.*' It is clear that the French gloss must end in *t* and the English in *d* instead. *Hefbed* would be N.E.* *heavebed*, German **hebebett*. But I find neither *hefbed* nor the synonymous *lofte bed* in any dictionary. In the Caius MS. *lofte bed* is corrupted in both passages in which it ought to occur. Cf. p. 226:

He was leyd in *softe bed*,
with the fault mentioned in the note to l. 9427, and p. 232.

I found *a lofte a bed fletyng* (= l. 9591).

The former corruption occurs also in Copland's Guy, Gg iiiii:

I a *softe bed* then slepte Guy.

9503. *oght*. See note to l. 7799.

9529. *Barrardyne*: *pylgryme*; cf. l. 9596, *Barrardyne*: *wythynne*, but *Barrarde*: *harde*, ll. 8921, 8929, 9333, 9401. The Auchinleck MS. also employs both forms: e. g. 9063, *Berard*: *lipard*; 9120, *Berardine*: *Sarazine*: *fine*: *Costentine*. Both versions follow the example of the French; cf.:

Par la traison del duc *Berard* (= l. 9493),
Qui se combati a *Berardin* (= l. 9510).

The longer form is the diminutive of the shorter (cf. Diez, Gramm., II², 315), so that this change is different from that mentioned in note to l. 365. But it explains very well the double form of the name by which the author of the *Ormulum* calls himself. Cf. Preface 1:

Þiss boc iss nemmedd Orrmulum,
 Forþi þatt *Orrm* itt wrohhte,

but Dedication, 323-5 :

Icc wass þær, þær i crisstnedd wass,
Orrmin bi name nemmedd.
 Annd icc *Orrmin* full innwarrdliȝ, etc.

Mätzner, *Sprachproben*, I, 8, note to l. 324, asks : ' *sollte an latinisierung des namens durch—inus zu denken sein?* ' But, if Latinized, the name would have been *Orrminuss*. My opinion cannot be refuted by the assertion that there is no trace of French influence in the *Ormulum*. For this assertion, often as it has been repeated (cf. e. g. Mätzner, II, I, p. 3, ' *der noch von jeder romanischen beimischung freie dialect* '), is erroneous. Kington Oliphant, *Standard English*, p. 93, is perfectly right in attributing to the *Ormulum* 'four or five French words.' Cf. *bikechenn*, *cariteþ*, *flumm* (note to l. 8705), *rime* (*Anzeiger für deutsches alterthum und deutsche litteratur*, II, p. 15), *serrfenn*, very probably *scorcnenn*, *turnnenn* (O.E. *tyrnan* would have become *tirrnenn* in the *Ormulum*).

9531. The Caius MS., p. 230, reads :

The foure barouns soth gan wend.

Though *soth* is evidently a mistake for *forth*, yet *The* is certainly right. Cf. the French :

Puis sunt li quatre dux alez.

9533. *they* does not refer to the four barons, but means 'people,' 'one.' Cf. the French :

Mes *hom* li est deuant venuz
 E dit ke li pelerin est perduz
 E le chailit, ou il mis fu,
 Ne sevent, ou il sunt deuenuz.

The Caius MS., p. 230, has two more lines between ll. 9532 and 9533 :

He commaundyd at that tyme
 To bring forth that pylgryme.

But as they are quite unnecessary (cf. l. 9530) and there is nothing like them in the French, we must consider them to be spurious.

9536. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by l. 9542. But our author departed in this from the French original, which does not mention any such thing. Cf. the preceding note.

9562 *schal of*. See the note to ll. 855-6.

9565. *wynde*. See note to l. 3872.

9566. *hardelye*. See note to l. 2691.

9591. *a lofte bedde*. See note to l. 9459.

9617. *repulde* = *replid*, in the Caius MS., p. 233 :

He *replid* hys face and hys chyn.

It is N.E. *ripple*, which in the North has still retained the sense required here. Cf. the first of the Glossaries reprinted for the Dialect Society : ' *Ripple*, v. to scratch.' Archbishop Trench, in his 'Select Glossary,'

s. v. *ripple*, refers to a Glossary of Yorkshire Words and Phrases (1855), p. 140: '*To ripple*, to scratch slightly as with a pin upon the skin,' and cites from Holland's *Ammianus*, p. 264: '*On a sudden an horseman's javelin, having slightly rippled the skin of his left arm,*' etc. Koch, *Gramm.*, III 1, 2, p. 167, errs in taking N.E. *ripple* (which he erroneously understands to mean 'to gurgle,' *plütschern*) to be onomatopoeic. It is the German *riffeln*, to ripple flax, spelt also erroneously *riffeln*, in the figurative sense of rebuking. Cf. M.H.G. *riffelen*, *rifelen*; O.H.G. *rifilôn*, vellere, serrare; O.H.G. *rifila*, rostrum serrans; M.H.G. *rifil*, *riffel*; N.H.G. *riffel*, ripple, flax-comb. Cf. also the Flemish *ryffelen*, to scratch, and Diez, *Wörterbuch*, I, s. v. *riffa*. The word is akin to German *raffen*.—The corresponding lines of the French run thus:

La face li *rast* e le mentun
E tut le peil del destre gernun.

9618. *ryght* is omitted before *cheke*. Cf. the French in the preceding line (though there is made no mention of the cheek, *gernun* being 'moustache' and 'beard on the chin,' and *peil* = *pilus*, not = *pellis*) and the Caius MS.:

And of hys *ryght* cheke all the skyn.

9620. *vnryde*. See note to l. 1647.

9622. *Os* = *as*. See note to l. 4602.

9625. *as sparke of fyre*. Cf. the note to Havelok, ed. Skeat, l. 91.

9629. Barrarde has two helmets (cf. l. 9365). Guy's stroke damages both. '*Of hys odor helme*' depends on '*a quartere*.' Cf. the French:

Vn quarter en fist uoler
E del *halme plat* tut enement.

Of the two helmets '*li un . . . ert plat*, *li autre agu*.'

9633. *Hys arme*. The Caius MS., p. 233, *The ryght arme*, but the French *Le braz*.

9634. *wythrowten othe*. Cf. note to l. 10862.

9651-2. After Guy's speech the French goes on:

Sur le cors se est il dunc repose,
Ceo dient cil de la cite:
'Cest hom est uerraïement faie,
Tel coup ne fu unc mes done,
Puis ke le mund fu estore'

The Caius MS., p. 234, reads:

By the cors he reste a whyle,
Well the mountanaunce of a myle.
All, that abowte gan stond,
Seyd, he was a knyzt of fer land.

As to *mountanaunce* cf. the note to ll. 5229-30, as to *m. of a myle* that to l. 2810; *fer* is an obvious mistake for *feiry*, *fairy* (cf. *faie* in the French). It is clear that in our text two lines are omitted before 9651, and, besides, ll. 9652-3 much corrupted by a scribe, who referred them to Barrarde instead of to Guy.

9656. Cf. the French :

Lesguard de sa court ad demande,
Si Terri deit estre quites clame.

The reading of the Caius MS., p. 234 :

And askyd, yf Terry shuld be quyte
Of all perell and all dyspyte,

is, at least, without fault, although it must remain uncertain whether the original words of the translator are preserved.

9658. The Caius MS., p. 234, has the same inaccuracy :

Yea, be hym, that dyed on *crose*,

and it occurs also in Copland's Guy, I i :

In his forehead Guy made a *crosse*
And sterte on steede with that voyce.

But cf. *croice* : *woice* (i. e. voice) in Morris's Specimens, II, vii, 47-8 ; *vois* : *croys*, Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 295, 106-108, etc.

9661. *also tyte*, very quickly. See note to l. 1343.

9687. *or y ete mete*. See note to l. 3695.

9694. *gylte* = *gylty*. See note to l. 132.

9700. *councell* seems to be a mistake for *sowle*. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 236 :

Of hys *sowle* can i no rede,

i. e. I do not know how to help his soul. Cf. note to ll. 1199, 1200.
The corresponding French line runs as follows :

Desuz la uile git sun cors.

9701. *hardelye* = *hardylye*. Cf. note to l. 2691.

9709. The punctuation is doubtful here. Cf. the French :

En grant dolor ai mult este :
An e demi ai ia erre,
Ke unc un iur ne reposai, etc. ;

the Caius MS., p. 236 :

I haue bene in sorrow stronge
Yere and halfe (me thynketh longe),
That i had neuer reste on daye, etc.

9719-21. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 237 :

Now herd i seye, *that a* pylgryme
(Have he goddys benyson and myne),
He hath the duke Berrard schent ;

and the French :

Ore oi dire *ke un* pelerin
(A qui deu doint bone fin)
Le fel duc Berard ad occis.

9781—9792. These twelve lines occur also in the Caius MS., p. 239, but neither in the French (in the Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS., at least), nor in the Auchinleck MS., nor in Copland's version.

9792. *wyth the remlawnt* = *with that other*, Caius MS., 239. *Remlawnt* is a corruption of *remnaunt*, *remenawnt* = *remnant*, remainder. Halliwell, s. v., cites only this passage, but cf. also his articles *Remelant*

(where he mentions the Northern *renuling*) and *Remlet*.—*store* = *astore* in the Caius MS. = O.F. *estorer*, Lat. *instaurare*. Cf. note to l. 576.

9814. *some dele*, a great deal, much, very well. Cf. *Ae. Leg.*, ed. Horstmann, 66, 45 = 67, 45 :

Somdel hem longede þo ;

Morris's Specimens, I, Ia, 163-4 :

þe bataile ilaste strong

Vorte it was hei midouernon, and þat was *somdel* long.

ib. 467 : þo king Willam hurde þis, he made him *somdel* wroþ.

M.H.G. *ein teil* is used with the same force. Cf. e. g. *Nibelunge Nôt* (ed. Lachmann), 438 :

Zuo ir ingesinde *ein teil* sî lûte sprach.

This use is called ironical by M.H.G. scholars, but I have pointed out in '*Einführung in das studium des mhd.*' 12, 4 (p. 62 of the second edition), that this denomination is wrong, and I prefer calling it 'litotetical,' since 'more is meant than meets the ear.' In such litotetical sense 'little' means 'nothing' (cf. 4558, 7221, 11761), 'a little' means 'much' (11020), 'enough' means 'too,' 'very much' (cf. 10278, and Morris's Spec., II, Ia, 501 :

Er he ssolde þat abbe ydo ; for it was þo late *ynou*)
and the like.

9827. *soyorned*. See the note to l. 133.

9847. *yow*. See the note to l. 4192. But cf. the Caius MS., p. 241 :

But hyt were *ye*, leve sir Gye.

9854. Cf. the French :

E les jambes decreuees,
Ke tant soleient estre bien chalcees.

9882. *Whome* = *home*. See note to l. 3422.

9902. *Hyt*. Cf. note to l. 1051.

9906. *amonge*. Cf. note to l. 2301.

9913 read to *Whytesande*. Wissant near Calais is meant. Cf. Two Saxon Chronicles, ed. Earle, p. 231 : *on þisum gear* [i. e. 1095] *was se cyng on Hwitsand*.

9914. *ryued*. See note to l. 4244.

9919. *bede*, to order, O.E. *beōdan*. See note to l. 2703.

9938. *to stroye*. See note to ll. 1925-6.

9952. *Wherethorow*, MS. only *Where* ; but cf. l. 10015.

9959. *Or* seems spurious. Perhaps the scribe took it by a mistake from l. 9966. Cf. the French :

E si il iceo ne uoille granter,
Dunc troisse tost un chiualer.

9983. In the French there are four lines in which Guy asks and is answered about Earl Roholde. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 246 :

'Where ys,' he seyð, 'the erle Roholde,
A dowȝty knyȝt and a bolde?'

'Sir,' he seyde, 'par ma faye,
He ys dede full many a daye.'

9992. *verraye* = *verylye*, 2644, 3580, 4064, 4832, 8359, 9219, 9788 = *verement*, 3920, 5291.

10010. *fendys sone*. Cf. *Kindheit Jesu*, ed. Horstmann (Leg.), 317-19:

Jesus him seide with hastiue wille

'A, þou *feondes sone* of helle,

3wi hast þou tobroke mi lay?'

ib. 417-18 :

Jhesus, withoute more to telle,

Cleopede him þe *feondes sone* of helle ;

cf. ib. 849 :

I not, 3wat *deuel* hine *bizat*.

10021. I think it improbable that *the* means *they* (cf. the note to l. 1849); for the hostilities mentioned in ll. 10021-2 are no less only anticipated than those in ll. 10019-20. We might simply omit *The*, but I rather think it corrupted from *to*. Cf. the note to ll. 1925-6.

10031. *fryste*; MS. *fyrste*, spoiling the rhyme in the same way as in l. 6682.

10040. *the halfen dele*. See note to l. 5916.

10075. *And seyde*, viz. the angel. See note to l. 10.

10078. *Take þou the redy way*. Cf. Generydes, ed. A. Wright, l. 604 :

To ther logging they *take the redy waye* ;

ib. 644 :

To the sawdon they *take þe redy waye* ;

ib. 3273 :

To hir chaunber he *take the redy waye*.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 10306 :

To bid þe *make þe redi way*.

The redy waye = *þe graith gate*, on which see Skeat's note to *Piers the Pl.* (Clarendon Press), Pass. ii, 103.

10104. *tary*, detain. It is O.E. *tergan*, *tyrgan*, but may be influenced by O.F. *targer*, **tardicare*. See Skeat's Glossary to *Select*, from Chaucer.

10112. *Lese* is here not O.E. (*for*)*leōsan*, to lose, but O.E. *liēsan*, *lēsan*, *lȳsan*, to deliver (Germ. *lösen*). Cf. the French :

Ke par le cors de un cheualer

Deis ia ma terre *desreiner*

Enuers un sedne Colebrant.

10117-18. *Thou . . . þou* in the same sentence. Cf. note to ll. 2893-4 :

10119-21. See note to ll. 4921-4.

10135. *Who was gladde, but Adelston?* Such rhetoric questions are common enough in M.E. poetry. Cf. Generydes, ed. Wright, 848-9 :

Now who was gladde and who was well apayde

And endly mery, but Generydes?

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 45, 596-7 :

Who feleth double sorwe and hevynesse,

But Palamon ?

ib. p. 58, 1012-13 :

Who loketh lightly now, but Palomoun ?
Who spryngeth up for joye, but Arcite ?

ib. p. 115, 559-61 :

Who rubbith now, who froteth now his lippes . . . ,
But Absolon ?

ib. p. 339, 711 :

Who studieth now, but faire freisshe May ?

ib. p. 353, 1166 :

This January, who is glad, but he ?

etc., etc.

10140. *delyuyr* seems here to mean 'to dispatch.' Cf. *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, 2081 :

'Me lykez wele,' sais sir Loth, 'zone lordez are delyuerede.'

10141—10164. There is nothing like this passage either in the French work (at least, in the Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS.) or in any other M.E. version.

10143. By restoring the form which is etymologically the most correct (Lat. *armatura* = O.F. *armëure* = O.E. *armeure*, *armewre*) we get a perfect rhyme here as well as in l. 10853.

10146. *In peyne* = upon pain ; cf. l. 10204, *in peyne of renayenge of hys laye*.

10164. *peyred*. See note to l. 7993.

10165. *nommen*, appointed. Cf. *tune* in l. 5742 (see the note), *Tryamoure*, ed. Halliwell, 1180-1 :

Tyll the day of bataylle was comen,
That they had before *nomen* ;

and a passage cited from the same MS. in Halliwell's Dict., s. v. *nome*.

Aftur thys the day was *nomyn*,
That the batelle on schulde comyn.

10175. I cannot conceive how the scribe understood *sayle*, by which he spoiled the rhyme. But it cannot be doubted that this word supplanted *nasel*. Cf. the French :

Al frunt a munt en som le *nasel*
Out un charbucle assis tant bel.

O.F. *nasel* = Mediæval Latin *nasale*, *nasile*, 'pars cassidis demissa, quae nasum tegit' Ducange. In English *nasel* seems not to have been very common, since it is wanting both in Stratmann and Halliwell. But it occurs pretty often in Guy, ed. Turnbull ; cf. ll. 2061-2 :

His hauberk was al totore
And his *nasel* aualed bifore ;

l. 4911 :

Bi þe *nasel* he tok Gij ;

l. 4990 :

And sippe he tok him bi þe *naselle* ;

l. 5029 :

By þe *nasel* he rauzt him þo ;

l. 8173 :

Bi þe *nasel* it gan doun founde ;

l. 9385 :

þe *nasel* he carf atvo.

10196. Cf. the French :

Susanna socurrustes uers les feluns,
Qui occire la uoïent par traisuns.

10204. *In peyne.* Cf. note to l. 10146. *Of renayenge of hys laye* = of abjuring his faith. Cf. e. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 181, 278-9 :

And seyð him, that sche wolde *reney hir lay*
And cristendam of prestes handes fonge.

There is nothing like this line either in the French or in the other M.E. versions.

10205. *to clayme.* See note to ll. 1925-6.

10206. *whome.* See note to l. 3422.

10211-12. *That . . . that.* Such a repetition of the conjunction *that* is not uncommon. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 6853-6 :

Gij him perceyued in þat stounde,
þat neuer more þurch wepen ygrounde
þat fram þe nauel vpward so
No slouþ him man neuer mo ;

Copland's Guy, Q i :

For he well wist for certaynly,
That, who so went to the soudan,
That in haste he should him slone ;

Holy Grail, ed. Furnivall, 105, 127-9 :

So thanne it happed, as i telle now the,
That owte of Miaux, that cite,
That tweyne maydenes chose weren, for sothe ;

ib. 110, 293 : And *that* thy man *that* i moot be ;

Morris's Specimens, II, Ia, 118-20 :

Ne ssame 3e noȝt, þat Harald, þat euer was of luþer wrenche,
And biuore 3ou was uorswore, þat he wolde mid is taile
Turne is wombe toward vs and is face in bataile ?

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 68, 1337-8 :

That yit men wene, *that* no mannes wyȝ
Of non estat *that* cowde amende it ;

Generydes, ed. Wright, 146-7 :

Hyre chere, hyr porte, it was in soche a wyse,
That more goodly *that* cowde noman devise.

In l. 146 the MS. and the Editor read *sothe awyse*, which I think does not make sense.—Cf. note to l. 6840 and Mätzner's Gramn., III², 421.

10215. *3olde*, infinitive, O.E. *gielðan*, *gyldan*. Cf. *3ulden*, *3ulde*, in Stratmann, s. v. *3elden*.

10224. Cf. the French :

A pie tut dis se combateit,
En bataile chiual ne quereit.

kepte noght, did not care. Cf. note to l. 349.

10235. I am inclined to suppose that some participle past is omitted after *were*.

10243-8. There is no verb in this sentence, perhaps only by a mistake of the scribe.

10245-6. Rather *smyten* : *byten*? Does *smyte* here mean 'to stud'? Cf. the German 'beschlagen.'

10253-4. *prykkeþe* : *flyeth*, a very unsatisfactory rhyme if it be a rhyme at all. I think it probable that the two lines originally ran thus :

Hys hors wyth the spurres, he *pryghte*
(That ranne as faste, as fowle in *flyghte*).

The preterit *pryghte* (from *priken*, O.E. *prician*, Ælfric's Grammar, ed. Somner, p. 32) occurs in the rhyme, e. g., in Skeat's Chaucer, 117, 418, rhyming with *shryghte*, in Morris's O.E. Homilies, II, 257, 53, rhyming with *dizte*, *mizte*, *rizte*. As for *fowle in flyghte* cf. l. 5804 of our poem :

Lyon nor swalowe nor fowle in *flyght*.

10260. *þorow* . . . *hyt schoulde*, viz. go, get. Cf. l. 10300 and note to ll. 855-6.

10266. *hote*, quickly. See note to l. 1049.

10275. *they*, an erratum for *then*.

10278. *ynowe*, very much. See note to l. 9814.

10282. *For* cannot be right. Cf. the French (Reg. MS., 8, F ix) :

Mes Gui tant haut ne pust ateyndre.

Cf. l. 10284.

10290. *tamedde*, *Tame* for *attame* or *entame* (cf. note to l. 576). But even *entame* = F. *entamer* is derived from Latin *attaminare*, to violate. As to *attame* see Mätzner's *Wörterbuch*, p. 131. *Entame* occurs, e. g., in Chaucer's A B C (ed. Morris, V, 81), K :

Lat not my foo no more my wounde *entame*.

Halliwell cites a dialectical *tame*, 'to cut,' 'divide.' It means 'to broach' in the Chester Plays, I, 124 (cited by Halliwell, p. 849) :

Now to weete our mouthes tyme were.
This flagette will i *tame*, yf thou reade us.

In our passage *tamedde* means also 'broached,' but in a figurative sense.

10299. *os* = *as*. See the note to l. 4602.

10303. *wyth the vpbrayde* = *wip þe outbraiding* in the Auchinleck MS. (ed. Turnbull, l. 10045) = *as he drew hys swerd ageyne* in the Caius MS., p. 257. *Upbraid* generally means 'reproach' (cf. l. 11849). But here *braid* (O.E. *bregd*) is used in its original meaning of 'quick motion' (cf. note to l. 9198); hence *vpbrayde*, 'quick upward motion,' or 'up-stroke,' as Halliwell explains it.

10314. *wyth that*, on condition that, in case that; cf. ll. 10399, 11830. But in l. 10870 the conjunction seems to have another meaning. See the note.

10318. *tyþynge*. See the note to l. 2022.

10329-32 render two French lines which run thus :

Armes a grant plente auez,
Dunc une partie me presterez.

It is clear that l. 10329 must mean the same as l. 10331. But as *gode oon* makes no sense, we must suppose that it is corrupted from some expression synonymous with *grete plente*. To get such a one we need but add *w*. Cf. l. 11098:

And sende hym strokys *gode won*.

Won may be used with *of* or without it (cf. the note to l. 7173). Cf. e. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 169, l. 475:

I have *of* sorwe so grete *wone*.

In our passage the scribe, seeing *woon* in the MS. from which he copied, perhaps mistook it for that *woon*, *won*, of which we have treated in the note to l. 7927, and hence spelled it *oon*. In *Zeitschrift für die oesterreichischen gymnasien*, 1875, p. 131, I have shown that *wōn*, *wān*, plenty, etc., cannot be derived from O.E. *winnan*, N.E. *win*. Nor do I think that it is 'merely varied from Sc. *quhoy*n, a few (A.S. *hwēne*, a little), which was afterwards extended to the notion of an indefinite number, a 'lot,' a quantity' (cf. Morris's Specimens, II, gloss., s. v. *wone*). Not to mention difficulties as to the signification, I think it impossible that Scotch *ō*, *oy* (e. g. *he had to quhone in his company*; O.E. *hwōn*, *hwane*, *hwēne*; cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 385, 730) should have become *a* in Northern M.E. and Early Southern M.E. (cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 326, l. 93, and Stratmann, s. v. especially *wanles*, cited from Marharete, 11, 21). L. c. I have proposed an etymology which seems to me pretty probable. Having the forms *wān*, *wōn* (*wane*, *wone*), we must start from *wān*. Now we find in Icel. *ván* etymologically = O.E. *wén*, M.E. *wene*. But Icel. *ván* does not only mean 'hope, expectation,' but is also used in such instances as that cited by Vigfússon, p. 684b, *pá er allar vānir vóru rannsakaðir* = all places where it could be expected to be found. Hence the signification 'chance' that *wān*, *wōn*, often has in M.E. is quite natural. Now nobody that remembers Latin *copia*, plenty, opportunity, chance, or knows the Americanism *a smart chance* (*of cigars, of snow, etc.*), will be surprised that *gode* or *grete won* (*wan*) means 'plenty.'

10337. *brayton* must mean 'fool.' Cf. the French:

Mult freie, com mal *brikun*,

Si armes te baillasse a bandon;

bricun, nominative originally *brics* (= O.E. *brica*, from *brecan*, to break), rascal, fool. But *brayton* is not to be found in any dictionary.

10347. *skypte*: *smete* is no rhyme. *Schete* = O.E. *sceāt*, 'shot,' in an intransitive sense (cf. *shooting-star*) as it is used, e. g., in l. 10219.

10353. *of of*. See the note to l. 2906.

10367. *The kyng* . . . *was* . . . *woo*. See the note to l. 1251.

10368. *hys odur folke*. See note to l. 559.

10376. *precession*; cf. *precessyowne*, l. 6963, and Copland's *Guy*, II ii, *the priestes and clarkes met him with precessyon*.

10382-3. *in what lande . . . in.* The first *in* is the preposition, the other the adverb (cf. note to l. 2906). Cf. Chaucer, C. T. Prol., 41 :

And eek, *in* what array that they were *inne*.

See also Abbott's Shakspeare. Gramm., 407.

10395. *That* of course depends on *mercy* in l. 10391.

10399. *wyth that.* See note to l. 10314.

10411. Cf. the French :

Jeo le uis dirrai, *mes uis gardez.*

10414. The omission of *ye* can hardly be justified by a reference to l. 1591 or the note to l. 10.

10444. The French (MS. Reg.) has nothing corresponding :

Dengleterre tute la meyte

Vous doyns ore hui cest iour.

But we expect that Guy is desired to tell himself what reward he wishes.

10477. *sonde* means what is sent : 1. message, ll. 6009, 6047, 10049, 10705 (*sond* messenger is a different word) ; 2. what is sent from the kitchen, dish ; e. g. Gen. and Exod., ed. Morris, 2295-6 :

Of euerile *sonde*, of euerile win

Most and best he gat Benjamin.

Cf. Lat. *ferculum* ; N.E. *mess*, O.F. *mes*, N.F. *mets* = Lat. *missum* ; 3. gift that has been sent, but often 'present' in a general sense ; e. g. *Legenden*, ed. Horstmann, p. 3, 25-6 :

Þerafter þre kinges of vncouþe londe

To þat childe brouȝten heore *sonde*.

4. what is sent by God, 'godsend,' grace, mercy ; e. g. William of Palerne, 63-4 :

oft Crist þonkes,

þat hadde him sent þo *sonde* swiche prey to finde ;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8888 :

'Lord,' seyd sir Gij, 'y þanke þi *sond* ;

ib. 9450 and 10115 :

þurch grace of godes *sond*.

Of course, the last signification takes place here.

10487. *curtes* seems to be out of place here. Cf. the French :

La *contesse* Felice i esteit.

10504. *wythowten noo.* See note to l. 3054.

10512. *fayre* = fare ; see note to l. 3070. 'He took food to the pilgrim.'

10520. Cf. note to ll. 2893-4.

10531. I have altered *was* to *wes* also in ll. 10696 and 10752.

10532. *dredeles.* See note to l. 3739.

10550. *nere* = ne'er, never. Cf. l. 10716.

10552. *so* in a relative sense = as, perhaps also l. 11117. Cf. the note to l. 615.

10583. MS. *Thys halfe ryng*; *halfe* evidently has crept in from the next line. Cf. ll. 10588, 10617, etc., and the French:

Cest anel lui aporterez.

10586-7. There is no predicate to the subject *þe same pylgryme*. This anacoluthon is owing to *And sey to hur* being repeated.

10590. MS. *schewe*. See note to l. 807.

10593. MS. *moest*. The scribe was going to write *most*, but after having written *mo*, saw that the rhyme required *mest*: so he added *est*, but forgot to expunge *o*. Cf. l. 10614. The superlative *meest* (*meste*) occurs in the rhyme, ll. 6824 and 10639, but in the latter line it was perhaps *most* originally.

10597. *And þat þere þou longe ne dwelle* as if *Y prey þe*, or something to the same effect, preceded. Cf. Mätzner's Gramm., III², p. 430.

10601. *for seynt Charyte*. See note to l. 7154.

10614. *þerbes* = herbs. Cf. note to l. 60, and *yarbs* in A Dictionary of the Sussex Dialect, by the Rev. W. D. Parish, p. 131.

10618. *in presente*. See note to l. 7904.

10620. An aposiopesis.

10624-5. See note to l. 2645.

10626. *heyle*. See note to l. 3070.

10631. MS. *lyeth*. But cf. the French:

Ou il se maint en la hermitage,

and the Caius MS., p. 264:

Now nonnyth he ther in that forest

And leuyth, as a wylde beste.

The scribe's eyes perhaps wandered to l. 10634. But cf. the same fault in l. 2268.

10633. *That he be beryed*. Guy wanted to be buried in the hermitage, and Felice learnt that from his messenger; see l. 10705. The corresponding passage in the French work runs as follows:

De par li uus faz ceo message,

Ke enterrer uiegez son cors

En le hermitage, ou il est mortz,

E ke dilek nel facez porter,

Mes la le facez enterrer.

It is difficult to decide whether the author was inaccurate or a scribe has corrupted this passage.

10637. *to* = too, also, moreover. Cf. ll. 10996, 11099, and 11549. Stratmann quotes only William, 19, as showing *to* with this signification. But cf. also *Meditations*, ed. Cowper, 361-2:

þe same orysun, þat he preyd byfore

He preyd now and ded to more,

where Cowper is wrong in explaining *to* as 'two or twice' (cf. *Anzeiger für deutsches alterthum*, etc., I, p. 124); Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 126:

Whan they had ete and dronke to;

Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 357 :

And ȝut ferþermore *to* ;

ib. 532 :

Seyþ a Paternoster more *to* ;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV, 130, 540-1 :

This wordes and ful many another *to*
He spak.

We find this employment of *to* as early as O.E. Cf. (Cædmon's) Genesis, 1223-4 :

nigonhund wintra
and hundseofontig *tô*.

10639. Perhaps *mast*. See note to l. 10593.

10644. 'Nobody may be a looker (spectator) more sorrowful' (than Felice), is very strange. Perhaps the passage is corrupt. Cf. the French (Codex Reg.) :

Mult durement sen ioy,
Qele uerreit sun seignur,
E de autre part en ad dolur,
Qele moryr lui uerreyt :
Pur ceo estrange deol feseit.

10653-4 are very likely to be spurious. Neither the French (at least the Cambridge and the Royal MSS.) nor the other English versions have anything like them. Nor have we any reason to think the translator himself so stupid as to add such an absurdity.

10662. *as sche standys*. Cf. notes to ll. 4062 and 1535.

10674. *amonge*. Cf. note to l. 2301.

10675. The same fault in l. 76.

10680. *the rynges*, rings of mail. Cf. Havelok, 2739-41 :

þat he dide þare undo
Of his brinie *ringes* mo,
þen þat ich kan tellen fro.

10687. *As and*, as if.

10690. *Swete and swote*. The two different forms of the same word joined by *and* occur also St Marharete, p. 11 :

Swotest and swetest alre scheffe schuppent ;

Ancren Riwe, p. 102 :

Unimete *swote and swete* ;

ib. p. 398 : Nam ich alre þinge *swotest and swetest* ?

To these examples collected by Mätzner, *Sprachproben*, II, 23, 20, add Wright, Spec. of Lyric Poetry, p. 54 :

Ant bisecheth that *swete and swote*.

10695. *wythouten lees*. See note to l. 550.

10696. *wes*. See note to l. 10531.

10697. *dyzt*, carried. Cf. note to l. 4350.

10707. *through* coffin = *sarku* in the French. It is O.E. *þrūh*, e. g. in Ælfric's Glossary : 'Mausoleum *þruh* (one MS. *þurh*) oððe ofergeweorc

. . . Sarcofagum *þruh* (two MSS. *þurh*).' Ettmüller and Stratmann give the word a short vowel, but *u* must be long if I am right in identifying it with O.H.G. *drûh*, 'pedica, compes, decipula, cippus,' M.H.G. *drûch*, *drûhe*, N.H.G. *drauche*. Cf. Icel. *þró*, pl. *þróar* and *þrær*, 'trough'; and especially *steinþró*, stone-coffin. The word is yet preserved in the Scotch and Northern *through-stane*. But though Ic. *þró* means 'trough,' yet N.E. *trough* = O.E., Icel., German *trog*, is etymologically a different word.

10709. *Thretty masses* called *trental*. Cf. Halliwell, s. v., and Trentalle of St Gregory in *The Visions of Tundale*, ed. Turnbull, pp. 77-83.

10710. *dudde*, viz. *þey*, l. 10706. Cf. the French (Cod. Reg.):

E tantes aulmoynes i unt done.

þey was not repeated, since l. 10709 means: 'they ordered thirty masses to be sung.'

10716. *nere*, ne'er, never. See l. 10550.

10718. *to serue wolde*. See note to ll. 1925-6.

10730. The scribe made the same mistake here as he corrected in l. 11. Cf. *loued* in l. 10728.

10733. *rede*, tell. See note to l. 313.

10734. *ys* = are. See note to l. 3194.

10738. *in oon*, in one, together. Cf. M.H.G. *enein*, *inein*, and note to l. 5308.

10749-50. Do these lines mean 'Listen to what I am going to tell you about Tyrry's noise (lamenting),' or, 'Don't make any noise, but listen to what I tell you about Tyrry'? I should prefer the latter if I were able to point out a parallel passage. But cf. in the mean time Copland's *Guy*, G iiiii:

Now listen to mee *without jangelyng*
And ye shall heare a wonder thyng;

Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, ll. 4, 5:

Yf ye wylle a stounde *blynne*,
Of a story y wylle begynne.

10751. *lees*. Cf. note to l. 550.

10752. *wes*. Cf. note to l. 10531.

10768. *whodur*. Cf. note to l. 8466.

10775. *for hys wyfe*, 'for his wife's.' See note to l. 688.

10782. *and oures alsoo* is added, as if *god schylde* did not depend on *prey*, l. 10779.

10786. The French has nothing like ll. 10779—10786. The last line is a little strange after what precedes. Perhaps the passage has been tampered with, if not entirely added, by a scribe.

10791. *besemydde*, fitted out, provided for. Cf. Ippomedon (ed. Weber, Rom. 2, 294), ll. 352-3:

There was non in all hir land
So wele *besemyd*, doughty of hand ;

Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 718-20 :

Ther was no prynce that day in felde,
That was so semely undur schylde,
Nor better *besemyd* a knyght.

10794. The French does not suggest any explanation or emendation of the reading of the MS. As to *forthynkyth* see note to l. 984.

10795. The subject *he* is omitted either because *hym* precedes, or because l. 10794 is parenthetical.

10803. *þere he stode*. Cf. note to l. 1535.

10804. *undurzode*. Cf. note to l. 8231.

10809 and 10845. *aplyght*. Cf. note to l. 8541.

10837. *he was hymselfe knowe*, he had acknowledged (confessed) himself. Several instances in which the participle has the prefix *i*, are collected by Mätzner in his note to *Sprachproben*, I, 223, l. 983. In his *Wörterbuch*, p. 440-1, he has no example of the simple participle. But cf. Copland's *Guy*, M iii :

'*I am known*,' sayd Segwyn,
'That i myselfe slough thy cosyn' ;

and Joseph of Arimathie, ed. Skeat, l. 665 :

He is so feol in himself, for no þing *be knowne*.

Skeat's text has *be-knowne*, which he in the glossary explains to mean 'to confess,' adding 'Unless it is two words.' I think it *is*, but it must mean 'confess,' 'own,' notwithstanding.

10853. MS. *armoure*. See note to l. 10143.

10856. *hawde* for *h'awde*, *Heraude*, the older spelling of the name.

10862. I think *wythowte* was the original reading. Cf. *Guy*, ed. Turnbull, 8858-60 :

In þe hilt was mani precious ston :
As briȝt, as ani sonne, it schon,
Wiþouten op ysworn ;

Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, 1015-16 :

Ich telle þe a soþe word,
Wiþoute op iscore.

Cf. besides in our poem, l. 31, *wythowten otheys* ; l. 5664, *wythowte othe* ; l. 9634, *wythowten othe* ; l. 6787, *wythowte othynge* ; *Guy*, in the Caius MS., p. 2 :

Riche of golde and of syluer bothe,
Of clothes of gold and vessell, *withoute othe* ;

Copland's *Guy*, M iii :

Of he did, *withouten othes*,
His weede, saue his lynnyn clothes ;

King Horn, 347-8 : *panne wolde, wiþuten oþe*,
þe kyng maken us wroþe ;

Seven Sages, ed. Weber, 2293 :

He went him doun, *wiþouten oth* ;

Kindheit Jesu, ed. Horstmann (Legenden), 1595 :

And he aros up, *withouten othþ* ;

Cobsam's Chaste Wife, 328-9 :

He seyð : 'felowe, *wythowten oth*,
For o erand we come bothe.'

This expletive generally means the same as Generydes, ed. Wright, 186 :

That i shall sey, leve me withoute othe.

10868. *þe halfen dell*. See note to l. 5916.

10870. *wyth þat* seems to denote here, not a condition, as in the instances quoted in the note to l. 10314, but an intention. Cf. *wiþ þan* in Guy, ed. Turnbull, 10230-5 :

For þritten pouer men and ȝete mo
For hir lordes loue, sche loued so,
Ich day sche gan fede,
Wiþ þan god and our leuedi
Schuld saue hir lord sir Gij,

i. e. in order that god might save. *Wit þat* seems to be used in the same sense in Havelok, 19-20 :

And, *wit þat* it mote ben so,
Benedicamus domino !

Cf. *Zeitschrift für die österr. gymn.* 1874, p. 596.

10875. I have inserted *bad* as *groupe* in l. 10876, being an infinitive, shows that *schredde* and *dyzt* must be infinitives too. Cf. the French :

Riche dras li fait liuerer.

10881. We may read even *reame*, which form occurs in Myrc's Instructions, l. 719 :

Agen þe king or the reame,

and in Destruction of Troy, 221 :

Whyle you rixlis in this reame, no riot we drede.

10911. MS. *dud bestryte*. But *bestryte* cannot possibly be the infinitive. Omitting *dud*, we get *bestryte* = *bestryt* = *bestrideth*.

10915. *comen*, viz. Harrawde and his companions. Cf. note to l. 5672.

10919. Cf. the French :

Multz i eurent healmes aguz.

10926. *fote* is an erratum for *fote*. As to *fote hote* cf. note to l. 1049.

10938. *Nor more scruyd*, as if *no sarsyne was euer hardyar* preceded.

10945. *ouyr ygoo*. Cf. the French :

Li conestable est outre passe.

10996. *bothe* is often used even when more than two substantives are copulated by *and*. Cf. Tyrwhitt's Glossary to Chaucer, s. v., and Mätzner's Gramm., III², 362. M.H.G. *beidiu* . . . and is used in the same way.—*too* ; cf. note to l. 10637.

11020. *a lytull*, 'much.' Cf. note to l. 9814.

11021 and 11025. *bede*. See note to l. 2703.

11024. *he*, viz. the Amiral (l. 11022). *Les* = O.E. (*for*)*leás* is the strong preterit of *lese* (*forleásan*), l. 11023. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 568:

pat Heraud wan, þanne *les* he.

11026. *lede*, people, country = O.E. *leód*, whereas *ledys*, men, in 11798, is O.E. *leóde* (German *leute*).

11038. Cf. the French:

Sun enseingne en hault *cria*.

11046. *wo he ys*. See note to l. 1251.

11053. *aspye*. Cf. l. 11077 and note to l. 3880.

11068. *fenne* = *fine*.

11075. The rhyme is certainly corrupt. One might think of reading:

Homewarde he faste fleth,

but the French: Li reis Arguz *fuiant sen uait*

shows that *fleyng goyth*, upon the whole, must be right. Koch's assertion, Gramm., I, 324, on the other hand, that *geþ* does not occur after Layamon is erroneous; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 10086, *geþ : seþ : deþ : teþ*; Reinbroun, 621, *geþ : deþ*. The latest instance cited by Stratmann is from Torrent of Portugal, ll. 2141-3:

Thys ys the lond of Nazareth :

Se where the kyng *gethe*,

Of speche he is full bone.

11082. Cf. the French:

Ia le eust ateint ou mort ou pris

E en bataille conquis.

11084. *þe todur* = the others. Cf. note to l. 658.

11085. MS. *Then*. See the note to l. 6761.

11089. *forhoryd* = grown very hoary, gray. It is the participle of another *forhoren* than that mentioned in Stratmann. Cf. l. 11803 and the French:

Dan *viellard*, ne alez auant.

11093. *or thou goo*. See note to l. 8239.

11098. *won*. See note to l. 10329.

11099. *to* = too, also. See note to l. 10637.

11102. *wythowte dredys*. See note to l. 3739.

11117. *so* = as? See note to l. 10552.

11129. *whyte yblowe*, lit. 'white-blossomed,' white-haired. Cf. Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, l. 687:

For þow ert old and *whit iblowe*;

hore yblowe, Guy, ed. Turnb., 6427:

An *hore yblowe* kniȝt he seye;

berd blowe (yblowe), ib. 3035:

Tristor he hete wiþ þe *berd blowe*;

and 4736:

Wiþ *whitehore* heued and *berd yblowe*.

11135. *well strekyn in elde* = well stricken in years (Luc. i, 7). Cf. Bible Word-Book, p. 461, and note to l. 1617.

11141-2. Cf. the French :

Puis se uunt entreferir
Les uassals par grant hair :
Des healmes funt le feu saillir,
Les uals funt les coups retentir.
Le sanc lur rait an ual lur pez, *etc.*

Geuyn : *todynnon* is, of course, no rhyme, but *todynnon* is very queer in itself. The use of *all to* = all together, does not begin before the sixteenth century. See Bible Word-Book, s. v. *all to*, and Skeat's Note to William, l. 3884. *Torevyn* would rhyme, but the *vales* (valleys) cannot be said to have been riven asunder by the echo of the blows. Perhaps the two lines ran originally thus :

Smarte strokys togedur þey geuyn,
That the *mayles* all toreuyn,

and were followed by two lines in which the echo of the valleys was mentioned (cf. ll. 11779-80) :

Suche strokys geuyn þe knyghtys stowte,
That þe vales dynnon all abowte ;

or (cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 177 :

The erthe dynned all abowte
Of her strokis herd and stowte)
The vales dynnon all abowte
Of her strokis herd and stowte ;

which lines were omitted by a mistake after *vales* and *dynnon* had been introduced into a preceding line. I give this, of course, as a mere guess, and every one is welcome to propose a more satisfactory explanation or emendation.

11148. *yf*. See the note to ll. 5115-16.

11154. *wyde whare*. See note to l. 8222.

11170. *Arste*. See note to ll. 8212-13.

11181. The scribe has spoiled the rhyme by introducing the Southern *o* for the Northern *y* (*i*). Cf. note to l. 3108.

11209. *dyght*. See note to l. 4350.

11287. Cf. the French :

Al hus de la salere sunt descendu :
Serjanz i sunt encontre coruz,
Lur lances receiuent e lur escuz,
Les cheualers ameinent sus.

The words in Italics confirm my emendation of the odd words of the MS.

11310. *recetted*, received ; cf. N.E. *to receipt*. O.F. *recetter* :

Pur Gui de Warewik, quil tant ama,
Ke en sun chastel le *recetta*
Après la mort le duc Otun.

The word is wanting in Stratmann, and quoted only from this passage in Halliwell.

11314. It is perhaps better to read (against the MS.) *ofstande* = *astande* in the corresponding passage of the Auchinleck MS. (Reinbroun, 876-7):

And made vs fle out of þat londe
And in þis contre we beþ *astonde*.

We were ofstande, 'we dwelt.' The French runs thus:

De la terre puis enfuimes,
En cest pais ici uenimes.

11315. MS. *eluyische*. The mistake was occasioned by l. 11317.

11320. *sworde*, that is required by the rhyme instead of *swyrde*, occurs in l. 3711, rhyming with *borde*.

11324. *vnryde*. See note to l. 1647.

11340. Not very clear. The French is to the following effect:

Compaignons fumes, bien le conuz:
A li esteit tut nostre refus.
Compainons fumes en Alemaingne:
Souent demenames riche compaigne.

But our text seems to mean: 'to him I would go even from a distance,' which reminds one of Hávamál, 34:

Afhvarf mikít er til illz vinar,
þótt á brauto búi;
enn til góðs vinar liggja gagnvegir,
þót hann sé firr farinn.

11382. *wonde*. See the note to l. 3872.

11393. *All maner flowrys*, 'flowers of every kind'; cf. l. 11421, and *all maner vessels of ivory*, Revelation xviii, 12 (Bible Word-Book, s. v. *manner*). Compare the German 'aller art blumen,' 'aller hand blumen.' *All* (no, etc.) *maner* was originally a genitive as *all* (no) *kyn* is = *alles* (nones) *kynnes*, etc.

11399—11408. I will give the whole passage in French, since our text has several difficulties which I am unable to remove. It seems that *corall* in l. 11399 is a mistake for *crystal*:

Les meseres sunt de crestal
Entaillees de fin amail,
Les cheuerons dreit de cipres,
Ki douz flaur iettoient ades.
Les trefs erent de fin corail
Ensemble roinz de metal.
El frunt amunt un charbucle estoit,
Ke tote le ille elluminout.
Le pomels, ke erent en sum,
Entailez erent tut envurun.
Li uns ert saphir de un sardeine,
Li autres erent admiraude fine.
Envurun ert enclos li paleis
De un auncien mur sarazineis.
Tut entur ert bataille
De diuerse flurs entaille.

11406. Perhaps the translator has kept the French adjective. That the plural *þe wallys*, though repeated in l. 11409, is not original, seems to be proved by *Hyt* in l. 11407. Perhaps :

Wythynne a wâlle sarazyneys ?

11417-18. The French runs thus :

Rainbrun mult se enmerueilla
De la meruaille, ke il esguarda.
Lewe passer pas ne osa.
De sun espee le gue tasta.

Perhaps in our text two lines are omitted between ll. 11417 and 11418 with the same rhyme, e. g. :

Of þe mervayle in þe place,
And he dorste noght in þat case, *etc.* ?

11420. *Yf þat*. See note to l. 5115-16.

11421. *no maner grownde*. See note to l. 11393.

11428. *wonde*. See note to l. 3872.

11441. *he hym dyght*. See note to l. 4350.

11444. *calle*, address ? The French :

Home uiuant ni ad troue.

11454. *Whether . . . or* = Lat. *utrum . . . an*, in direct questions in M.E. See Mätzner's Gramm., III², 374 ; Koch's Gramm., II, 487 (§ 575).

11457. *so dere*. See note to l. 1343.

11472. *Men* = 'one' ; cf. *he* in the following lines. The French has *home*.

11488. *grylle* must, of course, be a substantive here. Halliwell, who cites it only from this passage (it is wanting in Stratmann), explains it by 'guile, deceit.' But that cannot be right, since *qwentys* is deceit. The French does not help :

Home en cest ylle ne entra
Ne iames entrer ne porra,
Si li sires nel amenast,
Ou par sun congie ni entrast.

The adjective *grylle* (cf. 11926), *grille* is 'stern, cruel, horrible, hideous, severe,' and the like. I therefore suppose the substantive in our passage means 'cruelty,' 'fierceness.'

11490. The translator has mistaken the French. See the preceding note.

11501. MS. *he*. But cf. the French :

Ainz ke del paleis fussums issi,
Tuz noz estres auerez (*sic* !) veu.

11529. *He* can be defended, as the translator when writing this line may have thought of Reynbrowne alone. But perhaps it is only a fault of a scribe instead of *þey*. Cf. especially l. 11528.

11538. *my prison to breke*. Cf. note to l. 5950.

11546. *dyzt*. Cf. note to l. 4350.

11549. *to* seems to be 'too, also'; cf. note to l. 10637. Or is it here the preposition?

11557. The French has no such exaggeration :

Vn coup en haut li dona,
Ke jus a la terre le agraunta.

11589. *so dere*. See note to l. 1343.

11590. MS. *hoole and sere*. Halliwell, in his Dictionary, s. v. *Sere* (3), citing this passage, suggests 'safe' as the signification of *sere*. But I make no doubt that here *s* or rather *f* stands for *f*. Cf. *serue* in the Paris MS. and in Tyrwhitt's Text of C. T. Prol., 14, instead of *ferne*, which, by the bye, cannot mean 'old' as Morris now explains it. See also l. 4626.

11623-4. Cf. note to ll. 8127-8.

11637. *bedene*. See note to l. 2408.

11648. *Into Ynglonde warde*. Mätzner, Gramm., II², 329, only cites *in toward*, not *into . . . ward*, and even that only from Layamon. Perhaps the scribe had *To Ynglonde warde* before him, but, copying negligently, he wrote *Into Ynglonde*, and, perceiving his error, added *warde* over the line, though he forgot to expunge *In*.

11659. The French runs thus :

Heraud ad a un homme demande :
'Ki cel pais ad ici destruit ?'
E il erraument li ad dit,
Ke li duc Milon li pruz, li biers,
Qui mult est orguillus e fiers
Vn son conte ad guerree,
Pur ceo quil ert uers li irez.
Ne li remist de terre plein pe
Fors un chastel, quil out ferme
Sur une roche, ke haute esteit :
La dedeins se defendeit.
Mes uenuz li est un soudeer,
De estrange terre un cheualer, etc.

One might be inclined to think that two lines corresponding with those printed in Italics are omitted in our text; but l. 11663 seems to prove that the translator, misunderstanding the whole passage, thought that it was Duke Mylon that lost everything except a single castle.

11692. *wynde*. See note to l. 3872.

11710. *To hym he wolde*. See note to ll. 855-6.

11714. *The todur* must be Asslake, who, however, comes down the hill, not toward the hill. Cf. the French :

Rainbrun mult grant air i ua,
E cil de la garde auala.

There are several ways in which the sense required may be got : e. g. by reading *towarde hym fro the hylle*. But the best emendation seems

to be to alter *towarde* to *frowarde*, the now obsolete reverse of *towarde*. Mätzner's Gramm., II², 330, gives examples of the prepositional use of *framward* and *fraward* from Layamon and Robert of Gloucester; but cf. also Ormulum, 4672-3:

þa turnesst tu þe *frawarrd* godd
Annd towardd eorþlic ahhte.

ib. 6607: All turnedd *frawarrd* Criste;

ib. 14199-200: *Frāwarrd* te defless wille
Annd towardd hire laferd Crist;

etc. But that the word had not yet got out of use in the fifteenth century is proved by Torrent of Portugal, ed. Halliwell, 953-5:

Loo come ther folkes hym ageyne
Fast folloyng with cart and wayne
Froward the sytte.

11721. MS. *helme*. But the plural is required; cf. *scheldys* and the French:

Grant coups fierent as *healmes* clers.

11751. *schall of*. See note to l. 855-6.

11761. *lytyll*. See note to l. 9814.

11780. *donyed* = O.E. *dynede*. Cf. notes to ll. 3869 and 11141-2.

11786. *so faste*. See note to l. 1343.

11790. *mysfare* = O.E. *misfaran* means to fare ill (cf. 1118), but also to behave ill: e. g. Gen. and Ex., 1911:

If he sag hise breðer *misfaren*.

But in our passage the word seems to be used as a transitive verb in the sense of the Icel. *misfara með einu*, to treat amiss, outrage.

On comparing the French, however:

Des oils comence a plorer
Del grant damage, ke serreit,
Si a nul de eus *mesauenet*

we scarcely can help questioning the correctness of our passage. Perhaps one may suggest:

Yf eyþer schulde of them *mysfare*.

11803. *old hore*, 'old gray-headed man'; cf. l. 11089.

11815. *in what maner of wyse*. See note to l. 4346.

11816. *fayntyse*. See note to l. 3204.

11821. *do wey þy fare*. See note to l. 3097.

11826. What *y* am, that *standyth*. Cf. Mätzner's Gramm., II², 156.

11830. *wyth that*. See note to l. 10314.

11852. *Te seke my fadur, where he*. See note to ll. 1497-8.

11862. *hys oþer wede*. See note to l. 559.

11864. *arste*. See note to ll. 8212-13.

11871. *where* = *were*, war. See note to l. 5416. But it is possible that the scribe, after the omission of *of*, gave the word the *h* only

because he mistook *no were* for *nowhere*. That *of* must be inserted is shown by the French :

Vne noi parle *de guerre*,
Ou ieo ne alasse mon pierre quere.

11926. *grylle*. See note to l. 11488.

11929. *pere he stode*. See note to l. 1535.

11930. *pe gode* refers to *Harrowdys*. See note to l. 687.

11946. *Into Ynglonde*, viz. to go. See note to ll. 855-6, and especially l. 7672.

11956-7. In these lines the king alone is understood as the subject. But I think it is not absolutely necessary to alter *They* in l. 11955 to *He*. Cf., however, the French :

Le rei encontre eus est ale
Od li le meulz de la cite.
Mult duement les *ad* honure
E del suen assez done, *etc.*

11960. *sojorned*. See note to l. 133.

11963. One might expect *Of hys men Raynbrown toke*. Cf. the French :

Rainbrun prent de ses hommes feute.

11973. *names seuyn*. See note to l. 2682. Add to the examples quoted there, Isumbras in the Caius MS., 3, 8-9 :

On Jesu Cryst pouzte he nouzt
Ne on his *names seuene*.

11976. *Amen, amen, for charyte*, a very common conclusion. In the Auchinleck MS. the end of Reinbroun is wanting, but Guy ends thus (l. 10479) :

Amen, par charite ;

Copland's version : Amen, amen, for charitie :

The Land of Cokaygne, 190 :

Amen, per seinte Charite ;

cf. Sir Perceval, ed. Halliwell ; The Erle of Tolouse (Ritson, III, 144) ; The Squyere of Lowe Degre (ib. 192) ; Ywain and Gaw. (ib. I, 169) ; Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, etc. In Amis and Amiloun (Weber, II, 473), *Amen for charyte* is added by the scribe. Cf. notes to ll. 471 and 7154.

INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL NOTES.

- a*, and, 4448
a, indef. article, followed by *oon*, 7447
a (on) omitted before *gode spede*, 1876
a dropped in the beginning of compounds of Romance origin, 576, 3577
a rhymes with *ay*, 1126
abblaster, 2302
acoupe, 8908
 adjective separated from its substantive by the predicate, 5327
 adverbs in *-lily*, 3276
afayle, 4860
alse, also, 3628
also smerte, etc., 1343; *also muste y thryue*, etc., 615
amen for charyte at the end of poems, 11976
amonge, adv., 650, 2301
amoure, pur a, 9178
anacolutha, 58-9, 1187-9, 2352, 2377-9, 6699-700, 7057-8, 7409, 10586-7, 10597, 10782, 10938
and for *a*, 6352
anodur, on other, 7299
anythyng, adv., 5985
aplyght, 8541
ἀπό κοινοῦ, 1704
aposiopesis, 10620
 apposition without inflexion, 7921, placed after the word governing the possessive genitive to which it belongs, 687
armewre, 10143
armyne, 8425
arsmetryck, 68
arste, in a comparative sense, 8212-13
 article omitted, 9162
aryue, strong verb, 4244
as, there as, where, 1144-5; *as and*, as if, 10687; *as rathe*, 1343; *as that*, as, as if, where, 4062
as- = es-, 3880
aspye, spy, to espy, 3880
at one, at oon, attone, 5308
auentere, 3238
ay = e, 3070
-ayle to be often restored for *-ell*, 857
b, corrupted from or to *m*, 2408
bad, prayed, 5782
Barrarde and Barrardyne, 9529
batayle, rhymed, not *batell*, 857
be for *but*, 7853
be drawe, 4147
be knowe, confess, 10837
be lent, 778
be then (that), 6447
becalle, 7596
bede and bidde confounded, 2703
bedene, 2408
begle, bigly, 2872
begone, golde b., 8055
behet, behetyng, 169
behyght, to promise, 5478
belappe, 7464
beloken, golde b., 8055
bere, to strike, 1944

besecheyd = *besoȝt*, 5367

besemydde, 10791

beseyn, 8995

beste, *wyth the b.*, 1496

blame, *wythowte bl.*, 3069

blys, *so haue y bl.*, 615

bordys, jousting, 1285

borowe, to save, 8474

bothe miswritten for *but*, 8701

bothe . . . *and*, referring to more than two substantives, 10996

bowre, 2674

braoun, brawn, 2497-8

brayde, *geue a br.*, 9198 ; cf. 10303

brayton, fool, 10337

bredde, bread, in phrases, 2990, 3695-6

breke my preson, 11538

broke, to rejoice in, 1747

browe, *be my br.*, 974

bryghte in bowre, 2674

care, doubt, 8138

carpe, to speak, to fight, 3322

change of construction, 2324-7 ; of the persons addressed, 1753, 2355, 5591 ; from indirect speech to direct, 1785 ; of number, 100, 2753-5, 6994-5

charyte (*for*, *pur*), 471

chawnce, *so haue y ch.*, 615

chesowne, 576, 4314

colde, dead, 1149

comyn belle, 2187

confusion of two constructions, 1301-3, 4019-21, 7993-4

conjunctions repeated, 6840, 10211-12

Constantyne the nobel, 2726

construction *κατὰ σύνεσιν*, 100, 122, 1051, 2025-6, 5625

contractions in the second pers. sing. of weak preterits, 4657

corde, to accord, 576

cordement, accord, agreement, 576

corse, *be my c.*, 3344

Costantyne, 2726, 5361

couenande, *wyth (on) that c.*, 2601

couyre, to recover, 576

counsayle and *counsell* rhymed, 857

cownture, to encounter, 576

crowne, *be my cr.*, 974

croyse, cross, to be restored, 9658

crye, 2850

d omitted in *growne*, 5527

day, *be thys d.*, 1581

de- or *di-* dropped, 576

defawte, *withowte d.*, 4006

defendawnt, *me*, *hym d.*, 1421

delay, *wythowte d.*, 1902

delyuyr, to despatch, 10140

dere, dearly, 1451

derey, 1110

dest, didst, 4657

deuyll, the *d. yow honge*, 3430

di- dropped, 576

dialect of the poet more Northern than that of the scribe, 3108

direct speech abruptly after indirect, 1785

do way, 3097

donye, to din, 11780

dowte, *wythowte d.*, 3996

drawe = *drawe wyth horsys*, 227

drawe, *be dr.*, 4147

drede, *wythowte dr.*, 3739

dredeles, 3739

dromande mistakenly for *dromedarie*, 5805

dyght, to prepare, to carry, to go, 4350

e = *y*, 132

e dropped in the beginning of words, 576

elde, age, 11135

-ell in the place of *-ayle*, *-eyle*, 857

ellipsis of conjunctions after *than* (*then*), 992 ; of verbs denoting movement, 855-6

elliptical sentences expressing a wish, 7639-40

em- omitted, 576

- empere* for *emperere*, 4205
emperere, 4802
emperice, empress, 4205
emperowre, 4802
en- omitted, 576
ende, on *e.*, 1549
-ende, partic. pres. in *-e*, 8391
endurs day, 2828
enuye, at, of, to, with, 600
ermyne, 8425
errande, purpose, wish, object, 5995
ethical dative, 385, 2297, 3872
etyth neuer bredde, 2990; cf. 3695-6
euer amonge, 650
ey = *e*, 3070, 7730
eye, *loke*, *see*, *grete*, *wepe wyth e.*, 367

f mistaken for *f*, 11590
f for *th*, 346
fabull, *wythowte f.*, 3254
faint, 3204
fame, *wythowte f.*, 108
fame = *defame*, 576, 8229
fan, pret. of *fyne*, 4244
fant stone, 8411
fantyse, 3204
fare, *do way (let be) þy f.*, 3097
fay, *faye*, *per (par) ma f.*, *be my f.*, 2954
fayle, *wythowten (sauns) f.*, 465
fayntyse, 3204
fayre = *fare*, 3070
febull grace, 1216
felowredde ? 1667
fendes sone, 10010
fenne, *fine*, 11068
fere, *hole and f.*, 4626
feyne, sb., 3273
figurative superlatives, 4708
fleme, 8712
flexionless genitives, 503
flom, 8712
flowre, *bere*, *haue þe f.*, 77
flowres corrupted to *fowles*, 4264
flum, 8712
fon, pret. of *fyne*, 4244

fonde, to try; to hasten; found, 1372
for lefe nor lothe, 7225
force = *aforce*, 576
forhoryd, 11089
forþenke, *-ynke*, 984
forys, furrows, 1992
fote as a plural, 598
fote hote, 1049
French words in the Orrmulum, 9529
fresch, vigorous, quick, 8078
frowarde, reverse of *towarde*, 11714
furlong way, etc., 2810
fyne, adv., 9086

gemang, on *g.*, 2301
genitives, flexionless *g.*, 503, 688
geserne, 3351
geth, goes, used after *Layamon*, 11075
gisarme, *giserne*, 3351
glace, to glide, 5067
go, cf. *goo*
god of hevyn, 5671; *g. the see*, 163;
g. saue the, 1223-4, cf. 615; *so g. me helpe*, *rede*, *schylde*, *spede*, etc., 615
gode spede, 1876
God's seven names, 2682, 11973
golde begone, 8055
golde beloken, 8055
goo, *so mote y g.*, 2572; *for hym schall g. no rawnsome*, etc., 954;
maydyn g., 7020; *or y g.*, 8239
grace, luck, 1216, 4979
grete supplanted by *wepe*, 2534
grete wyth eyen, 367
grete, sorrow, 4791
greyne, scarlet in *g.*, 8996
grylle, 11488
guess(-ed), in another *gu. manner*, 4346
Gye, 365
gynne = *ingyne*, engine, 576
Gyowne, 365
gysarme, 3351

- h*, parasitical, 2303
halfen dele, 5916, 7173
hande, be my h., 3121
hardelye, -dyllye, 2691
hate, quickly, 1049
hate, to call, to be called, 169
hatte, hat, *be my h.*, 2884
hatte, am called, 169
have away, 4758
hedde, had, 3988
hedde, head, *be my h.*, 974; corrupted from *heued*, 1021
heer, army, 8529
hefbed, 9459
hele, also have y hele, etc., 615
helpe, so god (*Makownde*, etc.) *me h.*, 615
het, hete, hette, 169
heued to be restored for *hedde*, 1021
heyghte, 169
heyle = hele, 3070
hight, hichte, 169
hode, be my h., 2884
hole and fere, 4626
hole and sownde, 968
honge, the deuyll yow h., 3430
hote, quickly, 1049
hote, to call, to be called, 169
houe, to dwell, to remain, 6338
hyght, hyghte, 169
hym, yede hym, etc., 385
hys mistakenly doubled, 1627
hyt omitted, 1474, 2091

i, cf. *y*-
in, on account of, 8449
in . . . in(ne), 10382-3
in oon, 10738
in peyne, on pain, 10146
in present, as a present, 7904
in- omitted, 576
indirect speech abruptly followed by direct, 1785
interruptions of the narrative by the narrator asking for something to drink, 5859-60

into . . . warde? 11648
it omitted, 1474, 2091

kepe, to care for, to pay regard to, to have a mind, 349, 5950, 6727, 8334, 10224; to receive, encounter, 4403
kin, aller k. maner, 4346
knowe, be k., to confess, 10837
kyn, all kyns wyse, 4346
kynd, no maner k., 4346

l and *f* mistaken for each other, 9427
lady, as an exclamation, 5671
lasse, lessen, 4776
late to be restored for *lette*, 1363
lay, be my l., 2933
laye, pere hyt l., etc., 1477
luyne, to conceal, 2994
layne, wythowte l., 2994
lede, nation, country, 11026
ledys, men, people, 11026
lese, for l. nor lothe, 7225
lende, to land, to arrive, to stay, 778
lent, be lent, 778
lere and lerne, confounded, 6352
les, lost, 11024
lese of? 1846
lese, to deliver, 10112
lese, lesynge, wythout l., 550
lesse, lessen, 4776
let be, 3097
lett, lettynge, delay, 175
leuer, me and y had l., 5077
-lily, adverbs in *-lily*, 3276
'litotetical' use of some dele, etc., 9814
londe, in l., 5841
lofte bed, 9459
loke wyth eye, 367
lorde, father, 164
lorde, as an exclamation, 5671
lothe, for lese nor l., 7225
loue for leue, live, 10730
loue dere, 1451
lowde and (or) styлле, 792

lye for *lyue*, 2268

m corrupted to or from *b*, 2408

manere, in *m.*, 5521; on (*in*) *all m.*, 1228; on (*in*) *hys* (etc.) *m.*, 779; *all m. flowres*, 11393; *m. of (a) wyse*, no *m. weye*, *what skynnes m.*, another guess(ed) manner, etc., 4346

manlelye, 3276

marchauns, etc., 8485

mare, *wythowten m.*, 719

marke, dark, 8462

may, *yf y m.*, 983; *m. no more*, 6947

maydyn gone, 7020

men, one, followed by *he*, 11472

mende, so *god me m.*, 615

meste, *wyth the m.*, 1496

mett, measured, 6954

mistakes of the translator, 39, 5361, 5805, 6094, 6969-72, 7905, 11490, 11659, etc.

mo, *wythowten mo*, 719

moest = *mest*, 10593

more, *wythowtyn m.*, 719

mossel, morsel, 2144

mote, so *mote y goo*, etc., 2572

movement, verbs denoting *m.* omitted in the infinitive and participle past, 855-6

mowntance of a myle, 2810

mowntenance, 5229-30

mowthe, *speke wyth m.*, 367

myle, used to denote time, 2810

mynte, blow, to aim a blow, 6579

mysfalle, 992

n transferred to the following word, 612

n omitted by the scribe, 843

names, God's seven *n.*, 2682, 11973

Nan, 612

narmes, arms, 612

nasel, 10175

nay, *wythowten n.*, 3054

Ned, 612

negative omitted, 1301-3

Nell, 612

neme, uncle, 612

nende, end, 612

nere, never, 10550

neuen, even(ing), 612

newe, to become new, 237

newt, 612

nickname, 612

nime, to appoint, 10165

no, *wythowten no*, 3054

nodur, other, 612

noke, oak, 612

Nol, 612

nolle, *be my n.*, 974, 5544

nominative instead of an accusative after *but*, 889-90; as an apposition, 2377-9

none, noon, or *n.*, 5928

nones, once, 612

nore = *ore*, mercy, 612

nost, host, 612

not = *ne wot*, 6760

nother, other, 612

nowne, own, 612

noye, to annoy, 576

number, change of *n.*, 100, 2753-5, 6994-5

nye, eye, 612; *be my n.*, 3252

odur, cf. *other*

of omitted after *duke*, 633; after *halfen dele*, *fylle*, *plente*, *smalle*, etc., 7173; *lese of*? 1846; *of the Almayns*, some Germans, 1961; *therof thought he no synne*, 3786; *of of*, off of, 2906; *of for on*, 5334

ofstande, 11314

oght, adv., 7799

oghte, *me o.* and *y o.*, 7798

omission of negatives, 1301-3; of a principal sentence, 2645, 4921-4; of *to loke*, etc., 5115-16

on for of, 5334; *on ende*, 1549; *on gemang*, 2301; *on blode renne*, 5056; *on . . . on*, 2906

one, cf. *oon*

oon, on, 389
 oon to be changed to woon, 10329-32
 oon, one after *a*, 7447; after *than* (*then*), *as*, *so*, 9039; *oon of the two (tweye)*, used conjunctionally (= either), 1925-6
or y goo, etc., 8239
Orrm and *Orrmin*, 9529
Orrm employs a few French words, 9529
os, *as*, 4602
othe, *wythowte o.*, etc., 10862
other, used pleonastically, 559
other, other's? 4716
owre, *o'er*, 4555
 partitive use of *of*, 1961
paryle to be restored for *parelle*, 7217
pase, *a gode (grete) p.*, 1876
paytrelle, 9351
peyre, to impair, 576
plyght, preterit, 4647
 popular etymology, 5544
Pore = *Porus*, 7923
precessyown, procession, 10376
 prepositions in compounds dropped or mutilated, 576
 present tense in subordinate clauses after a preterit in the principal sentence, 3332
presente, adv., 6364
preue of, 465-6
 principal sentence omitted, 2645, 4921-4
 pronouns as subjects omitted when preceding in the dative or accusative, 10
 pronouns doubled, 2893-4
pryson, prisoner, 2507
pur charyte, 471
quede, devil, 8214
rage, *y am rage*? 3474
*ream*e, realm, 10881

recette, to receive, 11310
record, *take r.*, 9226
redde, sb., 1199—1200, 4410
rede, to tell = *rede*, to read = *rede*, to advise, 313; *so god me r.*, 7187
redy way, 10078
 relative, a *r.* clause instead of a conditional one, 669-70
remlawnt, *remlet*, *remling*, 9792
renne on blode, 5056
 repetition of pronouns, 2893-4; of conjunctions, 6840, 10211-12
repul, to ripple, 9617
reson, *shewyd hys r.*, 1862
reste, also *so god geue yow r.*, 615; to *r. goon*, 855-6
 rhyme, 820, 857, 1021, 1104, 1126, 1363, 1426, 1468, 1992, 2497-8, 2507, 2534, 3220, 3332, 3443, 3988, 4555, 5325, 6485, 6737, 7174, 8391, 8733, 8930, 9031-2, 10253-4, 10347, 10531, 10593, 10881, 11075, 11181, 11320
Romans, 8486
rone, corrupted from *iorne*? 5229-30
ryde = *vnryde*, 1647
rynge, in a collective sense, 2772
*rynge*s, rings of mail, 10680
ryue = *aryue*, 576; strong verb, 4244
s for *f*, 11590
s for *l*, 9427
sare, sorry, 3019
saue, *god s. the*, 1223-4
sauns fayle, 465
saute = *asaute*, 576
say = *assay*, *essay*, 576
sayle, to assail, 576
scape, to escape, 576
scarlet in greyne, 8996
schake, to move quickly, 5512
schelkys, men with shields, 1770
schete, to shoot, intransitive, 10347
schone, *wynne my* (etc.) *sch.*, 436

schowe to be restored for *schewe*, 807
schowre, fight, attack, 9206
schust, shouldst, 4657
schyder ? 1468
scowmfyfe, 576
seche, to visit, to come, 7151, 7676, 8394
seche for *schede*, 7291
see, god the s., 163 ; *s. wyth eye* (*syght*), 367
sege = *assege*, 576
sekyrlye, 1684
seler for *soler*, 4059
sende aftyr hym wyth an erle, 2782-3
separation of words belonging together, 503, 687, 2641, 5327, 5796
serue, deserve, 576
seven, to be at six(es) and seven(s), 5308
seuyn nameys of God, 2682, 11973
seuyn yere, 8667
seynt Charyte, 7154
shortness of expression, 4501, 4640, 8054, 8127-8
sittle, to last, 7100
six, cf. seven
skyrnes, on what sk. maner, 4346
slane and *slayne*, slain, 1126
slowe, inorganic participle, 4216
smalle = *smalle of*, 7483
smyte, to rush, to fall, 1196 ; to stud ? 10245-6
so, in a relative sense, 615, 10552
so faste (*dere*, *moche*, etc.), 1343
soler,ollar, 4059
some = Danish *som*, 3187
some dele, a great deal, 9814
sonde, message, dish, present, mercy, 10477
song, lamentation, 5424
сотelle, 2496
sownde, hole and s., 968
special, particular friend, 4703
specyalte, friendship, 4703
spede, (a) *gode sp.*, 1876
spede, so god me sp., 615

speke, to fight, 6048 ; *sp. wyth mowthe*, 367
sporys, spurs, 1992
ss = *rs*, 2144
stadde, bestead, 8028
stande, to last, 7100 ; *there he stode*, etc., 1535
St Charity, 7154
stere, strong, stout ? 662
steype, 7730
store = *estore* and *restore*, 576
store, to stir, 3869
stownde, in a (*lytull*) st., 1049
stowre, time ? 9433
straunge corrupted to *stronge*, 1493
strawe brede, 8149
strekyn in elde, 11135
stronge corrupted from *straunge*, 1493
stroye, to destroy, 576
stryffe, strife, 346
stryke, to move, 1617
stryue, to strive, 346, 4244
style, lowde and (or) st., 792
subject omitted, 10, 2966
superlatives, figurative s., 4708
swage, to assuage, 576
swete and *swote*, 10690
sworde required by the rhyme, 11320
swyck, trap, 7580
swyre, neck, *be my s.*, 3598
syght, sighed, 2311
σύνεσις, constructio, κατὰ α., 100, 122, 1051, 2025-6, 5625
synge, to lament, 5424
t transferred to the following word, 658
take, to appoint, 5742
tale, be t., 2043 ; *geue no t.*, 8143
tame = *attame*, *entame*, 576, 10290
tary, to tarry, 10104
telle, cf. *tolde*
th- for *wh-*, 6761
thame, them, 6737
than (*then*), than that, than if, 992

than (*then*), *that was th.*, 1293
þar me or *y þar*, 6770
that doubled, 6295, 10211-12; *be*
that, 6447; *that* as a dative,
 5462; *th* added to *as*, 4062;
that he who, *that his* whose, etc.,
 181-2; *that was than* (*then*, *þo*),
 1293
þe, they? 1849
the, so mote *y the*, 615
the whych, 8638
thedur, to where, 9341
then, cf. *than*
then, *be then*, 6447
thenke and *thynke* confounded, 984;
therof thoght he no synne, 3786
there as, where, 1144-5
pere hyt laye, etc., 1477; *pere he*
stode, etc., 1535
they, referring to a singular person,
 comprises the person's com-
 panions, etc., 5672
thou and *ye*, 356; in addressing the
 reader or hearer, 5478
thrate, preterit of *þrete*, 8132
through, coffin, 10707
throwe, time, 1655
þryste, thirst, 6682
thryue, so muste *y th.*, etc., 615
thycke, crowded, numerous, 3329
thychfolde, numerous, 3329
þ^t for *w^t*, 4866
to, preposition and conjunction at
 the same time? 8283-4; *to*, too,
 also, 10637; *to* before infinitives
 governed by auxiliary verbs
 which are generally used with-
 out it, 1925-6
todur, 658
tolde, in number, 1770; considered,
 3288; fixed, determined on,
 5327; received, 8584; *welc of*
tolde, 2220
ton, the *t.*, 658
toschyder? 1468
tother, 658
towne, in *t.*, 5841

transition, abrupt tr. from indirect
 speech to direct, 1785; from
 one's words to another's, 5717
traueyle rhymed, not *trauell*, 857
tresorye, 7911
tresoure, 8733
trewage, 3512
trouwthe, faith, religion, 2933
troupeplyght, 4330
tryste, trusty, 4486
 two, to be at two, 5308
tyne, 2864, 6666
tyþynge, 2022

vayle, to avail, 3577
verament, 9992
verraye, 9992
verre = *veire*, 1378
verylye, 9992
vnderzete, *vndurzate*, 8231
vnduryede, -yode, 8231
vnryde, 1647
vþbrayde, 10303

w, parasitical, 3422, 7927
ware, were, 4037
war(re) and wyse, 70
warse, cf. *worre*
was as a plural, 253
way, away, 3097
welc and (or a) fyne, 9086
wepe wyth eyen, 367
wepe supplants grete, 2534
wes, was, 10531
weyzt, whit, 419
wh- = *h-*, 3422
wh- = *w-*, 5416
whayle, hale, whole, 3070, 3422,
 5199
whether . . . or, in direct questions,
 11454
who . . . but? 10135
whytehore, 4775
whyte yblowe, 11129
whodur, whither, 8466
whome, home, 3422
wo am y and *wo ys me*, 1251

- wonne*, one, 7927
woon, chance, plenty, etc., 10329
word = *ord*, 7927
wordys, fates, 1155
worre (*warse*), *gete* (*haue*) *the w.*, 5214
wost, wouldst, 4657
wot (*wele*), *y wot*, 1948
wother, other, 7927
wrath, to injure, 1462
w^t mistaken for *p^t*, 4866
wyde whare (*where*), 8222
wyzt, whit, 419
wyll, *y w.* not *but*, 6271
wyn, better man drank neuer *wyn*, 4708
wynde, to go, 3872, 6334
wynne my (etc.) *schone*, 436
wyse, all *kyns w.*, *maner* (*of*, *a*) *w.*, etc., 4346
wyse and war, 70
wyte, to blame, 3974
wyth, towards, against, to, 1722 ;
 by, 3766 ; *sende w.*, 2782-3 ; *wyth*
 the beste (*meste*, etc.), 1496 ; *wyth*
 that (*pan*), 10314, 10870
- wytturly*, 1008
wyue, wife, 820 ; *wyueys*, *maydenys*, 4225
ȝ (*y*), parasitical, 60 ; dropped, 1538
y = *j*, 133
yare (cf. 3019) corrupted to *yore*, 1104
ye and *thou*, 356, 5478
yede, 60
yf, *ȝyf* in elliptical sentences, 7639-40
yf y may, 983
yf, give, 1538.
ylike corrupted from *ylyke*, 658
yode, 60
ȝolde, yield, 10215
yore, incorrect for *yare*, 1104
ȝorthe, earth, 60
yow, as a nominative, 4192
ys, am, are, 3194
ὑστερον πρότερον, 4449
ȝyf, cf. *yf*
zeugma, 3531-2, 6184

CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

Text: 352. downe.

460. mee.

1021. *no comma.*

1298. bordys.

1348. blythe.

1512. cosynd.

Side-note: 1769. 2000

Text: 2091. sawe, •

2824. bytterer, þen þe

3631. *no comma.*

3678. what *for* whyt

3762. fyght.

4480. sarsyns

6646. wey

7081. thys *for* thy

7657. Almayne,

8064. anon

8494. own

9194. londe *for* lorde

9388. man

9408. wey

9581. say

9913. to Whytesande

Side-note: 9934. leaf 225a

Text: 10166. nommen,

10267. dryue,

10275. then *for* they

Text: 10751. wythowten

10926. fote *for* fole

11163. men *for* me

11287. anon

11547. *no comma.*

11556. eluysch

Notes: 669-70. Cf. Isumbras in the
Naples MS.:

They, þat hym seke wyth mylde
mode,

þer lyues fode send wylle he.

1770. Cf. Tennyson's Enid 1388:
Came riding with a hundred *lances*
up.

Ibid. 1449:

And call'd for flesh and wine to
feed his *spears*.

3097. Cf. Orpheo, ed. Laing, 188:
'*Do way*,' quæþ he, 'it schal be so.'

3695-6. Cf. Athelston (Reliquiæ
Antiquæ, II, 88), 15, 1-3:

þanne swoor þe kyng be cros and
roode:

'Mete ne drynk schal do me goode,
Tyll þat he be dedde.'

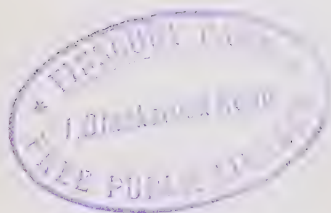
7447. Cf. Athelston (Rel. Ant.,
II, 98), 49, 11:

An hard doome now is þis *on*.

8127-8. Cf. the last lines of Ten-
nyson's Enoch Arden:

And when they buried him the
little port

Had seldom seen a costlier funeral.



1
F
DRAWN
ON STOCK
LIBRARY

